



## HP Prime Graphing Calculator

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

© 2014 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

First Edition: October 2014

Document Part Number: 788996-001

## Legal notices

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Portions of this software are copyright 2013 The FreeType Project ([www.freetype.org](http://www.freetype.org)). All rights reserved.

- HP is distributing FreeType under the FreeType License.
- HP is distributing google-droid-fonts under the Apache Software License v2.0.
- HP is distributing HIDAPI under the BSD license only.
- HP is distributing Qt under the LGPLv2.1 license. HP is providing a full copy of the Qt source.
- HP is distributing QuaZIP under LGPLv2 and the zlib/libpng licenses. HP is providing a full copy of the QuaZIP source.

Hewlett-Packard Company shall not be liable for any errors or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or the examples contained herein.





## **Product Regulatory & Environment Information**

*Product Regulatory and Environment Information* is provided on the CD shipped with this product.



---

# Table of contents

|                                 |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|
| <b>1 Preface .....</b>          | <b>1</b> |
| Manual conventions .....        | 1        |
| <b>2 Getting started .....</b>  | <b>2</b> |
| Before starting .....           | 2        |
| On/off, cancel operations ..... | 3        |
| To turn on .....                | 3        |
| To cancel .....                 | 3        |
| To turn off .....               | 3        |
| The Home View .....             | 3        |
| The CAS View .....              | 3        |
| Protective cover .....          | 3        |
| The display .....               | 4        |
| Adjusting the brightness .....  | 4        |
| Clearing the display .....      | 4        |
| Sections of the display .....   | 4        |
| The Quick Settings menu .....   | 5        |
| Navigation .....                | 6        |
| Touch gestures .....            | 7        |
| The keyboard .....              | 7        |
| Context-sensitive menu .....    | 8        |
| Entry and edit keys .....       | 9        |
| Shift keys .....                | 10       |
| Adding text .....               | 10       |
| Math keys .....                 | 11       |
| Math template .....             | 12       |
| Math shortcuts .....            | 13       |
| Fractions .....                 | 14       |
| Hexagesimal numbers .....       | 14       |
| EEX key (powers of 10) .....    | 15       |
| Menus .....                     | 16       |
| Selecting from a menu .....     | 16       |
| Shortcuts .....                 | 17       |
| Closing a menu .....            | 17       |
| Toolbox menus .....             | 17       |
| Input forms .....               | 17       |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Resetting input form fields .....                  | 18        |
| System-wide settings .....                         | 18        |
| Home settings .....                                | 19        |
| Page 1 .....                                       | 19        |
| Page 2 .....                                       | 20        |
| Page 3 .....                                       | 20        |
| Page 4 .....                                       | 21        |
| Specifying a Home setting .....                    | 21        |
| Mathematical calculations .....                    | 22        |
| Where to start .....                               | 22        |
| Choosing an entry type .....                       | 23        |
| Entering expressions .....                         | 23        |
| Example .....                                      | 24        |
| Parentheses .....                                  | 24        |
| Algebraic precedence .....                         | 25        |
| Negative numbers .....                             | 25        |
| Explicit and implied multiplication .....          | 25        |
| Large results .....                                | 25        |
| Reusing previous expressions and results .....     | 26        |
| Using the clipboard .....                          | 26        |
| Reusing the last result .....                      | 26        |
| Reusing an expression or result from the CAS ..... | 28        |
| Storing value in a variable .....                  | 28        |
| Complex numbers .....                              | 29        |
| Sharing data .....                                 | 29        |
| General procedure .....                            | 30        |
| Online help .....                                  | 31        |
| <b>3 Reverse Polish Notation (RPN) .....</b>       | <b>32</b> |
| History in RPN mode .....                          | 33        |
| Reusing results .....                              | 33        |
| Sample calculations .....                          | 34        |
| Manipulating the stack .....                       | 35        |
| PICK .....   | 36        |
| ROLL .....   | 36        |
| Swap .....   | 36        |
| Stack .....  | 36        |
| DROPN .....  | 36        |
| DUPN .....   | 36        |
| Echo .....   | 36        |
| →LIST .....  | 37        |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Show an item .....                                  | 37        |
| Delete an item .....                                | 37        |
| Delete all items .....                              | 38        |
| <b>4 Computer algebra system (CAS) .....</b>        | <b>39</b> |
| CAS view .....                                      | 39        |
| CAS calculations .....                              | 40        |
| Example 1 .....                                     | 41        |
| Example 2 .....                                     | 42        |
| Settings .....                                      | 42        |
| Page 1 .....  | 43        |
| Page 2 .....  | 44        |
| Setting the form of menu items .....                | 44        |
| To use an expression or result from Home view ..... | 44        |
| To use a Home variable in CAS .....                 | 45        |
| <b>5 Exam Mode .....</b>                            | <b>46</b> |
| Modifying the default configuration .....           | 46        |
| Creating a new configuration .....                  | 48        |
| Activating exam mode .....                          | 49        |
| Cancelling exam mode .....                          | 50        |
| Modifying configurations .....                      | 50        |
| To change a configuration .....                     | 50        |
| To return to the default configuration .....        | 50        |
| Deleting configurations .....                       | 51        |
| <b>6 An introduction to HP apps .....</b>           | <b>52</b> |
| Application library .....                           | 53        |
| Opening an app .....                                | 53        |
| Resetting an app .....                              | 53        |
| Sorting apps .....                                  | 54        |
| Deleting an app .....                               | 54        |
| Other options .....                                 | 54        |
| App views .....                                     | 54        |
| Symbolic view .....                                 | 55        |
| Symbolic Setup view .....                           | 56        |
| Plot view .....                                     | 56        |
| Plot Setup view .....                               | 57        |
| Numeric view .....                                  | 57        |
| Numeric Setup view .....                            | 58        |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Quick example .....                                    | 59 |
| Opening the app .....                                  | 59 |
| Symbolic view .....                                    | 59 |
| Symbolic Setup view .....                              | 60 |
| Plot view .....  | 60 |
| Plot Setup view .....                                  | 61 |
| Numeric view .....                                     | 61 |
| Numeric Setup view .....                               | 62 |
| Common operations in Symbolic view .....               | 62 |
| Adding a definition .....                              | 62 |
| Modifying a definition .....                           | 63 |
| Definitional building blocks .....                     | 63 |
| Evaluating a dependent definition .....                | 64 |
| Selecting or deselecting a definition to explore ..... | 65 |
| Choosing a color for plots .....                       | 65 |
| Deleting a definition .....                            | 65 |
| Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons .....           | 66 |
| Common operations in Symbolic Setup view .....         | 67 |
| Overriding system-wide settings .....                  | 67 |
| Restoring default settings .....                       | 67 |
| Common operations in Plot view .....                   | 68 |
| Zoom .....   | 68 |
| Zoom factors .....                                     | 68 |
| Zoom options .....                                     | 69 |
| Zoom gestures .....                                    | 69 |
| Zoom keys .....  | 69 |
| Zoom menu .....  | 69 |
| Box zoom .....   | 70 |
| Views menu .....                                       | 71 |
| Testing a zoom with split-screen viewing .....         | 71 |
| Zoom examples .....                                    | 72 |
| Zoom In .....  | 72 |
| Zoom Out .....   | 73 |
| X In .....   | 73 |
| X Out .....  | 74 |
| Y In .....   | 74 |
| Y Out .....  | 74 |
| Square .....   | 75 |
| Autoscale .....  | 75 |
| Decimal .....  | 76 |
| Integer .....  | 76 |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Trig .....                                    | 77        |
| Trace .....                                   | 77        |
| Selecting a plot .....                        | 77        |
| Evaluating a definition .....                 | 78        |
| Turning tracing on or off .....               | 78        |
| Plot view: Summary of menu buttons .....      | 79        |
| Common operations in Plot Setup view .....    | 79        |
| Configuring Plot view .....                   | 79        |
| Page 1 .....                                  | 80        |
| Page 2 .....                                  | 81        |
| Graphing methods .....                        | 81        |
| Restoring default settings .....              | 82        |
| Common operations in Numeric view .....       | 82        |
| Zoom .....                                    | 83        |
| Zoom options .....                            | 84        |
| Zoom keys .....                               | 84        |
| Zoom menu .....                               | 84        |
| Evaluating .....                              | 85        |
| Custom tables .....                           | 85        |
| Deleting data .....                           | 86        |
| Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons .....   | 86        |
| Common operations in Numeric Setup view ..... | 87        |
| Restoring default settings .....              | 87        |
| Combining Plot and Numeric Views .....        | 88        |
| Adding a note to an app .....                 | 88        |
| Creating an app .....                         | 88        |
| Example .....                                 | 89        |
| App functions and variables .....             | 90        |
| Functions .....                               | 90        |
| Variables .....                               | 91        |
| Qualifying variables .....                    | 92        |
| <b>7 Function app .....</b>                   | <b>93</b> |
| Getting started with the Function app .....   | 93        |
| Opening the Function app .....                | 93        |
| Defining the expressions .....                | 94        |
| Setting up a plot .....                       | 95        |
| Plotting a function .....                     | 95        |
| Tracing a graph .....                         | 96        |
| Changing the scale .....                      | 97        |
| Displaying Numeric view .....                 | 97        |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Setting up Numeric view .....                                 | 98  |
| Exploring Numeric view .....                                  | 99  |
| Navigating a table .....                                      | 99  |
| Going directly to a value .....                               | 100 |
| Accessing the zoom options .....                              | 100 |
| Other options .....   | 100 |
| Analyzing functions .....                                     | 100 |
| Displaying the Plot view menu .....                           | 100 |
| Finding a root of a quadratic equation .....                  | 101 |
| Finding an intersection of two functions .....                | 102 |
| Finding the slope of a quadratic equation .....               | 103 |
| Finding the signed area between two functions .....           | 104 |
| Finding the extremum of the quadratic equation .....          | 106 |
| Adding a tangent to a function .....                          | 106 |
| Defining functions in terms of derivatives or integrals ..... | 107 |
| Functions defined by derivatives .....                        | 107 |
| Functions defined by integrals .....                          | 109 |
| Function variables .....                                      | 110 |
| Accessing function variables .....                            | 111 |
| Summary of FCN operations .....                               | 112 |

## **8 Advanced Graphing app ..... 113**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Getting started with the Advanced Graphing app ..... | 115 |
| Opening the Advanced Graphing app .....              | 115 |
| Defining an open sentence .....                      | 116 |
| Setting up the plot .....                            | 117 |
| Plotting the selected definitions .....              | 117 |
| Exploring the graph .....                            | 118 |
| Trace in Plot view .....                             | 120 |
| Numeric view .....                                   | 121 |
| Displaying Numeric view .....                        | 121 |
| Exploring Numeric view .....                         | 122 |
| Numeric Setup view .....                             | 122 |
| Trace in Numeric view .....                          | 122 |
| Edge .....   | 123 |
| Pol .....  | 124 |
| Plot Gallery .....                                   | 125 |
| Exploring a plot from the Plot Gallery .....         | 125 |

## **9 Geometry ..... 126**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Getting started with the Geometry app ..... | 126 |
|---|-----|



|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Preparation .....                            | 126 |
| Opening the app and plotting the graph ..... | 126 |
| Adding a constrained point .....             | 127 |
| Adding a tangent .....                       | 128 |
| Creating a derivative point .....            | 129 |
| Adding some calculations .....               | 131 |
| Calculations in Plot view .....              | 133 |
| Trace the derivative .....                   | 133 |
| Plot view in detail .....                    | 134 |
| Selecting objects .....                      | 135 |
| Hiding names .....                           | 135 |
| Moving objects .....                         | 135 |
| Coloring objects .....                       | 136 |
| Filling objects .....                        | 136 |
| Clearing an object .....                     | 136 |
| Clearing all objects .....                   | 137 |
| Gestures in Plot view .....                  | 137 |
| Zooming .....                                | 137 |
| Plot view: buttons and keys .....            | 138 |
| The Options menu .....                       | 139 |
| Plot Setup view .....                        | 139 |
| Symbolic view in detail .....                | 140 |
| Creating objects .....                       | 141 |
| Reordering entries .....                     | 141 |
| Hiding an object .....                       | 141 |
| Deleting an object .....                     | 142 |
| Symbolic Setup view .....                    | 142 |
| Numeric view in detail .....                 | 142 |
| Listing all objects .....                    | 145 |
| Displaying calculations in Plot view .....   | 145 |
| Editing a calculation .....                  | 145 |
| Deleting a calculation .....                 | 146 |
| Plot view: Cmds menu .....                   | 146 |
| Point .....                                  | 146 |
| Point .....                                  | 146 |
| Point On .....                               | 147 |
| Midpoint .....                               | 147 |
| Center .....                                 | 147 |
| Intersection .....                           | 147 |
| Intersections .....                          | 147 |
| Random Points .....                          | 147 |

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Line .....               | 148 |
| Segment .....            | 148 |
| Ray .....                | 148 |
| Line .....               | 148 |
| Parallel .....           | 148 |
| Perpendicular .....      | 148 |
| Tangent .....            | 148 |
| Median .....             | 149 |
| Altitude .....           | 149 |
| Angle bisector .....     | 149 |
| Polygon .....            | 149 |
| Triangle .....           | 149 |
| Isosceles Triangle ..... | 149 |
| Right Triangle .....     | 150 |
| Quadrilateral .....      | 150 |
| Parallelogram .....      | 150 |
| Rhombus .....            | 150 |
| Rectangle .....          | 150 |
| Polygon .....            | 151 |
| Regular Polygon .....    | 151 |
| Square .....             | 151 |
| Curve .....              | 151 |
| Circle .....             | 151 |
| Circumcircle .....       | 152 |
| Excircle .....           | 152 |
| Incircle .....           | 152 |
| Ellipse .....            | 153 |
| Hyperbola .....          | 153 |
| Parabola .....           | 153 |
| Conic .....              | 153 |
| Locus .....              | 154 |
| Plot .....               | 154 |
| Function .....           | 155 |
| Parametric .....         | 155 |
| Polar .....              | 155 |
| Sequence .....           | 156 |
| Implicit .....           | 156 |
| Slopefield .....         | 156 |
| ODE .....                | 156 |
| List .....               | 156 |
| Slider .....             | 157 |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Transform .....                       | 157 |
| Translation .....                     | 157 |
| Reflection .....                      | 158 |
| Rotation .....                        | 159 |
| Dilation .....                        | 159 |
| Similarity .....                      | 160 |
| Projection .....                      | 160 |
| Inversion .....                       | 161 |
| Reciprocation .....                   | 161 |
| Cartesian .....                       | 162 |
| Abscissa .....                        | 162 |
| Ordinate .....                        | 162 |
| Coordinates .....                     | 162 |
| Equation of .....                     | 162 |
| Parametric .....                      | 162 |
| Polar coordinates .....               | 163 |
| Measure .....                         | 163 |
| Distance .....                        | 163 |
| Radius .....                          | 163 |
| Perimeter .....                       | 163 |
| Slope .....                           | 163 |
| Area .....                            | 163 |
| Angle .....                           | 163 |
| Arc Length .....                      | 163 |
| Tests .....                           | 163 |
| Collinear .....                       | 163 |
| On circle .....                       | 164 |
| On object .....                       | 164 |
| Parallel .....                        | 164 |
| Perpendicular .....                   | 164 |
| Isosceles .....                       | 164 |
| Equilateral .....                     | 164 |
| Parallelogram .....                   | 164 |
| Conjugate .....                       | 165 |
| Geometry functions and commands ..... | 165 |
| Symbolic view: Cmds menu .....        | 165 |
| Point .....                           | 165 |
| Point .....                           | 165 |
| Point on .....                        | 166 |
| Midpoint .....                        | 166 |
| Center .....                          | 166 |

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Intersection .....       | 166 |
| Intersections .....      | 166 |
| Line .....               | 167 |
| Segment .....            | 167 |
| Ray .....                | 167 |
| Line .....               | 167 |
| Parallel .....           | 167 |
| Perpendicular .....      | 168 |
| Tangent .....            | 168 |
| Median .....             | 168 |
| Altitude .....           | 168 |
| Bisector .....           | 169 |
| Polygon .....            | 169 |
| Triangle .....           | 169 |
| Isosceles Triangle ..... | 169 |
| Right Triangle .....     | 169 |
| Quadrilateral .....      | 169 |
| Parallelogram .....      | 170 |
| Rhombus .....            | 170 |
| Rectangle .....          | 170 |
| Polygon .....            | 170 |
| Regular Polygon .....    | 171 |
| Square .....             | 171 |
| Curve .....              | 171 |
| Circle .....             | 171 |
| Circumcircle .....       | 171 |
| Excircle .....           | 171 |
| Incircle .....           | 172 |
| Ellipse .....            | 172 |
| Hyperbola .....          | 172 |
| Parabola .....           | 172 |
| Conic .....              | 173 |
| Locus .....              | 173 |
| Plot .....               | 173 |
| Function .....           | 173 |
| Parametric .....         | 173 |
| Polar .....              | 173 |
| Sequence .....           | 174 |
| Implicit .....           | 174 |
| Slopefield .....         | 174 |
| ODE .....                | 174 |

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| List .....                     | 174 |
| Slider .....                   | 175 |
| Transform .....                | 175 |
| Translation .....              | 175 |
| Reflection .....               | 175 |
| Rotation .....                 | 175 |
| Dilation .....                 | 175 |
| Similarity .....               | 176 |
| Projection .....               | 176 |
| Inversion .....                | 176 |
| Reciprocation .....            | 176 |
| Numeric view: Cmds menu .....  | 176 |
| Cartesian .....                | 176 |
| Abscissa .....                 | 176 |
| Ordinate .....                 | 177 |
| Coordinates .....              | 177 |
| Equation of .....              | 177 |
| Parametric .....               | 177 |
| Polar Coordinates .....        | 177 |
| Measure .....                  | 177 |
| Distance .....                 | 177 |
| Radius .....                   | 178 |
| Perimeter .....                | 178 |
| Slope .....                    | 178 |
| Area .....                     | 178 |
| Angle .....                    | 178 |
| Arc Length .....               | 179 |
| Tests .....                    | 179 |
| Collinear .....                | 179 |
| On circle .....                | 179 |
| On object .....                | 179 |
| Parallel .....                 | 179 |
| Perpendicular .....            | 180 |
| Isosceles .....                | 180 |
| Equilateral .....              | 180 |
| Parallelogram .....            | 180 |
| Conjugate .....                | 180 |
| Other Geometry functions ..... | 180 |
| affix .....                    | 180 |
| barycenter .....               | 181 |
| convexhull .....               | 181 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| distance2 .....                                | 181        |
| division_point .....                           | 181        |
| equilateral_triangle .....                     | 181        |
| exbisector .....                               | 182        |
| extract_measure .....                          | 182        |
| harmonic_conjugate .....                       | 182        |
| harmonic_division .....                        | 182        |
| isobarycenter .....                            | 183        |
| is_harmonic .....                              | 183        |
| is_harmonic_circle_bundle .....                | 183        |
| is_harmonic_line_bundle .....                  | 183        |
| is_orthogonal .....                            | 183        |
| is_rectangle .....                             | 183        |
| is_rhombus .....                               | 184        |
| is_square .....                                | 184        |
| LineHorz .....                                 | 184        |
| LineVert .....                                 | 184        |
| open_polygon .....                             | 184        |
| orthocenter .....                              | 184        |
| perpendicular bisector .....                   | 185        |
| point2d .....                                  | 185        |
| polar .....                                    | 185        |
| pole .....                                     | 185        |
| power_pc .....                                 | 185        |
| radical_axis .....                             | 186        |
| vector .....                                   | 186        |
| vertices .....                                 | 186        |
| vertices_abca .....                            | 186        |
| <b>10 Spreadsheet .....</b>                    | <b>187</b> |
| Getting started with the Spreadsheet app ..... | 187        |
| Basic operations .....                         | 192        |
| Navigation, selection, and gestures .....      | 192        |
| Cell references .....                          | 192        |
| Cell naming .....                              | 192        |
| Method 1 .....                                 | 192        |
| Method 2 .....                                 | 192        |
| Using names in calculations .....              | 192        |
| Entering content .....                         | 193        |
| Direct entry .....                             | 193        |
| Importing data .....                           | 194        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| External functions .....                           | 195        |
| Copy and paste .....                               | 196        |
| External references .....                          | 196        |
| Referencing variables .....                        | 197        |
| Using the CAS in spreadsheet calculations .....    | 197        |
| Buttons and keys .....                             | 198        |
| Formatting options .....                           | 199        |
| Format parameters .....                            | 200        |
| Spreadsheet functions .....                        | 201        |
| <b>11 Statistics 1Var app .....</b>                | <b>202</b> |
| Getting started with the Statistics 1Var app ..... | 202        |
| Symbolic view: menu items .....                    | 204        |
| Entering and editing statistical data .....        | 208        |
| Numeric view: menu items .....                     | 208        |
| Editing a data set .....                           | 208        |
| Deleting data .....                                | 209        |
| Inserting data .....                               | 209        |
| Generating data .....                              | 209        |
| Sorting data values .....                          | 209        |
| Computed statistics .....                          | 210        |
| Plotting .....                                     | 210        |
| Plotting statistical data .....                    | 211        |
| Plot types .....                                   | 211        |
| Histogram .....                                    | 211        |
| Box-and-whisker plot .....                         | 212        |
| Normal probability plot .....                      | 212        |
| Line plot .....                                    | 213        |
| Bar graph .....                                    | 213        |
| Pareto chart .....                                 | 213        |
| Setting up the plot .....                          | 214        |
| Exploring the graph .....                          | 214        |
| Plot view: menu items .....                        | 214        |
| <b>12 Statistics 2Var app .....</b>                | <b>215</b> |
| Getting started with the Statistics 2Var app ..... | 215        |
| Opening the Statistics 2Var app .....              | 215        |
| Entering data .....                                | 216        |
| Choosing data columns and fit .....                | 217        |
| Exploring statistics .....                         | 217        |
| Setting up the plot .....                          | 219        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Plotting the graph .....                      | 219        |
| Displaying the equation .....                 | 220        |
| Predicting values .....                       | 220        |
| Entering and editing statistical data .....   | 221        |
| Numeric view: menu items .....                | 222        |
| Editing a data set .....                      | 222        |
| Deleting data .....                           | 222        |
| Inserting data .....                          | 222        |
| Sorting data values .....                     | 222        |
| Defining a regression model .....             | 223        |
| Choosing a fit .....                          | 223        |
| Fit types .....                               | 223        |
| Defining your own fit .....                   | 224        |
| Computed statistics .....                     | 224        |
| Plotting statistical data .....               | 225        |
| Tracing a scatter plot .....                  | 226        |
| Tracing a curve .....                         | 226        |
| Tracing order .....                           | 226        |
| Plot view: menu items .....                   | 227        |
| Plot Setup view .....                         | 227        |
| Predicting values .....                       | 227        |
| Plot view .....                               | 228        |
| Home view .....                               | 228        |
| Troubleshooting a plot .....                  | 229        |
| <b>13 Inference app .....</b>                 | <b>230</b> |
| Sample data .....                             | 230        |
| Getting started with the Inference app .....  | 230        |
| Opening the Inference app .....               | 231        |
| Symbolic view options .....                   | 231        |
| Selecting the inference method .....          | 232        |
| Entering data .....                           | 233        |
| Displaying the test results .....             | 234        |
| Plotting the test results .....               | 235        |
| Importing statistics .....                    | 235        |
| Opening the Statistics 1Var app .....         | 235        |
| Clearing unwanted data .....                  | 236        |
| Entering data .....                           | 236        |
| Calculating the statistics .....              | 237        |
| Opening the Inference app .....               | 237        |
| Selecting the inference method and type ..... | 238        |



|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Importing the data .....             | 238 |
| Displaying results numerically ..... | 239 |
| Displaying results graphically ..... | 240 |
| Hypothesis tests .....               | 240 |
| One-Sample Z-Test .....              | 240 |
| Menu name .....                      | 240 |
| Inputs .....                         | 240 |
| Results .....                        | 241 |
| Two-Sample Z-Test .....              | 241 |
| Menu name .....                      | 241 |
| Inputs .....                         | 241 |
| Results .....                        | 242 |
| One-Proportion Z-Test .....          | 242 |
| Menu name .....                      | 242 |
| Inputs .....                         | 242 |
| Results .....                        | 243 |
| Two-Proportion Z-Test .....          | 243 |
| Menu name .....                      | 243 |
| Inputs .....                         | 243 |
| Results .....                        | 244 |
| One-Sample T-Test .....              | 244 |
| Menu name .....                      | 244 |
| Inputs .....                         | 244 |
| Results .....                        | 245 |
| Two-Sample T-Test .....              | 245 |
| Menu name .....                      | 245 |
| Inputs .....                         | 245 |
| Results .....                        | 246 |
| Confidence intervals .....           | 246 |
| One-Sample Z-Interval .....          | 246 |
| Menu name .....                      | 246 |
| Inputs .....                         | 246 |
| Results .....                        | 246 |
| Two-Sample Z-Interval .....          | 247 |
| Menu name .....                      | 247 |
| Inputs .....                         | 247 |
| Results .....                        | 247 |
| One-Proportion Z-Interval .....      | 248 |
| Menu name .....                      | 248 |
| Inputs .....                         | 248 |
| Results .....                        | 248 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Two-Proportion Z-Interval .....               | 248 |
| Menu name .....                               | 248 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 248 |
| Results .....                                 | 249 |
| One-Sample T-Interval .....                   | 249 |
| Menu name .....                               | 249 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 249 |
| Results .....                                 | 249 |
| Two-Sample T-Interval .....                   | 250 |
| Menu name .....                               | 250 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 250 |
| Results .....                                 | 250 |
| Chi-square tests .....                        | 251 |
| Goodness of fit test .....                    | 251 |
| Menu name .....                               | 251 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 251 |
| Results .....                                 | 251 |
| Menu keys .....                               | 251 |
| Two-way table test .....                      | 252 |
| Menu name .....                               | 252 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 252 |
| Results .....                                 | 252 |
| Menu keys .....                               | 252 |
| Inference for regression .....                | 253 |
| Linear t-test .....                           | 253 |
| Menu name .....                               | 253 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 253 |
| Results .....                                 | 254 |
| Menu keys .....                               | 254 |
| Confidence interval for slope .....           | 254 |
| Menu name .....                               | 254 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 254 |
| Results .....                                 | 255 |
| Menu keys .....                               | 255 |
| Confidence interval for intercept .....       | 255 |
| Menu name .....                               | 255 |
| Inputs .....                                  | 255 |
| Results .....                                 | 256 |
| Menu keys .....                               | 256 |
| Confidence interval for a mean response ..... | 256 |
| Menu name .....                               | 256 |

|  |                           |            |
|--|---------------------------|------------|
|  | Inputs .....              | 256        |
|  | Results .....             | 257        |
|  | Menu keys .....           | 257        |
|  | Prediction interval ..... | 257        |
|  | Menu name .....           | 257        |
|  | Inputs .....              | 257        |
|  | Results .....             | 258        |
|  | Menu keys .....           | 258        |
| <b>14 Solve app .....</b>                        |                           | <b>259</b> |
| Getting started with the Solve app .....         |                           | 259        |
| One equation .....                               |                           | 259        |
| Opening the Solve app .....                      |                           | 260        |
| Clearing the app and defining the equation ..... |                           | 260        |
| Entering known variables .....                   |                           | 261        |
| Solving for the unknown variable .....           |                           | 261        |
| Plotting the equation .....                      |                           | 262        |
| Several equations .....                          |                           | 263        |
| Opening the solve app .....                      |                           | 263        |
| Defining the equations .....                     |                           | 263        |
| Entering a seed value .....                      |                           | 264        |
| Solving the unknown variables .....              |                           | 264        |
| Limitations .....                                |                           | 265        |
| Solution information .....                       |                           | 265        |
| <b>15 Linear Solver app .....</b>                |                           | <b>266</b> |
| Getting started with the Linear Solver app ..... |                           | 266        |
| Opening the Linear Solver app .....              |                           | 266        |
| Defining and solving the equations .....         |                           | 267        |
| Solving a two-by-two system .....                |                           | 268        |
| Menu items .....                                 |                           | 268        |
| <b>16 Parametric app .....</b>                   |                           | <b>269</b> |
| Getting started with the Parametric app .....    |                           | 269        |
| Opening the Parametric app .....                 |                           | 269        |
| Defining the functions .....                     |                           | 270        |
| Setting the angle measure .....                  |                           | 270        |
| Setting up the plot .....                        |                           | 271        |
| Plotting the functions .....                     |                           | 272        |
| Exploring the graph .....                        |                           | 272        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Displaying the Numeric view .....                   | 273        |
| <b>17 Polar app .....</b>                           | <b>274</b> |
| Getting started with the Polar app .....            | 274        |
| Opening the Polar app .....                         | 274        |
| Defining the function .....                         | 274        |
| Setting the angle measure .....                     | 275        |
| Setting up the plot .....                           | 276        |
| Plotting the expression .....                       | 276        |
| Exploring the graph .....                           | 277        |
| Displaying the Numeric view .....                   | 277        |
| <b>18 Sequence app .....</b>                        | <b>279</b> |
| Getting started with the Sequence app .....         | 279        |
| Opening the Sequence app .....                      | 279        |
| Defining the expression .....                       | 280        |
| Setting up the plot .....                           | 280        |
| Plotting the sequence .....                         | 281        |
| Exploring the graph .....                           | 282        |
| Displaying Numeric view .....                       | 282        |
| Exploring the table of values .....                 | 283        |
| Setting up the table of values .....                | 283        |
| Another example: Explicitly defined sequences ..... | 284        |
| Defining the expression .....                       | 284        |
| Setting up the plot .....                           | 284        |
| Plotting the sequence .....                         | 285        |
| Exploring the table of values .....                 | 285        |
| <b>19 Finance app .....</b>                         | <b>286</b> |
| Getting started with the Finance app .....          | 286        |
| Cash flow diagrams .....                            | 288        |
| Time value of money (TVM) .....                     | 290        |
| Another example: TVM calculations .....             | 291        |
| Amortizations .....                                 | 292        |
| Calculating amortizations .....                     | 292        |
| Amortization for a home mortgage example .....      | 292        |
| Amortization graph .....                            | 293        |
| <b>20 Triangle Solver app .....</b>                 | <b>295</b> |
| Getting started with the Triangle Solver app .....  | 295        |

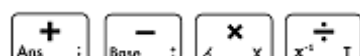





|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Opening the Triangle Solver app ..... | 295 |
| Setting the angle measure .....       | 296 |
| Specify the known values .....        | 296 |
| Solving for the unknown values .....  | 297 |
| Choosing triangle types .....         | 297 |
| Special cases .....                   | 298 |
| Indeterminate case .....              | 298 |
| No solution with given data .....     | 298 |
| Not enough data .....                 | 299 |

## 21 The Explorer apps ..... 300

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Linear Explorer app .....    | 300 |
| Open the app .....           | 300 |
| Graph mode .....             | 301 |
| Equation mode .....          | 301 |
| Test mode .....              | 302 |
| Quadratic Explorer app ..... | 302 |
| Open the app .....           | 303 |
| Graph mode .....             | 303 |
| Equation mode .....          | 304 |
| Test mode .....              | 304 |
| Trig Explorer app .....      | 305 |
| Open the app .....           | 305 |
| Graph mode .....             | 305 |
| Equation mode .....          | 306 |
| Test mode .....              | 307 |

## 22 Functions and commands ..... 308

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Keyboard functions ..... | 310 |
|--------------------------|-----|

|   |     |
|---|-----|
|        | 310 |
|        | 310 |
|  (ex)  | 310 |
|        | 310 |
|  (10x) | 311 |
|        | 311 |

|                                   |              |     |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|-----|
| <b>Shift</b> <b>SIN</b><br>ASIN G | (ASIN) ..... | 311 |
| <b>Shift</b> <b>COS</b><br>ACOS H | (ACOS) ..... | 311 |
| <b>Shift</b> <b>TAN</b><br>ATAN I | (ATAN) ..... | 311 |
| $x^2$<br>V L                      | .....        | 312 |
| <b>Shift</b> $x^2$<br>V L         | .....        | 312 |
| $x^y$<br>V F                      | .....        | 312 |
| <b>Shift</b> $x^y$<br>V F         | .....        | 312 |
| <b>Shift</b> $\div$<br>$x^{-1}$ T | .....        | 312 |
| $\pm/\mp$<br>M                    | .....        | 312 |
| <b>Shift</b> $\pm/\mp$ ( x )<br>M | .....        | 313 |
| $a \ b/c$<br>E                    | .....        | 313 |
| <b>Shift</b> $a \ b/c$<br>E       | .....        | 313 |
| <b>Shift</b> <b>2</b><br>i Z      | .....        | 313 |
| <b>Shift</b> <b>3</b><br>$\pi$ #  | .....        | 314 |
| Math menu .....                   | 314          |     |
| Numbers .....                     | 314          |     |
| Ceiling .....                     | 314          |     |
| Floor .....                       | 314          |     |
| IP .....                          | 314          |     |
| FP .....                          | 314          |     |
| Round .....                       | 315          |     |
| Truncate .....                    | 315          |     |
| Mantissa .....                    | 315          |     |
| Exponent .....                    | 315          |     |
| Arithmetic .....                  | 315          |     |
| Maximum .....                     | 315          |     |
| Minimum .....                     | 316          |     |
| Modulus .....                     | 316          |     |
| Find Root .....                   | 316          |     |

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Percentage .....               | 316 |
| Arithmetic – Complex .....     | 316 |
| Argument .....                 | 316 |
| Conjugate .....                | 317 |
| Real Part .....                | 317 |
| Imaginary Part .....           | 317 |
| Unit Vector .....              | 317 |
| Arithmetic – Exponential ..... | 317 |
| ALOG .....                     | 317 |
| EXPM1 .....                    | 317 |
| LNP1 .....                     | 317 |
| Trigonometry .....             | 318 |
| CSC .....                      | 318 |
| ACSC .....                     | 318 |
| SEC .....                      | 318 |
| ASEC .....                     | 318 |
| COT .....                      | 318 |
| ACOT .....                     | 318 |
| Hyperbolic .....               | 318 |
| SINH .....                     | 318 |
| ASINH .....                    | 318 |
| COSH .....                     | 319 |
| ACOSH .....                    | 319 |
| TANH .....                     | 319 |
| ATANH .....                    | 319 |
| Probability .....              | 320 |
| Factorial .....                | 320 |
| Combination .....              | 320 |
| Permutation .....              | 320 |
| Probability – Random .....     | 320 |
| Number .....                   | 320 |
| Integer .....                  | 320 |
| Normal .....                   | 321 |
| Seed .....                     | 321 |
| Probability – Density .....    | 321 |
| Normal .....                   | 321 |
| T .....                        | 321 |
| $\chi^2$ .....                 | 321 |
| F .....                        | 321 |
| Binomial .....                 | 322 |
| Poisson .....                  | 322 |

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Probability – Cumulative ..... | 322 |
| Normal .....                   | 322 |
| T .....                        | 322 |
| X <sup>2</sup> .....           | 322 |
| F .....                        | 323 |
| Binomial .....                 | 323 |
| Poisson .....                  | 323 |
| Probability – Inverse .....    | 323 |
| Normal .....                   | 323 |
| T .....                        | 323 |
| $\chi^2$ .....                 | 324 |
| F .....                        | 324 |
| Binomial .....                 | 324 |
| Poisson .....                  | 324 |
| List .....                     | 324 |
| Matrix .....                   | 324 |
| Special .....                  | 324 |
| Beta .....                     | 324 |
| Gamma .....                    | 325 |
| Psi .....                      | 325 |
| Zeta .....                     | 325 |
| erf .....                      | 325 |
| erfc .....                     | 325 |
| Ei .....                       | 325 |
| Si .....                       | 325 |
| Ci .....                       | 325 |
| CAS menu .....                 | 325 |
| Algebra .....                  | 326 |
| Simplify .....                 | 326 |
| Collect .....                  | 326 |
| Expand .....                   | 326 |
| Factor .....                   | 326 |
| Substitute .....               | 327 |
| Partial Fraction .....         | 327 |
| Algebra – Extract .....        | 327 |
| Numerator .....                | 327 |
| Denominator .....              | 327 |
| Left Side .....                | 327 |
| Right Side .....               | 327 |
| Calculus .....                 | 328 |
| Differentiate .....            | 328 |



|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Integrate .....                 | 328 |
| Limit .....                     | 328 |
| Series .....                    | 328 |
| Summation .....                 | 329 |
| Calculus – Differential .....   | 329 |
| Curl .....                      | 329 |
| Divergence .....                | 329 |
| Gradient .....                  | 329 |
| Hessian .....                   | 329 |
| Calculus – Integral .....       | 330 |
| By Parts u .....                | 330 |
| By Parts v .....                | 330 |
| $F(b)-F(a)$ .....               | 330 |
| Calculus – Limits .....         | 330 |
| Riemann Sum .....               | 330 |
| Taylor .....                    | 330 |
| Taylor of Quotient .....        | 331 |
| Calculus – Transform .....      | 331 |
| Laplace .....                   | 331 |
| Inverse Laplace .....           | 331 |
| FFT .....                       | 331 |
| Inverse FFT .....               | 331 |
| Solve .....                     | 332 |
| Solve .....                     | 332 |
| Zeros .....                     | 332 |
| Complex Solve .....             | 332 |
| Complex Zeros .....             | 332 |
| Numerical Solve .....           | 333 |
| Differential Equation .....     | 333 |
| ODE Solve .....                 | 333 |
| Linear System .....             | 333 |
| Rewrite .....                   | 333 |
| Incollect .....                 | 333 |
| powexpand .....                 | 333 |
| texexpand .....                 | 334 |
| Rewrite – Exp & Ln .....        | 334 |
| $ey*\ln x \rightarrow xy$ ..... | 334 |
| $xy \rightarrow ey*\ln x$ ..... | 334 |
| exp2trig .....                  | 334 |
| expexpand .....                 | 334 |
| Rewrite – Sine .....            | 335 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| $\text{asin}x \rightarrow \text{acos}x$ .....             | 335 |
| $\text{asin}x \rightarrow \text{atan}x$ .....             | 335 |
| $\text{sin}x \rightarrow \text{cos}x * \text{tan}x$ ..... | 335 |
| Rewrite – Cosine .....                                    | 335 |
| $\text{acos}x \rightarrow \text{asin}x$ .....             | 335 |
| $\text{acos}x \rightarrow \text{atan}x$ .....             | 335 |
| $\text{cos}x \rightarrow \text{sin}x / \text{tan}x$ ..... | 335 |
| Rewrite – Tangent .....                                   | 336 |
| $\text{atan}x \rightarrow \text{asin}x$ .....             | 336 |
| $\text{atan}x \rightarrow \text{acos}x$ .....             | 336 |
| $\text{half} \text{tan}$ .....                            | 336 |
| Rewrite – Trig .....                                      | 336 |
| $\text{trig}x \rightarrow \text{sin}x$ .....              | 336 |
| $\text{trig}x \rightarrow \text{cos}x$ .....              | 337 |
| $\text{trig}x \rightarrow \text{tan}x$ .....              | 337 |
| $\text{atrig}2\ln$ .....                                  | 337 |
| $\text{tlin}$ .....                                       | 337 |
| $\text{tcollect}$ .....                                   | 337 |
| $\text{trigexpand}$ .....                                 | 337 |
| $\text{trig}2\exp$ .....                                  | 338 |
| Integer .....   | 338 |
| Divisors .....  | 338 |
| Factors .....   | 338 |
| Factor List .....   | 338 |
| GCD .....   | 338 |
| LCM .....   | 339 |
| Integer – Prime .....                                     | 339 |
| Test if Prime .....                                       | 339 |
| Nth Prime .....   | 339 |
| Next Prime .....  | 339 |
| Previous Prime .....                                      | 339 |
| Euler .....   | 339 |
| Integer – Division .....                                  | 340 |
| Quotient .....  | 340 |
| Remainder .....   | 340 |
| $a \bmod p$ .....   | 340 |
| Chinese Remainder .....                                   | 340 |
| Polynomial .....  | 340 |
| Find Roots .....  | 340 |
| Coefficients .....  | 341 |
| Divisors .....  | 341 |

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Factor List .....               | 341 |
| GCD .....                       | 341 |
| LCM .....                       | 341 |
| Polynomial – Create .....       | 341 |
| Poly to Coef .....              | 341 |
| Coef to Poly .....              | 342 |
| Roots to Coef .....             | 342 |
| Roots to Poly .....             | 342 |
| Random .....                    | 342 |
| Minimum .....                   | 342 |
| Polynomial – Algebra .....      | 343 |
| Quotient .....                  | 343 |
| Remainder .....                 | 343 |
| Degree .....                    | 343 |
| Factor by Degree .....          | 343 |
| Coef. GCD .....                 | 343 |
| Zero Count .....                | 344 |
| Chinese Remainder .....         | 344 |
| Polynomial – Special .....      | 344 |
| Cyclotomic .....                | 344 |
| Groebner Basis .....            | 344 |
| Groebner Remainder .....        | 344 |
| Hermite .....                   | 345 |
| Lagrange .....                  | 345 |
| Laguerre .....                  | 345 |
| Legendre .....                  | 345 |
| Chebyshev Tn .....              | 345 |
| Chebyshev Un .....              | 345 |
| Plot .....                      | 346 |
| Function .....                  | 346 |
| Contour .....                   | 346 |
| App menu .....                  | 346 |
| Function app functions .....    | 347 |
| AREA .....                      | 347 |
| EXTREMUM .....                  | 347 |
| ISECT .....                     | 347 |
| ROOT .....                      | 347 |
| SLOPE .....                     | 347 |
| Solve app functions .....       | 348 |
| SOLVE .....                     | 348 |
| Spreadsheet app functions ..... | 348 |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| SUM .....                           | 349 |
| AVERAGE .....                       | 349 |
| AMORT .....                         | 349 |
| STAT1 .....                         | 350 |
| REGRS .....                         | 351 |
| predY .....                         | 352 |
| PredX .....                         | 353 |
| HypZ1mean .....                     | 353 |
| HYPZ2mean .....                     | 354 |
| HypZ1prop .....                     | 354 |
| HypZ2prop .....                     | 355 |
| HypT1mean .....                     | 356 |
| HypT2mean .....                     | 356 |
| ConfZ1mean .....                    | 357 |
| ConfZ2mean .....                    | 357 |
| ConfZ1prop .....                    | 358 |
| ConfZ2prop .....                    | 358 |
| ConfT1mean .....                    | 358 |
| ConfT2mean .....                    | 359 |
| Statistics 1Var app functions ..... | 359 |
| Do1VStats .....                     | 359 |
| SetFreq .....                       | 359 |
| SetSample .....                     | 360 |
| Statistics 2Var app functions ..... | 360 |
| PredX .....                         | 360 |
| PredY .....                         | 360 |
| Resid .....                         | 360 |
| Do2VStats .....                     | 360 |
| SetDepend .....                     | 361 |
| SetIndep .....                      | 361 |
| Inference app functions .....       | 361 |
| DoInference .....                   | 361 |
| HypZ1mean .....                     | 361 |
| HypZ2mean .....                     | 362 |
| HypZ1prop .....                     | 362 |
| HypZ2prop .....                     | 363 |
| HypT1mean .....                     | 363 |
| HypT2mean .....                     | 364 |
| ConfZ1mean .....                    | 364 |
| ConfZ2mean .....                    | 365 |
| ConfZ1prop .....                    | 365 |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| ConfZ2prop .....                    | 365 |
| ConfT1mean .....                    | 365 |
| ConfT2mean .....                    | 366 |
| Chi2GOF .....                       | 366 |
| Chi2TwoWay .....                    | 366 |
| LinRegrTConf- Slope .....           | 366 |
| LinRegrTConfInt .....               | 367 |
| LinRegrTMean-Resp .....             | 367 |
| LinRegrTPredInt .....               | 368 |
| LinRegrTTest .....                  | 368 |
| Finance app functions .....         | 369 |
| CalcFV .....                        | 369 |
| CalcIPYR .....                      | 369 |
| CalcNbPmt .....                     | 370 |
| CalcPMT .....                       | 370 |
| CalcPV .....                        | 370 |
| DoFinance .....                     | 370 |
| Linear Solver app functions .....   | 370 |
| Solve2x2 .....                      | 370 |
| Solve3x3 .....                      | 371 |
| LinSolve .....                      | 371 |
| Triangle Solver app functions ..... | 371 |
| AAS .....                           | 371 |
| ASA .....                           | 371 |
| SAS .....                           | 372 |
| SSA .....                           | 372 |
| SSS .....                           | 372 |
| DoSolve .....                       | 372 |
| Linear Explorer functions .....     | 372 |
| SolveForSlope .....                 | 372 |
| SolveForYIntercept .....            | 373 |
| Quadratic Explorer functions .....  | 373 |
| SOLVE .....                         | 373 |
| DELTA .....                         | 373 |
| Common app functions .....          | 373 |
| CHECK .....                         | 373 |
| UNCHECK .....                       | 374 |
| ISCHECK .....                       | 374 |
| Ctlg menu .....                     | 374 |
| ! .....                             | 375 |
| % .....                             | 375 |

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| %TOTAL .....           | 375 |
| ( .....                | 375 |
| * .....                | 375 |
| + .....                | 375 |
| — .....                | 376 |
| . * .....              | 376 |
| ./ .....               | 376 |
| . ^ .....              | 376 |
| := .....               | 376 |
| < .....                | 376 |
| <= .....               | 376 |
| <> .....               | 376 |
| = .....                | 377 |
| == .....               | 377 |
| > .....                | 377 |
| >= .....               | 377 |
| ^ .....                | 377 |
| a2q .....              | 377 |
| abcuv .....            | 377 |
| additionally .....     | 378 |
| algvar .....           | 378 |
| AND .....              | 378 |
| append .....           | 378 |
| apply .....            | 378 |
| assume .....           | 378 |
| basis .....            | 379 |
| bounded_function ..... | 379 |
| breakpoint .....       | 379 |
| canonical_form .....   | 379 |
| cat .....              | 379 |
| cFactor .....          | 379 |
| charpoly .....         | 379 |
| chrem .....            | 380 |
| col .....              | 380 |
| colDim .....           | 380 |
| comDenom .....         | 380 |
| companion .....        | 380 |
| compare .....          | 381 |
| complexroot .....      | 381 |
| contains .....         | 381 |
| CopyVar .....          | 381 |

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| correlation .....            | 381 |
| count .....                  | 382 |
| covariance .....             | 382 |
| covariance_correlation ..... | 382 |
| cpartfrac .....              | 382 |
| crationalroot .....          | 382 |
| cumSum .....                 | 383 |
| delcols .....                | 383 |
| delrows .....                | 383 |
| deltalist .....              | 383 |
| Dirac .....                  | 383 |
| e .....                      | 384 |
| egcd .....                   | 384 |
| eigenvals .....              | 384 |
| eigenvects .....             | 384 |
| eigVl .....                  | 384 |
| EVAL .....                   | 384 |
| evalc .....                  | 385 |
| evalf .....                  | 385 |
| even .....                   | 385 |
| exact .....                  | 385 |
| EXP .....                    | 385 |
| exponential_regression ..... | 385 |
| EXPR .....                   | 386 |
| ezgcd .....                  | 386 |
| f2nd .....                   | 386 |
| factorial .....              | 386 |
| float .....                  | 386 |
| fMax .....                   | 386 |
| fMin .....                   | 387 |
| format .....                 | 387 |
| fracmod .....                | 387 |
| froot .....                  | 387 |
| fsolve .....                 | 387 |
| function_diff .....          | 388 |
| gauss .....                  | 388 |
| GF .....                     | 388 |
| gramschmidt .....            | 388 |
| halftan2hypexp .....         | 388 |
| halt .....                   | 388 |
| hamdist .....                | 389 |

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| has .....                    | 389 |
| head .....                   | 389 |
| Heaviside .....              | 389 |
| hyp2exp .....                | 389 |
| iabcuv .....                 | 389 |
| ibasis .....                 | 390 |
| icontent .....               | 390 |
| id .....                     | 390 |
| identity .....               | 390 |
| iegcd .....                  | 390 |
| igcd .....                   | 390 |
| interval2center .....        | 391 |
| inv .....                    | 391 |
| iPart .....                  | 391 |
| iquorem .....                | 391 |
| jacobi_symbol .....          | 391 |
| ker .....                    | 391 |
| laplacian .....              | 392 |
| lcoeff .....                 | 392 |
| legendre_symbol .....        | 392 |
| length .....                 | 392 |
| lgcd .....                   | 392 |
| lin .....                    | 392 |
| linear_interpolate .....     | 393 |
| linear_regression .....      | 393 |
| list2mat .....               | 393 |
| lname .....                  | 393 |
| lexpand .....                | 393 |
| logarithmic_regression ..... | 394 |
| logb .....                   | 394 |
| logistic_regression .....    | 394 |
| lu .....                     | 394 |
| lvar .....                   | 394 |
| map .....                    | 395 |
| mat2list .....               | 395 |
| matpow .....                 | 395 |
| matrix .....                 | 395 |
| MAXREAL .....                | 395 |
| mean .....                   | 396 |
| median .....                 | 396 |
| member .....                 | 396 |



|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| MINREAL .....               | 396 |
| modgcd .....                | 396 |
| mRow .....                  | 396 |
| mult_c_conjugate .....      | 397 |
| mult_conjugate .....        | 397 |
| nDeriv .....                | 397 |
| NEG .....                   | 397 |
| normal .....                | 397 |
| normalize .....             | 398 |
| NOT .....                   | 398 |
| odd .....                   | 398 |
| OR .....                    | 398 |
| order_size .....            | 398 |
| pa2b2 .....                 | 398 |
| pade .....                  | 398 |
| peval .....                 | 399 |
| PI .....                    | 399 |
| PIECEWISE .....             | 399 |
| plotinequation .....        | 399 |
| polar_point .....           | 399 |
| pole .....                  | 400 |
| POLYCOEF .....              | 400 |
| POLYEVAL .....              | 400 |
| polygon .....               | 400 |
| polygonplot .....           | 400 |
| polygonscatterplot .....    | 400 |
| polynomial_regression ..... | 401 |
| POLYROOT .....              | 401 |
| potential .....             | 401 |
| power_regression .....      | 401 |
| powerpc .....               | 401 |
| prepend .....               | 402 |
| primpart .....              | 402 |
| product .....               | 402 |
| propfrac .....              | 402 |
| ptayl .....                 | 402 |
| purge .....                 | 402 |
| Q2a .....                   | 403 |
| quantile .....              | 403 |
| quartile1 .....             | 403 |
| quartile3 .....             | 403 |

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| quartiles .....              | 403 |
| quorem .....                 | 404 |
| QUOTE .....                  | 404 |
| randexp .....                | 404 |
| randperm .....               | 404 |
| randvector .....             | 404 |
| ranm .....                   | 404 |
| ratnormal .....              | 404 |
| rectangular_coordinate ..... | 405 |
| reduced_conic .....          | 405 |
| ref .....                    | 405 |
| remove .....                 | 405 |
| reorder .....                | 406 |
| residue .....                | 406 |
| restart .....                | 406 |
| resultant .....              | 406 |
| revlist .....                | 406 |
| romberg .....                | 406 |
| row .....                    | 406 |
| rowAdd .....                 | 407 |
| rowDim .....                 | 407 |
| rowSwap .....                | 407 |
| rsolve .....                 | 407 |
| select .....                 | 408 |
| seq .....                    | 408 |
| seqsolve .....               | 408 |
| shift_phase .....            | 408 |
| signature .....              | 408 |
| simult .....                 | 408 |
| sincos .....                 | 409 |
| spline .....                 | 409 |
| sqrfree .....                | 409 |
| sqrt .....                   | 409 |
| srand .....                  | 409 |
| stddev .....                 | 410 |
| stddevp .....                | 410 |
| sto .....                    | 410 |
| sturmseq .....               | 410 |
| subMat .....                 | 410 |
| suppress .....               | 410 |
| surd .....                   | 411 |

|                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| sylvester .....                   | 411        |
| table .....                       | 411        |
| tail .....                        | 411        |
| tan2cossin2 .....                 | 411        |
| tan2sincos2 .....                 | 411        |
| transpose .....                   | 412        |
| trunc .....                       | 412        |
| tsimplify .....                   | 412        |
| type .....                        | 412        |
| unapply .....                     | 412        |
| union .....                       | 412        |
| UTPC .....                        | 413        |
| UTPF .....                        | 413        |
| UTPN .....                        | 413        |
| UTPT .....                        | 413        |
| valuation .....                   | 413        |
| variance .....                    | 414        |
| vpotential .....                  | 414        |
| when .....                        | 414        |
| XOR .....                         | 414        |
| zip .....                         | 414        |
| ztrans .....                      | 414        |
| .....                             | 415        |
| 2 .....                           | 415        |
| $\pi$ .....                       | 415        |
| $\partial$ .....                  | 415        |
| $\Sigma$ .....                    | 415        |
| - .....                           | 415        |
| $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$ .....        | 415        |
| $\int$ .....                      | 415        |
| $\neq$ .....                      | 415        |
| $\leq$ .....                      | 415        |
| $\geq$ .....                      | 416        |
| ► .....                           | 416        |
| i .....                           | 416        |
| -1 .....                          | 416        |
| Creating your own functions ..... | 416        |
| <b>23 Variables .....</b>         | <b>418</b> |
| Working with variables .....      | 418        |
| Working with Home variables ..... | 418        |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Working with user variables .....     | 419 |
| Working with app variables .....      | 420 |
| More about the Vars menu .....        | 420 |
| Qualifying variables .....            | 421 |
| Home variables .....                  | 422 |
| App variables .....                   | 423 |
| Function app variables .....          | 423 |
| Results variables .....               | 424 |
| Extremum .....                        | 424 |
| Isect .....                           | 424 |
| Root .....                            | 424 |
| SignedArea .....                      | 424 |
| Slope .....                           | 424 |
| Geometry app variables .....          | 424 |
| Spreadsheet app variables .....       | 425 |
| Solve app variables .....             | 425 |
| Advanced Graphing app variables ..... | 426 |
| Statistics 1Var app variables .....   | 426 |
| Results .....                         | 427 |
| NbItem .....                          | 427 |
| MinVal .....                          | 427 |
| Q1 .....                              | 427 |
| MedVal .....                          | 427 |
| Q3 .....                              | 427 |
| MaxVal .....                          | 427 |
| $\Sigma X$ .....                      | 427 |
| $\Sigma X^2$ .....                    | 427 |
| MeanX .....                           | 428 |
| sX .....                              | 428 |
| $\sigma X$ .....                      | 428 |
| serrX .....                           | 428 |
| Statistics 2Var app variables .....   | 428 |
| Results .....                         | 429 |
| NbItem .....                          | 429 |
| Corr .....                            | 429 |
| CoefDet .....                         | 429 |
| sCov .....                            | 429 |
| $\sigma Cov$ .....                    | 429 |
| $\Sigma XY$ .....                     | 429 |
| MeanX .....                           | 429 |
| $\Sigma X$ .....                      | 429 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| $\Sigma X^2$ .....                     | 429 |
| $sX$ .....                             | 429 |
| $\sigma X$ .....                       | 429 |
| $serrX$ .....                          | 430 |
| MeanY .....                            | 430 |
| $\Sigma Y$ .....                       | 430 |
| $\Sigma Y^2$ .....                     | 430 |
| $sY$ .....                             | 430 |
| $\sigma Y$ .....                       | 430 |
| $serrY$ .....                          | 430 |
| Inference app variables .....          | 430 |
| Results .....                          | 431 |
| CoefDet .....                          | 431 |
| ContribList .....                      | 431 |
| ContribMat .....                       | 431 |
| Corr .....                             | 431 |
| CritScore .....                        | 431 |
| CritVal1 .....                         | 431 |
| CritVal2 .....                         | 431 |
| DF .....                               | 431 |
| ExpList .....                          | 432 |
| ExpMat .....                           | 432 |
| Inter .....                            | 432 |
| Prob .....                             | 432 |
| Result .....                           | 432 |
| serrInter .....                        | 432 |
| serrLine .....                         | 432 |
| serrSlope .....                        | 432 |
| serrY .....                            | 432 |
| Slope .....                            | 432 |
| TestScore .....                        | 432 |
| TestValue .....                        | 432 |
| Yval .....                             | 432 |
| Parametric app variables .....         | 433 |
| Polar app variables .....              | 433 |
| Finance app variables .....            | 434 |
| Linear Solver app variables .....      | 434 |
| Triangle Solver app variables .....    | 434 |
| Linear Explorer app variables .....    | 435 |
| Quadratic Explorer app variables ..... | 435 |
| Trig Explorer app variables .....      | 435 |

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Sequence app variables ..... | 435 |
|------------------------------|-----|

## 24 Units and constants ..... 437

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Units .....              | 437 |
| Unit categories .....    | 437 |
| Prefixes .....           | 438 |
| Unit calculations .....  | 438 |
| Unit tools .....         | 441 |
| Convert .....            | 441 |
| MKSA .....               | 442 |
| UFACTOR .....            | 442 |
| USIMPLIFY .....          | 442 |
| Physical constants ..... | 442 |
| List of constants .....  | 444 |

## 25 Lists ..... 446

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Create a list in the List Catalog ..... | 446 |
| The List Editor .....                   | 448 |
| List Editor: Buttons and keys .....     | 448 |
| To edit a list .....                    | 448 |
| To insert an element in a list .....    | 449 |
| Deleting lists .....                    | 450 |
| To delete a list .....                  | 450 |
| To delete all lists .....               | 450 |
| Lists in Home view .....                | 450 |
| To create a list .....                  | 451 |
| To store a list .....                   | 451 |
| To display a list .....                 | 452 |
| To display one element .....            | 452 |
| To store one element .....              | 452 |
| List references .....                   | 452 |
| To send a list .....                    | 452 |
| List functions .....                    | 452 |
| Menu format .....                       | 453 |
| Difference .....                        | 453 |
| Intersect .....                         | 453 |
| Make List .....                         | 453 |
| Sort .....                              | 454 |
| Reverse .....                           | 455 |
| Concatenate .....                       | 455 |
| Position .....                          | 455 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Size .....                                    | 455        |
| $\Delta$ LIST .....                           | 455        |
| $\Sigma$ LIST .....                           | 456        |
| $\pi$ LIST .....                              | 456        |
| Finding statistical values for lists .....    | 456        |
| <b>26 Matrices .....</b>                      | <b>459</b> |
| Creating and storing matrices .....           | 459        |
| Matrix Catalog: buttons and keys .....        | 460        |
| Working with matrices .....                   | 460        |
| To open the Matrix Editor .....               | 460        |
| Matrix Editor: Buttons and keys .....         | 460        |
| To create a matrix in the Matrix Editor ..... | 461        |
| Matrices in Home view .....                   | 461        |
| To store a matrix .....                       | 463        |
| To display a matrix .....                     | 464        |
| To display one element .....                  | 464        |
| To store one element .....                    | 464        |
| Matrix references .....                       | 465        |
| To send a matrix .....                        | 465        |
| Matrix arithmetic .....                       | 465        |
| To multiply and divide by a scalar .....      | 467        |
| To multiply two matrices .....                | 468        |
| To raise a matrix to a power .....            | 468        |
| To divide by a square matrix .....            | 469        |
| To invert a matrix .....                      | 469        |
| To negate each element .....                  | 469        |
| Solving systems of linear equations .....     | 470        |
| Matrix functions and commands .....           | 472        |
| Argument conventions .....                    | 473        |
| Matrix functions .....                        | 473        |
| Matrix .....                                  | 473        |
| Transpose .....                               | 473        |
| Determinant .....                             | 473        |
| RREF .....                                    | 474        |
| Create .....                                  | 474        |
| Make .....                                    | 474        |
| Identity .....                                | 474        |
| Random .....                                  | 474        |
| Jordan .....                                  | 474        |
| Hilbert .....                                 | 475        |

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Isometric .....                | 475 |
| Vandermonde .....              | 475 |
| Basic .....                    | 475 |
| Norm .....                     | 475 |
| Row Norm .....                 | 476 |
| Column Norm .....              | 476 |
| Spectral Norm .....            | 476 |
| Spectral Radius .....          | 476 |
| Condition .....                | 476 |
| Rank .....                     | 477 |
| Pivot .....                    | 477 |
| Trace .....                    | 477 |
| Advanced .....                 | 477 |
| Eigenvalues .....              | 477 |
| Eigenvectors .....             | 477 |
| Jordan .....                   | 478 |
| Diagonal .....                 | 478 |
| Cholesky .....                 | 478 |
| Hermite .....                  | 478 |
| Hessenberg .....               | 479 |
| Smith .....                    | 479 |
| Factorize .....                | 479 |
| LQ .....                       | 479 |
| LSQ .....                      | 479 |
| LU .....                       | 479 |
| QR .....                       | 480 |
| SCHUR .....                    | 480 |
| SVD .....                      | 480 |
| SVL .....                      | 480 |
| Vector .....                   | 481 |
| Cross Product .....            | 481 |
| Dot Product .....              | 481 |
| L2Norm .....                   | 481 |
| L1Norm .....                   | 481 |
| Max Norm .....                 | 481 |
| Examples .....                 | 481 |
| Identity Matrix .....          | 481 |
| Transposing a Matrix .....     | 482 |
| Reduced-Row Echelon Form ..... | 483 |



|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| <b>27 Notes and Info .....</b>                    | <b>485</b>     |
| The Note Catalog .....                            | 485            |
| Note Catalog: button and keys .....               | 485            |
| The Note Editor .....                             | 486            |
| To create a note from the Notes catalog .....     | 486            |
| To create a note for an app .....                 | 487            |
| Note Editor: buttons and keys .....               | 487            |
| Entering uppercase and lowercase characters ..... | 488            |
| Text formatting .....                             | 489            |
| Formatting options .....                          | 489            |
| Inserting mathematical expressions .....          | 490            |
| To import a note .....                            | 491            |
| <br><b>28 Programming in HP PPL .....</b>         | <br><b>492</b> |
| The Program Catalog .....                         | 493            |
| Open the Program Catalog .....                    | 493            |
| Program Catalog: buttons and keys .....           | 494            |
| Creating a new program .....                      | 494            |
| The Program Editor .....                          | 496            |
| Program Editor: buttons and keys .....            | 496            |
| Run a Program .....                               | 500            |
| Multi-function programs .....                     | 502            |
| Debug a Program .....                             | 502            |
| Edit a Program .....                              | 503            |
| Copy a program or part of a program .....         | 504            |
| Delete a program .....                            | 505            |
| Delete all programs .....                         | 505            |
| Delete the contents of a program .....            | 506            |
| To share a program .....                          | 506            |
| The HP Prime programming language .....           | 506            |
| Variables and visibility .....                    | 506            |
| Qualifying the name of a variable .....           | 507            |
| Functions, their arguments, and parameters .....  | 508            |
| Program ROLLDIE .....                             | 508            |
| Program ROLLMANY .....                            | 508            |
| The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses .....  | 510            |
| User mode .....                                   | 510            |
| Reassigning keys .....                            | 511            |
| Key names .....                                   | 511            |
| App programs .....                                | 515            |
| Using dedicated program functions .....           | 515            |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Redefining the View menu .....      | 516 |
| Customizing an app .....            | 516 |
| Example .....                       | 516 |
| Program commands .....              | 521 |
| Commands under the Tmplt menu ..... | 522 |
| Block .....                         | 522 |
| BEGIN END .....                     | 522 |
| RETURN .....                        | 522 |
| KILL .....                          | 522 |
| Branch .....                        | 522 |
| IF THEN .....                       | 522 |
| IF THE ELSE .....                   | 522 |
| CASE .....                          | 522 |
| IFERR .....                         | 523 |
| IFERR ELSE .....                    | 523 |
| Loop .....                          | 523 |
| FOR .....                           | 523 |
| FOR STEP .....                      | 524 |
| FOR DOWN .....                      | 525 |
| FOR STEP DOWN .....                 | 525 |
| WHILE .....                         | 525 |
| REPEAT .....                        | 526 |
| BREAK .....                         | 526 |
| CONTINUE .....                      | 526 |
| Variable .....                      | 527 |
| LOCAL .....                         | 527 |
| EXPORT .....                        | 527 |
| Function .....                      | 527 |
| EXPORT .....                        | 527 |
| VIEW .....                          | 528 |
| KEY .....                           | 528 |
| Commands under the Cmds menu .....  | 528 |
| Strings .....                       | 528 |
| ASC .....                           | 528 |
| CHAR .....                          | 528 |
| DIM .....                           | 528 |
| STRING .....                        | 528 |
| INSTRING .....                      | 529 |
| LEFT .....                          | 530 |
| RIGHT .....                         | 530 |
| MID .....                           | 530 |

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| ROTATE .....               | 530 |
| STRINGFROMID .....         | 530 |
| REPLACE .....              | 530 |
| Drawing .....              | 531 |
| C→PX .....                 | 531 |
| DRAWMENU .....             | 531 |
| FREEZE .....               | 531 |
| PX→C .....                 | 531 |
| RGB .....                  | 531 |
| Pixels and Cartesian ..... | 532 |
| ARC_P, ARC .....           | 532 |
| BLIT_P, BLIT .....         | 532 |
| DIMGROB_P, DIMGROB .....   | 532 |
| FILLPOLY_P, FILLPOLY ..... | 533 |
| GETPIX_P, GETPIX .....     | 533 |
| GROBH_P, GROBH .....       | 533 |
| GROBW_P, GROB .....        | 533 |
| INVERT_P, INVERT .....     | 533 |
| LINE_P, LINE .....         | 534 |
| PIXOFF_P, PIXOFF .....     | 535 |
| PIXON_P, PIXON .....       | 535 |
| RECT_P, RECT .....         | 535 |
| SUBGROB_P, SUBGROB .....   | 536 |
| TEXTOUT_P, TEXTOUT .....   | 537 |
| TRIANGLE_P, TRIANGLE ..... | 538 |
| Matrix .....               | 539 |
| ADDCOL .....               | 539 |
| ADDROW .....               | 539 |
| DELCOL .....               | 540 |
| DELROW .....               | 540 |
| EDITMAT .....              | 540 |
| REDIM .....                | 540 |
| REPLACE .....              | 540 |
| SCALE .....                | 540 |
| SCALEADD .....             | 540 |
| SUB .....                  | 540 |
| SWAPCOL .....              | 540 |
| SWAPROW .....              | 541 |
| App Functions .....        | 541 |
| STARTAPP .....             | 541 |
| STARTVIEW .....            | 541 |

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| VIEW .....                   | 542 |
| Integer .....                | 542 |
| BITAND .....                 | 542 |
| BITNOT .....                 | 542 |
| BITOR .....                  | 542 |
| BITSL .....                  | 543 |
| BITSR .....                  | 543 |
| BITXOR .....                 | 543 |
| B→R .....                    | 543 |
| GETBASE .....                | 543 |
| GETBITS .....                | 543 |
| R→B .....                    | 544 |
| SETBITS .....                | 544 |
| SETBASE .....                | 544 |
| I/O .....                    | 544 |
| CHOOSE .....                 | 544 |
| EDITLIST .....               | 545 |
| EDITMAT .....                | 545 |
| GETKEY .....                 | 545 |
| INPUT .....                  | 546 |
| ISKEYDOWN .....              | 547 |
| MOUSE .....                  | 547 |
| MSGBOX .....                 | 547 |
| PRINT .....                  | 548 |
| WAIT .....                   | 549 |
| More .....                   | 549 |
| %CHANGE .....                | 549 |
| %TOTAL .....                 | 549 |
| CAS .....                    | 550 |
| EVALLIST .....               | 550 |
| EXECON .....                 | 550 |
| →HMS .....                   | 550 |
| HMS→ .....                   | 550 |
| ITERATE .....                | 551 |
| TICKS .....                  | 551 |
| TIME .....                   | 551 |
| TYPE .....                   | 551 |
| Variables and programs ..... | 551 |
| App variables .....          | 552 |

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| <b>29 Basic integer arithmetic .....</b>         | <b>575</b>     |
| The default base .....                           | 576            |
| Changing the default base .....                  | 577            |
| Examples of integer arithmetic .....             | 577            |
| Mixed-base arithmetic .....                      | 577            |
| Integer manipulation .....                       | 578            |
| Base functions .....                             | 579            |
| <br><b>30 Appendix A – Glossary .....</b>        | <br><b>580</b> |
| <br><b>31 Appendix B – Troubleshooting .....</b> | <br><b>582</b> |
| Calculator not responding .....                  | 582            |
| To reset .....                                   | 582            |
| If the calculator does not turn on .....         | 582            |
| Operating limits .....                           | 582            |
| Status messages .....                            | 582            |
| <br><b>Index .....</b>                           | <br><b>584</b> |





# 1 Preface





## Manual conventions

The following conventions are used in this manual to represent the keys that you press and the menu options that you choose to perform operations.





- A key that initiates an unshifted function is represented by an image of that key:

, , , and so on.

- A key combination that initiates a shifted function (or inserts a character) is represented by the appropriate shift key ( or ) followed by the key for that function or character:


  initiates the natural exponential function and   inserts the pound character (#).





The name of the shifted function may also be given in parentheses after the key combination:

  (Clear),   (Setup)

- A key pressed to insert a digit is represented by that digit:  
5, 7, 8, and so on.
- All fixed on-screen text—such as screen and field names—appear in bold:  
**CAS Settings**, **xstep**, **Decimal Mark**, and so on.
- A menu item selected by touching the screen is represented by an image of that item:

, , , and so on.

 **NOTE:** You must use your finger to select a menu item. Using a stylus or something similar will not select whatever is touched.

- Characters on the entry line, are set in a non-proportional font, as follows:  
Function, Polar, Parametric, Ans, and so on.
- Cursor keys are represented by , , , and . You use these keys to move from field to field on a screen, or from one option to another in a list of options.
- Error messages are enclosed in quotation marks:  
"Syntax Error"

---

## 2 Getting started

The HP Prime Graphing Calculator is an easy-to-use yet powerful graphing calculator designed for secondary mathematics education and beyond. It offers hundreds of functions and commands, and includes a computer algebra system (CAS) for symbolic calculations.

In addition to an extensive library of functions and commands, the calculator comes with a set of HP apps. An HP app is a special application designed to help you explore a particular branch of mathematics or to solve a problem of a particular type. For example, there is a HP app that will help you explore geometry and another to help you explore parametric equations. There are also apps to help you solve systems of linear equations and to solve time-value-of-money problems.

The HP Prime also has its own programming language you can use to explore and solve mathematical problems.

Functions, commands, apps, and programming are covered in detail later in this guide. In this chapter, the general features of the calculator are explained, along with common interactions and basic mathematical operations.

### Before starting

Charge the battery fully before using the calculator for the first time. To charge the battery, do one of the following:

- Connect the calculator to a computer by using the USB cable that came in the package with your HP Prime calculator. (The computer must be on for charging to occur.)
- Connect the calculator to a wall outlet using the HP-provided wall adapter.

When the calculator is on, a battery symbol appears in the title bar of the screen. Its appearance indicates the charge level of the battery. A discharged battery takes approximately 4 hours to fully charge.

---

#### **WARNING!**

##### **Battery warning**

- To reduce the risk of fire or burns, do not disassemble, crush, or puncture the battery; do not short the external contacts; and do not dispose of the battery in fire or water.
- To reduce potential safety risks, only use the battery provided with the calculator, a replacement battery provided by HP, or a compatible battery recommended by HP.
- Keep the battery away from children.
- If you encounter problems when charging the calculator, stop charging and contact HP immediately.


##### **Adapter warning**

- To reduce the risk of electric shock or damage to equipment, only plug the AC adapter into an AC outlet that is easily accessible at all times.
  - To reduce potential safety risks, only use the AC adapter provided with the calculator, a replacement AC adapter provided by HP, or an AC adapter purchased as an accessory from HP.
-




# On/off, cancel operations



## To turn on

Press  to turn on the calculator.

## To cancel

When the calculator is on, pressing the  key cancels the current operation. For example, it will clear whatever you have entered on the entry line. It will also close a menu and a screen.


## To turn off

Press   (Off) to turn the calculator off.

To save power, the calculator turns itself off after several minutes of inactivity. All stored and displayed information is saved.


## The Home View

Home view is the starting point for many calculations. Most mathematical functions are available in the Home view. Some additional functions are available in the computer algebra system (CAS). A history of your previous calculations is retained and you can reuse a previous calculation or its result.

To display Home view, press .

## The CAS View

CAS view enables you to perform symbolic calculations. It is largely identical to Home view—it even has its own history of past calculations—but the CAS view offers some additional functions.

To display CAS view, press .

## Protective cover






The calculator is provided with a slide cover to protect the display and keyboard. Remove the cover by grasping both sides of it and pulling down.

You can reverse the slide cover and slide it onto the back of the calculator. This will ensure that you do not displace the cover while you are using the calculator.





To prolong the life of the calculator, always place the cover over the display and keyboard when you are not using the calculator.

# The display

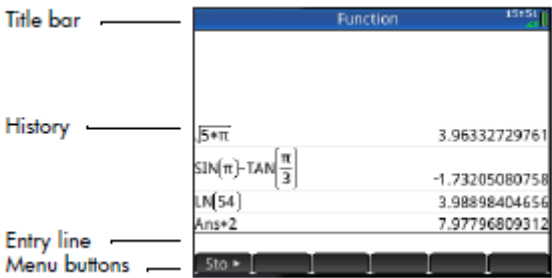
## Adjusting the brightness


To adjust the brightness of the display, press and hold , and then press the  or  key to increase or decrease the brightness. The brightness will change with each press of the  or  key.

## Clearing the display


- Press  or  to clear the entry line
- Press   (Clear) to clear the entry line and the history.



## Sections of the display



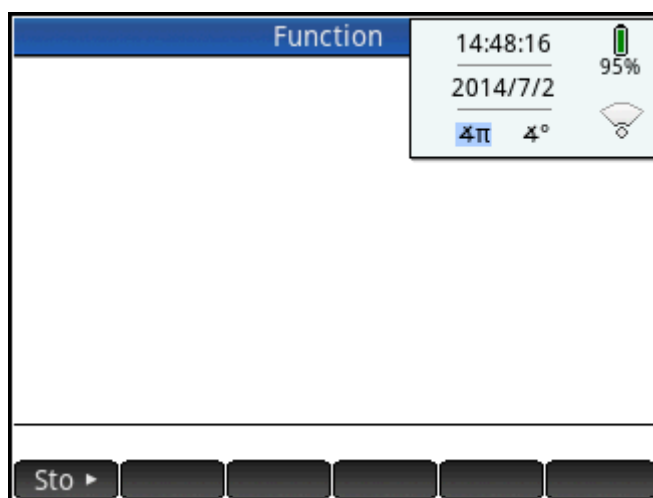
Home view has four sections (shown above). The title bar shows either the screen name or the name of the app you are currently using—**Function** in the example above. It also shows the time, a battery power indicator, and a number of symbols that indicate various calculator settings. These are explained below. The history displays a record of your past calculations. The entry line displays the object you are currently entering or modifying. The menu buttons are options that are relevant to the current display. Select an option by tapping the corresponding menu button. You close a menu, without making a selection from it, by pressing .

Annunciators are symbols or characters that appear in the title bar. They indicate current settings, and also provide time and battery power information.

| Annunciator    | Meaning   |
|----------------|---|
| $\angle^\circ$ | The angle mode setting is currently degrees.  |
| [Lime green]   |   |
| $\angle\pi$    | The angle mode setting is currently radians.  |
| [Lime green]   |   |
| <b>IS</b>      | The Shift key is active. The function shown in blue on a key will be activated when a key is pressed. Press  to cancel shift mode. |
| [Cyan]         |   |

| Annunciator  | Meaning   |
|--|---|
| <b>CAS</b> [White]   | You are working in CAS view, not Home view.   |
| <b>A...Z</b><br>[Orange]   | In Home View, this means the Alpha key is active. The character shown in orange on a key will be entered in uppercase when a key is pressed. See <a href="#">Shift keys on page 10</a> for more information.<br><br>In CAS view, this means the Alpha-Shift key combination is active. The character shown in orange on a key will be entered in uppercase when a key is pressed. See <a href="#">Shift keys on page 10</a> for more information. |
| <b>a...z</b><br>[Orange]   | In Home view, this means the Alpha-Shift key combination is active. The character shown in orange on a key will be entered in lowercase when a key is pressed. See <a href="#">Shift keys on page 10</a> for more information.<br><br>In CAS view, this means the Alpha key is active. The character shown in orange on a key will be entered in lowercase when a key is pressed. See <a href="#">Shift keys on page 10</a> for more information. |
| <b>⌵</b><br>[Yellow]   | The user keyboard is active. All the following key presses will enter the customized objects associated with the key. You can customize the user keyboard presses.  |
| <b>1U</b><br>[Yellow]  | The user keyboard is active. The next key press will enter the customized object associated with the key. You can customize the user keyboard presses.  |
| [Time]   | Displays the current time. The default is 24-hour format, but you can choose am-pm format. See <a href="#">Home settings on page 19</a> for more information.   |
| <br>[Green with gray border] | Indicates the battery charge.   |
|                             | Indicates wireless connectivity. This icon shows the status of a wireless connection to an HP Classroom Network.  |

## The Quick Settings menu





Tap the right side of the title bar (where the time, battery, and angle measure mode are shown) to open the Quick Settings menu. Actions you can take in this menu include the following:

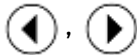
- Tap one of the angle icons to change the angle measure mode (radians or degrees).
- Tap the date/time to open a monthly calendar. You can navigate between months to find dates of interest.
- Tap the wireless icon to connect to the nearest HP Classroom Network or to disconnect from the current HP Classroom Network.


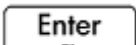
## Navigation


The HP Prime offers two modes of navigation: touch and keys. In many cases, you can tap on an icon, field, menu, or object to select (or deselect) it. For example, you can open the Function app by tapping once on its icon in the Application Library. However, to open the Application Library, you will need to press a key:



Instead of tapping an icon in the Application Library, you can also press the cursor keys— ,  ,



—until the app you want to open is highlighted, and then press  . In the Application Library, you can also type the first one or two letters of an app's name to highlight the app. Then either tap the app's icon or press  to open it.

Sometimes a touch or key–touch combination is available. For example, you can deselect a toggle option either by tapping twice on it, or by using the arrow keys to move to the field and then tapping a touch button along the bottom of the screen (in this case ).



**NOTE:** You must use your finger or a capacitive stylus to select an item by touch.

## Touch gestures

In addition to selection by tapping, there are other touch-related operations available to you.

To quickly move from page to page, flick:

- ▲ Place a finger on the screen and quickly swipe it in the desired direction (up or down).

To pan, drag your finger horizontally or vertically across the screen.

To quickly zoom in, make an open pinch:

- ▲ Place the thumb and a finger close together on the screen and move them apart. Only lift them from the screen when you reach the desired magnification.

To quickly zoom out, make a closed pinch:

- ▲ Place the thumb and a finger some distance apart on the screen and move them toward each other. Only lift them from the screen when you reach the desired magnification.

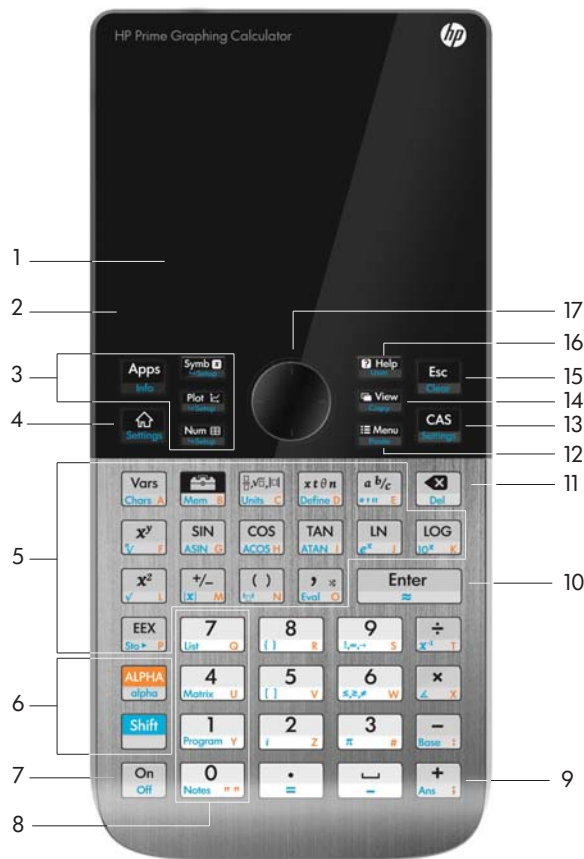


**NOTE:** Pinching to zoom only works in applications that feature zooming (such as where graphs are plotted). In other applications, pinching will do nothing, or do something other than zooming. For example, in the Spreadsheet app, pinching will change the width of a column or the height of a row.

## The keyboard

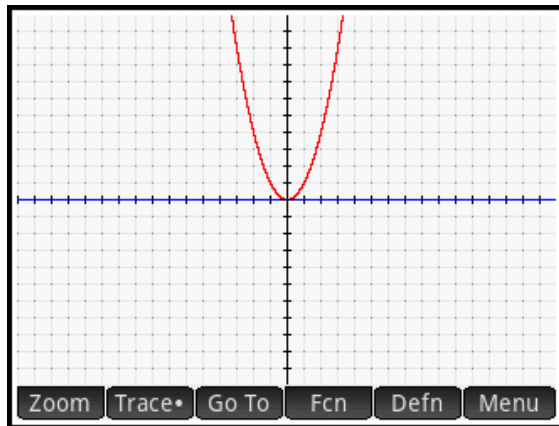
The numbers in the legend below refer to the parts of the keyboard described in the illustration on the next page.

| Number | Feature                                  |
|--------|--|
| 1      | LCD and touchscreen: 320 × 240 pixels    |
| 2      | Context-sensitive touch-button menu      |
| 3      | HP Apps keys                             |
| 4      | Home view and preference settings        |
| 5      | Common math and science functions        |
| 6      | Alpha and Shift keys                     |
| 7      | On, Cancel, and Off key                  |
| 8      | List, matrix, program, and note catalogs |
| 9      | Last Answer key (Ans)                    |
| 10     | Enter key                                |
| 11     | Backspace and Delete key                 |
| 12     | Menu (and Paste) key                     |
| 13     | CAS (and CAS preferences) key            |
| 14     | View (and Copy) key                      |
| 15     | Escape (and Clear) key                   |
| 16     | Help key                                 |
| 17     | Rocker wheel (for cursor movement)       |



## Context-sensitive menu

A context-sensitive menu occupies the bottom line of the screen.





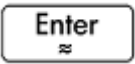



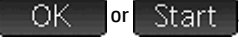






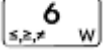

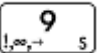























The options available depend on the context, that is, the view you are in. Note that the menu items are activated by touch.

There are two types of buttons on the context-sensitive menu:



- Menu button—tap to display a pop-up menu. These buttons have square corners along their top (such as **Zoom** in the illustration above).
- Command button—tap to initiate a command. These buttons have rounded corners (such as **Go To** in the illustration above).














## Entry and edit keys

| Keys  | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|  to   | Enter numbers.  |
|  or   | Cancels the current operation or clears the entry line.   |
|    | Enters an input or executes an operation. In calculations,  acts like “=”. When  is present as a menu key,  acts the same as pressing  .  |
|    | For entering a negative number. For example, to enter -25, press  25.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is not the same operation that is performed by the subtraction key (  ).   |
|    | Displays a palette of preformatted templates representing common arithmetic expressions.  |
|   | Enters the independent variable (that is, either X, T, $\theta$ , or N, depending on the app that is currently active).   |
|     | Displays a palette of comparison operators and Boolean operators.   |
|     | Displays a palette of common math and Greek characters.   |
|     | Automatically inserts the degree, minute, or second symbol according to the context.  |
|    | Deletes the character to the left of the cursor. It returns the highlighted field to its default value, if it has one.  |
|     | Deletes the character to the right of the cursor.   |
|   (Clear)   | Clears all data on the screen (including the history). On a settings screen—for example Plot Setup—returns all settings to their default values.  |
|     | Move the cursor around the display. Press   to move to the end of a menu or screen, or   to move to the start. These keys represent the directions of the rocker wheel. Diagonal movements are also supported by the rocker wheel. |
|     | Displays all the available characters. To enter a character, use the cursor keys to highlight it, and then tap  . To select multiple characters, select one, tap  , and continue likewise before pressing  . There are many pages of characters. You can jump to a   |



| Keys | Purpose  |
|------|--|
|      | particular Unicode block by tapping  and selecting the block. You can also flick from page to page. |










## Shift keys

There are two shift keys that you use to access the operations and characters printed on the bottom of the keys:  and .









| Key   | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|  | Press  to access the operations printed in blue on a key. For instance, to access the settings for Home view, press   .   |
|  | Press the  key to access the characters printed in orange on a key. For instance, to type Z in Home view, press  and then press  . For a lowercase letter, press   and then the letter. In CAS view,  and another key gives a lowercase letter, and   and another letter gives an uppercase letter. |



## Adding text

The text you can enter directly is shown by the orange characters on the keys. These characters can only be entered in conjunction with the  and  keys. Both uppercase and lowercase characters can be entered, and the method is exactly the opposite in CAS view than in Home view.


| Keys  | Effect in Home view  | Effect in CAS view   |
|---|--|--|
|    | Makes the next character uppercase.                                | Makes the next character lowercase.                                |
|     | Lock mode: makes all characters uppercase until the mode is reset. | Lock mode: makes all characters lowercase until the mode is reset. |
|    | With uppercase locked, makes the next character lowercase.         | With lowercase locked, makes the next character uppercase.         |
|     | Makes the next character lowercase.                                | Makes the next character uppercase.                                |
|    | Lock mode: makes all characters lowercase until the mode is reset. | Lock mode: makes all characters lowercase until the mode is reset. |










| Keys  | Effect in Home view  | Effect in CAS view   |
|---|--|--|
|    | With lowercase locked, makes the next character uppercase.                     | With uppercase locked, makes the next character lowercase.                     |
|     | With lowercase locked, makes all characters uppercase until the mode is reset. | With uppercase locked, makes all characters lowercase until the mode is reset. |
|    | Reset uppercase lock mode.   | Replace lowercase lock mode.   |
|     | Replace lowercase lock mode.   | Reset uppercase lock mode.   |

You can also enter text (and other characters) by displaying the characters palette:  .

## Math keys

The most common math functions have their own keys on the keyboard (or a key in combination with the  key).

**Example 1:** To calculate  $\sin(10)$ , press  10, and then press . The answer displayed is  $-0.544\dots$  (if your angle measure setting is radians).


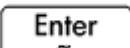
**Example 2:** To find the square root of 256, press   256 and press . The answer displayed is 16. Notice that the  key initiates the operator represented in blue on the next key pressed (in this case  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$  on the  key).

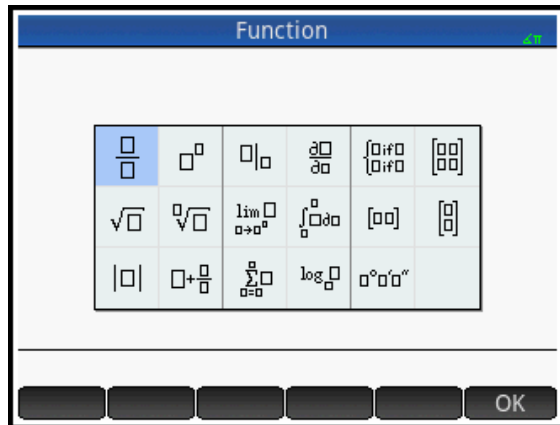
The mathematical functions not represented on the keyboard are on the **Math**, **CAS**, and **Catlg** menus.




**NOTE:** The order in which you enter operands and operators is determined by the entry mode. By default, the entry mode is *textbook*, which means that you enter operands and operators just as you would if you were writing the expression on paper. If your preferred entry mode is Reverse Polish Notation, the order of entry is different.

## Math template


The math template key (  ) helps you insert the framework for common calculations (and for vectors, matrices, and hexagesimal numbers). It displays a palette of preformatted outlines to which you add the constants, variables, and so on. Just tap on the template you want (or use the arrow keys to highlight it and press  ). Then enter the components needed to complete the calculation.



**Example:** Suppose you want to find the cube root of 945:


1. In Home view, press .

2. Select .

The skeleton or framework for your calculation now appears on the entry line: .

3. Each filled box on the template must be completed. Any hollow boxes are optional.

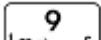
3  945

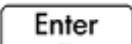
4. Press  to display the result: 9.813...

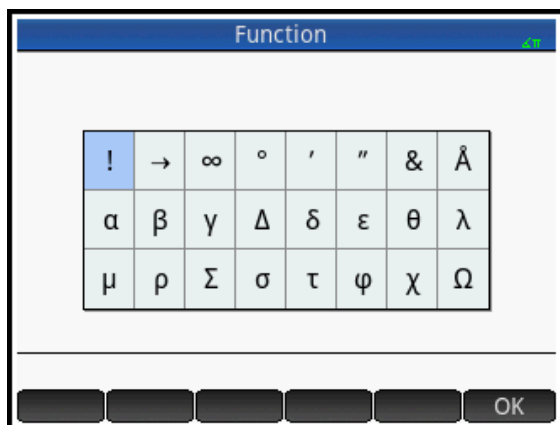
The template palette can save you a lot of time, especially with calculus calculations.

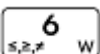
You can display the palette at any stage in defining an expression. In other words, you don't need to start out with a template. Rather, you can embed one or more templates at any point in the definition of an expression.

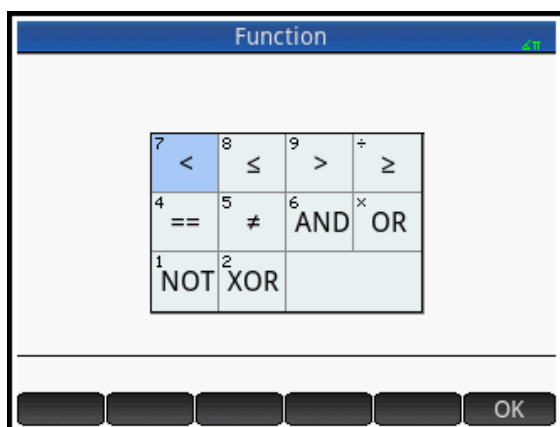
## Math shortcuts


As well as the math template, there are other similar screens that offer a palette of special characters. For example, pressing **Shift**  displays the special symbols palette, shown in the following figure.


Select a character by tapping it (or scrolling to it and pressing **Enter** ).



A similar palette—the relations palette—is displayed if you press **Shift** . The palette displays operators useful in math and programming. Again, just tap the character you want.



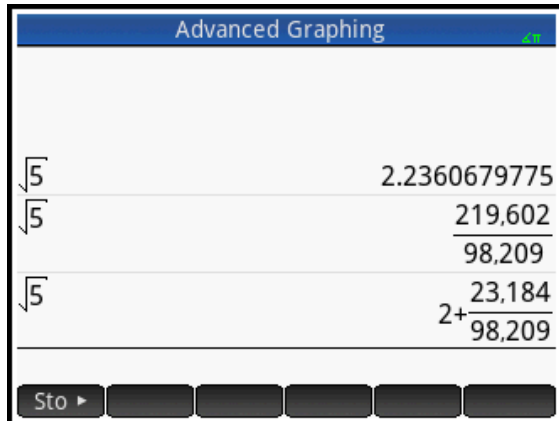
Other math shortcut keys include . Pressing this key inserts an X, T, θ, or N depending on what app you are using. (This is explained further in the chapters describing the apps.)

Similarly, pressing **Shift**  enters a degree, minute, or second character. It enters ° if no degree symbol is part of your expression; enters ' if the previous entry is a value in degrees; and enters " if the previous entry is a value in minutes.

Thus, entering 36 **Shift**  40 **Shift**  20 **Shift**  yields 36°40' 20 ". See [Hexagesimal numbers on page 14](#) for more information.

## Fractions

The fraction key ( $\frac{a}{b/c}$ ) cycles through three varieties of fractional display. If the current answer is the decimal fraction 5.25, pressing  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  converts the answer to the common fraction  $21/4$ . If you press  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  again, the answer is converted to a mixed number ( $5 + 1/4$ ). If pressed again, the display returns to the decimal fraction (5.25).



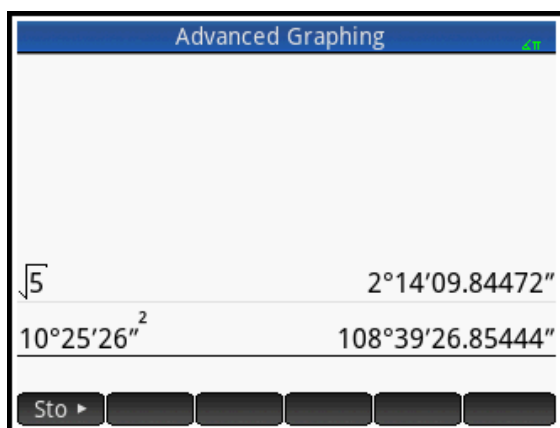
The HP Prime will approximate fraction and mixed number representations in cases where it cannot find exact ones. For example, enter  $\sqrt{5}$  to see the decimal approximation: 2.236.... Press  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  once to see  $\frac{219602}{98209}$  and again to see  $2 + \frac{23184}{98209}$ . Pressing  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  a third time will cycle back to the original decimal representation.

## Hexagesimal numbers

Any decimal result can be displayed in hexagesimal format; that is, in units subdivided into groups of 60. This includes degrees, minutes, and seconds as well as hours, minutes, and seconds. For example, enter  $\frac{11}{8}$  to see the decimal result: 1.375. Now press **Shift**  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  to see  $1^{\circ}22'30''$ . Press **Shift**  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  again to return to the decimal representation.

The HP Prime calculator will produce the best approximation in cases where an exact result is not possible.


Enter  $\sqrt{5}$  to see the decimal approximation: 2.236... Press **Shift**  $\frac{a}{b/c}$  to see  $2^{\circ}14'9.84472''$ .





**NOTE:** The degree and minute entries must be integers, and the minute and second entries must be positive. Decimals are not allowed, except in the seconds.

Note too that the HP Prime calculator treats a value in hexagesimal format as a single entity. Hence, any operation performed on a hexagesimal value is performed on the entire value. For example, if you enter  $10^{\circ}25'26''^2$ , the whole value is squared, not just the seconds component. The result in this case is  $108^{\circ}39'26.8544''$ .

## EEX key (powers of 10)

Numbers like  $5 \times 10^4$  and  $3.21 \times 10^{-7}$  are expressed in *scientific notation*, that is, in terms of powers of ten. This is simpler to work with than 50 000 or 0.000 000 321. To enter numbers like these, use the  functionality.

This is easier than using  10 .


**Example:** Suppose you want to calculate






$$\frac{(4 \times 10^{-13})(6 \times 10^{23})}{3 \times 10^{-5}}$$

1. Open the **Home Settings** window.

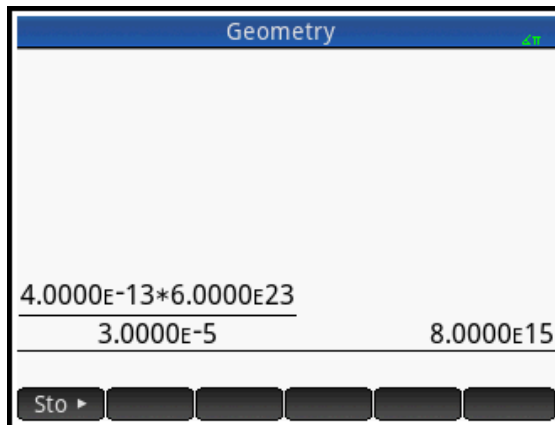


2. Select Scientific from the **Number Format** menu.

3. Return home by pressing .

4. Enter 4  13  6  23  3  5.

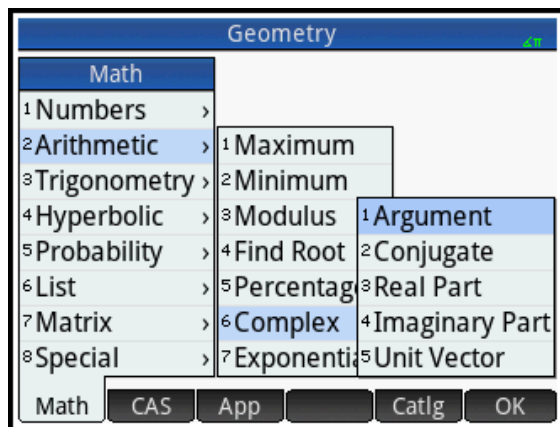
5. Press .



The result is 8.0000E15. This is equivalent to  $8 \times 10^{15}$ .


## Menus

A menu offers you a choice of items. As in the following example, some menus have sub-menus and sub-sub-menus.



### Selecting from a menu







There are two techniques for selecting an item from a menu, as follows:

- Direct tapping
- Using the arrow keys to highlight the item you want and then either tapping  or pressing





**NOTE:** The menu of buttons along the bottom of the screen can only be activated by tapping.


## Shortcuts

- Press  when you are at the top of the menu to immediately display the last item in the menu.
- Press  when you are at the bottom of the menu to immediately display the first item in the menu.
- Press   to jump straight to the bottom of the menu.
- Press   to jump straight to the top of the menu.
- Enter the first few characters of the item's name to jump straight to that item.
- Enter the number of the item shown in the menu to jump straight to that item.

## Closing a menu

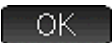



A menu will close automatically when you select an item from it. If you want to close a menu without selecting anything from it, press  or .

## Toolbox menus

The Toolbox menus (  ) are a collection of menus offering functions and commands useful in mathematics and programming. The Math, CAS, and Catlg menus offer over 400 functions and commands.

## Input forms




An input form is a screen that provides one or more fields for you to enter data or select an option. It is another name for a dialog box.

- If a field allows you to enter data of your choice, you can select it, add your data, and tap . (There is no need to tap  first.)
- If a field allows you to choose an item from a menu, you can tap on it (the field or the label for the field), tap on it again to display the options, and tap on the item you want. (You can also choose an item from an open list by pressing the cursor keys and pressing  when the option you want is highlighted.)
- If a field is a toggle field—one that is either selected or not selected—tap on it to select the field and tap on it again to select the alternate option. (Alternatively, select the field and tap .)

The following illustration shows an input form with all three types of field.

**Calculator Name** is a free-form data-entry field, **Font Size** provides a menu of options, and **Textbook Display** is a toggle field.

## Resetting input form fields

To reset a field to its default value, highlight the field and press . To reset all fields to their default values, press   (Clear).

## System-wide settings


System-wide settings are values that determine the appearance of windows, the format of numbers, the scale of plots, the units used by default in calculations, and much more.

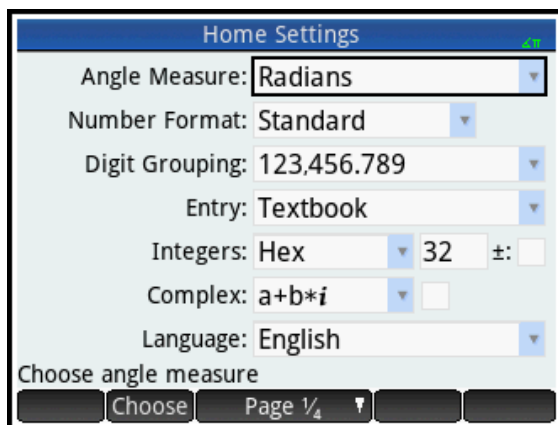
There are two system-wide settings: Home settings and CAS settings. Home settings control Home view and the apps. CAS settings control how calculations are done in the computer algebra system. CAS settings are discussed in chapter 3.

Although Home settings control the apps, you can override certain Home settings once inside an app. For example, you can set the angle measure to radians in the Home settings but choose degrees as the angle measure once inside the Polar app. Degrees then remains the angle measure until you open another app that has a different angle measure.



## Home settings

You use the Home Settings input form to specify the settings for Home view (and the default settings for the apps). Press **Shift**  (Settings) to open the Home Settings input form. There are four pages of settings.



### Page 1

| Setting       | Options  |
|---------------|--|
| Angle Measure | <p><b>Degrees</b>—360 degrees in a circle.</p> <p><b>Radians</b>—<math>2\pi</math> radians in a circle.</p> <p>The angle mode you set is the angle setting used in both Home view and the current app. This is to ensure that trigonometric calculations done in the current app and Home view give the same result.</p>   |
| Number Format | <p>The number format you set is the format used in all Home view calculations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Standard</b>—Full-precision display.</li> <li><b>Fixed</b>—Displays results rounded to a number of decimal places. If you choose this option, a new field appears for you to enter the number of decimal places. For example, 123.456789 becomes 123.46 in <b>Fixed 2</b> format.</li> <li><b>Scientific</b>—Displays results with an one-digit exponent to the left of the decimal point, and the specified number of decimal places. For example, 123.456789 becomes 1.23E2 in <b>Scientific 2</b> format.</li> <li><b>Engineering</b>—Displays results with an exponent that is a multiple of 3, and the specified number of significant digits beyond the first one. Example: 123.456E7 becomes 1.23E9 in <b>Engineering 2</b> format.</li> </ul> |
| Entry         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Textbook</b>—An expression is entered in much the same way as if you were writing it on paper (with some arguments above or below others). In other words, your entry could be two-dimensional.</li> <li><b>Algebraic</b>—An expression is entered on a single line. Your entry is always one-dimensional.</li> <li><b>RPN</b>—Reverse Polish Notation. The arguments of the expression are entered first followed by the operator. The entry of an operator automatically evaluates what has already been entered.</li> </ul>   |
| Integers      | <p>Sets the default base for integer arithmetic: binary, octal, decimal, or hex. You can also set the number of bits per integer and whether integers are to be signed.</p>  |

| Setting      | Options  |
|--------------|--|
| Complex      | Choose one of two formats for displaying complex numbers: <b>(a,b)</b> or <b>a+b*i</b> .<br><br>To the right of this field is an unnamed check box. Select it if you want to allow complex output from real input.   |
| Language     | Choose the language you want for menus, input forms, and the online help.  |
| Decimal Mark | Select <b>Dot</b> or <b>Comma</b> . Displays a number as 12456.98 (dot mode) or as 12456,98 (comma mode). Dot mode uses commas to separate elements in lists and matrices, and to separate function arguments. Comma mode uses semicolons as separators in these contexts. |

## Page 2

| Setting          | Options   |
|------------------|---|
| Font Size        | Choose between small, medium, and large font for general display.   |
| Calculator Name  | Enter a name for the calculator.  |
| Textbook Display | If selected, expressions and results are displayed in textbook format (that is, much as you would see in textbooks). If not selected, expressions and results are displayed in algebraic format (that is, in one-dimensional format). For example, $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 6 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is displayed as $[[4, 5], [6, 2]]$ in algebraic format. |
| Menu Display     | This setting determines whether the commands on the <b>Math</b> and <b>CAS</b> menus are presented descriptively or in common mathematical shorthand. The default is to provide the descriptive names for the functions. If you prefer the functions to be presented in mathematical shorthand, deselect this option.                                     |
| Time             | Set the time and choose a format: 24-hour or am–pm format. The check box at the far right lets you choose whether to show or hide the time on the title bar of screens.   |
| Date             | Set the date and choose a format: <b>YYYY/MM/DD</b> , <b>DD/MM/YYYY</b> , or <b>MM/DD/YYYY</b> .  |
| Color Theme      | <b>Light</b> —black text on a light background.<br><br><b>Dark</b> —white text on a dark background<br><br>At the far right is an option for you to choose a color for the shading (such as the color of the highlight).  |

## Page 3

Page 3 of the **Home Settings** input form is for setting Exam mode. This mode enables certain functions of the calculator to be disabled for a set period, with the disabling controlled by a password. This feature will primarily be of interest to those who supervise examinations and who need to ensure that the calculator is used appropriately by students sitting an examination.



## Page 4

If your HP Prime calculator supports wireless connectivity, you will see a fourth page of Home Settings. Page 4 of the **Home Settings** input form is for configuring your HP Prime calculator to work with the HP Prime Wireless Kit to establish an HP Wireless Classroom Network. Visit <http://www.hp.com/support> for further information.

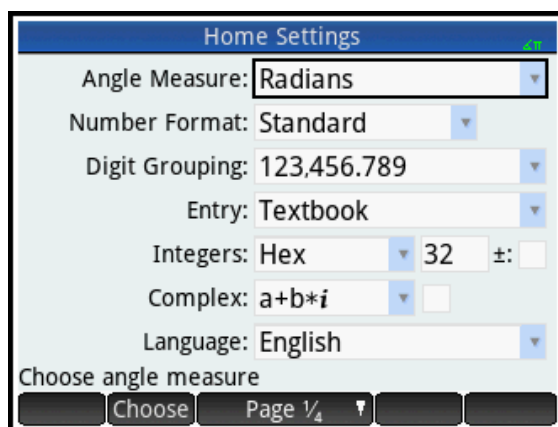
| Option       | Settings   |
|--------------|--|
| Network Name | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No network available</li><li>Network 1</li><li>Network 2 (and so on)</li></ul> |
| Status       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No adapter found</li><li>Disconnected</li><li>Connected</li></ul>              |
| RF Version   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No adapter found</li><li>Adapter firmware version</li></ul>                    |


## Specifying a Home setting

This example demonstrates how to change the number format from the default setting—Standard—to Scientific with two decimal places.

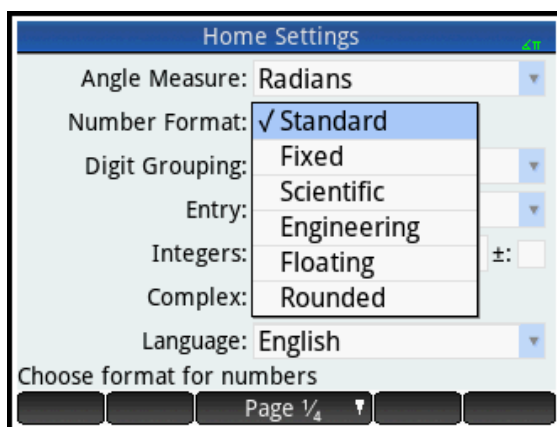
1. Press   (Settings) to open the Home Settings input form.


The **Angle Measure** field is highlighted.

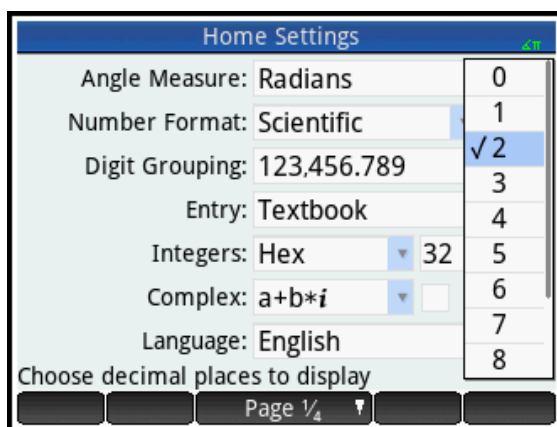


2. Tap **Number Format** (either the field label or the field). This selects the field. (You can also press  to select it.)

3. Tap **Number Format** again. A menu of number format options appears.



4. Tap **Scientific**. The option is chosen and the menu closes. (You can also choose an item by pressing the cursor keys and pressing  when the option you want is highlighted.)
5. Notice that a number appears to the right of the **Number Format** field. This is the number of decimal places currently set. To change the number to **2**, tap the current number twice, and then tap **2** in the menu that appears.




6. Press  to return to Home view.

## Mathematical calculations

The most commonly used math operations are available from the keyboard (see [Math keys on page 11](#)). Access to the rest of the math functions is via various menus (see [Menus on page 16](#)).

Note that the HP Prime represents all numbers smaller than  $1 \times 10^{-499}$  as zero. The largest number displayed is  $9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ . A greater result is displayed as this number.

## Where to start

The home base for the calculator is the Home view (  ). You can do all your nonsymbolic calculations here. You can also do calculations in CAS view, which uses the computer algebra system. In fact, you can use functions from the **CAS** menu (one of the Toolbox menus) in an expression you are entering in Home view,

and use functions from the **Math** menu (another of the Toolbox menus) in an expression you are entering in CAS view.

## Choosing an entry type

The first choice you need to make is the style of entry. The three types are as follows:

- Textbook

$$\frac{\ln(5)}{\pi}$$

An expression is entered in much the same way as if you were writing it on paper (with some arguments above or below others). In other words, your entry could be two-dimensional, as in the example above.


- Algebraic




$$\ln(5) / \pi$$


An expression is entered on a single line. Your entry is always one-dimensional.

- Reverse Polish Notation (RPN) [Not available in CAS view.]

The arguments of the expression are entered first followed by the operator. The entry of an operator automatically evaluates what has already been entered. Thus you will need to enter a two-operator expression (as in the example above) in two steps, one for each operator:


Step 1: 5  —the natural logarithm of 5 is calculated and displayed in history.

Step 2:    — $\pi$  is entered as a divisor and applied to the previous result.






 **NOTE:** On page 2 of the **Home Settings** screen, you can specify whether you want to display your calculations in **Textbook** format. This refers to the appearance of your calculations in the history section of both Home view and CAS view. This is a different setting from the **Entry** setting discussed above.

## Entering expressions

The examples that follow assume that the entry mode is **Textbook**.

- An expression can contain numbers, functions, and variables.
- To enter a function, press the appropriate key, or open a Toolbox menu and select the function. You can also enter a function by using the alpha keys to spell out its name.
- When you have finished entering the expression, press  to evaluate it.

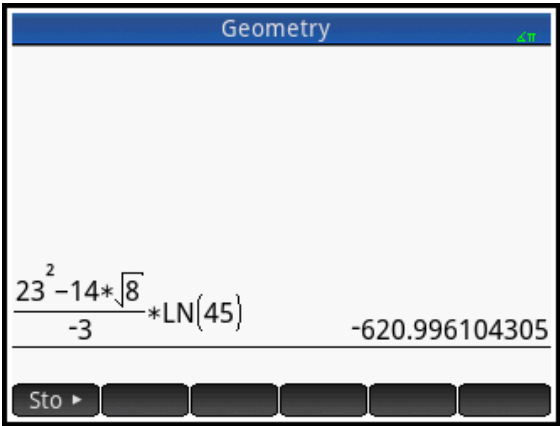
If you make a mistake while entering an expression, you can do any of the following:

- Delete the character to the left of the cursor by pressing .
- Delete the character to the right of the cursor by pressing  .
- Clear the entire entry line by pressing  or .

Example

To calculate  $\frac{23^2 - 14\sqrt{8}}{-3} \ln(45)$ :

▲ Enter ( ) 23 x² - 14 Shift x² 8 → → ÷ +/- 3 → LN 45  
Enter .



This example illustrates a number of important points to be aware of, as follows:








- The importance of delimiters (such as parentheses)
- How to enter negative numbers
- The use of implied versus explicit multiplication.

Parentheses

As the example above shows, parentheses are automatically added to enclose the arguments of functions, as in  $\ln()$ . However, you will need to manually add parentheses—by pressing  $()$ —to enclose a group of objects you want operated on as a single unit. Parentheses provide a way of avoiding arithmetic ambiguity. In the example above we wanted the entire numerator divided by  $-3$ , thus the entire numerator was enclosed in parentheses. Without the parentheses, only  $14\sqrt{8}$  would have been divided by  $-3$ .

The following examples show the use of parentheses, and the use of the cursor keys to move outside a group of objects enclosed within parentheses.

| Entering... | Calculates...    |
|-------------|------------------|
|             | $\sin(45 + \pi)$ |
|             | $\sin(45) + \pi$ |



| Entering...  | Calculates...        |
|--|----------------------|
|   85   9 | $\sqrt{85} \times 9$ |
|   85  9   | $\sqrt{85 \times 9}$ |

## Algebraic precedence

The HP Prime calculator calculates according to the following order of precedence. Functions at the same level of precedence are evaluated in order from left to right.



1. Expressions within parentheses. Nested parentheses are evaluated from inner to outer.
2.  $!$ ,  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$ , reciprocal, square
3.  $n^{\text{th}}$  root
4. Power,  $10^n$
5. Negation, multiplication, division, and modulo
6. Addition and subtraction
7. Relational operators ( $<$ ,  $>$ ,  $\leq$ ,  $\geq$ ,  $=$ ,  $\neq$ ,  $=$ )
8. AND and NOT
9. OR and XOR
10. Left argument of  $|$  (where)
11. Assign to variable ( $:=$ )

## Negative numbers

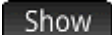


It is best to press  to start a negative number or to insert a negative sign. Pressing  instead will, in some situations, be interpreted as an operation to subtract the next number you enter from the last result. (This is explained in [Reusing the last result on page 26.](#))



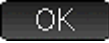
To raise a negative number to a power, enclose it in parentheses. For example,  $(-5)^2 = 25$ , whereas  $-5^2 = -25$ .

## Explicit and implied multiplication

Implied multiplication takes place when two operands appear with no operator between them. If you enter AB, for example, the result is  $A \times B$ . You can enter 14   8 without the multiplication operator after 14. For the sake of clarity, the calculator adds the operator to the expression in history, but it is not strictly necessary when you are entering the expression. You can, though, enter the operator if you wish. The result will be the same.

## Large results


If the result is too long or too tall to be seen in its entirety—for example, a many-rowed matrix—highlight it and then press . The result is displayed in full-screen view. You can now press  and  (as

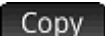
well as  and  to bring hidden parts of the result into view. Tap  to return to the previous view.


## Reusing previous expressions and results

Being able to retrieve and reuse an expression provides a quick way of repeating a calculation that requires only a few minor changes to its parameters. You can retrieve and reuse any expression that is in history. You can also retrieve and reuse any result that is in history.





To retrieve an expression and place it on the entry line for editing, do one of the following:

- Tap it twice.
- Use the cursor keys to highlight the expression and then either tap it or tap .

To retrieve a result and place it on the entry line, use the cursor keys to highlight it and then tap .

If the expression or result you want is not showing, press  repeatedly to step through the entries and reveal those that are not showing. You can also swipe the screen to quickly scroll through history.



**TIP:** Pressing   takes you straight to the very first entry in history, and pressing   takes you straight to the most recent entry.

## Using the clipboard

Your last four expressions are always copied to the clipboard and can easily be retrieved by pressing .





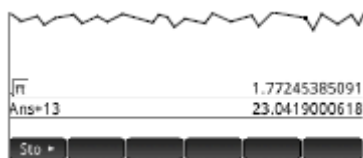
 . This opens the clipboard from where you can quickly choose the one you want.



**NOTE:** expressions and not results are available from the clipboard. Note too that the last four expressions remain on the clipboard even if you have cleared history.

## Reusing the last result

Press   (Ans) to retrieve your last answer for use in another calculation. Ans appears on the entry line. This is a shorthand for your last answer and it can be part of a new expression. You could now enter other components of a calculation—such as operators, number, variables, etc.—and create a new calculation.





**TIP:** You don't need to first select **Ans** before it can be part of a new calculation. If you press a binary operator key to begin a new calculation, **Ans** is automatically added to the entry line as the first component of the new calculation. For example, to multiply the last answer by 13, you could enter **Shift** **Ans** **×** 13 **Enter**.

But the first two keystrokes are unnecessary. All you need to enter is **×** 13 **Enter**.

The variable **Ans** is always stored with full precision whereas the results in history will only have the precision determined by the current Number Format setting (see [Page 1 on page 19](#)). In other words, when you retrieve the number assigned to **Ans**, you get the result to its full precision; but when you retrieve a number from history, you get exactly what was displayed.

You can repeat the previous calculation simply by pressing **Enter**. This can be useful if the previous calculation involved **Ans**. For example, suppose you want to calculate the  $n$ th root of 2 when  $n$  is 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and so on.

1. Calculate the square root of 2.

**Shift** **x<sup>2</sup>√** 2 **Enter**

2. Enter  $\sqrt{\text{Ans}}$ .

**Shift** **x<sup>2</sup>√** **Shift** **Ans** **+** **Enter**

This calculates the fourth root of 2.

3. Press **Enter** repeatedly. Each time you press, the root is twice the previous root. The last answer shown in the following illustration is  $\sqrt[32]{2}$ .

| Geometry            |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| $\sqrt{2}$          | 1.41421356237 |
| $\sqrt{\text{Ans}}$ | 1.189207115   |
|                     | 1.09050773266 |
|                     | 1.04427378242 |
|                     | 1.02189714865 |
| Sto ►               |               |

## Reusing an expression or result from the CAS

When you are working in Home view, you can retrieve an expression or result from the CAS by tapping



and selecting Get from CAS. The CAS opens. Press or until the item you want to retrieve is highlighted and press . The highlighted item is copied to the cursor point in Home view.

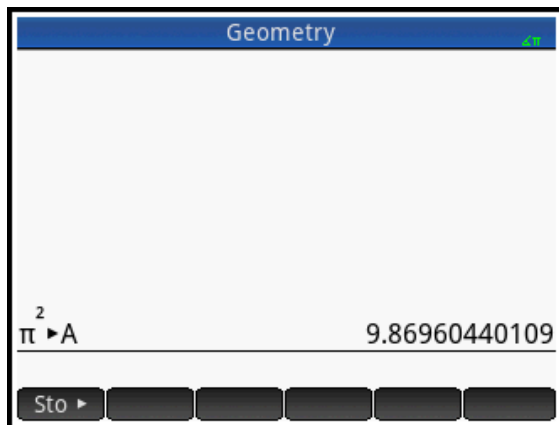
## Storing value in a variable

You can store a value in a variable (that is, assign a value to a variable). Then when you want to use that value in a calculation, you can refer to it by the variable's name. You can create your own variables, or you can take advantage of the built-in variables in Home view (named A to Z and  $\theta$ ) and in the CAS (named a to z, and a few others). CAS variables can be used in calculations in Home view, and Home variables can be used in calculations in the CAS. There are also built-in app variables and geometry variables. These can also be used in calculations.

**Example:** To assign  $\pi^2$  to the variable A:



Your stored value appears as shown in the following figure. If you then wanted to multiply your stored value by 5, you could enter:



You can also create your own variables in Home view. For example, suppose you wanted to create a variable called ME and assign  $\pi^2$  to it. You would enter:



A message appears asking if you want to create a variable called ME. Tap or press to confirm your intention. You can now use that variable in subsequent calculations: ME \* 3 will yield 29.6088132033, for example.

You can also create variables in CAS view in the same way. However, the built-in CAS variables must be entered in lowercase. However, the variables you create yourself can be uppercase or lowercase.

As well as built-in Home and CAS variables, and the variables you create yourself, each app has variables that you can access and use in calculations.

## Complex numbers

You can perform arithmetic operations using complex numbers. Complex numbers can be entered in the following forms, where  $x$  is the real part,  $y$  is the imaginary part, and  $i$  is the imaginary constant,  $\sqrt{-1}$ .

- $(x, y)$
- $x + yi$  (except in RPN mode)
- $x - yi$  (except in RPN mode)
- $x + iy$  (except in RPN mode)
- $x - iy$  (except in RPN mode)

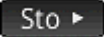

To enter  $i$ :

▲ Press    .

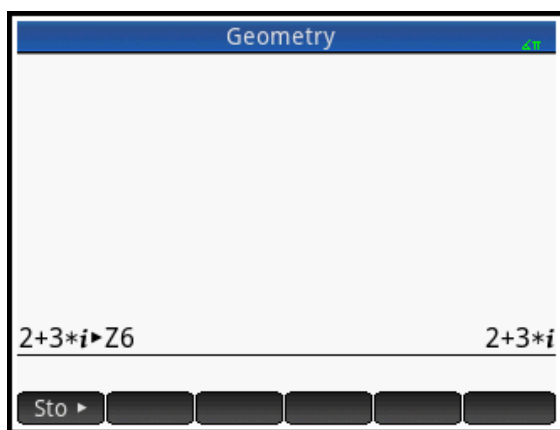
– or –

Press   .

There are 10 built-in variables available for storing complex numbers. These are labeled  $Z0$  to  $Z9$ . You can also assign a complex number to a variable you create yourself.

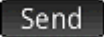
To store a complex number in a variable, enter the complex number, press  , enter the variable that you want to assign the complex number to, and then press  . For example, to store  $2 + 3i$  in variable  $Z6$ :

         .



## Sharing data

As well as giving you access to many types of mathematical calculations, the HP Prime calculator enables you to create various objects that can be saved and used over and over again. For example, you can create apps, lists, matrices, programs, and notes. You can also send these objects to other HP Prime calculators.

Whenever you encounter a screen with  as a menu item, you can select an item on that screen to send it to another HP Prime calculator.

You use one of the supplied USB cables to send objects from one HP Prime to another. This is the micro-A–micro B USB cable. Note that the connectors on the ends of the USB cable are slightly different. The micro-A connector has a rectangular end and the micro-B connector has a trapezoidal end. To share objects with another HP Prime, the micro-A connector must be inserted into the USB port on the sending calculator, with the micro-B connector inserted into the USB port on the receiving calculator.



## General procedure

The general procedure for sharing objects is as follows:

1. Navigate to the screen that lists the object you want to send.

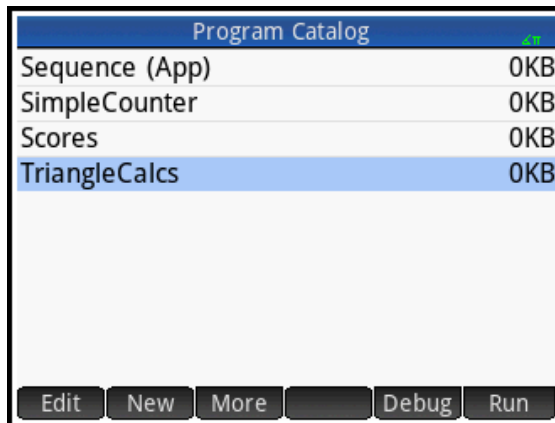
This will be the Application Library for apps, the List Catalog for lists, the Matrix Catalog for matrices, the Program Catalog for programs, and the Notes Catalog for notes.

2. Connect the USB cable between the two calculators.


The micro-A connector—with the rectangular end—must be inserted into the USB port on the sending calculator.



3. On the sending calculator, highlight the object you want to send and tap **Send**.


In the following illustration, a program named **TriangleCalcs** has been selected in the Program Catalog and will be sent to the connected calculator when **Send** is tapped.





## Online help

Press  to open the online help. The help initially provided is context-sensitive, that is, it is always about the current view and its menu items.

For example, to get help on the Function app, press , select Function, and press .

From within the help system, tapping  displays a hierarchical directory of all the help topics. You can navigate through the directory to other help topics, or use the search facility to quickly find a topic. You can find help on any key, view, or command.

If you type a command in Home view but do not remember its syntax, press  to see its syntax and help page. For example, typing `int (` in the command line and pressing  will display the help page for the integral command.

## 3 Reverse Polish Notation (RPN)

The HP Prime calculator provides you with three ways of entering objects in Home view, as follows:

- Textbook

An expression is entered in much the same way as if you were writing it on paper (with some arguments above or below others). In other words, your entry could be two-dimensional, as in the following example:

$$\frac{\ln(5)}{\pi}$$


- Algebraic





An expression is entered on a single line. Your entry is always one-dimensional. The same calculation as above would appear like this in algebraic entry mode:



$$\ln(5) / \pi$$

- Reverse Polish Notation (RPN)

The arguments of the expression are entered first followed by the operator. The entry of an operator automatically evaluates what has already been entered. Thus you will need to enter a two-operator expression (as in the example above) in two steps, one for each operator:







Step 1: 5  —the natural logarithm of 5 is calculated and displayed in history.

Step 2:     — $\pi$  is entered as a divisor and applied to the previous result.

You select your preferred entry method from page 1 of the **Home Settings** screen (   ). Select settings as normal.

RPN is available in Home view, but not in CAS view.

The same entry-line editing tools are available in RPN mode as in algebraic and textbook mode:

- Press  to delete the character to the left of the cursor.
- Press   to delete the character to the right of the cursor.
- Press  to clear the entire entry line.
- Press   to clear the entire entry line.

## History in RPN mode

The results of your calculations are kept in history. This history is displayed above the entry line (and by scrolling up to calculations that are no longer immediately visible). The calculator offers three histories: one for the CAS view and two for Home view. The two histories in Home view are:

- non-RPN—visible if you have chosen algebraic or textbook as your preferred entry technique
- RPN—visible only if you have chosen RPN as your preferred entry technique. The RPN history is also called the stack. As shown in the following illustration, each entry in the stack is given a number. This is the stack level number.

|    | Function      |
|----|---------------|
| 5: | 1.0471975512  |
| 4: | 542.187938089 |
| 3: | 23            |
| 2: | 6.90417590732 |
| 1: | 20.3715487875 |

As more calculations are added, an entry's stack level number increases.




If you switch from RPN to algebraic or textbook entry, your history is not lost. It is just not visible. If you switch back to RPN, your RPN history is redisplayed. Likewise, if you switch to RPN, your non-RPN history is not lost.

When you are not in RPN mode, your history is ordered chronologically: oldest calculations at the top, most recent at the bottom. In RPN mode, your history is ordered chronologically by default, but you can change the order of the items in history. (This is explained in [Manipulating the stack on page 35](#).)


## Reusing results

There are two ways to reuse a result in history. Method 1 deselects the copied result after copying; Method 2 keeps the copied item selected.

### Method 1

1. Select the result to be copied. You can do this by pressing  or  until the result is highlighted, or by tapping on it.
2. Press . The result is copied to the entry line and is deselected.

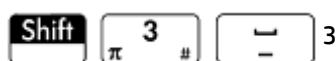
### Method 2


1. Select the result to be copied. You can do this by pressing the up arrow or the down arrow until the result is highlighted, or by tapping on it.
2. Tap  and select **ECHO**. The result is copied to the entry line and remains selected.

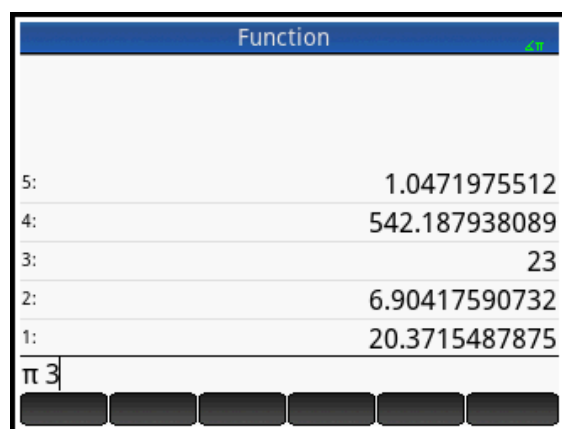
Note that while you can copy an item from the CAS history to use in a Home calculation (and copy an item from the Home history to use in a CAS calculation), you cannot copy items from or to the RPN history. You can, however, use CAS commands and functions when working in RPN mode.


## Sample calculations

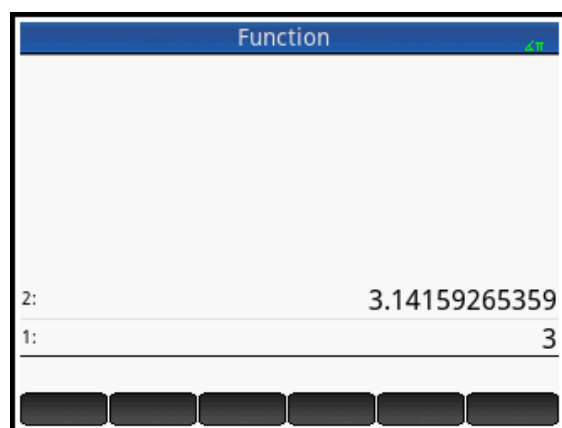
The general philosophy behind RPN is that arguments are placed before operators. The arguments can be on the entry line (each separated by a space) or they can be in history. For example, to multiply  $\pi$  by 3, you could enter the following on the entry line:




Then, enter the operator (  ). Thus, your entry line would look like this before entering the operator:





However, you could also have entered the arguments separately and then, with a blank entry line, entered the operator (  ). Your history would look like the following figure before entering the operator:



If there are no entries in history and you enter an operator or function, an error message appears. An error message will also appear if there is an entry on a stack level that an operator needs but it is not an appropriate argument for that operator. For example, pressing  when there is a string on level 1 displays an error message.



An operator or function will work only on the minimum number of arguments necessary to produce a result. Thus if you enter on the entry line 2 4 6 8 and press  , stack level 1 shows 48. Multiplication needs only two arguments, so the two arguments last entered are the ones that get multiplied. The entries 2 and 4 are not ignored: 2 is placed on stack level 3 and 4 on stack level 2.

Where a function can accept a variable number of arguments, you need to specify how many arguments you want it to include in its operation. You do this by specifying the number in parentheses straight after the function name. You then press  to evaluate the function. For example, suppose your stack looks like following:

| Spreadsheet |         |
|-------------|---------|
| 9:          | .2254   |
| 8:          | .2665   |
| 7:          | .25547  |
| 6:          | .25557  |
| 5:          | .25117  |
| 4:          | .25993  |
| 3:          | .25547  |
| 2:          | .255743 |
| 1:          | .25514  |

Suppose further that you want to determine the minimum of just the numbers on stack levels 1, 2, and 3. You choose the **MIN** function from the **MATH** menu and complete the entry as **MIN(3)**. When you press



, the minimum of just the last three items on the stack is displayed.


## Manipulating the stack

A number of stack-manipulation options are available. Most appear as menu items across the bottom the screen. To see these items, you must first select an item in history:

| Function |               |
|----------|---------------|
| 6:       | 867.5309      |
| 5:       | 1,492         |
| 4:       | 1,776         |
| 3:       | 1,791         |
| 2:       | 3.14159265359 |
| 1:       | 9.80665       |



Stack ROLL↑ ROLL↓ PICK Show

## PICK


Copies the selected item to stack level 1. The item below the one that is copied is then highlighted. Thus if you tapped  four times, four consecutive items will be moved to the bottom four stack levels (levels 1–4).

## ROLL


There are two roll commands:

- Tap  to move the selected item to stack level 1. This is similar to pick, but pick duplicates the item, with the duplicate being placed on stack level 1. However, roll does not duplicate an item. It simply moves it.
- Tap  to move the item on stack level 1 to the currently highlighted level.

## Swap

You can swap the position of the objects on stack level 1 with those on stack level 2. Just press . The level of other objects remains unchanged. Note that the entry line must not be active at the time, otherwise a comma will be entered.

## Stack

Tapping  displays further stack-manipulation tools.

## DROPN

Deletes all items in the stack from the highlighted item down to and including the item on stack level 1. Items above the highlighted item drop down to fill the levels of the deleted items.

If you just want to delete a single item from the stack, see [Delete an item on page 37](#).

## DUPN

Duplicates all items between (and including) the highlighted item and the item on stack level 1. If, for example, you have selected the item on stack level 3, selecting **DUPN** duplicates it and the two items below it, places them on stack levels 1 to 3, and moves the items that were duplicated up to stack levels 4 to 6.

## Echo

Places a copy of the selected result on the entry line and leaves the source result highlighted.

## →LIST

Creates a list of results, with the highlighted result the first element in the list and the item on stack level 1 the last.

**Figure 3-1** Before

| Function |   |
|----------|---|
| 8:       | 3 |
| 7:       | 4 |
| 6:       | 5 |
| 5:       | 1 |
| 4:       | 2 |
| 3:       | 7 |
| 2:       | 8 |
| 1:       | 9 |

Stack ROLL↑ ROLL↓ PICK Show

**Figure 3-2** After

| Function |              |
|----------|--------------|
| 5:       | 3            |
| 4:       | 4            |
| 3:       | 5            |
| 2:       | 1            |
| 1:       | {2, 7, 8, 9} |

Stack ROLL↑ ROLL↓ PICK Show


## Show an item

To show a result in full-screen textbook format, tap **Show**.



Tap **OK** to return to the history.

## Delete an item

To delete an item from the stack:

1. Select it. You can do this by pressing ▲ or ▼ until the item is highlighted, or by tapping on it.
2. Press  .

## Delete all items

To delete all items, thereby clearing the history, press   .


## 4 Computer algebra system (CAS)

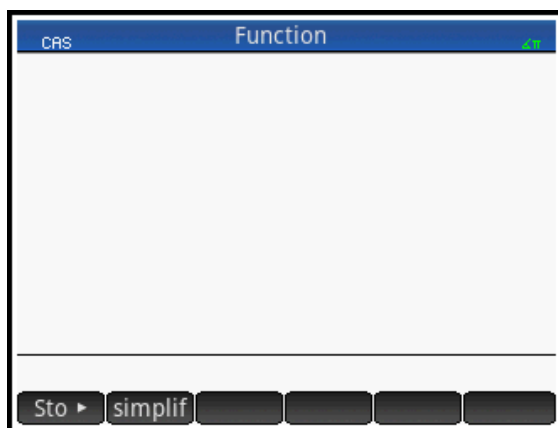
A computer algebra system (CAS) enables you to perform symbolic calculations. By default, CAS works in exact mode, giving you infinite precision. On the other hand, non-CAS calculations, such as those performed in HOME view or by an app, are numerical calculations and are often approximations limited by the precision of the calculator (to 12 significant digits in the case of the HP Prime). For example,  $1/3 + 2/7$  yields the approximate answer .619047619047 in Home view (with Standard numerical format), but yields the exact answer  $13/21$  in the CAS.

The CAS offers many hundreds of functions, covering algebra, calculus, equation solving, polynomials, and more. You select a function from the **CAS** menu, one of the Toolbox menus.

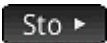


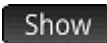
### CAS view

CAS calculations are done in CAS view. CAS view is almost identical to Home view. A history of calculations is built and you can select and copy previous calculations just as you can in Home view, as well as store objects in variables.

To open CAS view, press . **CAS** appears in red at the left of the title bar to indicate that you are in CAS view rather than Home view.






The menu buttons in CAS view are:

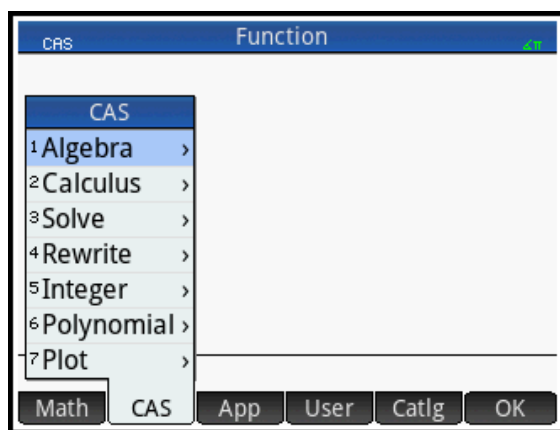
-  —assigns an object to a variable.
-  —applies common simplification rules to reduce an expression to its simplest form. For example,  $\text{simplify}(e^a + \ln(b \cdot e^c))$  yields  $b \cdot \text{EXP}(a) \cdot \text{EXP}(c)$ .
-  —copies a selected entry in history to the entry line.
-  —displays the selected entry in full-screen mode, with horizontal and vertical scrolling enabled. The entry is also presented in textbook format.

## CAS calculations

With one exception, you perform calculations in CAS view just as you do in Home view. (The exception is that there is no RPN entry mode in CAS view, just algebraic and textbook modes). All the operator and function keys work in the same way in CAS view as Home view (although all the alpha characters are lowercase rather than uppercase). But the primary difference is that the default display of answers is symbolic rather than numeric.

You can also use the template key (  ) to help you insert the framework for common calculations (and for vectors and matrices).

The most commonly used CAS functions are available from the CAS menu. To display the menu, press the  button. (If the CAS menu is not open by default, tap .) Other CAS commands are available from the Catlg menu (also a Toolbox menus).



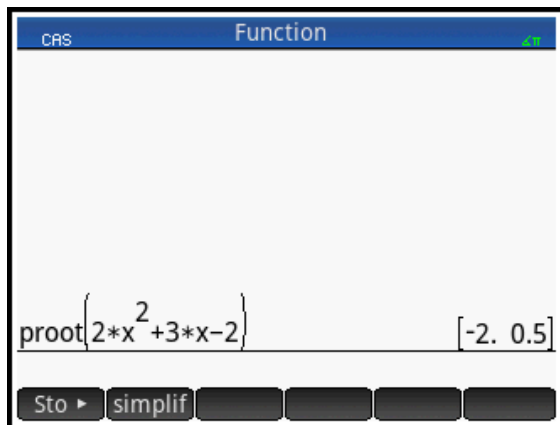
To choose a function, select a category and then a command.

## Example 1

To find the roots of  $2x^2 + 3x - 2$ :

1. With the CAS menu open, select **Polynomial**, and then select **Find Roots**.

The function `root()` appears on the entry line.



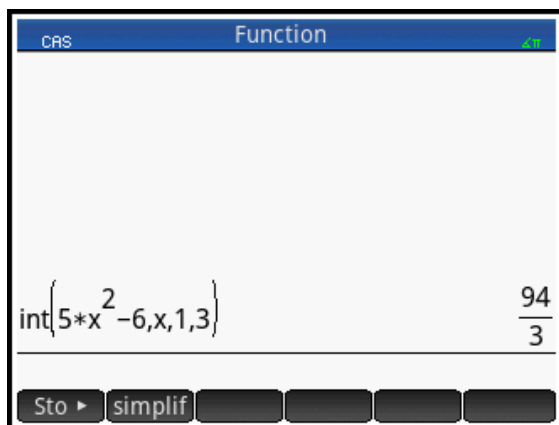
2. Between the parentheses, enter: 2    + 3   - 2.
3. Press  .











## Example 2

To find the area under the graph of  $5x^2 - 6$  between  $x = 1$  and  $x = 3$ :



1. With the CAS menu open, select **Calculus** and then **Integrate**.

The function `int()` appears on the entry line.

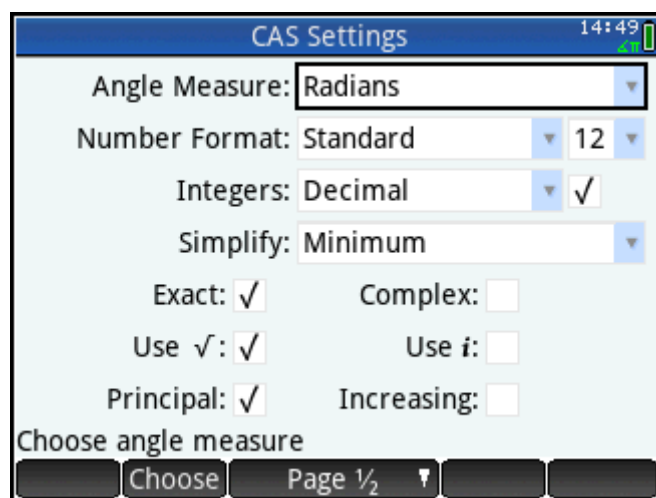


2. Between the parentheses, enter: 5     6       
 1  3.
3. Press .



## Settings

Various settings allow you to configure how the CAS works. To display the settings, press  .

The modes are spread across two pages.





| Setting                               | Purpose  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Angle Measure                         | Select the units for angle measurements: <b>Radians</b> or <b>Degrees</b> .  |
| Number Format (first drop-down list)  | Select the number format for displayed solutions: <b>Standard</b> or <b>Scientific</b> or <b>Engineering</b> .   |
| Number Format (second drop-down list) | Select the number of digits to display in approximate mode (mantissa + exponent).  |
| Integers (drop-down list)             | Select the integer base:<br><b>Decimal</b> (base 10)<br><b>Hex</b> (base 16)<br><b>Octal</b> (base 8)  |
| Integers (check box)                  | If checked, any real number equivalent to an integer in a non-CAS environment will be converted to an integer in the CAS. (Real numbers not equivalent to integers are treated as real numbers in CAS whether or not this option is selected.)   |
| Simplify                              | Select the level of automatic simplification:<br><b>None</b> —do not simplify automatically (use  for manual simplification)<br><b>Minimum</b> —do basic simplifications (default)<br><b>Maximum</b> —always try to simplify                               |
| Exact                                 | If checked, the calculator is in exact mode and solutions will be symbolic. If not checked, the calculator is in approximate mode and solutions will be approximate. For example, $26 \div 5$ yields $26/5$ in exact mode and 5.2 in approximate mode.  |
| Complex                               | Select this to allow complex results in variables.   |
| Use $\sqrt{\quad}$                    | If checked, second order polynomials are factorized in complex mode or in real mode if the discriminant is positive.   |
| Use $i$                               | If checked, the calculator is in complex mode and complex solutions will be displayed when they exist. If not checked, the calculator is in real mode and only real solutions will be displayed. For example, $\text{factors}(x^4-1)$ yields $(x-1), (x+1), (x+i), (x-i)$ in complex mode and $(x-1), (x+1), (x^2+1)$ in real mode.          |
| Principle                             | If checked, the principal solutions to trigonometric functions will be displayed. If not checked, the general solutions to trigonometric functions will be displayed.  |
| Increasing                            | If checked, polynomials will be displayed with increasing powers (for example, $-4+x+3x^2+x^3$ ). If not checked, polynomials will be displayed with decreasing powers (for example, $x^3+3x^2+x-4$ ).   |

| Setting               | Purpose   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Recursive Evaluation  | Specify the maximum number of embedded variables allowed in an interactive evaluation. See also Recursive Replacement.                    |
| Recursive Replacement | Specify the maximum number of embedded variables allowed in a single evaluation in a program. See also Recursive Evaluation.              |
| Recursive Function    | Specify the maximum number of embedded function calls allowed.  |
| Epsilon               | Any number smaller than the value specified for epsilon will be shown as zero.  |
| Probability           | Specify the maximum probability of an answer being wrong for non-deterministic algorithms. Set this to zero for deterministic algorithms. |
| Newton                | Specify the maximum number of iterations when using the Newtonian method to find the roots of a quadratic.                                |




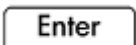
## Setting the form of menu items

One setting that affects the CAS is made outside the **CAS Settings** screen. This setting determines whether the commands on the CAS menu are presented descriptively or by their command name. Here are some examples of identical functions that are presented differently depending on what presentation mode you select:

| Descriptive Name | Command Name |
|------------------|--------------|
| Factor List      | ifactors     |
| Complex Zeroes   | cZeros       |
| Groebner Basis   | gbasis       |
| Factor by Degree | factor_xn    |
| Find Roots       | proot        |

The default menu presentation mode is to provide the descriptive names for the CAS functions. If you prefer the functions to be presented by their command name, deselect the **Menu Display** option on the second page of the **Home Settings** screen.

## To use an expression or result from Home view

When you are working in CAS, you can retrieve an expression or result from Home view by tapping  and selecting **Get from Home**. Home view opens. Press  or  until the item you want to retrieve is highlighted and press . The highlighted item is copied to the cursor point in CAS.

## To use a Home variable in CAS

You can access Home variables from within the CAS. Home variables are assigned uppercase letters; CAS variables are assigned lowercase letters. Thus  $\text{SIN}(x)$  and  $\text{SIN}(X)$  will yield different results.

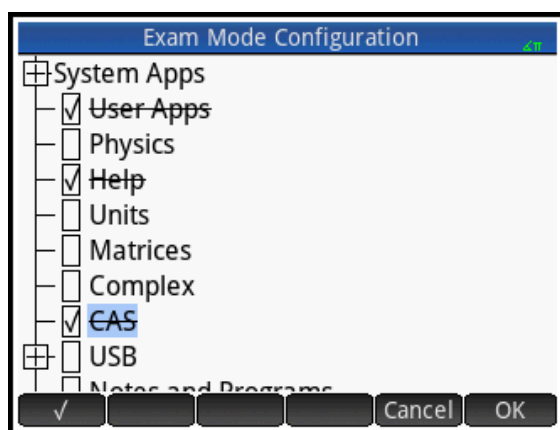
To use a Home variable in the CAS, simply include its name in a calculation. For example, suppose in Home view you have assigned variable  $Q$  to 100. Suppose too that you have assigned variable  $q$  to 1000 in the CAS. If you are in the CAS and enter  $5*q$ , the result is 5000. If you had entered  $5*Q$  instead, the result would have been 500.

In a similar way, CAS variables can be used in calculations in Home view. Thus you can enter  $5*q$  in Home view and get 5000, even though  $q$  is a CAS variable.

## 5 Exam Mode

The HP Prime calculator can be precisely configured for an examination, with any number of features or functions disabled for a set period of time. Configuring a HP Prime calculator for an examination is called exam mode configuration. You can create and save multiple exam mode configurations, each with its own subset of functionality disabled. You can set each configuration for its own time period, with or without a password. An exam mode configuration can be activated from an HP Prime calculator, sent from one HP Prime calculator to another via USB cable, or sent to one or more HP Prime calculators via the Connectivity Kit.

Exam mode configuration will primarily be of interest to teachers, proctors, and invigilators who want to ensure that the calculator is used appropriately by students sitting for an examination. In the illustration to the right, user-customized apps, the help system and the computer algebra system have been selected for disabling.



As part of an exam mode configuration, you can choose to activate three lights on the calculator that blink periodically during exam mode. The lights are on the top edge of the calculator. The lights help the supervisor of the examination detect if any particular calculator has dropped out of exam mode. The flashing of lights on all calculators placed in exam mode are synchronized so that all blink the same pattern at the same time.

### Modifying the default configuration

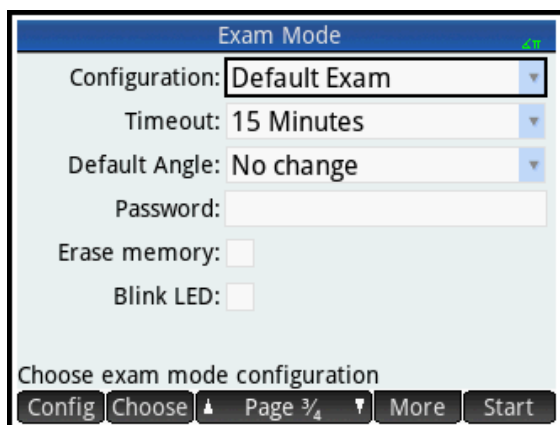
A configuration named Default Exam appears when you first access the **Exam Mode** screen. This configuration has no functions disabled. If only one configuration is needed, you can simply modify the default exam configuration. If you envisage the need for a number of configurations—different ones for different examinations, for example—modify the default configuration so that it matches the settings you will most often need, and then create other configurations for the settings you will need less often. There are two ways to access the screen for configuring and activating exam mode:

- Press **On** + **a b/c** or **On** + **Esc**.
- Choose the third page of the **Home Settings** screen.

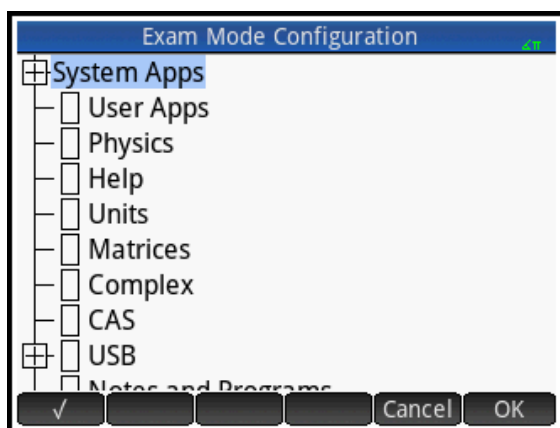
The following procedure illustrates the second method.

1. Press **Shift** . The **Home Settings** screen appears.
2. Tap the right side of **Page 1/4** .
3. Tap the right side of **Page 3/4** .

The **Exam Mode** screen appears. You use this screen to activate a particular configuration (just before an examination begins, for example).





4. Tap **Config**. The **Exam Mode Configuration** screen appears.



5. Select those features you want disabled, and make sure that those features you don't want disabled are not selected.

An expand box at the left of a feature indicates that it is a category with sub-items that you can individually disable. (Notice that there is an expand box beside **System Apps** in the example shown above.) Tap on the expand box to see the sub-items. You can then select the sub-items individually. If you want to disable all the sub-item, just select the category.

You can select (or deselect) an option either by tapping on the check box beside it, or by using the cursor keys to scroll to it and tapping .

6. When you have finished selecting the features to be disabled, tap **OK** .

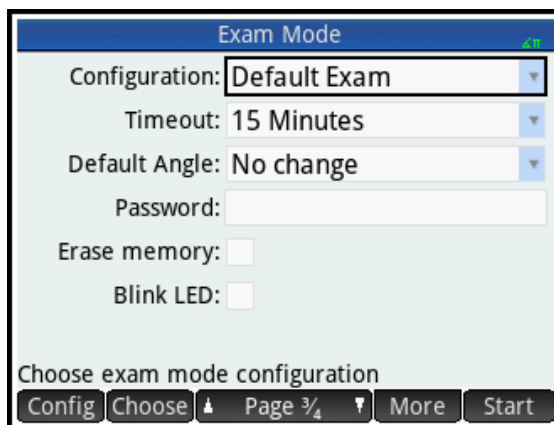
If you want to activate exam mode now, continue with [Activating exam mode on page 49](#).

## Creating a new configuration

You can modify the default exam configuration when new circumstances require a different set of disabled functions. Alternatively, you can retain the default configuration and create a new configuration. When you create a new configuration, you choose an existing configuration on which to base it.

1. Press **Shift** . The **Home Settings** screen appears.
2. Tap **Page 1/4** .
3. Tap **Page 3/4** .

The **Exam Mode** screen appears.



4. Choose a base configuration from the **Configuration** list. If you have not created any exam mode configurations before, the only base configuration will be Default Exam.
5. Tap **More**, select **Copy** from the menu and enter a name for the new configuration.
6. Tap **OK** twice.
7. Tap **Config**. The **Exam Mode Configuration** screen appears.
8. Select those features you want disabled, and make sure that those features you don't want disabled are not selected.
9. When you have finished selecting the features to be disabled, tap **OK**.

Note that you can create exam mode configurations using the Connectivity Kit in much the same way you create them on an HP Prime. You can then activate them on multiple HP Primes, either via USB or by broadcasting them to a class using the wireless modules. For more information, install and launch the HP Connectivity Kit that came on your product CD. From the Connectivity Kit menu, click **Help** and select **HP Connectivity Kit User Guide**.

If you want to activate exam mode now, continue with [Activating exam mode on page 49](#).

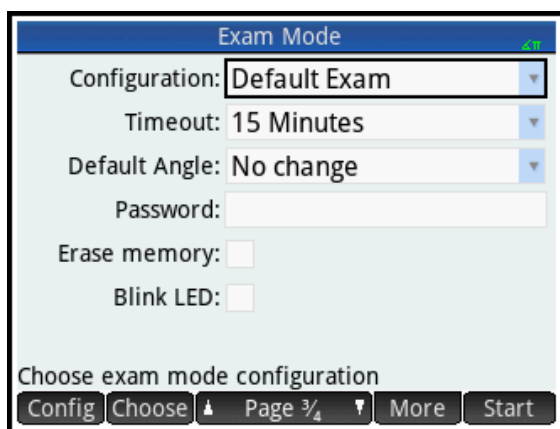
## Activating exam mode

When you activate exam mode you prevent users of the calculator from accessing those features you have disabled. The features become accessible again at the end of the specified time-out period or on entry of the exam-mode password, whichever occurs sooner.

To activate exam mode:

1. If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press **Shift**  , tap **Page 1/4**  and tap

 **Page 2/4** .







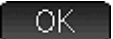
2. If a configuration other than Default Exam is required, choose it from the **Configuration** list.
3. Select a time-out period from the **Timeout** list.  

Note that 8 hours is the maximum period. If you are preparing to supervise a student examination, make sure that the time-out period chosen is greater than the duration of the examination.
4. Enter a password of between 1 and 10 characters. The password must be entered if you—or another user—wants to cancel exam mode before the time-out period has elapsed.
5. If you want to erase the memory of the calculator, select **Erase memory**. This will erase all user entries and return the calculator to its factory default settings.
6. If you want the exam mode indicator to flash periodically while the calculator is in exam mode, select **Blink LED**.
7. Using the supplied USB cable, connect a student's calculator.  

Insert the micro-A connector—the one with the rectangular end—into the USB port on the sending calculator, and the other connector into the USB port on the receiving calculator.
8. To activate the configuration on an attached calculator, tap **Start**. The **Exam Mode** screen closes. The connected calculator is now in exam mode, with the specified disabled features not accessible to the user of that calculator.
9. Repeat from step 7 for each calculator that needs to have its functionality limited.

## Cancelling exam mode

If you want to cancel exam mode before the set time period has elapsed, you will need to enter the password for the current exam mode activation.







1. If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press  , tap  and tap .
2. Enter the password for the current exam mode activation and tap  twice.

You can also cancel exam mode using the Connectivity Kit. See the *HP Connectivity Kit User Guide* for more details.





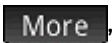
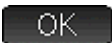
## Modifying configurations

Exam mode configurations can be changed. You can also delete a configuration and restore the default configuration.

### To change a configuration





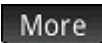
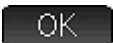
1. If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press  , tap  and tap .
2. Select the configuration you want to change from the **Configuration** list.
3. Tap .
4. Make whatever changes are necessary and then tap .

### To return to the default configuration


1. Press  . The **Home Settings** screen appears.
2. Tap .
3. Tap .
- The **Exam Mode** screen appears.
4. Choose **Default Exam** from the **Configuration** list.
5. Tap , select **Reset** from the menu and tap  to confirm your intention to return the configuration to its default settings.



## Deleting configurations

1. If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press  , tap  and tap .
2. Select the configuration you want to delete from the **Configuration** list.
3. Tap , and then select **Delete**.
4. When asked to confirm the deletion, tap  or press [Enter](#).

## 6 An introduction to HP apps

Much of the function of the HP Prime calculator is provided in packages called HP apps. The HP Prime calculator comes with 18 HP apps: 10 dedicated to mathematical topics or tasks, three specialized Solvers, three function Explorers, a spreadsheet, and an app for recording data streamed to the calculator from an external sensing device. You launch an app by first pressing  (which displays the Application Library screen) and tapping on the icon for the app you want.

What each app enables you to do is outlined in the following table, where the apps are listed in alphabetical order.

| App name           | Use this app to:  |
|--------------------|---|
| Advanced Graphing  | Explore the graphs of symbolic open sentences in $x$ and $y$ .<br>Example: $x^2 + y^2 = 64$   |
| DataStreamer       | Collect real-world data from scientific sensors and export it to a statistics app for analysis.   |
| Finance            | Solve time-value-of-money (TVM) problems and amortization problems.   |
| Function           | Explore real-valued, rectangular functions of $y$ in terms of $x$ .<br>$y = 2x^2 + 3x + 5$  |
| Geometry           | Explore geometric constructions and perform geometric calculations.   |
| Inference          | Explore confidence intervals and hypothesis tests based on the Normal and Student's $t$ -distributions.   |
| Linear Explorer    | Explore the properties of linear equations and test your knowledge.   |
| Linear Solver      | Find solutions to sets of two or three linear equations.  |
| Parametric         | Explore parametric functions of $x$ and $y$ in terms of $t$ . Example: $x = \cos(t)$ and $y = \sin(t)$ .  |
| Polar              | Explore polar functions of $r$ in terms of an angle $\theta$ .<br>Example: $r = 2\cos(4\theta)$   |
| Quadratic Explorer | Explore the properties of quadratic equations and test your knowledge.  |
| Sequence           | Explore sequence functions, where $U$ is defined in terms of $n$ , or in terms of previous terms in the same or another sequence, such as $U_{n-1}$ and $U_{n-2}$ .<br>Example: $U_1 = 0$ , $U_2 = 1$ , and $U_n = U_{n-2} + U_{n-1}$ |
| Solve              | Explore equations in one or more real-valued variables, and systems of equations.<br>Example: $x + 1 = x^2 - x - 2$   |
| Spreadsheet        | To solve problems or represent data best suited to a spreadsheet.   |
| Statistics 1Var    | Calculate one-variable statistical data ( $x$ ).  |
| Statistics 2Var    | Calculate two-variable statistical data ( $x$ and $y$ ).  |
| Triangle Solver    | Find the unknown values for the lengths and angles of triangles.  |
| Trig Explorer      | Explore the properties of sinusoidal equations and test your knowledge.   |

As you use an app to explore a lesson or solve a problem, you add data and definitions in one or more of the app's views. All this information is automatically saved in the app. You can come back to the app at any time and all the information is still there. You can also save a version of the app with a name you give it and then use the original app for another problem or purpose. See [Creating an app on page 88](#) for more information about customizing and saving apps.



With one exception, all the apps mentioned above are described in detail in this user guide. The exception is the DataStream app. A brief introduction to this app is given in the *HP Prime Quick Start Guide*. Full details can be found in the *HP StreamSmart 410 User Guide*.

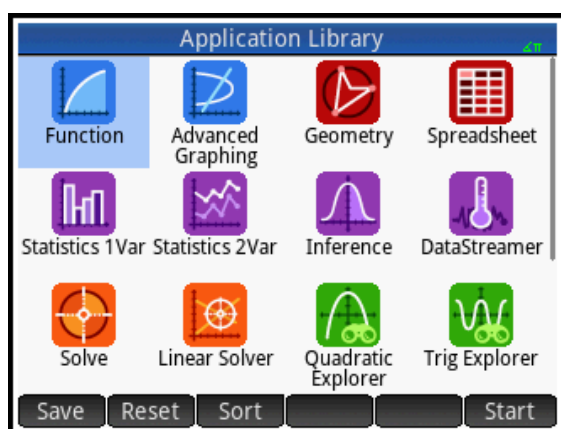
## Application library

Apps are stored in the Application Library, displayed by pressing .

### Opening an app

1. Open the Application Library.
2. Find the desired app icon and tap it.

You can also use the cursor keys to scroll to the app and, when it is highlighted, either tap  or press .







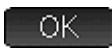
### Resetting an app

You can leave an app at any time and all the data and settings in it are retained. When you return to the app, you can continue as you left off.

However, if you don't want to use the previous data and settings, you can return the app to its default state, that is, the state it was in when you opened it for the first time.

To reset the app:

1. Open the Application Library.
2. Use the cursor keys to highlight the app.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  to confirm your intention.

You can also reset an app from within the app. From the main view of the app—which is usually, but not always, the Symbolic view—press   and tap  to confirm your intention.


## Sorting apps

By default, the built-in apps in the Application Library are sorted chronologically, with the most recently used app shown first. (Customized apps always appear after the built-in apps.)

You can change the sort order of the built-in apps to the following:

- **Alphabetically**—The app icons are sorted alphabetically by name, and in ascending order: A to Z.
- **Fixed**—Apps are displayed in their default order: Function, Advanced Graphing, Geometry ... Polar, and Sequence. Customized apps are placed at the end, after all the built-in apps. They appear in chronological order: oldest to most recent.



To change the sort order:

1. Open the Application Library.
2. Tap .
3. From the **Sort Apps** list, choose the option you want.

## Deleting an app



The apps that come with the HP Prime calculator are built-in and cannot be deleted, but you can delete an app you have created.

To delete an app:




1. Open the Application Library.
2. Use the cursor keys to highlight the app.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  to confirm your intention.

## Other options

The other options available in the Application Library are as follows:

- —Enables you to save a copy of an app under a new name. See [Creating an app on page 88](#).
- —Enables you to send an app to another HP Prime calculator.

## App views

Most apps have three major views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric. These views are based on the symbolic, graphic, and numeric representations of mathematical objects. They are accessed through the , , and  keys near the top left of the keyboard. Typically these views enable you to define a mathematical object—such as an expression or an open sentence—plot it, and see the values generated by it.

Each of these views has an accompanying setup view, a view that enables you to configure the appearance of the data in the accompanying major view. These views are called Symbolic Setup, Plot Setup, and Numeric

Setup. They are accessed by pressing   ,   , and   .

Not all apps have all the six views outlined above. The scope and complexity of each app determines its particular set of views. For example, the Spreadsheet app has no Plot view or Plot Setup view, and the Quadratic Explorer has only a Plot view. What views are available in each app is outlined in the next six sections.

Note that the DataStreamr app is not covered in this chapter. See *HP StreamSmart 410 User Guide* for information about this app.

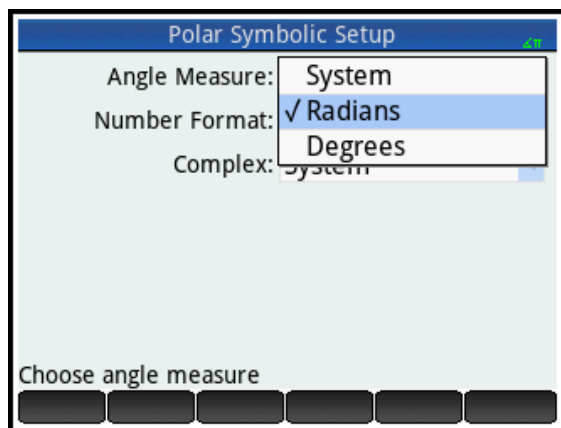
## Symbolic view

The following table outlines what is done in the Symbolic view of each app.

| App                 | Use the Symbolic view to do the following:   |
|---------------------|--|
| Advanced Graphing   | Specify up to 10 open sentences.   |
| Finance             | N/A  |
| Function            | Specify up to 10 real-valued, rectangular functions of $y$ in terms of $x$ .               |
| Geometry            | View the symbolic definition of geometric constructions.                                   |
| Inference           | Choose to conduct a hypothesis test or test a confidence level, and select a type of test. |
| Linear Explorer     | N/A  |
| Linear Solver       | N/A  |
| Parametric          | Specify up to 10 parametric functions of $x$ and $y$ in terms of $t$ .                     |
| Polar               | Specify up to 10 polar functions of $r$ in terms of an angle $\theta$ .                    |
| Quadratics Explorer | N/A  |
| Sequence            | Specify up to 10 sequence functions.   |
| Solve               | Specify up to 10 equations.  |
| Spreadsheet         | N/A  |
| Statistics 1Var     | Specify up to 5 univariate analyses.   |
| Statistics 2Var     | Specify up to 5 multivariate analyses.   |
| Triangle Solver     | N/A  |
| Trig Explorer       | N/A  |

## Symbolic Setup view

The Symbolic Setup view is the same for each app. It enables you to override the system-wide settings for angle measure, number format, and complex-number entry. The override applies only to the current app.



You can change the settings for all apps using the Home settings and CAS settings.

## Plot view

The following table outlines what is done in the Plot view of each app.

| App                 | Use the Plot view to do the following:                         |
|---------------------|--|
| Advanced Graphing   | Plot and explore the open sentences selected in Symbolic view. |
| Finance             | Display an amortization graph.                                 |
| Function            | Plot and explore the functions selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Geometry            | Create and manipulate geometric constructions.                 |
| Inference           | View a plot of the test results.                               |
| Linear Explorer     | Explore linear equations and test your knowledge of them.      |
| Linear Solver       | N/A  |
| Parametric          | Plot and explore the functions selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Polar               | Plot and explore the functions selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Quadratics Explorer | Explore quadratic equations and test your knowledge of them.   |
| Sequence            | Plot and explore the sequences selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Solve               | Plot and explore a single function selected in Symbolic view.  |
| Spreadsheet         | N/A  |
| Statistics 1Var     | Plot and explore the analyses selected in Symbolic view.       |
| Statistics 2Var     | Plot and explore the analyses selected in Symbolic view.       |
| Triangle Solver     | N/A  |
| Trig Explorer       | Explore sinusoidal equations and test your knowledge of them.  |

## Plot Setup view

The following table outlines what is done in the Plot Setup view of each app.

| App                 | Use the Plot Setup view to do the following:             |
|---------------------|--|
| Advanced Graphing   | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Finance             | N/A  |
| Function            | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Geometry            | Modify the appearance of the drawing environment.        |
| Inference           | N/A  |
| Linear Explorer     | N/A  |
| Linear Solver       | N/A  |
| Parametric          | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Polar               | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Quadratics Explorer | N/A  |
| Sequence            | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Solve               | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Spreadsheet         | N/A  |
| Statistics 1Var     | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Statistics 2Var     | Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment. |
| Triangle Solver     | N/A  |
| Trig Explorer       | N/A  |

## Numeric view

The following table outlines what is done in the Numeric view of each app.

| App                 | Use the Numeric view to do the following:  |
|---------------------|--|
| Advanced Graphing   | View a table of numbers generated by the open sentences selected in Symbolic view. |
| Finance             | Enter values for time-value-of-money calculations.                                 |
| Function            | View a table of numbers generated by the functions selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Geometry            | Perform calculations on the geometric objects drawn in Plot view.                  |
| Inference           | Specify the statistics needed to perform the test selected in Symbolic view.       |
| Linear Explorer     | N/A  |
| Linear Solver       | Specify the coefficients of the linear equations to be solved.                     |
| Parametric          | View a table of numbers generated by the functions selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Polar               | View a table of numbers generated by the functions selected in Symbolic view.      |
| Quadratics Explorer | N/A  |

| <b>App</b>      | <b>Use the Numeric view to do the following:</b>                                       |
|-----------------|--|
| Sequence        | View a table of numbers generated by the sequences selected in Symbolic view.          |
| Solve           | Enter the known values and solve for the unknown value.                                |
| Spreadsheet     | Enter numbers, text, formulas, etc. The Numeric view is the primary view for this app. |
| Statistics 1Var | Enter data for analysis.   |
| Statistics 2Var | Enter data for analysis.   |
| Triangle Solver | Enter known data about a triangle and solve for the unknown data.                      |
| Trig Explorer   | N/A  |

## Numeric Setup view

The following table outlines what is done in the Numeric Setup view of each app.

| <b>App</b>          | <b>Use the Numeric Setup view to do the following:</b>  |
|---------------------|---|
| Advanced Graphing   | Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the open sentences specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor. |
| Finance             | N/A   |
| Function            | Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.      |
| Geometry            | N/A   |
| Inference           | N/A   |
| Linear Explorer     | N/A   |
| Linear Solver       | N/A   |
| Parametric          | Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.      |
| Polar               | Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.      |
| Quadratics Explorer | N/A   |
| Sequence            | Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.      |
| Solve               | N/A   |
| Spreadsheet         | N/A   |
| Statistics 1Var     | N/A   |
| Statistics 2Var     | N/A   |
| Triangle Solver     | N/A   |
| Trig Explorer       | N/A   |



## Quick example

The following example uses all six app views and should give you an idea of the typical workflow involved in working with an app. The Polar app is used as the sample app.

### Opening the app

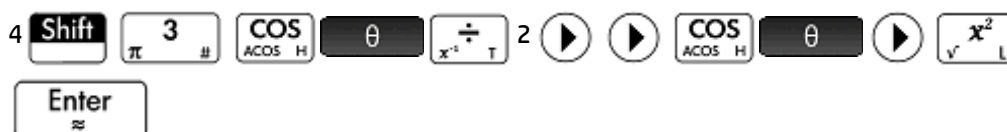
1. Press **Apps Info** to open the Application Library.
2. Tap the Polar app icon.

The Polar app opens in Symbolic view.

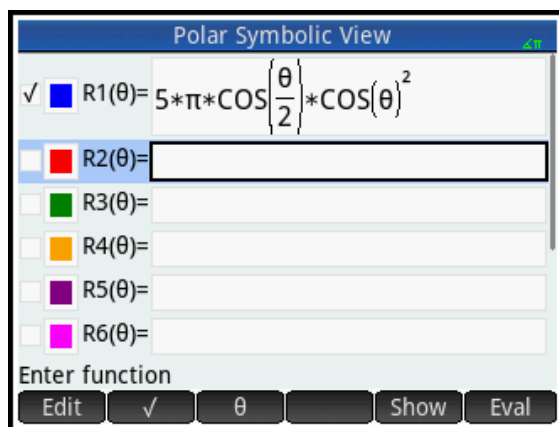
### Symbolic view

The Symbolic view of the Polar app is where you define or specify the polar equation you want to plot and explore. In this example we will plot and explore the equation  $r = 4\pi\cos(\theta/2)\cos(\theta)^2$ .

- ▲ Define the equation  $r = 4\pi\cos(\theta/2)\cos(\theta)^2$  by entering:



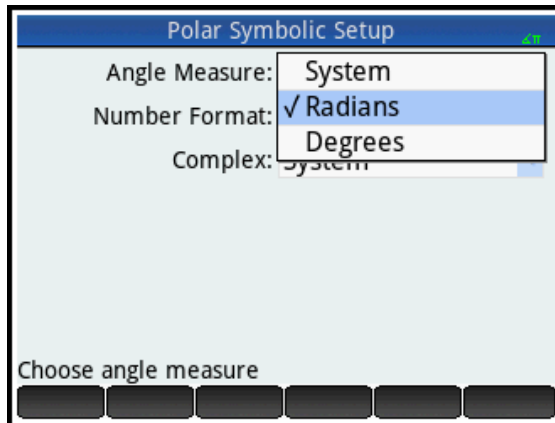
(If you are using algebraic entry mode, enter 4 **Shift** **π** **3** **COS** **θ** **÷** 2 **→** **COS** **θ** **→** **x²** **Enter**.)



This equation draws symmetrical petals provided that the angle measure is set to radians. The angle measure for this app is set in the Symbolic Setup view.

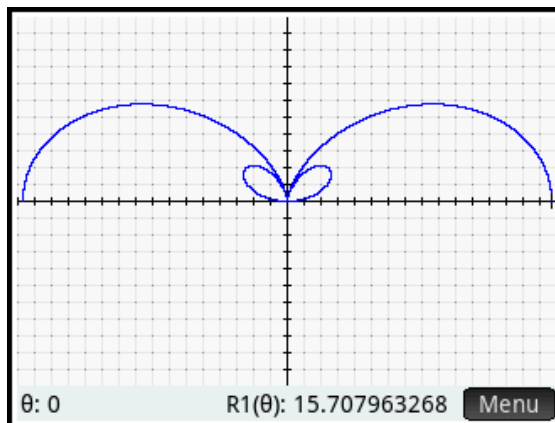
## Symbolic Setup view

1. Press **Shift** **Symb** **Setup** .
2. Select **Radians** from the Angle Measure menu.



## Plot view

- ▲ Press **Plot** **Setup** .

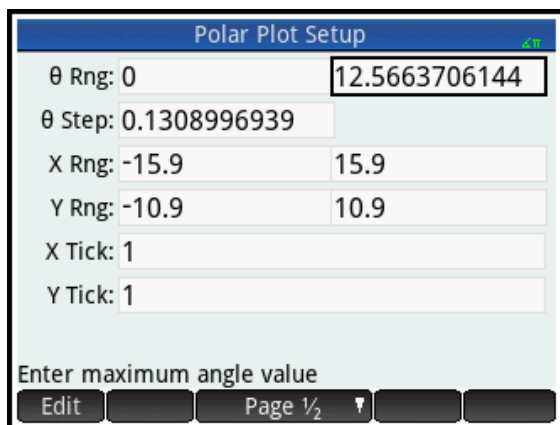


A graph of the equation is plotted. However, as the previous figure shows, only a part of the petals is visible. To see the rest you will need to change the plot setup parameters.

## Plot Setup view

1. Press **Shift** **Plot** **↔ Setup**.
2. Set the second **θ Rng** field to  $4\pi$  by entering:

**▶** 4 **Shift** **3** ( $\pi$ ) **OK**



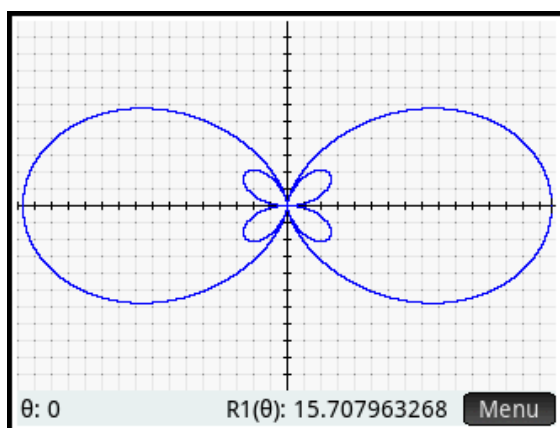
The Polar Plot Setup screen displays the following settings:

|                      |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| θ Rng: 0             | 12.5663706144 |
| θ Step: 0.1308996939 |               |
| X Rng: -15.9         | 15.9          |
| Y Rng: -10.9         | 10.9          |
| X Tick: 1            |               |
| Y Tick: 1            |               |

Enter maximum angle value

Buttons: Edit, Page 1/2, and others.

3. Press **Plot** **↔ Setup** to return to Plot view and see the complete plot.





## Numeric view

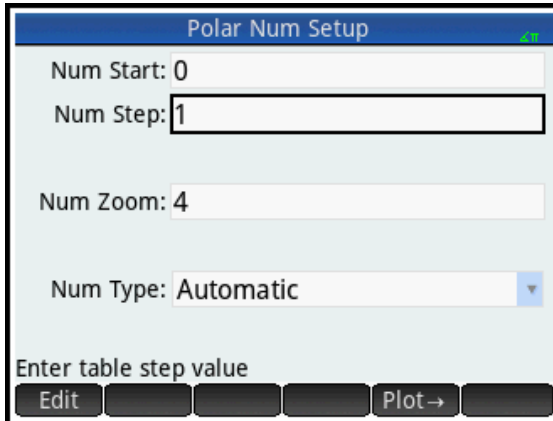
The values generated by the equation can be seen in Numeric view.


- ▲ Press **Num** **↔ Setup**.

Suppose you want to see just whole numbers for  $\theta$ ; in other words, you want the increment between consecutive values in the  $\theta$  column to be 1. You set this up in the Numeric Setup view.

## Numeric Setup view

1. Press  .
2. Change the **Num Step** field to 1.




3. Press  to return to Numeric view.

You will see that the  $\theta$  column now contains consecutive integers starting from zero, and the corresponding values calculated by the equation specified in Symbolic view are listed in the R1 column.

## Common operations in Symbolic view

This section discusses Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve. See the dedicated app chapters for information about the other apps.


Symbolic view is typically used to define a function or open sentence that you want to explore (by plotting and/or evaluating). In this section, the term “definition” will be used to cover both functions and open sentences.

Press  to open Symbolic view.

### Adding a definition

With the exception of the Parametric app, there are 10 fields for entering definitions. In the Parametric app there are 20 fields, two for each paired definition.

1. Highlight an empty field you want to use, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it.
2. Enter your definition.




 **NOTE:** The variables used in definitions must be in uppercase. A variable entered in lowercase causes an error message to appear.

If you need help, see [Definitional building blocks on page 63](#).

3. Tap  or press  when you have finished.

Your new definition is added to the list of definitions.




## Modifying a definition

1. Highlight the definition you want to modify, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it.
2. Tap .  
The definition is copied to the entry line.
3. Modify the definition.
4. Tap  or press  when you have finished.

## Definitional building blocks


The components that make up a symbolic definition can come from a number of sources.

- From the keyboard


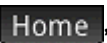
You can enter components directly from the keyboard. To enter  $2X^2 - 3$ , just press 2  X   3.

- From user variables



If, for example, you have created a variable called **COST**, you could incorporate that into a definition either by typing it or choosing it from the **User** menu (one of the sub-menus of the Variables menu). Thus you could have a definition that reads  $F1(X) = X^2 + \text{COST}$ .

To select a user variable, press , tap , select **User Variables**, and then select the variable of interest.


- From Home variables

Some Home variables can be incorporated into a symbolic definition. To access a Home variable, press , tap , select a category of variable, and select the variable of interest. Thus you could have a definition that reads  $F1(X) = X^2 + Q$ . (Q is on the **Real** sub-menu of the **Home** menu.)


- From app variables

All settings, definitions, and results, for all apps, are stored as variables. Many of these variables can be incorporated into a symbolic definition. To access app variables, press , tap , select the app, select the category of variable, and then select the variable of interest. You could, for instance, have a definition that reads  $F2(X) = X^2 + X - \text{Root}$ . The value of the last root calculated in the Function app is substituted for Root when this definition is evaluated.


- From math functions

Some of the functions on the **Math** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **Math** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (  ). The following definition combines a math function (**Size**) with a Home variable (L1):  $F4(X) = X^2 - \text{SIZE}(L1)$ . It is equivalent to  $x^2 - n$  where n is the number of elements in the list named L1. (**Size** is an option on the **List** menu, which is a sub-menu of the **Math** menu.)

- From CAS functions


Some of the functions on the **CAS** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **CAS** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (  ). The following definition incorporates the CAS function irem:  $F5(X) = X^2 + \text{CAS.irem}(45,7)$ . (irem is entered by selecting **Remainder**, an option on the **Division** menu, which is a sub-menu of the **Integer** menu. Note that any CAS command or function selected to operate outside the CAS is given the CAS. prefix.)

- From app functions

Some of the functions on the **App** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **App** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (  ). The following definition incorporates the app function PredY:

$$F9(X) = X^2 + \text{Statistics\_2Var.PredY}(6).$$

- From the **Catlg** menu


Some of the functions on the **Catlg** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **Catlg** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (  ). The following definition incorporates a command from that menu and an app variable:  $F6(X) = X^2 + \text{INT}(\text{Root})$ . The integer value of the last root calculated in the Function app is substituted for INT(Root) when this definition is evaluated.

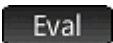
- From other definitions

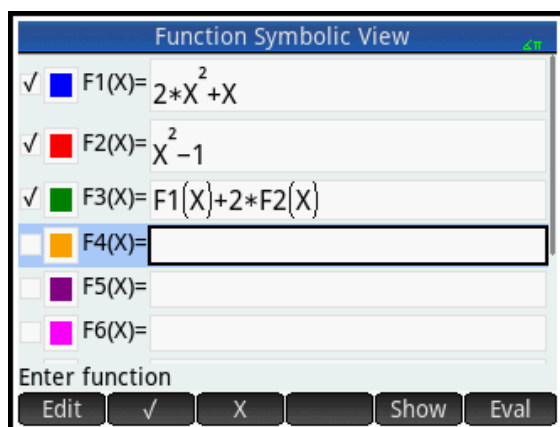
For example, you can define  $F3(X)$  as  $F1(X) * F2(X)$ .

## Evaluating a dependent definition

If you have a dependent definition—that is, one defined in terms of another definition—you can combine all the definitions into one by evaluating the dependent definition.


1. Select the dependent expression.
2. Tap .

Consider the following example. Notice that  $F3(X)$  is defined in terms of two other functions. It is a dependent definition and can be evaluated. If you highlight  $F3(X)$  and tap  ,  $F3(X)$  becomes  $2 * X^2 + X + 2 * (X^2 - 1)$ .



## Selecting or deselecting a definition to explore

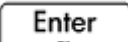
In the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, and Solve apps you can enter up to 10 definitions. However, only those definitions that are selected in Symbolic view will be plotted in Plot view and evaluated in Numeric view.


You can tell if a definition is selected by the tick (or checkmark) beside it. A checkmark is added by default as soon as you create a definition. So if you don't want to plot or evaluate a particular definition, highlight it and tap . (Do likewise if you want to reselect a deselected function.)

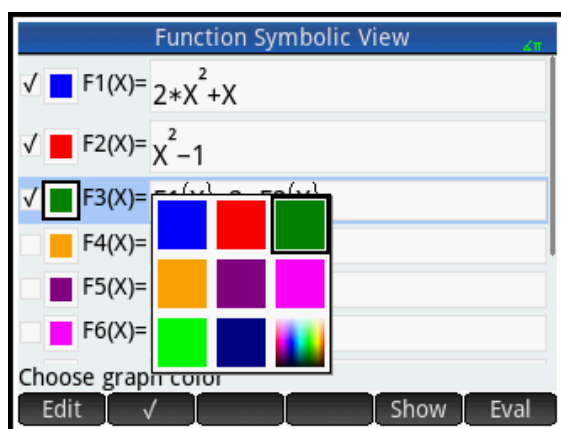
## Choosing a color for plots

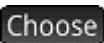
Each function and open sentence can be plotted in a different color. If you want to change the default color of a plot:

1. Tap the colored square to the left of the function's definition.

You can also select the square by pressing  while the definition is selected. Pressing


 moves the selection from the definition to the colored square and from the colored square to the definition.






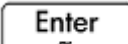
2. Tap .
3. Select the desired color from the color-picker.

## Deleting a definition




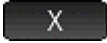

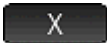




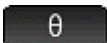



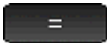


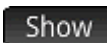
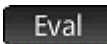
To delete a single definition:

1. Tap the definition once (or highlight it using the cursor keys).
2. Press .

To delete all the definitions:

1. Press  .
2. Tap  or press  to confirm your intention.



## Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons

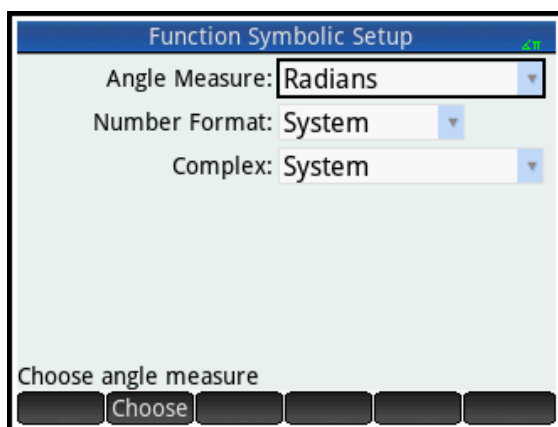
| Button  | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|    | Copies the highlighted definition to the entry line for editing. Tap  when done.<br><br>To add a new definition—even one that is replacing an existing one—highlight the field and just start entering your new definition. |
|    | Selects (or deselects) a definition.   |
|    | Enters the independent variable in the Function app. You can also press  .  |
| [Function only]   |  |
|    | Enters an X in the Advanced Graphing app. You can also press  .   |
| [Advanced Graphing only]  |  |
|    | Enters an Y in the Advanced Graphing app.  |
| [Advanced Graphing only]  |  |
|    | Enters the independent variable in the Parametric app. You can also press  .  |
| [Parametric only]   |  |
|  | Enters the independent variable in the Polar app. You can also press  .   |
| [Polar only]  |  |
|  | Enters the independent variable in the Sequence app. You can also press  .  |
| [Sequence only]   |  |
|  | Enters the equals sign in the Solve app. A shortcut equivalent to pressing   .   |
| [Solve only]  |  |
|  | Displays the selected definition in full-screen mode.  |
|  | Evaluates dependent definitions. See <a href="#">Evaluating a dependent definition on page 64</a> .  |



## Common operations in Symbolic Setup view


The Symbolic Setup view is the same for all apps. Its primary purpose is to allow you to override three of the system-wide settings specified on the **Home Settings** window.

Press   to open Symbolic Setup view.



### Overriding system-wide settings

1. Tap the setting you want to change.  
You can tap the field name or the field.
2. Tap the setting again.  
A menu of options appears.
3. Select the new setting.


 **NOTE:** Selecting the **Fixed**, **Scientific**, or **Engineering** options on the **Number Format** menu displays a second field for you to enter the required number of significant digits.



You can also select a field, tap , and select the new setting.

### Restoring default settings

To restore default settings is to return precedence to the settings on the **Home Settings** screen.


To restore one field to its default setting:

1. Select the field.
2. Press .

To restore all default settings, press  .

## Common operations in Plot view

Plot view functionality that is common to many apps is described in detail in this section. Functionality that is available only in a particular app is described in the chapter dedicated to that app.

Press  to open Plot view.




### Zoom

This information applies to the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1 Var, Statistics 2Var, and (to a limited degree) Geometry apps.

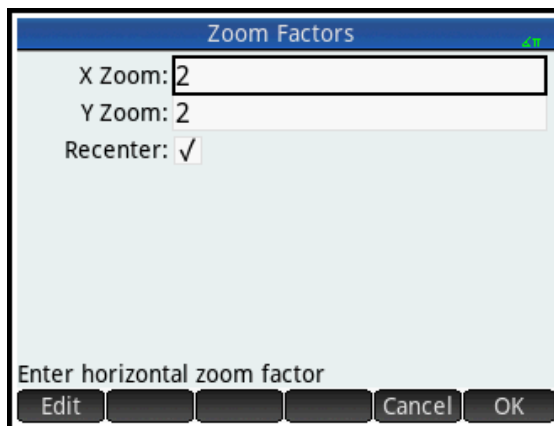
Zooming redraws the plot on a larger or smaller scale. It is a shortcut for changing the range settings in Plot Setup view. The extent of most zooms is determined by two zoom factors: a horizontal and a vertical factor. By default, these factors are both 2. Zooming out multiplies the scale by the factor, so that a greater scale distance appears on the screen. Zooming in divides the scale by the factor, so that a shorter scale distance appears on the screen.


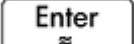
### Zoom factors

To change the default zoom factors:

1. Open the Plot view of the app (  ).
2. Tap  to open the Plot view menu.
3. Tap  to open the Zoom menu.
4. Scroll and select **Set Factors**.


The **Zoom Factors** screen appears.



5. Change one or both zoom factors.
6. If you want the plot to be centered around the current position of the cursor in Plot view, select Recenter.
7. Tap  or press .

## Zoom options



Zoom options are available from the following sources:

- Touchscreen
- Keyboard
- **Zoom** menu in Plot view
- **View** menu (  )

## Zoom gestures

A pinch gesture zooms out by the same scale factor in both vertical and horizontal directions; reverse the gesture to zoom in.

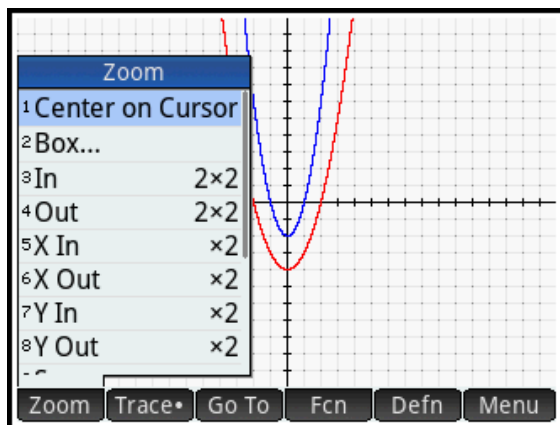
## Zoom keys



There are two zoom keys: pressing  zooms in and pressing  zooms out. The extent of the scaling is determined by the **Zoom Factors** settings.

## Zoom menu

In Plot view, tap **Zoom** and tap an option. (If **Zoom** is not displayed, tap **Menu** )

The zoom options are explained in the following table. Examples are provided on [Zoom examples on page 72](#).



| Option           | Result  |
|------------------|---|
| Center on Cursor | Redraws the plot so that the cursor is in the center of the screen. No scaling occurs.  |
| Box              | See <a href="#">Box zoom on page 70</a> .   |
| In               | Divides the horizontal and vertical scales by <b>X Zoom</b> and <b>Y Zoom</b> (values set with the <b>Set Factors</b> option). For instance, if both zoom factors are 4, then zooming in results in 1/4 as many units depicted per pixel. (Shortcut: press  .) |
| Out              | Multiplies the horizontal and vertical scales by the <b>X Zoom</b> and <b>Y Zoom</b> settings. (Shortcut: press  .)  |

| Option    | Result   |
|-----------|--|
| X In      | Divides the horizontal scale only, using the <b>X Zoom</b> setting.  |
| X Out     | Multiplies the horizontal scale only, using the <b>X Zoom</b> setting.   |
| Y In      | Divides the vertical scale only, using the <b>Y Zoom</b> setting.  |
| Y Out     | Multiplies the vertical scale only, using the <b>Y Zoom</b> setting.   |
| Square    | Changes the vertical scale to match the horizontal scale. This is useful after you have done a box zoom, X zoom or Y zoom.   |
| Autoscale | Rescales the vertical axis so that the display shows a representative piece of the plot given the supplied x axis settings. (For Sequence, Polar, parametric, and Statistics apps, autoscaling rescales both axes.) The autoscale process uses the first selected function to determine the best scale to use. |
| Decimal   | Rescales both axes so each pixel is 0.1 units. This is equivalent to resetting the default values for <b>xrng</b> and <b>yrng</b> .  |
| Integer   | Rescales the horizontal axis only, making each pixel equal to 1 unit.  |
| Trig      | Rescales the horizontal axis so that 1 pixel equals $\pi/24$ radians or 7.5 degrees; rescales the vertical axis so that 1 pixel equals 0.1 units.  |
| Undo Zoom | Returns the display to the previous zoom.  |

**NOTE:** This option is only available after a zoom operation has been performed.

## Box zoom

A box zoom enables you to zoom in on an area of the screen that you specify.

1. With the Plot view menu open, tap **Zoom** and select **Box**.
2. Tap one corner of the area you want to zoom in on and then tap **OK**.
3. Tap the diagonally opposite corner of the area you want to zoom in on and then tap **OK**.

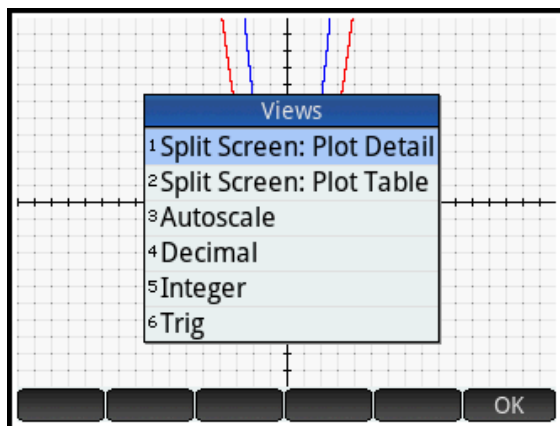
The screen fills with the area you specified. To return to the default view, tap **Zoom** and select **Decimal**.

You can also use the cursor keys to specify the area you want to zoom in on.

## Views menu

The most commonly used zoom options are also available on the Views menu. These are as follows:

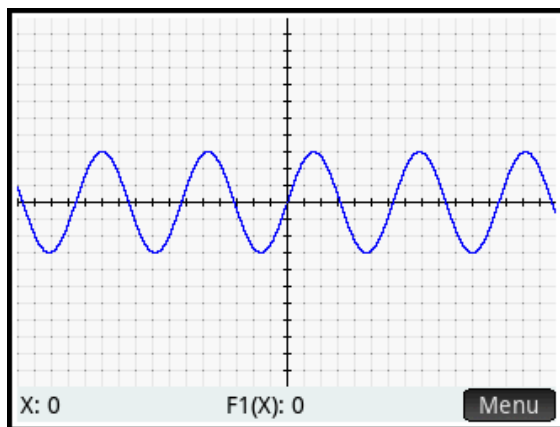
- Autoscale
- Decimal
- Integer
- Trig



These options can be applied whatever view you are currently working in.

## Testing a zoom with split-screen viewing

A useful way of testing a zoom is to divide the screen into two halves, with each half showing the plot, and then to apply a zoom only to one side of the screen. The following figure is a plot of  $y = 3\sin x$ .



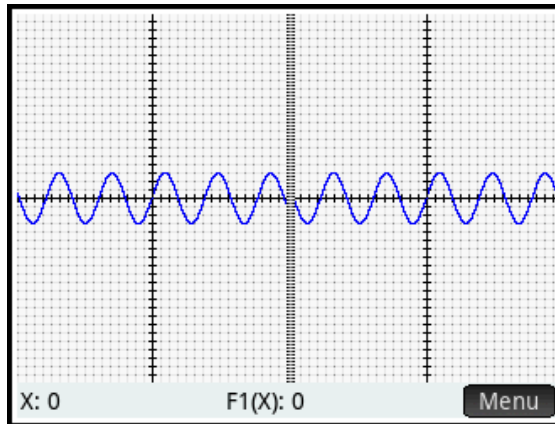
To split the screen into two halves:



1. Open the Views menu.


Press  .

## 2. Select **Split Screen: Plot Detail**.

The result is shown in the following figure. Any zoom operation you undertake will be applied only to the copy of the plot in the right-hand half of the screen. This will help you test and then choose an appropriate zoom.





 **NOTE:** You can replace the original plot on the left with the zoomed plot on the right by tapping .

To unsplit the screen, press .


## Zoom examples

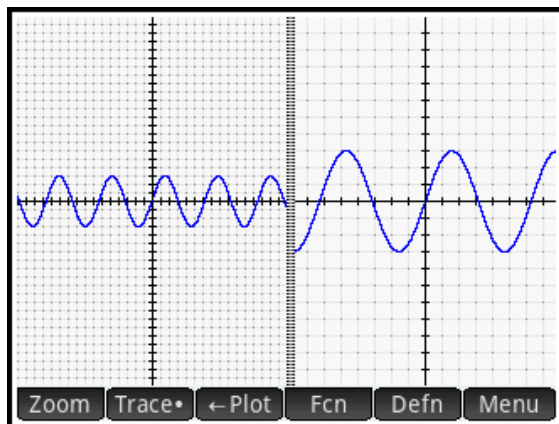
The following examples show the effects of the zooming options on a plot of  $3\sin x$  using the default zoom factors ( $2 \times 2$ ). Split-screen mode (described previously) has been used to help you see the effect of zooming.

 **NOTE:** There is an **Unzoom** option on the **Zoom** menu. Use this to return a plot to its pre-zoom state. If the **Zoom** menu is not shown, tap .

### Zoom In



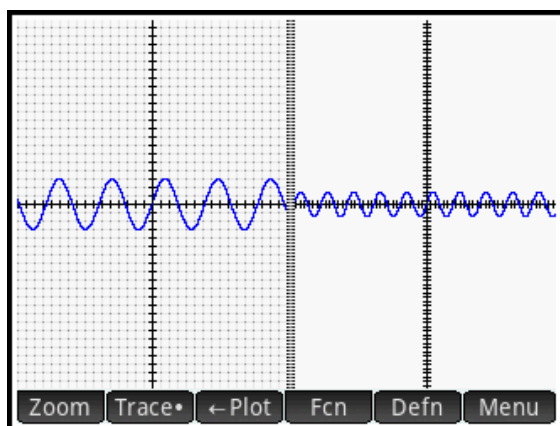
Shortcut: press .



## Zoom Out

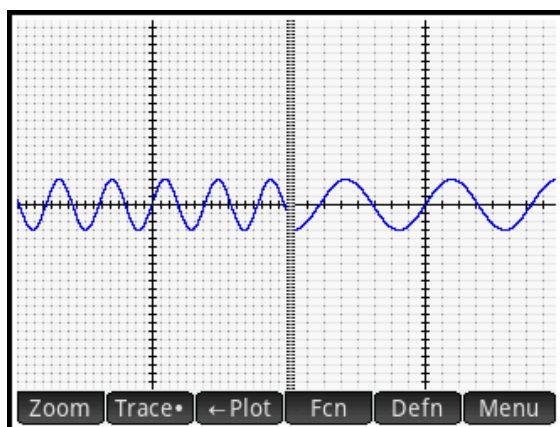
Menu Zoom Out

Shortcut: press

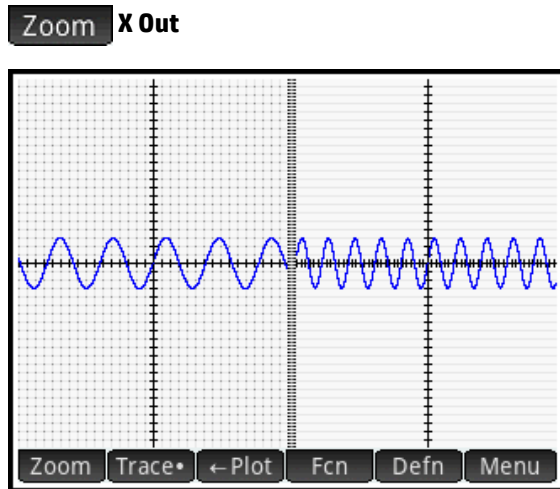


## X In

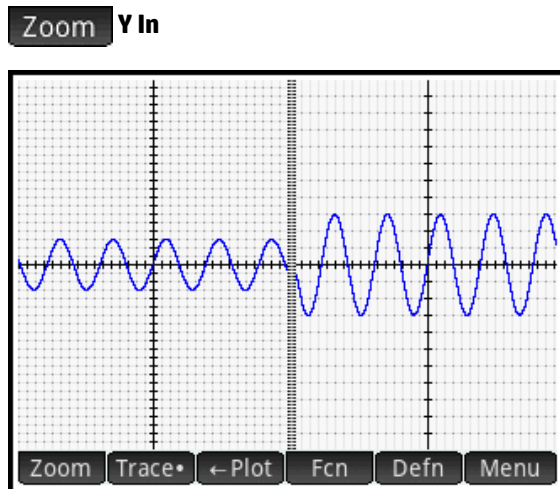
Zoom X In



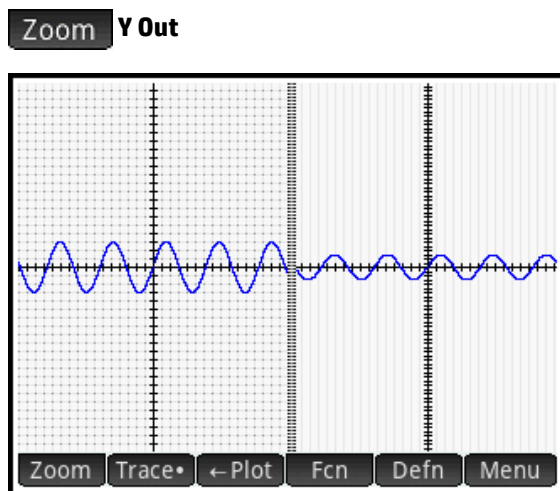
## X Out



## Y In




## Y Out

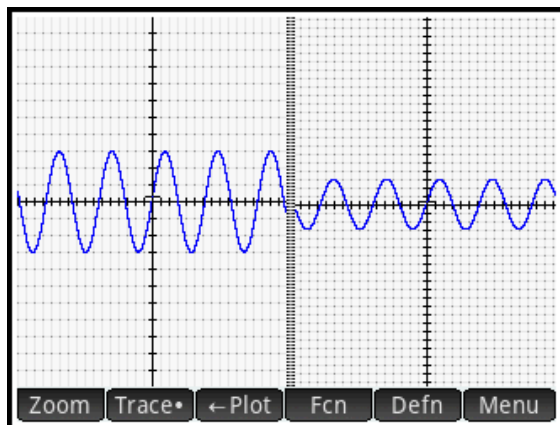




## Square

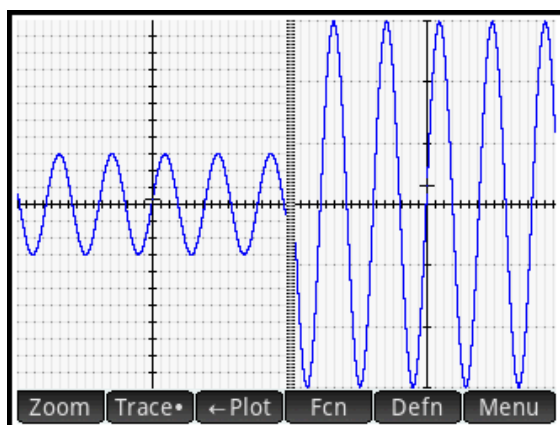
Zoom **Square**

 **NOTE:** In this example, the plot on left has had a **Y In** zoom applied to it. The **Square** zoom has returned the plot to its default state where the X and Y scales are equal.



## Autoscale

Zoom **Autoscale**

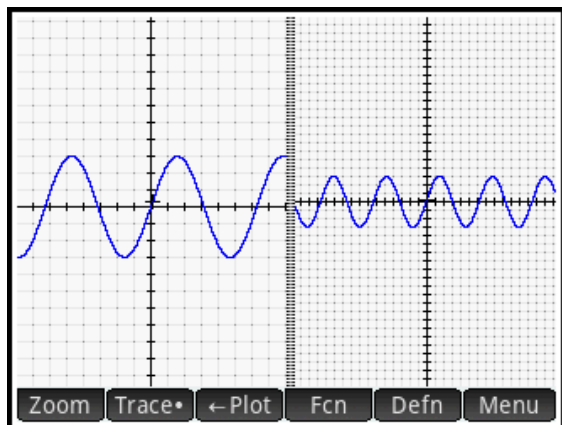


## Decimal

### Zoom Decimal

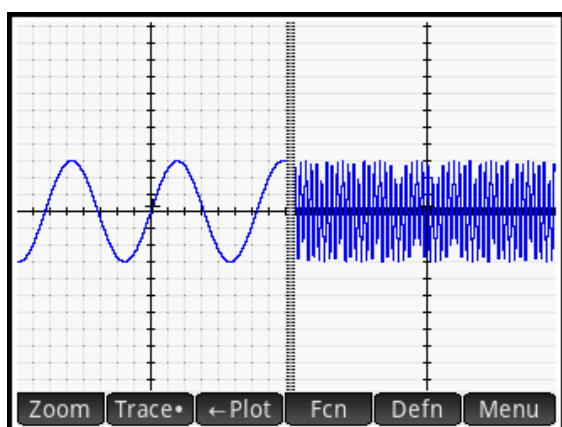


**NOTE:** In this example, the plot on left has had a **X In** zoom applied to it. The **Decimal** zoom has returned the plot to its default state where the X and Y scales are equal.



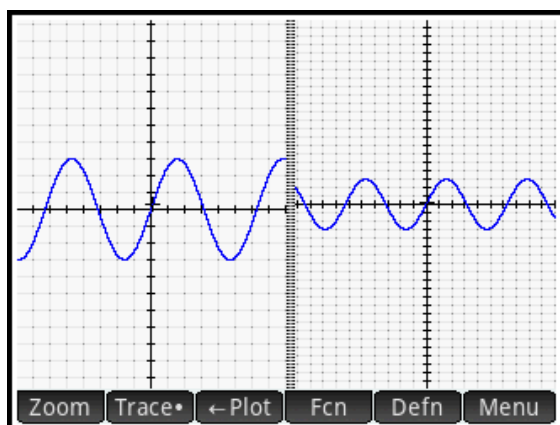
## Integer

### Zoom Integer





## Trig

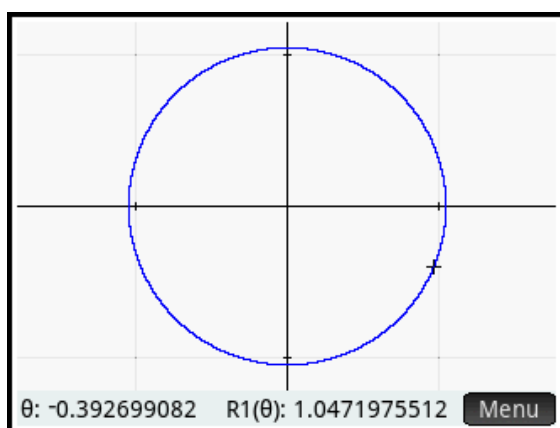
Zoom Trig




## Trace

This section applies to the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1 Var, and Statistics 2Var apps.



The tracing function enables you to move a cursor (the trace cursor) along the current graph. You move the trace cursor by pressing  or . You can also move the trace cursor by tapping on or near the current plot. The trace cursor jumps to the point on the graph that is closest to where you tapped.



The current coordinates of the cursor are shown at the bottom of the screen. (If menu buttons are hiding the coordinates, tap  to hide the buttons.)

Trace mode and coordinate display are automatically turned on when a plot is drawn.


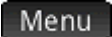
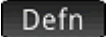


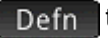
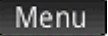
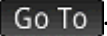


## Selecting a plot

Except in the Advanced Graphing app, if there is more than one plot displayed, press  or  until the trace cursor is on the plot you are interested in.

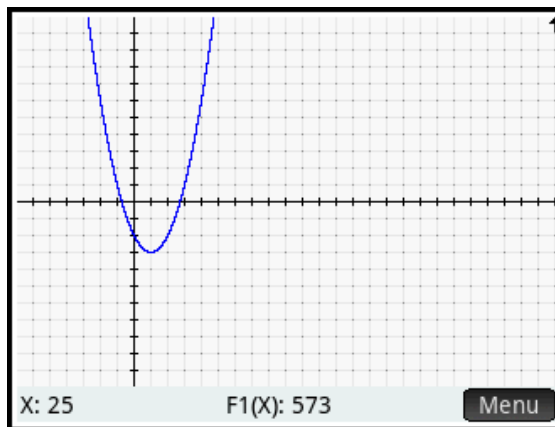
In the Advanced Graphing app, tap-and-hold on the plot you are interested in. Either the plot is selected, or a menu of plots appears for you select one.

## Evaluating a definition


One of the primary uses of the trace functionality is to evaluate a plotted definition. Suppose in Symbolic view you have defined  $F1(X)$  as  $(X - 1)^2 - 3$ . Suppose further that you want to know what the value of that function is when  $X$  is 25.

1. Open Plot view (  ).
2. If the menu at the bottom of the screen is not open, tap  .
3. If more than one definition is plotted, ensure that the trace cursor is on the plot of the definition you want to evaluate. You can tap  to see the definition of a plot, and press  or  to move the trace cursor from plot to plot.
4. If you tapped  to see the definition of a plot, the menu at the bottom of the screen will be closed. Tap  to re-open it.
5. Tap  .
6. Enter 25 and tap  .
7. Tap  .

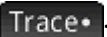
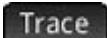
The value of  $F1(X)$  when  $X$  is 25 as shown at the bottom of the screen.




This is one of many ways the HP Prime calculator provides for you to evaluate a function for a specific independent variable. You can also evaluate a function in Numeric view (see [Common operations in Numeric view on page 82](#)). Moreover, any expression you define in Symbolic view can be evaluated in Home view.

For example, suppose  $F1(X)$  is defined as  $(x - 1)^2 - 3$ . If you enter  $F1(4)$  in Home view and press  you get 6, since  $(4 - 1)^2 - 3 = 6$ .



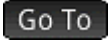
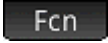
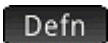

## Turning tracing on or off

- To turn on tracing, tap  .
- To turn off tracing, tap  .

If these options are not displayed, tap  .

When tracing is off, pressing the cursor keys no longer constrains the cursor to a plot.

## Plot view: Summary of menu buttons

| Button  | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|  | Displays a menu of zoom options. See <a href="#">Zoom options on page 69</a> .  |
|  | A toggle button for turning off and turning on trace functionality. See <a href="#">Trace on page 77</a> .                                      |
|  | Displays an input form for you to specify a value you want the cursor to jump to. The value you enter is the value of the independent variable. |
|  | Displays a menu of options for analyzing a plot.  |
| [Function only]   |   |
|  | Displays the definition responsible for generating the selected plot.   |
|  | A toggle button that shows and hides the other buttons across the bottom of the screen.   |



## Common operations in Plot Setup view

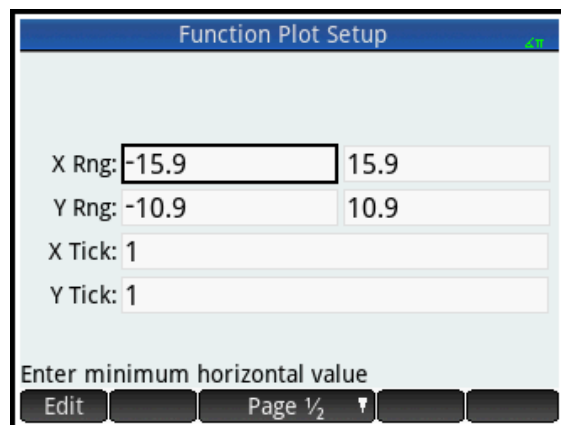
This section covers only operations common to the apps mentioned. See the chapter dedicated to an app for the app-specific operations done in Plot Setup view.

Press   to open Plot Setup view.

### Configuring Plot view


This section applies to the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Statistics 1 Var, and Statistics 2Var apps.

The Plot Setup view is used to configure the appearance of Plot view and to set the method by which graphs are plotted. The configuration options are spread across two pages. Tap  to move from the first to the second page, and  to return to the first page.



The image shows the 'Function Plot Setup' screen. It has a title bar 'Function Plot Setup' with a green close button. Below the title bar, there are four input fields: 'X Rng:' with values '-15.9' and '15.9', 'Y Rng:' with values '-10.9' and '10.9', 'X Tick:' with value '1', and 'Y Tick:' with value '1'. At the bottom, there is a text prompt 'Enter minimum horizontal value' followed by a row of buttons: 'Edit', a button with a left arrow, 'Page 1/2' with a right arrow, and another button with a right arrow.



**TIP:** When you go to Plot view to see the graph of a definition selected in Symbolic view, there may be no graph shown. The likely cause of this is that the spread of plotted values is outside the range settings in Plot Setup view. A quick way to bring the graph into view is to press  and select **Autoscale**. This also changes the range settings in Plot Setup view.

## Page 1

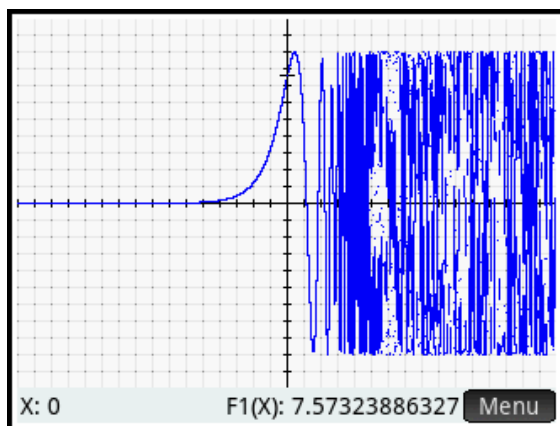
| Setup field                                     | Purpose  |
|---|--|
| <b>T RNG</b><br>[Parametric only]               | Sets the range of T-values to be plotted. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.  |
| <b>T STEP</b><br>[Parametric only]              | Sets the increment between consecutive T-values.   |
| <b><math>\theta</math> RNG</b><br>[Polar only]  | Sets the range of angle values to be plotted. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.  |
| <b><math>\theta</math> Step</b><br>[Polar only] | Sets the increment between consecutive angle values.   |
| <b>SEQ PLOT</b><br>[Sequence only]              | Sets the type of plot: Stairstep or Cobweb.  |
| <b>N RNG</b><br>[Sequence only]                 | Sets the range of N-values to be plotted. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.  |
| <b>H WIDTH</b><br>[Stats 1 Var only]            | Sets the width of the bars in a histogram.   |
| <b>H RNG</b><br>[Stats 1 Var only]              | Sets the range of values to be included in a histogram. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.  |
| <b>S*MARK</b><br>[Stats 2 Var only]             | Sets the graphic that will be used to represent a data point in a scatter plot. A different graphic can be used for each of the five analyses that can be plotted together.            |
| <b>X RNG</b>                                    | Sets the initial range of the x-axis. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value. In Plot view the range can be changed by panning and zooming.  |
| <b>Y RNG</b>                                    | Sets the initial range of the y-axis. Note that there are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value. In Plot view the range can be changed by panning and zooming. |
| <b>X TICK</b>                                   | Sets the increment between tick marks on the x-axis.   |
| <b>Y TICK</b>                                   | Sets the increment between tick marks on the y-axis.   |

| Setup field                    | Purpose   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <b>AXES</b>                    | Shows or hides the axes.  |
| <b>LABELS</b>                  | Places values at the ends of each axis to show the current range of values.                     |
| <b>GRID DOTS</b>               | Places a dot at the intersection of each horizontal and vertical grid line.                     |
| <b>GRID LINES</b>              | Draws a horizontal and vertical grid line at each integer x-value and y-value.                  |
| <b>CURSOR</b>                  | Sets the appearance of the trace cursor: standard, inverting, or blinking.                      |
| <b>CONNECT</b>                 | Connects the data points with straight segments.  |
| [Stats 2 Var only]             |   |
| <b>METHOD</b>                  | Sets the graphing method to adaptive, fixed-step segments, or fixed-step dots. Explained below. |
| [Not in either statistics app] |   |

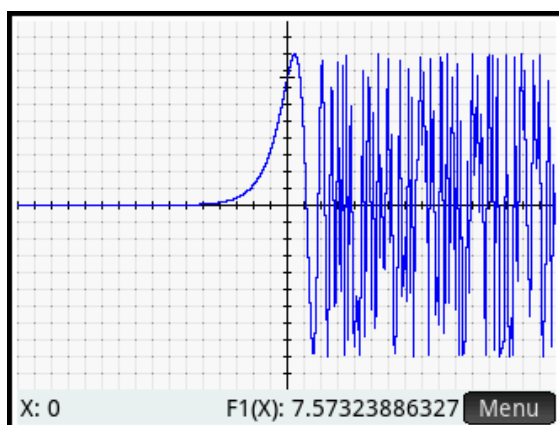
## Graphing methods

The HP Prime calculator gives you the option of choosing one of three graphing methods. The methods are described following, with each applied to the function  $f(x) = 9 \cdot \sin(e^x)$ .

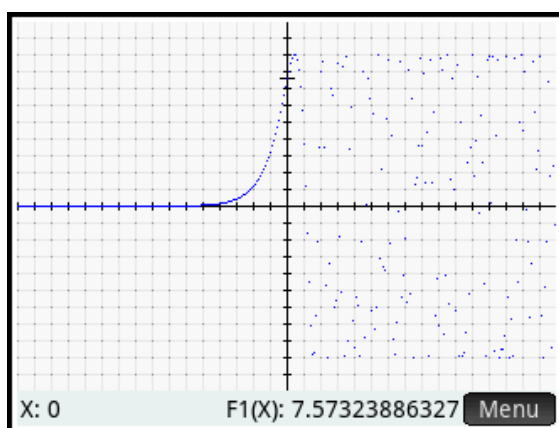
- Adaptive**—This gives very accurate results and is used by default. With this method active, some complex functions may take a while to plot. In these cases, **Sto ►** appears on the menu bar, enabling you to stop the plotting process if you wish.



- **Fixed-step segments**—This method samples x-values, computes their corresponding y-values, and then plots and connects the points.




- **Fixed-step dots**—This works like fixed-step segments method but does not connect the points.




## Restoring default settings

This section applies to the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1 Var, Statistics 2Var, and Geometry apps.

To restore one field to its default setting:

1. Select the field.
2. Press  .

To restore all default settings, press   .


## Common operations in Numeric view

This section applies to the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, and Polar apps.

Numeric view functions that are common to many apps are described in detail in this section. Functions that are available only in a particular app are described in the chapter dedicated to that app.



Numeric view provides a table of evaluations. Each definition in Symbolic view is evaluated for a range of values for the independent variable. You can set the range and fineness of the independent variable, or leave it to the default settings.

Press  to open Numeric view.

## Zoom

Unlike in Plot view, zooming in Numeric view does not affect the size of what is displayed. Instead, it changes the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable (that is, the **numstep** setting in the Numeric Setup view: see [Common operations in Numeric Setup view on page 87](#)). Zooming in decreases the increment; zooming out increases the increment. The row that was highlighted before the zoom remains unchanged.

For the ordinary zoom in and zoom out options, the degree of zooming is determined by the zoom factor. In Numeric view this is the **numzoom** field in the Numeric Setup view. The default value is 4. Thus if the current increment (that is, the **numstep** value) is 0.4, zooming in will further divide that interval by four smaller intervals. So instead of x-values of 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2, and so on, the x-values will be 10, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, and so on. (Zooming out does the opposite: 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2, and so on becomes 10, 11.6, 13.2, 14.8, 16.4, and so on).

**Figure 6-1** Before zooming

| Function Numeric View  |        |  |  |
|--|--------|--|--|
| X  | F1     |  |  |
| 10   | 78     |  |  |
| 10.4   | 85.36  |  |  |
| 10.8   | 93.04  |  |  |
| 11.2   | 101.04 |  |  |
| 11.6   | 109.36 |  |  |
| 12   | 118    |  |  |
| 12.4   | 126.96 |  |  |
| 12.8   | 136.24 |  |  |
| 10   |        |  |  |
| Zoom <input type="button" value="Left"/> <input type="button" value="Right"/> Size   Defn   Column |        |  |  |



**Figure 6-2** After zooming

| Function Numeric View  |       |  |  |
|--|-------|--|--|
| X  | F1    |  |  |
| 10   | 78    |  |  |
| 10.1   | 79.81 |  |  |
| 10.2   | 81.64 |  |  |
| 10.3   | 83.49 |  |  |
| 10.4   | 85.36 |  |  |
| 10.5   | 87.25 |  |  |
| 10.6   | 89.16 |  |  |
| 10.7   | 91.09 |  |  |
| 10   |       |  |  |
| Zoom <input type="button" value="Left"/> <input type="button" value="Right"/> Size   Defn   Column |       |  |  |

Zoom options



In Numeric view, zoom options are available from two sources as follows:

- Keyboard
- **Zoom** menu in Numeric view

 **NOTE:** Any zooming you do in Numeric view does not affect Plot view, and vice versa. However, if you choose a zoom option from the **Views** menu (  ) while you are in Numeric view, Plot view is displayed with the plots zoomed accordingly. In other words, the zoom options on the **Views** menu apply only to Plot view.

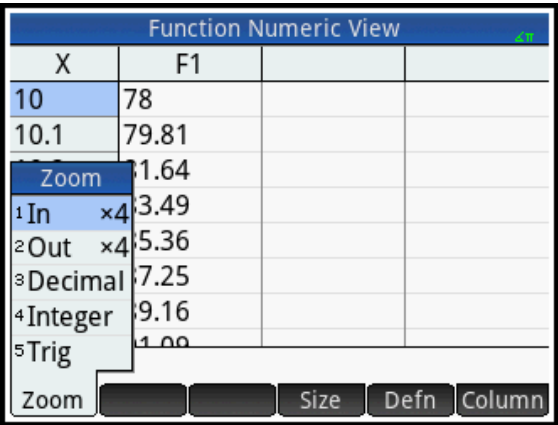
Zooming in Numeric view automatically changes the **numstep** value in the Numeric Setup view.

Zoom keys



There are two zoom keys: pressing  zooms in and pressing  zooms out. The extent of the scaling is determined by the numzoom setting (explained previously).

Zoom menu

In Numeric view, tap **Zoom**, and then tap an option.






The zoom options are explained in the following table.



| Option  | Result  |
|---------|---|
| In      | The increment between consecutive values of the independent variable becomes the current value divided by the <b>numzoom</b> setting. (Shortcut: press  .)     |
| Out     | The increment between consecutive values of the independent variable becomes the current value multiplied by the <b>numzoom</b> setting. (Shortcut: press  .) |
| Decimal | Restores the default <b>numstart</b> and <b>numstep</b> values: 0 and 0.1 respectively.   |
| Integer | The increment between consecutive values of the independent variable is set to 1.   |
| Trig    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the angle measure setting is radians, sets the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable to <math>\pi/24</math> (approximately 0.1309).</li></ul>                               |

| Option    | Result   |
|-----------|--|
|           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the angle measure setting is degrees, sets the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable to 7.5.</li> </ul> |
| Undo Zoom | Returns the display to the previous settings ( <b>numstart</b> and <b>numstep</b> values).   |
|           | <b>NOTE:</b> This option is only available after a zoom operation has been performed.  |





## Evaluating

You can step through the table of evaluations in Numeric view by pressing  or . You can also quickly jump to an evaluation by entering the independent variable of interest in the independent variable column and tapping .

For example, suppose in the Symbolic view of the Function app, you have defined  $F1(X)$  as  $(X - 1)^2 - 3$ . Suppose further that you want to know what the value of that function is when  $X$  is 625.



1. Open Numeric view (  ).
2. Anywhere in the independent column—the left-most column—enter 625.
3. Tap .

Numeric view is refreshed, with the value you entered in the first row and the result of the evaluation in a cell to the right. In this example, the result is 389373.

| Function Numeric View   |            |  |  |
|---|------------|--|--|
| X   | F1         |  |  |
| 625   | 389,373    |  |  |
| 625.1   | 389,497.81 |  |  |
| 625.2   | 389,622.64 |  |  |
| 625.3   | 389,747.49 |  |  |
| 625.4   | 389,872.36 |  |  |
| 625.5   | 389,997.25 |  |  |
| 625.6   | 390,122.16 |  |  |
| 625.7   | 390,247.09 |  |  |
| 625   |            |  |  |
|     |            |  |  |



## Custom tables

If you choose **Automatic** for the **numtype** setting, the table of evaluations in Numeric view will follow the settings in the Numeric Setup view. That is, the independent variable will start with the **numstart** setting and increment by the **numstep** setting. (These settings are explained in [Common operations in Numeric Setup view on page 87](#).) However, you can choose to build your own table where just the values you enter appear as independent variables.


1. Open Numeric Setup view (   ).

- Choose **BuildYourOwn** from the **numtype** menu.



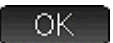

| Function Numeric View   |         |  |  |
|---|---------|--|--|
| X   | F1      |  |  |
| 21  | 397     |  |  |
| 22  | 438     |  |  |
| 100   | 9,798   |  |  |
| 1,000   | 997,998 |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
| <div> <div>Edit</div> <div>Ins</div> <div>Sort</div> <div>Size</div> <div>Defn</div> <div>Column</div> </div> |         |  |  |

- Open Numeric view (  ).  
Numeric view is empty.
- In the independent column—the left-most column—enter a value of interest.
- Tap  .
- If you still have other values to evaluate, repeat from step 4.





## Deleting data

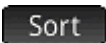


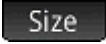




To delete one row of data in your custom table, place the cursor in that row and press  .

To delete all the data in your custom table:

- Press   .
- Tap  or press  to confirm your intention.


## Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons

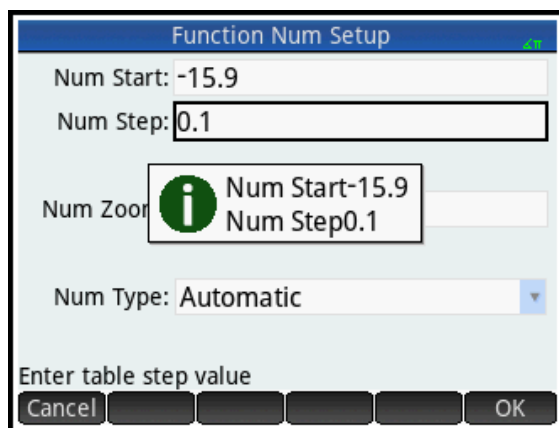
| Button   | Purpose  |
|--|--|
|                         | To modify the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable in the table of evaluations. See <a href="#">Zoom on page 83</a> .  |
| <br>[BuildYourOwn only] | To edit the value in the selected cell.<br><br>To overwrite the value in the selected cell, you can just start entering a new value without first tapping  .<br><br>Only visible if <b>numtype</b> is set to <b>BuildYourOwn</b> . See <a href="#">Custom tables on page 85</a> . |
| <br>[BuildYourOwn only] | To create a new row above the currently highlighted cell, with zero as the independent value. You can immediately start typing a new value.<br><br>Only visible if <b>numtype</b> is set to <b>BuildYourOwn</b> . See <a href="#">Custom tables on page 85</a> .   |

| Button  | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|  | To sort the values in the selected column in ascending or descending order. Move the cursor to the column of interest, tap  , select <b>Ascending</b> or <b>Descending</b> , and then tap  .  |
| [BuildYourOwn only]   | Only visible if <b>numtype</b> is set to <b>BuildYourOwn</b> . See <a href="#">Custom tables on page 85</a> .   |
|  | Lets you choose between small, medium, and large font.  |
|  | Toggles between showing the value of the cell and the definition that generated the value.  |
|  | Displays a menu for you to choose to display the evaluations of 1, 2, 3, or 4 definitions. If you have more than four definitions selected in Symbolic view, you can press  to scroll right and see more columns. Pressing  scrolls the columns left. |

## Common operations in Numeric Setup view


Select the field you want to change and either specify a new value, or if you are choosing a type of table for Numeric view—automatic or build-your-own—choose the appropriate option from the **Num Type** menu.



To help you set a starting number and increment that matches the current Plot view, tap .



## Restoring default settings

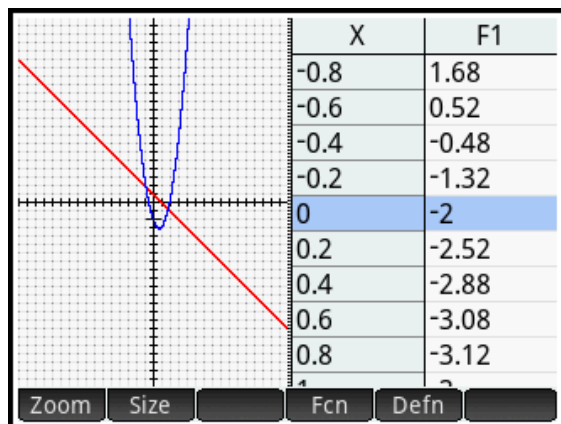
To restore one field to its default setting:

1. Select the field.
2. Press .

To restore all default settings, press  .

## Combining Plot and Numeric Views

You can display Plot view and Numeric view side-by-side. Moving the tracing cursor causes the table of values in Numeric view to scroll. You can also enter a value in the X column. The table scrolls to that value, and the tracing cursor jumps to the corresponding point on the selected plot.



- ▲ To combine Plot and Numeric view in a split screen, press and select **Split Screen: Plot Table**.
- ▲ To return to Plot view, press . To return to Numeric view by pressing .

## Adding a note to an app

You can add a note to an app. Unlike general notes (created via the Note Catalog) an app note is not listed in the Note Catalog. It can only be accessed when the app is open.

An app note remains with the app if the app is sent to another calculator.

To add a note to an app:

1. Open the app.
2. Press .

If a note has already been created for this app, its contents are displayed.

3. Tap and start writing (or editing) your note.

The format and bullet options available are the same as those in the Note Editor.

4. To exit the note screen, press any key. Your note is automatically saved.

## Creating an app

The apps that come with the HP Prime calculator are built in and cannot be deleted. They are always available (simply by pressing ). However, you can create any number of customized instances of most apps. You can also create an instance of an app that is based on a previously customized app. Customized apps are opened from the application library in the same way that you open a built-in app.

The advantage of creating a customized instance of an app is that you can continue to use the built-in app for some other problem and return to the customized app at any time with all its data still in place. For example,

you could create a customized version of the Sequence app that enables you to generate and explore the Fibonacci series. You could continue to use the built-in Sequence app to build and explore other sequences and return, as needed, to your special version of the Sequence app when you next want to explore the Fibonacci series. Or you could create a customized version of the Solve app—named, for example, Triangles—in which you set up, just once, the equations for solving common problems involving right-angled triangles (such as  $H = O/\sin(\theta)$ ,  $A = H \cdot \cos(\theta)$ ,  $O = A \cdot \tan(\theta)$ , and so on). You could continue to use the Solve app to solve other types of problems but use your Triangle app to solve problems involving right-angled triangles. Just open Triangles, select which equation to use—you won't need to re-enter them—enter the variables you know, and then solve for the unknown variable.

Like built-in apps, customized apps can be sent to another HP Prime calculator. Customized apps can also be reset, deleted, and sorted just as built-in apps can (as explained earlier in this chapter).

Note that the only apps that cannot be customized are the following:

- Linear Explorer
- Quadratic Explorer
- Trig Explorer

## Example

Suppose you want to create a customized app that is based on the built-in Sequence app. The app will enable you to generate and explore the Fibonacci series.

1. Press **Apps Info** and use the cursor keys to highlight the Sequence app. Don't open the app.



2. Tap **Save**. This enables you to create a copy of the built-in app and save it under a new name. Any data already in the built-in app is retained, and you can return to it later by opening the Sequence app.

3. In the Name field, enter a name for your new app—say, *Fibonacci*—and press  twice.

Your new app is added to the Application Library. Note that it has the same icon as the parent app—Sequence—but with the name you gave it: **Fibonacci** in this example.



4. You are now ready to use this app just as you would the built-in Sequence app. Tap on the icon of your new app to open it. You will see in it all the same views and options as in the parent app.

In this example we have used the Fibonacci series as a potential topic for a customized app. The Fibonacci series can be created inside the Sequence app—or an app based on the Sequence app.

As well as cloning a built-in app—as described above—you can modify the internal workings of a customized app using the HP Prime programming language.

## App functions and variables

### Functions

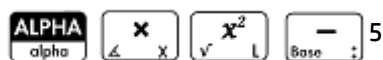
App functions are used in HP apps to perform common calculations. For example, in the Function app, the Plot view **Fcn** menu has a function called **SLOPE** that calculates the slope of a given function at a given point. The **SLOPE** function can also be used from the Home view or a program.

For example, suppose you want to find the derivative of  $x^2 - 5$  at  $x = 2$ . One way, using an app function, is as follows:

1. Press .
2. Tap  and select **Function > SLOPE**.

**SLOPE()** appears on the entry line, ready for you to specify the function and the x-value.


3. Enter the function:



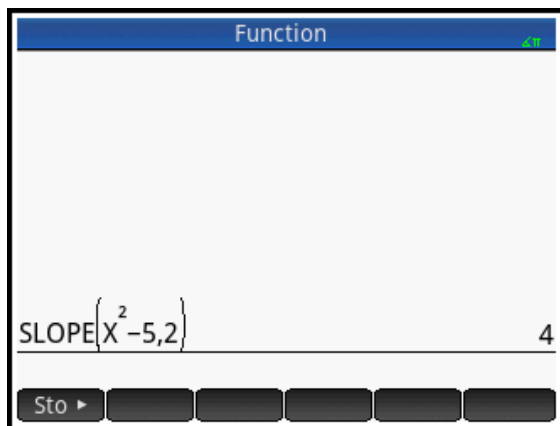
4. Enter the parameter separator:





5. Enter the x-value and press  .

The slope (that is the derivative) at  $x = 2$  is calculated: 4.



## Variables

All apps have variables, that is, placeholders for various values that are unique to a particular app. These include symbolic expressions and equations, settings for the Plot and Numeric views, and the results of some calculations such as roots and intersections.

Suppose you are in Home view and want to retrieve the mean of a data set recently calculated in the Statistics 1Var app.

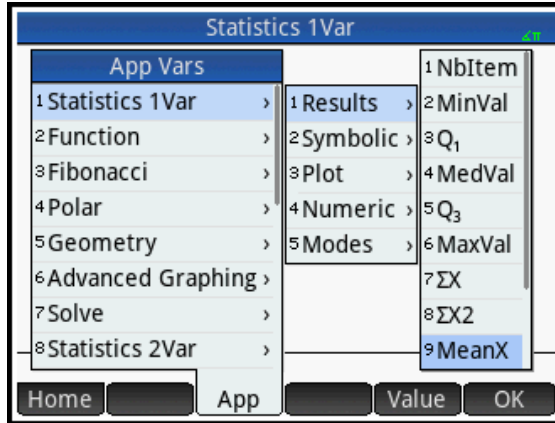
1. Press  .

This opens the Variables menu. From here you can access Home variables, user-defined variables, and app variables.

2. Tap  .

This opens a menu of app variables.

3. Select **Statistics 1Var** > **results** > **MeanX**.



The current value of the variable you chose now appears on the entry line. You can press

**Enter**  
≈

to see its value. Or you can include the variable in an expression that you are building. For example, if you wanted to calculate the square root of the mean computed in the Statistics 1Var app, you would

first press **Shift**  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$ , follow steps 1 to 3 above, and then press **Enter** ≈ .

## Qualifying variables

You can qualify the name of any app variable so that it can be accessed from anywhere on the HP Prime calculator. For example, both the Function app and the Parametric app have an variable named **Xmin**. If the app you last had open was the Parametric app and enter **Xmin** in Home view, you will get the value of **Xmin** from the Parametric app. To get the value of **Xmin** in the Function app instead, you could open the Function app and then return to Home view. Alternatively, you could qualify the name of the variable by preceding it with the app name and a period, as in **Function.Xmin**.

## 7 Function app

The Function app enables you to explore up to 10 real-valued, rectangular functions of  $y$  in terms of  $x$ ; for example,  $y = 1 - x$  and  $y = (x - 1)^2 - 3$ .

Once you have defined a function you can do the following:

- Create graphs to find roots, intercepts, slope, signed area, and extrema
- Create tables that show how functions are evaluated at particular values

This chapter demonstrates the basic functions of the Function app by stepping you through an example. The HP Prime calculator can perform more complex functions.

### Getting started with the Function app

The Function app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric.

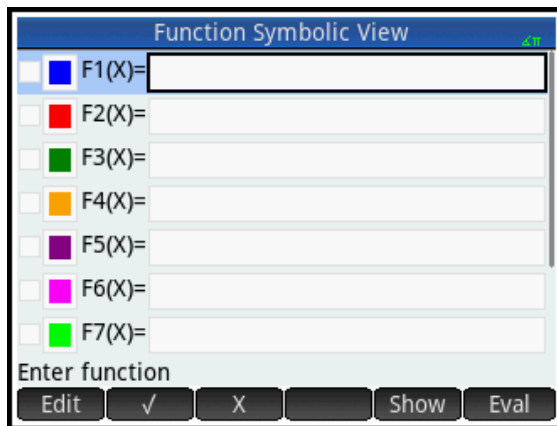
The standard Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric view menu buttons are available.

Throughout this chapter, we will explore the linear function  $y = 1 - x$  and the quadratic function  $y = (x - 1)^2 - 3$ .

### Opening the Function app

- ▲ Press **Apps** **Info**, and then select Function to open the **Function** app.

Remember that you can open an app by tapping its icon. You can also open it by using the cursor keys to highlight it and then pressing **Enter**  $\approx$ .



The Function app starts in Symbolic view. This is the “defining view.” It is where you symbolically define (that is, specify) the functions you want to explore.

The graphical and numerical data you see in Plot view and Numeric view are derived from the symbolic expressions defined here.

## Defining the expressions

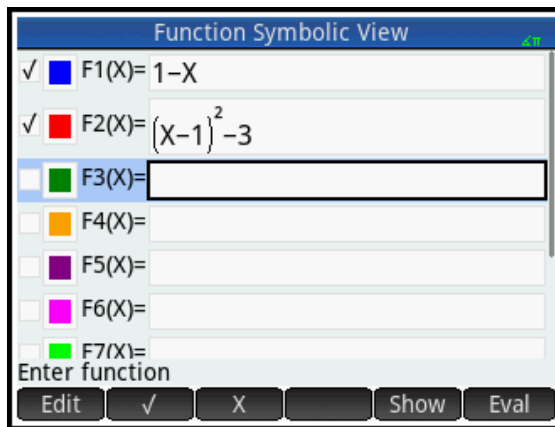
There are 10 fields for defining functions. These are labeled F1(X) through F9(X) and F0(X).




1. Highlight the field you want to use, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it. If you are entering a new expression, just start typing. If you are editing an existing expression, tap **Edit** and make your changes. When you have finished defining or changing the expression, press **Enter**.

2. Enter the linear function in F1(X).



3. Enter the quadratic function in F2(X).



 **NOTE:** You can tap the **X** button to assist in the entry of equations. In the Function app, it has the same effect as pressing . (In other apps,  enters a different character.)

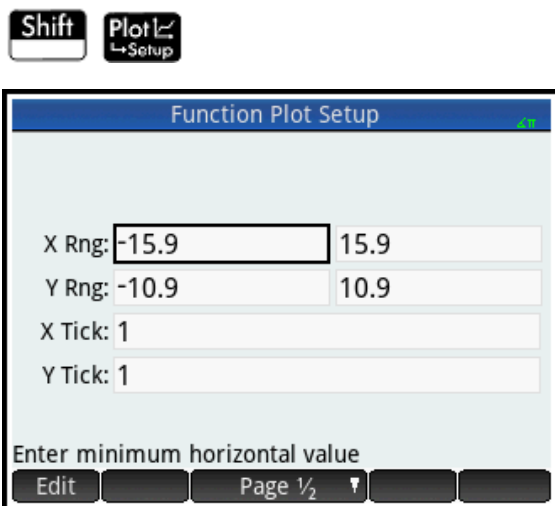
4. Do one of the following:
  - Give one or more functions a custom color when it is plotted.
  - Evaluate a dependent function.
  - Deselect a definition you do not want to explore.
  - Incorporate variables, math commands, and CAS commands in a definition.

For the sake of simplicity we can ignore these operations in this example. However, they can be useful and are common Symbolic view operations.

## Setting up a plot

You can change the range of the x- and y-axes and the spacing of the tick marks along the axes.

- ▲ Display Plot Setup view.

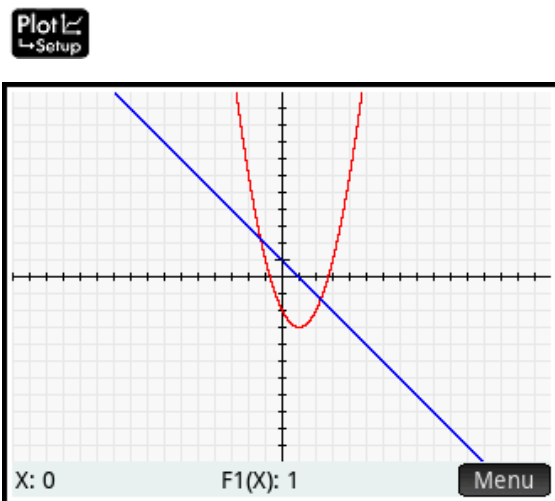


For this example, you can leave the plot settings at their default values. If your settings do not match those in the illustration above, press **Shift** **Esc** to restore the default values.

You can use the common Plot view operations to change the appearance of plots.

## Plotting a function

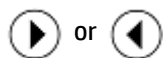
- ▲ Plot the function.



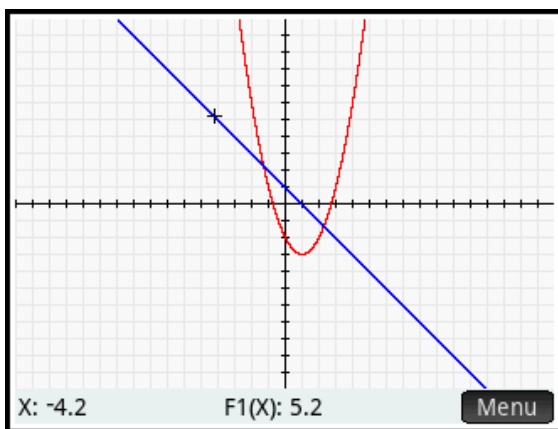
## Tracing a graph

By default, the trace function is active. This enables you to move a cursor along a graph. If more than two graphs are shown, the graph that is the highest in the list of functions in Symbolic view is the graph that will be traced by default. Since the linear equation is higher than the quadratic function in Symbolic view, it is the graph on which the tracing cursor appears by default.

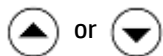
1. Trace the linear function.



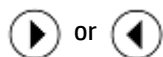
Note how a cursor moves along the plot as you press the buttons. Note too that the coordinates of the cursor appear at the bottom of the screen and change as you move the cursor.



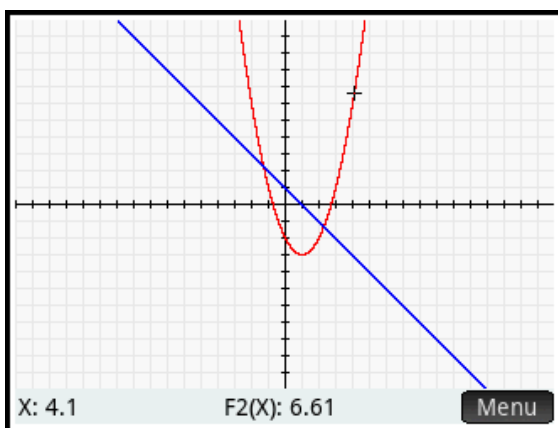
2. Move the tracing cursor from the linear function to the quadratic function.



3. Trace the quadratic function.







Again notice how the coordinates of the cursor appear at the bottom of the screen and change as you move the cursor.



## Changing the scale


You can change the scale to see more or less of your graph. This can be done in four ways:

- Press  to zoom in or  to zoom out on the current cursor position. This method uses the zoom factors set in the **Zoom** menu. The default for both x and y is 2.
- Use the Plot Setup view to specify the exact x-range (**X RNG**) and y-range (**Y RNG**) you want.
- Use options on the **Zoom** menu to zoom in or out, horizontally or vertically, or both..
- Use options on the **View** menu (  ) to select a predefined view. Note that the **Autoscale** option attempts to provide a best fit, showing as many of the critical features of each plot as possible.

 **NOTE:** By dragging a finger horizontally or vertically across the screen, you can quickly see parts of the plot that are initially outside the set x and y ranges. This is easier than resetting the range of an axis.

## Displaying Numeric view

- ▲ Display the Numeric view.



| X   | F1  | F2    |  |
|-----|-----|-------|--|
| 0   | 1   | -2    |  |
| 0.1 | 0.9 | -2.19 |  |
| 0.2 | 0.8 | -2.36 |  |
| 0.3 | 0.7 | -2.51 |  |
| 0.4 | 0.6 | -2.64 |  |
| 0.5 | 0.5 | -2.75 |  |
| 0.6 | 0.4 | -2.84 |  |
| 0.7 | 0.3 | -2.91 |  |
| 0   |     |       |  |

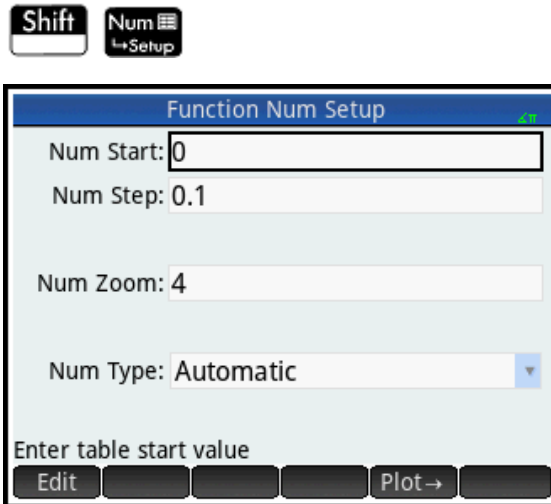
0

Zoom   Size   Defn   Column

The Numeric view displays data generated by the expressions you defined in Symbolic view. For each expression selected in Symbolic view, Numeric view displays the value that results when the expression is evaluated for various x-values.

## Setting up Numeric view

1. Display the Numeric Setup view.

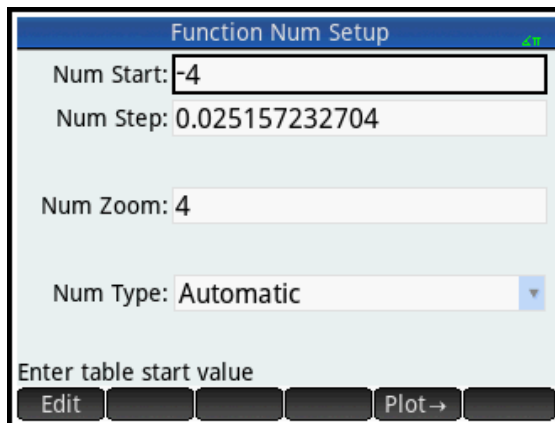


You can set the starting value and step value (that is, the increment) for the x-column, as well as the zoom factor for zooming in or out on a row of the table. Note that in Numeric view, zooming does not affect the size of what is displayed. Instead, it changes the **Num Step** setting (that is, the increment between consecutive x-values). Zooming in decreases the increment; zooming out increases the increment.

You can also choose whether the table of data in Numeric view is automatically populated or whether it is populated by you typing in the particular x-values you are interested in. These options—**Automatic** or **BuildYourOwn**—are available from the **Num Type** list. These are custom table options.

2. Press **Shift** **Esc** to reset all the settings to their defaults.
3. Make the Numeric view X-column settings (**Num Start** and **Num Step**) match the tracer x-values (Xmin and pixel width) in Plot view.

Tap **Plot→** **OK**.



For example, if you have zoomed in on the plot in Plot view so that the visible x-range is now  $-4$  to  $4$ , this option will set **Num Start** to  $-4$  and **Num Step** to  $0.025\dots$



## Exploring Numeric view

- ▲ Display Numeric view.



| Function Numeric View |           |           |             |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| X                     | F1        | F2        |             |
| -4                    | 5         | 22        |             |
| -3.9748               | 4.9748428 | 21.749061 |             |
| -3.9497               | 4.9496855 | 21.499387 |             |
| -3.9245               | 4.9245283 | 21.250979 |             |
| -3.8994               | 4.8993711 | 21.003837 |             |
| -3.8742               | 4.8742138 | 20.757961 |             |
| -3.8491               | 4.8490566 | 20.51335  |             |
| -3.8239               | 4.8228004 | 20.270005 |             |
| -4                    |           |           |             |
| Zoom                  |           | Size      | Defn Column |

## Navigating a table

- ▲ Using the cursor keys, scroll through the values in the independent column (column X). Note that the values in the F1 and F2 columns match what you would get if you substituted the values in the X column for x in the expressions selected in Symbolic view:  $1 - x$  and  $(x - 1)^2 - 3$ . You can also scroll through the columns of the dependent variables (labeled F1 and F2 in the following figure).






You can also scroll the table vertically or horizontally using tap and drag gestures.

| Function Numeric View |           |           |             |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| X                     | F1        | F2        |             |
| -4                    | 5         | 22        |             |
| -3.9748               | 4.9748428 | 21.749061 |             |
| -3.9497               | 4.9496855 | 21.499387 |             |
| -3.9245               | 4.9245283 | 21.250979 |             |
| -3.8994               | 4.8993711 | 21.003837 |             |
| -3.8742               | 4.8742138 | 20.757961 |             |
| -3.8491               | 4.8490566 | 20.51335  |             |
| -3.8239               | 4.8228004 | 20.270005 |             |
| -3.89937106918        |           |           |             |
| Zoom                  |           | Size      | Defn Column |


## Going directly to a value

- ▲ Place the cursor in the X column and type the desired value. For example, to jump straight to the row where  $x = 10$ :


10 

| Function Numeric View    |           |           |  |
|---|-----------|-----------|--|
| X   | F1        | F2        |  |
| 10  | -9        | 78        |  |
| 10.0252   | -9.025157 | 78.453463 |  |
| 10.0503   | -9.050314 | 78.908192 |  |
| 10.0755   | -9.075472 | 79.364187 |  |
| 10.1006   | -9.100629 | 79.821447 |  |
| 10.1258   | -9.125786 | 80.279973 |  |
| 10.1509   | -9.150943 | 80.739765 |  |
| 10.1761   | -9.176101 | 81.200822 |  |
| 10  |           |           |  |
|     |           |           |  |

## Accessing the zoom options

Numerous zoom options are available by tapping . A quick way to zoom in (or zoom out) is to press



(or ). This zooms in (or out) by the **Num Zoom** value set in the Numeric Setup view. The default value is 4. Thus if the current increment (that is, the **Num Step** value) is 0.4, zooming in on the row whose  $x$ -value is 10 will further divide that interval into four smaller intervals. So instead of  $x$ -values of 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2, and so on, the  $x$ -values will be 10, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, and so on. (Zooming out does the opposite: 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2, and so on become 10, 11.6, 13.2, 14.8, 16.4, and so on.)


## Other options

Numeric view menu options include the following:

- Change the size of the font: small, medium, or large
- Display the definition responsible for generating a column of values
- Choose to show 1, 2, 3, or 4 columns of function values.

You can also combine Plot and Numeric view.

## Analyzing functions

The Function menu () in Plot view enables you to find roots, intersections, slopes, signed areas, and extrema for any function defined in the Function app. If you have more than one function plotted, you may need to choose the function of interest beforehand.

## Displaying the Plot view menu

The **Function** menu is a sub-menu of the Plot view menu. First, display the Plot view menu:

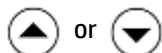


Menu

## Finding a root of a quadratic equation

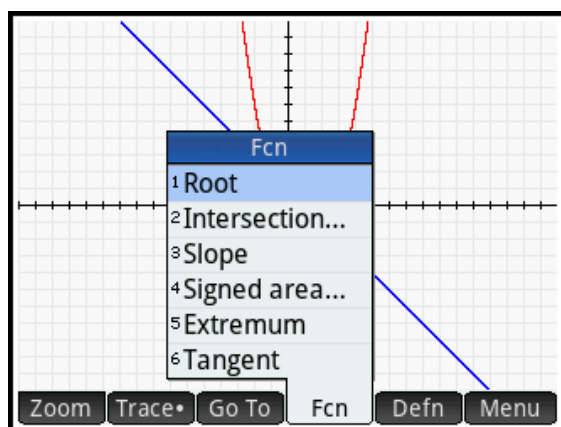
Suppose you want to find the root of the quadratic equation defined earlier. Since a quadratic equation can have more than one root, you will need to move the cursor closer to the root you are interested in than to any other root. In this example, you will find the root of the quadratic close to where  $x = 3$ .

1. If it is not already selected, select the quadratic equation:



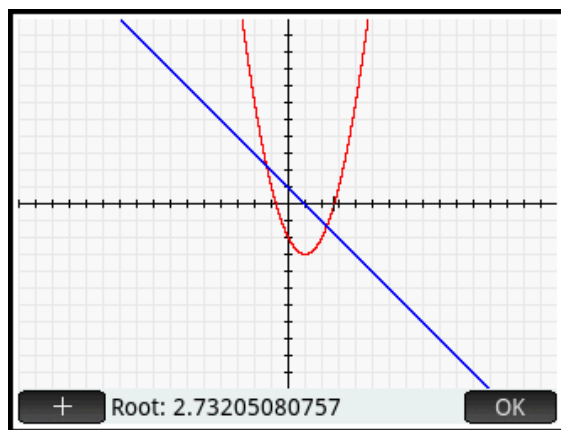
2. Press  or  to move the cursor near to where  $x = 3$ .


3. Tap **Fcn** and select **Root**.



The root is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

If you now move the trace cursor close to  $x = -1$  (the other place where the quadratic crosses the x-axis) and select **Root** again, the other root is displayed.



Note the  button. If you tap this button, vertical and horizontal dotted lines are drawn through the current position of the tracer to highlight its position. Use this feature to draw attention to the cursor location. You can also choose a blinking cursor in Plot Setup. Note that the functions in the **Fcn** menu all use the current function being traced as the function of interest and the current tracer x-coordinate as an initial value. Finally, note that you can tap anywhere in Plot view and the tracer will move to the point on the current function that has the same x-value as the location you tapped. This is a faster way of choosing a point of interest than using the trace cursor. (You can move this tracing cursor using the cursor keys if you need finer precision.)



## Finding an intersection of two functions

Just as there are two roots of the quadratic equation, there are two points at which both functions intersect. As with roots, you need to position your cursor closer to the point you are interested in. In this example, the intersection close to  $x = -1$  will be determined.

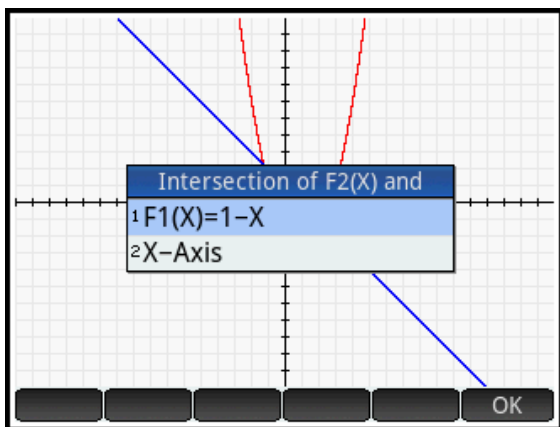
The **Go To** command is another way of moving the trace cursor to a particular point.

1. Tap **OK** to re-display the menu, tap **Go To**, enter  $\frac{+/-}{(x)}$  1, and tap **OK**.

The tracing cursor will now be on one of the functions at  $x = 1$ .

2. Tap **Fcn** and select **Intersection**.

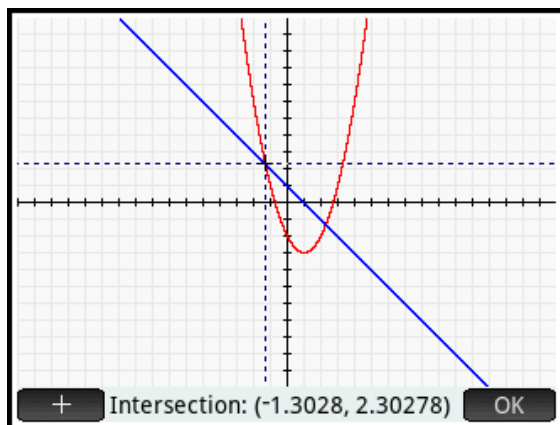
A list appears giving you a choice of functions and axes.



3. Select the function that has the point of intersection with the currently selected function you wish to find.

The coordinates of the intersection are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Tap **+** on the screen near the intersection, and repeat from step 2. The coordinates of the intersection nearest to where you tapped are displayed at the bottom of the screen.



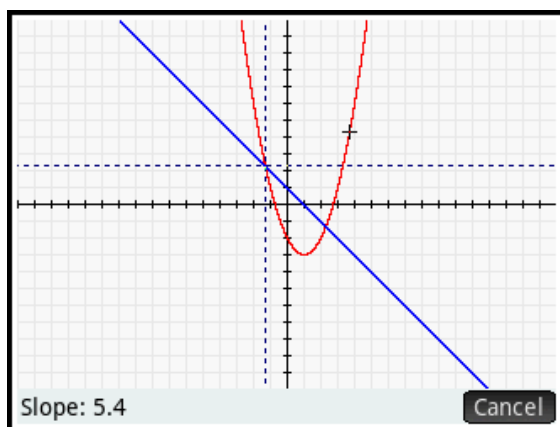
### Finding the slope of a quadratic equation

To find the slope of the quadratic function at the intersection point:

1. Tap **OK** to display the menu, tap **Fcn**, and then select **Slope**.

The slope (that is, the gradient) of the function at the intersection point is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

You can press **◀** or **▶** to trace along the curve and see the slope at other points. You can also press **▼** or **▲** to jump to another function and see the slope at points on it.



2. Press **Cancel** to display the Plot menu.

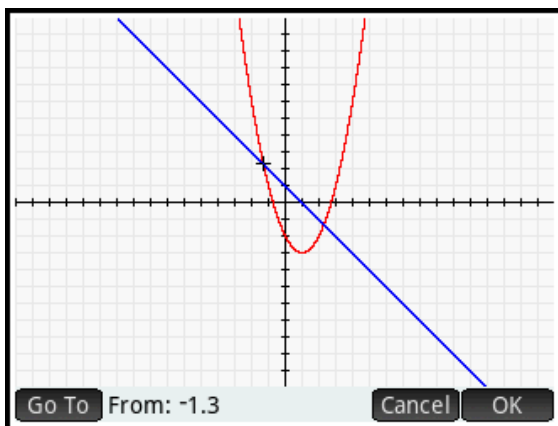
## Finding the signed area between two functions

To find the area between the two functions in the range  $-1.3 \leq x \leq 2.3$ :

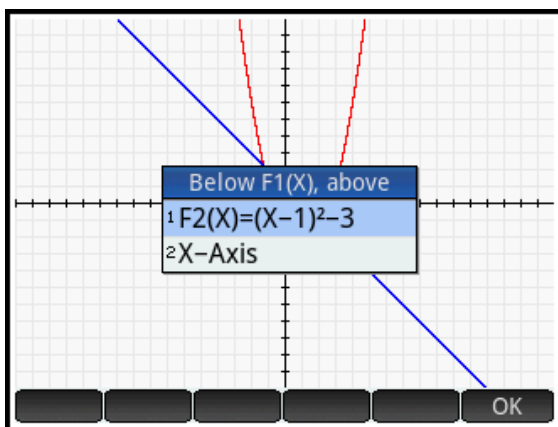
1. Tap **Fcn** and select **Signed area**.

2. Specify the start value for x.

Tap **Go To** and press  $\frac{+/-}{|x|}$  1  $\frac{\bullet}{=}$  3 **Enter** .



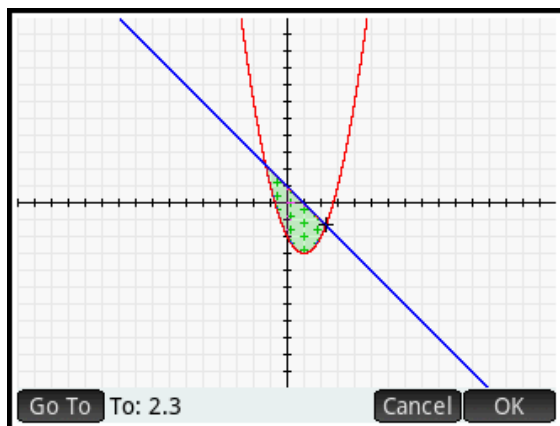
3. Tap **OK** .
4. Select the other function as the boundary for the integral. (If  $F1(X)$  is the currently selected function, you would choose  $F2(X)$  here, and vice versa.)



5. Specify the end value for x.

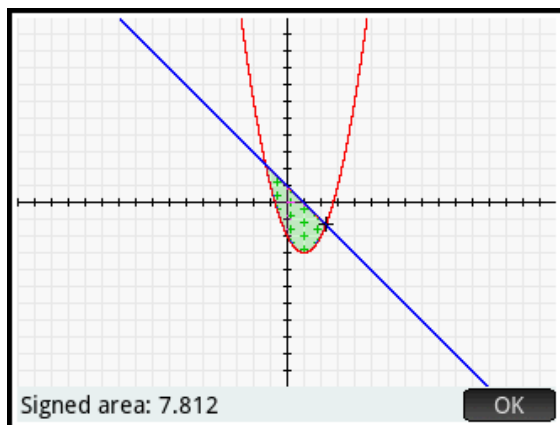
Tap **Go To** and press 2  $\frac{\cdot}{=}$  3 **Enter** .

The cursor jumps to  $x = 2.3$  and the area between the two functions is shaded.




6. To display the numerical value of the integral, tap **OK** .

7. Tap **OK** to return to the Plot menu. Note that the sign of the area calculated depends both on which function you are tracing and whether you enter the endpoints from left to right or right to left.



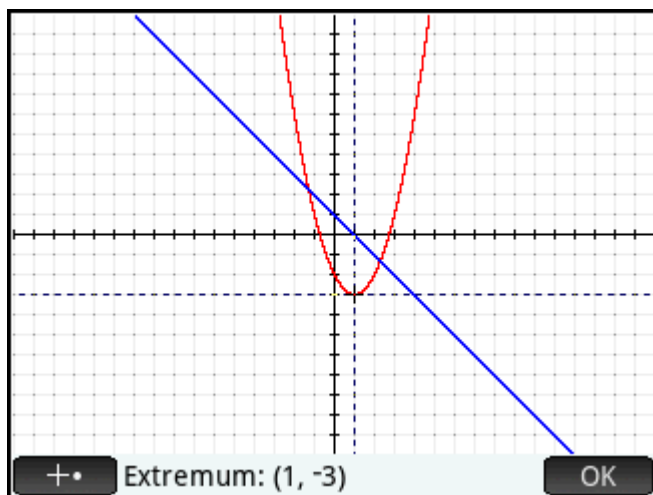
---

 **TIP:** When the **Goto** option is available, you can display the **Go To** screen simply by typing a number. The number you type appears on the entry line. Just tap **OK** to accept it.


---

## Finding the extremum of the quadratic equation

- ▲ To calculate the coordinates of the extremum of the quadratic equation, move the tracing cursor near the extremum of interest (if necessary), tap **Fcn** and select **Extremum**.





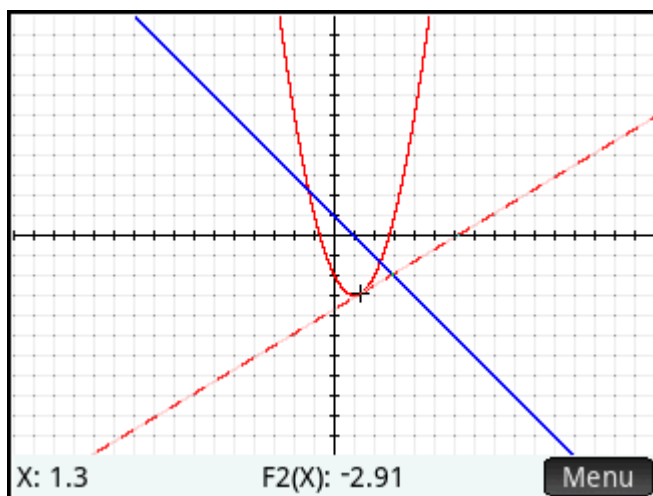
The coordinates of the extremum are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

 **NOTE:** The **ROOT**, **INTERSECTION**, and **EXTREMUM** operations return only one value even if the function in question has more than one root, intersection, or extremum. The app will only return values that are closest to the cursor. You will need to move the cursor closer to other roots, intersections, or extrema if you want the app to calculate values for those.

## Adding a tangent to a function

To add a tangent to a function through the trace point:

1. Use  or  to move the tracer to the function.
2. Tap **Fcn**, and then select **Tangent**. The tangent is drawn as you move the tracer. This option is a toggle; select it again to remove the tangent.






## Defining functions in terms of derivatives or integrals

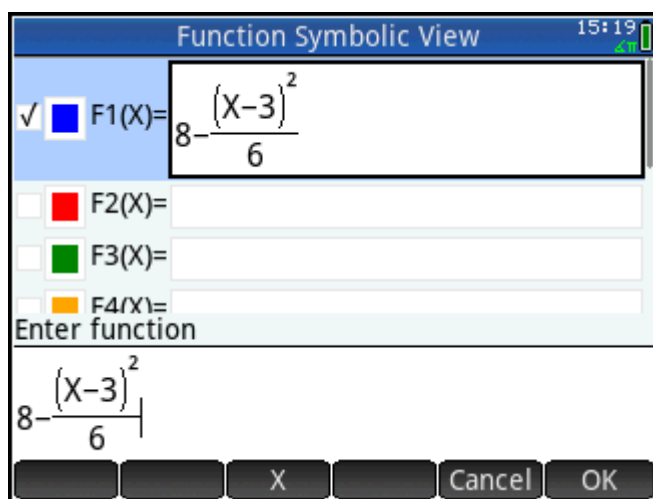
The Function app accepts functions defined in terms of derivatives or integrals. This section describes the methods for each of these cases, with examples.


## Functions defined by derivatives

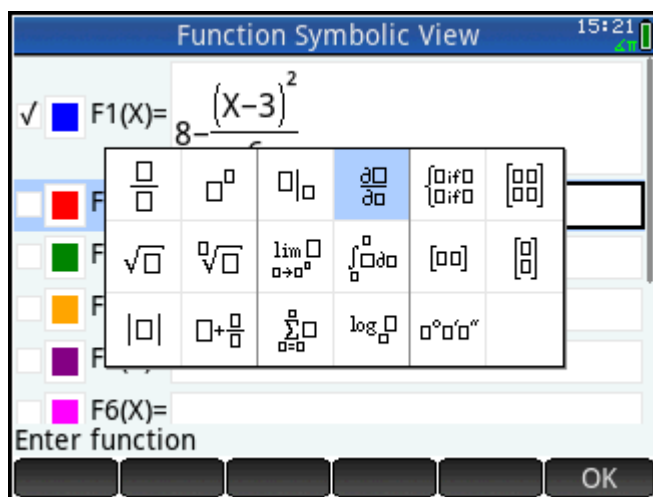
Suppose we wish to plot the graph of the function  $f(x)$ , defined by  $f(x) = \frac{\delta(8 - (x-3)^2/6)}{\delta x}$ . We could

enter this function directly, but here we define the function  $g - \frac{(x-3)^2}{6}$  as F1(X) and its derivative in F2(X).

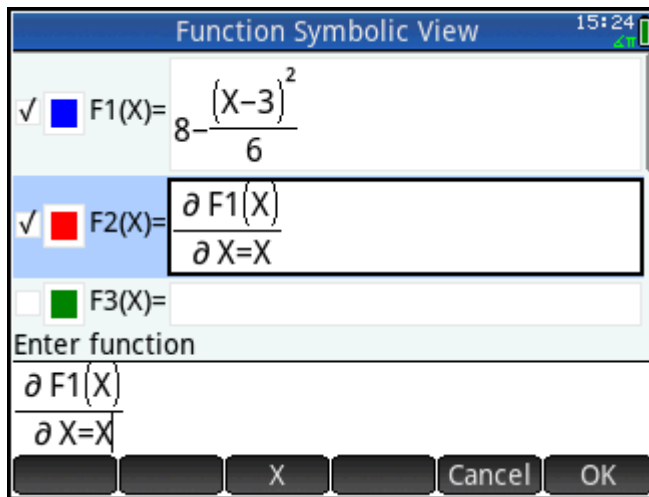
1. Press  to go to the Symbolic view.
2. Select the F1(X) field and enter the function as shown in the following figure.




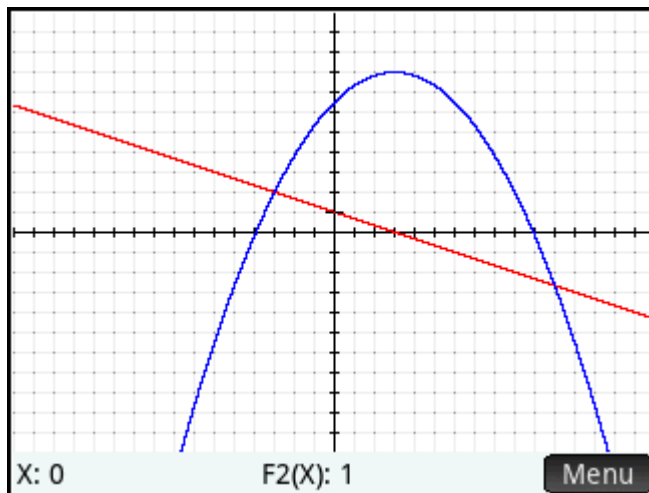
3. Select the F2(X) field, press  to open the template menu, and then select the derivative template.






4. Enter the numerator as F1(X).
5. Outside of the CAS, this template is used to find the derivative of a function at a point. In this case, the denominator is of the form  $X = a$ , where  $a$  is a real number. In order to indicate our more formal preference here, we enter the denominator as  $X = X$ , as shown in the following figure.



6. Press  to see the graphs of both the function (in blue) and its derivative (in red) in the default window.





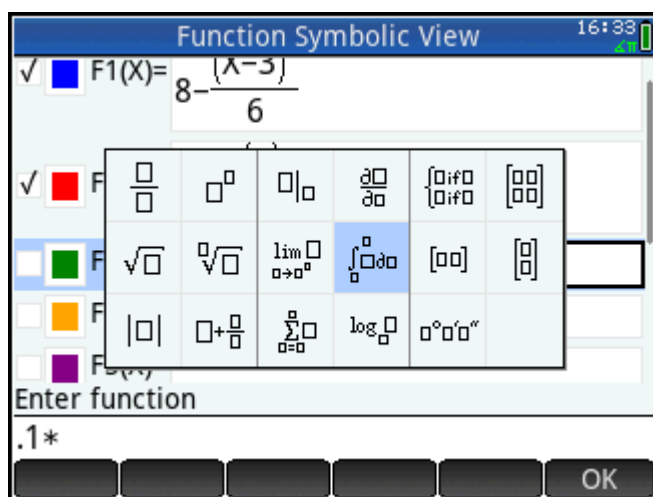
7. Press  to see a table of values for both the function and its derivative.

| Function Numeric View   |           |            |  |
|---|-----------|------------|--|
| X   | F1        | F2         |  |
| 0   | 6.5       | 1          |  |
| 1   | 7.3333333 | 6.66667E-1 |  |
| 2   | 7.8333333 | 3.33333E-1 |  |
| 3   | 8         | 0          |  |
| 4   | 7.8333333 | -3.3333E-1 |  |
| 5   | 7.3333333 | -6.6667E-1 |  |
| 6   | 6.5       | -1         |  |
| 7   | 5.2222222 | -1.22222   |  |
| 0   |           |            |  |
| Zoom   Size   Defn   Column |           |            |  |

## Functions defined by integrals

Now, define F3(X) as  $0.1 \cdot \int_0^X F1(T) \delta T$ .

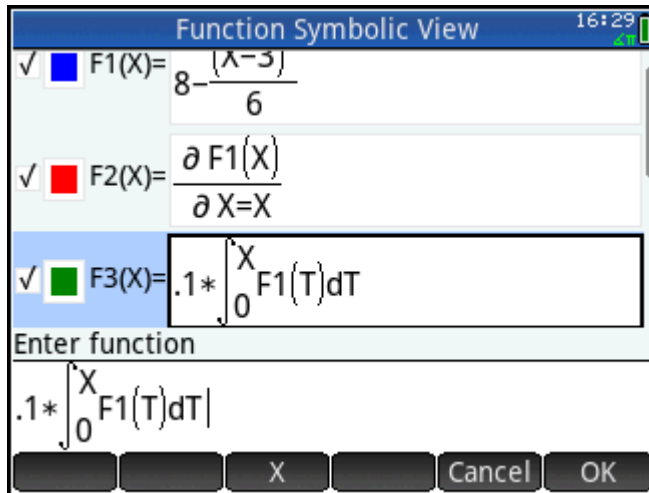
- Return to the Symbolic view, select F3(X), and enter  $0.1 \cdot \int_0^X$  .
- Press  to open the template menu and select the integral template.




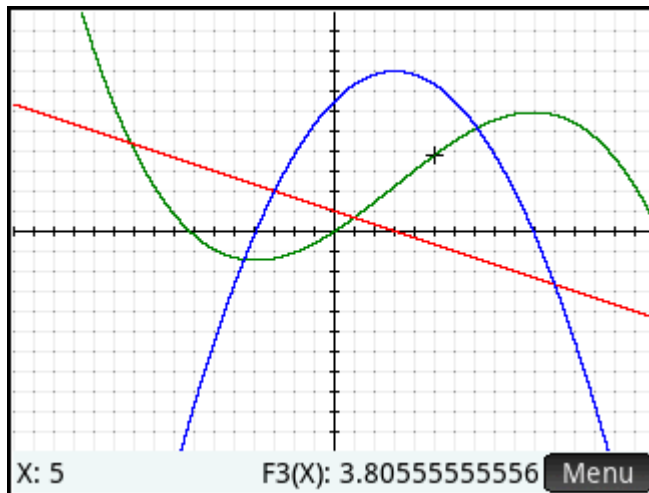
The screenshot shows the 'Function Symbolic View' window. At the top, it displays 'F1(X) =  $8 - \frac{(X-3)}{6}$ '. Below this, there is a list of functions: F1 (blue), F2 (red), F3 (green), F4 (orange), and F5 (purple). The 'Enter function' field shows '.1\*'. A template menu is open, displaying various mathematical symbols and operators. The integral symbol  $\int$  is highlighted in blue. The menu also includes options for differentiation, limits, summation, and logarithms. At the bottom right, there is an 'OK' button.

- Enter 0 for the lower limit and X for the upper limit.

4. Enter the rest of your information in the template, as shown in the following figure.



5. Press  to see the integral function plotted in green.



## Function variables

The result of each numerical analysis in the Function app is assigned to a variable. These variables are named as follows:

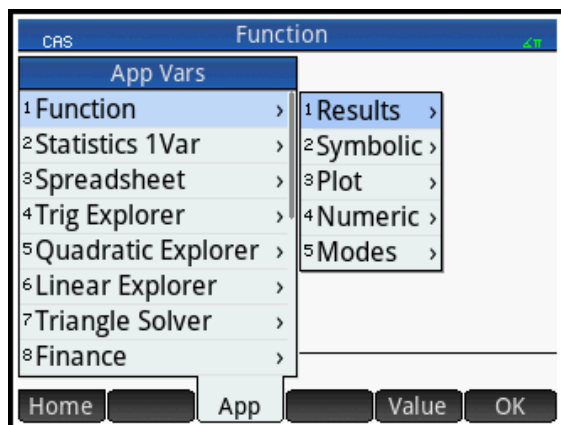
- Root
- Isect (for Intersection)
- Slope
- SignedArea
- Extremum

The result of each new analysis overwrites the previous result. For example, if you find the second root of a quadratic equation after finding the first, the value of Root changes from the first to the second root.

## Accessing function variables

The Function variables are available in Home view and in the CAS, where they can be included as arguments in calculations. They are also available in Symbolic view.

1. To access the variables, press **Vars**, tap **App**, and then select **Function**.
2. Select **Results** and then the variable of interest.

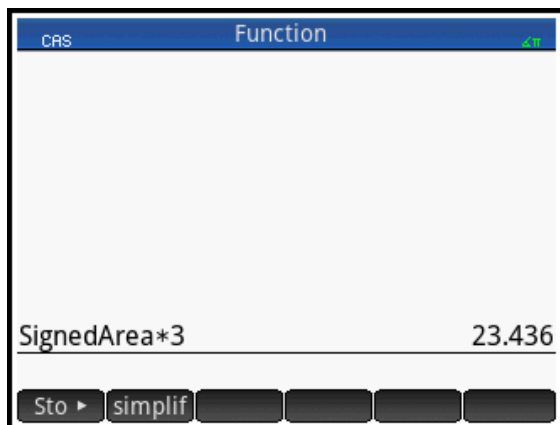


The variable's name is copied to the insertion point and its value is used in evaluating the expression that contains it. You can also enter the value of the variable instead of its name by tapping **Value**.

For example, in Home view or the CAS you could select **SignedArea** from the **Vars** menus, press  $\times$  3



and get the current value of **SignedArea** multiplied by three.



Function variables can also be made part of a function's definition in Symbolic view. For example, you could define a function as  $x^2 - x - \text{Root}$ .

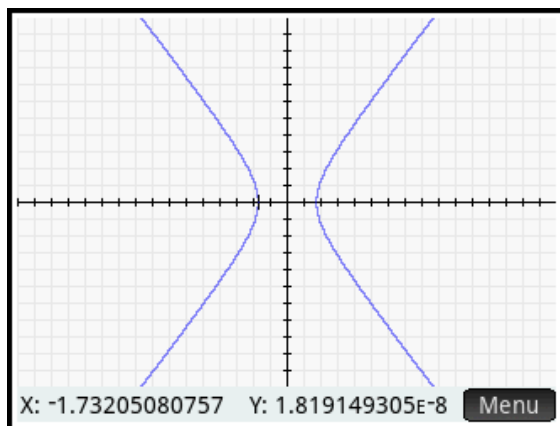
## Summary of FCN operations

| Operation    | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Root         | Select <b>Root</b> to find the root of the current function nearest to the tracing cursor. If no root is found, but only an extremum, then the result is labeled <b>Extremum</b> instead of <b>Root</b> . The cursor is moved to the root value on the x-axis and the resulting x-value is saved in a variable named <b>Root</b> .   |
| Extremum     | Select <b>Extremum</b> to find the maximum or minimum of the current function nearest to the tracing cursor. The cursor moves to the extremum and the coordinate values are displayed. The resulting x-value is saved in a variable named <b>Extremum</b> .  |
| Slope        | Select <b>Slope</b> to find the numeric derivative of the current function at the current position of the tracing cursor. The result is saved in a variable named <b>Slope</b> .   |
| Signed area  | Select <b>Signed area</b> to find the numeric integral. (If there are two or more expressions selected, then you will be asked to choose the second expression from a list that includes the x-axis.) Select a starting point and an ending point. The result is saved in a variable named <b>SignedArea</b> .   |
| Intersection | Select <b>Intersection</b> to find the intersection of the graph you are currently tracing and another graph. You need to have at least two selected expressions in Symbolic view. Finds the intersection closest to the tracing cursor. Displays the coordinate values and moves the cursor to the intersection. The resulting x-value is saved in a variable named <b>Issect</b> . |

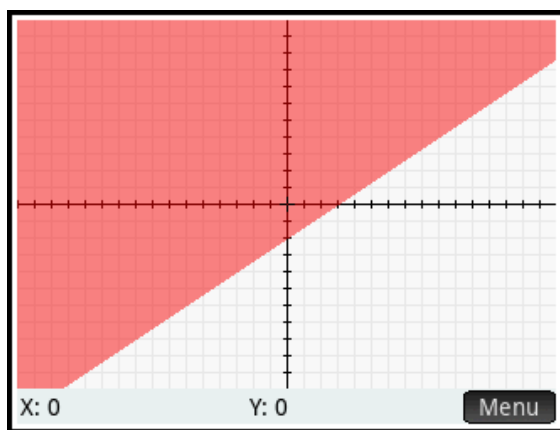
## 8 Advanced Graphing app

The Advanced Graphing app enables you to define and explore the graphs of symbolic open sentences in  $x$ ,  $y$ , both, or neither. You can plot conic sections, polynomials in standard or general form, inequalities, and functions. The following are examples of the sorts of open sentences you can plot:

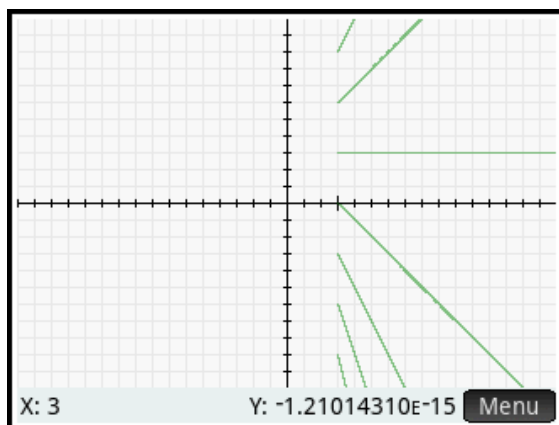
- $x^2/3 - y^2/5 = 1$



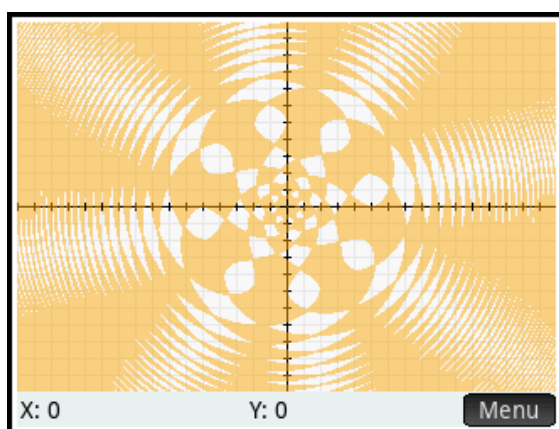
- $2x - 3y \leq 6$



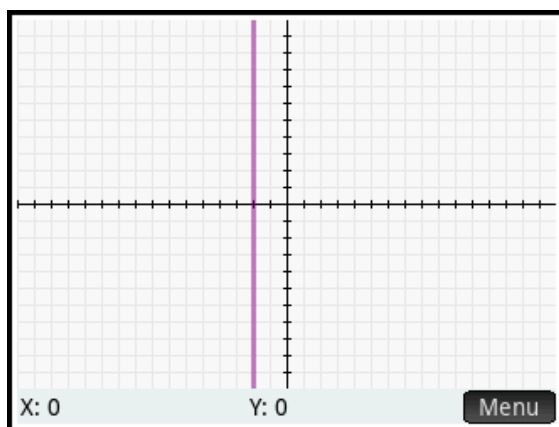
- $y \bmod x = 3$



- $\sin((\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} - 5)^2) > \sin\left(8 \cdot \operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right)$

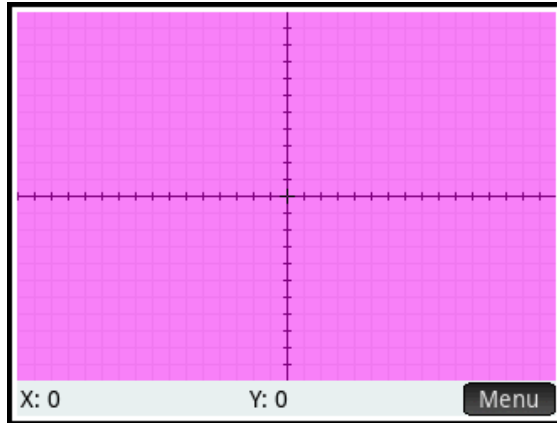


- $x^2 + 4x = -4$





- $1 > 0$



## Getting started with the Advanced Graphing app

The Advanced Graphing app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric.

The Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric view buttons are available.

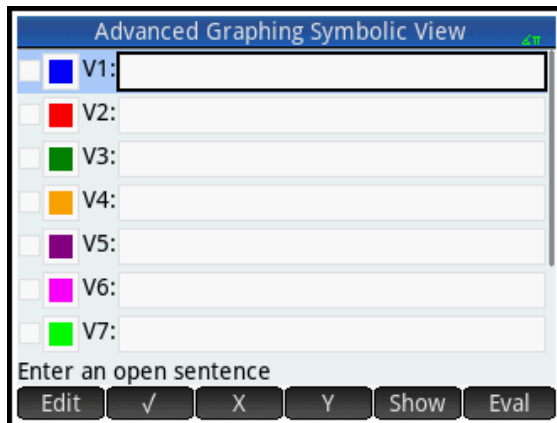
The Trace option in the Advanced Graphing app works differently than in other apps and is described in detail in this chapter.

In this chapter, we will explore the rotated conic defined by the following equation:

$$\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{7xy}{10} + \frac{3y^2}{4} - \frac{x}{10} + \frac{y}{5} - 10 < 0$$

## Opening the Advanced Graphing app

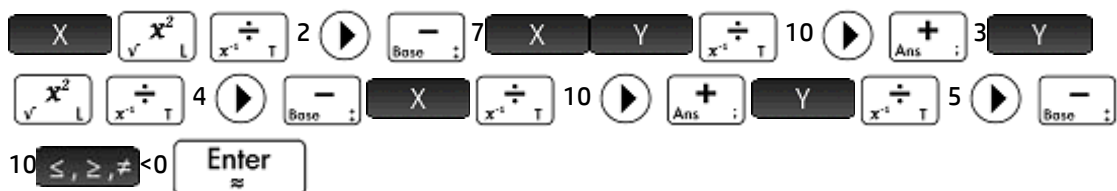
- ▲ Select **Apps** Info, and then select **Advanced Graphing**.



The app opens in the Symbolic view.

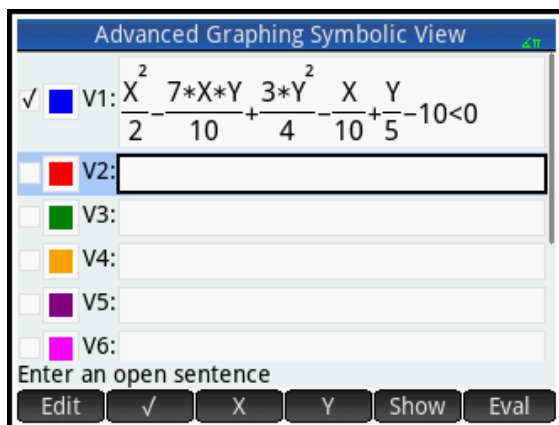
## Defining an open sentence

1. Define the open sentence.



**NOTE:**  $\leq, \geq, \neq$  displays the relations palette from which relational operators can be easily selected.

This is the same palette that appears if you press **Shift**  $\frac{6}{\leq, \geq, \neq}$ .



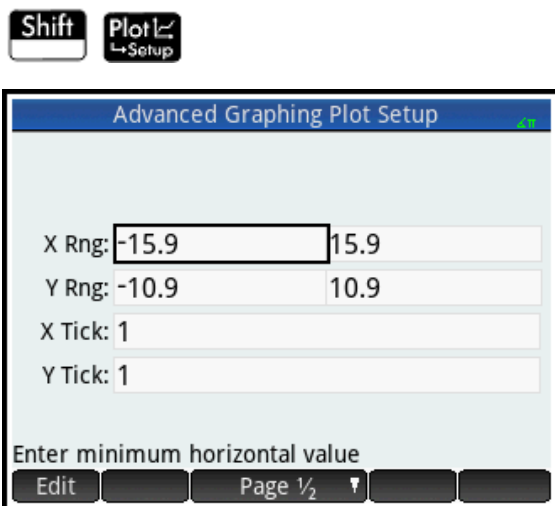
2. Decide if you want to do any of the following:
  - Give an open sentence a custom color when it is plotted
  - Evaluate a dependent function
  - Deselect a definition that you do not want to explore
  - Incorporate variables, math commands and CAS commands in a definition

For the sake of simplicity we can ignore these operations in this example. However, they can be useful and are common Symbolic view operations.

## Setting up the plot

You can change the range of the x- and y-axes and the spacing of the interval marks along the axes.

- ▲ Display Plot Setup view.

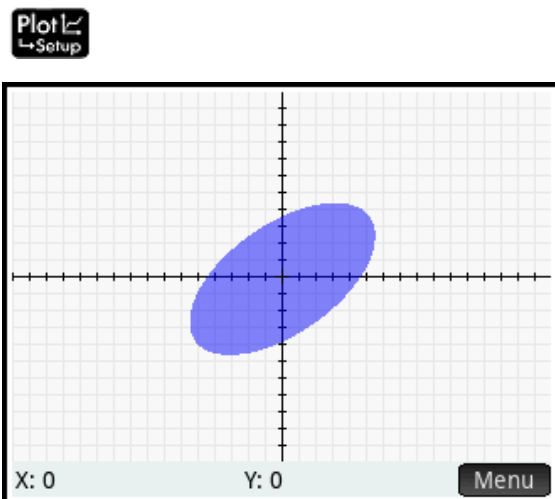


For this example, you can leave the plot settings at their default values. If your settings do not match those in the previous figure, press **Shift** **Esc** to restore the default values.

Common Plot view operations can be used to change the appearance of plots.

## Plotting the selected definitions

- ▲ Plot the selected definitions.



## Exploring the graph

1. Tap **Menu** to display the Plot view menu items.

Note that you have options to zoom, trace, go to a specified point, and display the definition of the selected graph.

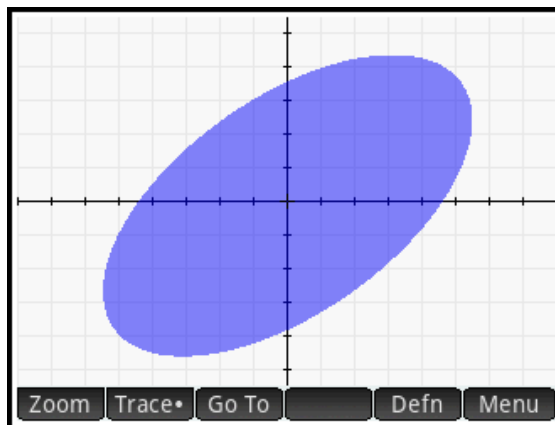
You can use the zoom and split screen functions. You can tap and drag to scroll the Plot view, or use



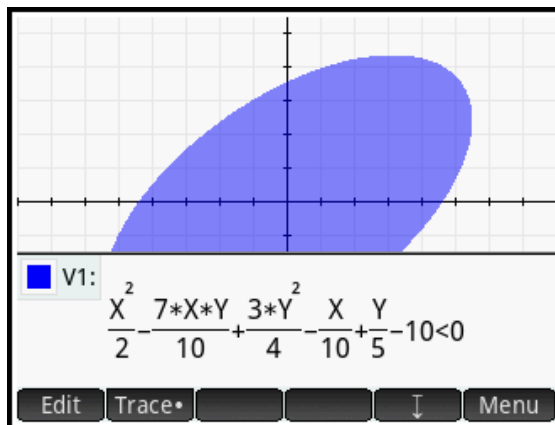
to zoom in and out on the cursor position, respectively.

2. Tap **Zoom** and select **In**.

A special feature of the Advanced Graphing app enables you to edit the definition of a graph from within the Plot view.



3. Tap **Defn**. The definition as you entered it in Symbolic view appears at the bottom of the screen.

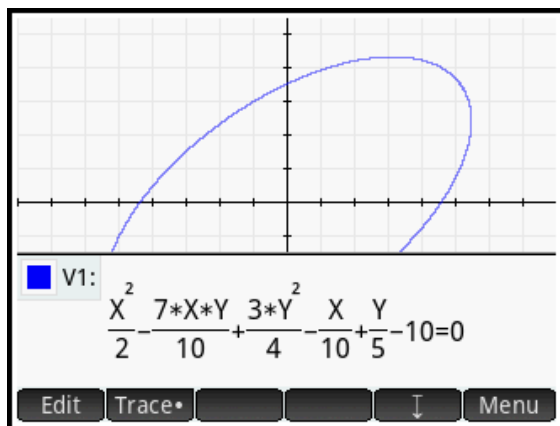


4. Tap **Edit**.

The definition can now be edited.

5. Change the < to = and tap **OK**.

Notice that the graph changes to match the new definition. The definition in Symbolic view also changes.

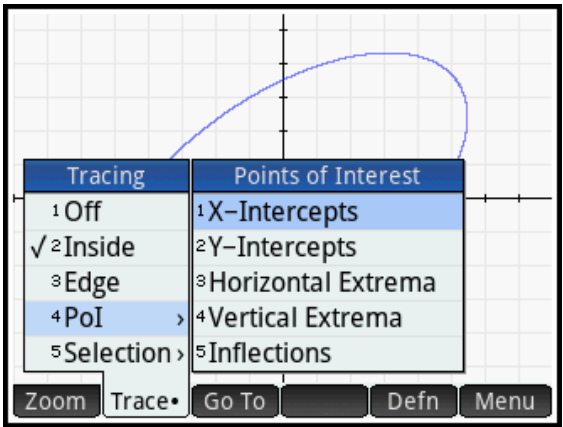


6. Tap [ ] to drop the definition to the bottom of the screen so that you can see the full graph. The definition is converted from textbook mode to algebraic mode to save screen space.

### Trace in Plot view

In most HP apps, the Plot view contains **Trace•**, a toggle to turn tracing a function on and off. In the Advanced Graphing app, the relations plotted in Plot view may or may not be functions. So, instead of a toggle, **Trace•** becomes a menu for selecting how the tracer will behave. The Trace menu contains the following options:



- Off
- Inside
- Pol (Points of Interest)
  - X-Intercepts
  - Y-Intercepts
  - Horizontal Extrema
  - Vertical Extrema
  - Inflections



- Selection


The tracer does not extend beyond the current Plot view window. The following table contains brief descriptions of each option.



| Option                   | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Off                      | Turns tracing off so that you can move the cursor freely in Plot view.  |
| Inside                   | Constrains the tracer to move within a region where the current relation is true. You can move in any direction within the region. Use this option for inequalities, for example. |
| Edge                     | Constrains the tracer to move along an edge of the current relation, if one can be found. Use this option for functions as well as for inequalities, and so on.                   |
| Pol > X-Intercepts       | Jumps from one x-intercept to another on the current graph.   |
| Pol > Y-Intercepts       | Jumps from one y-intercept to another on the current graph.   |
| Pol > Horizontal Extrema | Jumps between the horizontal extrema on the current graph.  |
| Pol > Vertical Extrema   | Jumps between the vertical extrema on the current graph.  |

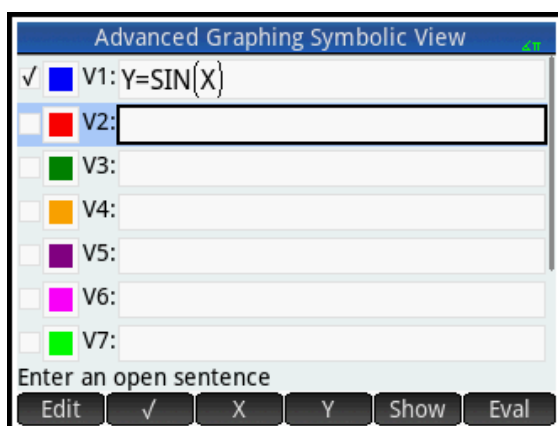
| Option            | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Pol > Inflections | Jumps from one inflection point to another on the current graph.  |
| Selection         | Opens a menu so you can select which relation to trace. This option is needed because  and  no longer jump from relation to relation for tracing. All four cursor keys are needed for moving the tracer in the Advanced Graphing app. |

## Numeric view


The Numeric view of most HP apps is designed to explore 2-variable relations using numerical tables. Because the Advanced Graphing app expands this design to relations that are not necessarily functions, the Numeric view of this app becomes significantly different, though its purpose is still the same. The unique features of the Numeric view are illustrated in the following sections.

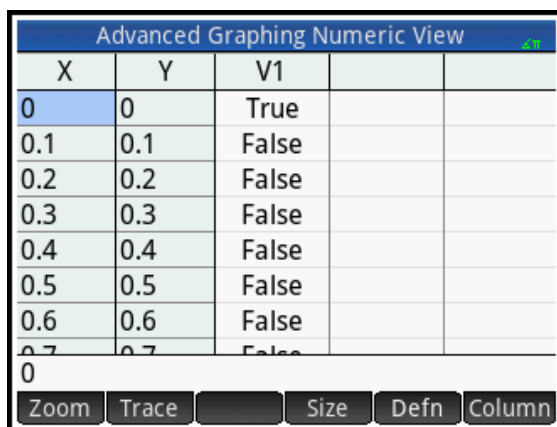
- ▲ Press  to return to Symbolic view and define V1 as  $Y=\sin(X)$ .

 **NOTE:** You do not have to erase the previous definition first. Just enter the new definition and tap .



## Displaying Numeric view


- ▲ Press  to display Numeric view.



| X   | Y   | V1    |  |  |
|-----|-----|-------|--|--|
| 0   | 0   | True  |  |  |
| 0.1 | 0.1 | False |  |  |
| 0.2 | 0.2 | False |  |  |
| 0.3 | 0.3 | False |  |  |
| 0.4 | 0.4 | False |  |  |
| 0.5 | 0.5 | False |  |  |
| 0.6 | 0.6 | False |  |  |
| 0.7 | 0.7 | False |  |  |

By default, the Numeric view displays rows of x- and y-values. In each row, the 2 values are followed by a column that tells whether or not the x-y pair satisfies each open sentence (True or False).

## Exploring Numeric view

- ▲ With the cursor in the X column, type a new value and tap . The table scrolls to the value you entered.

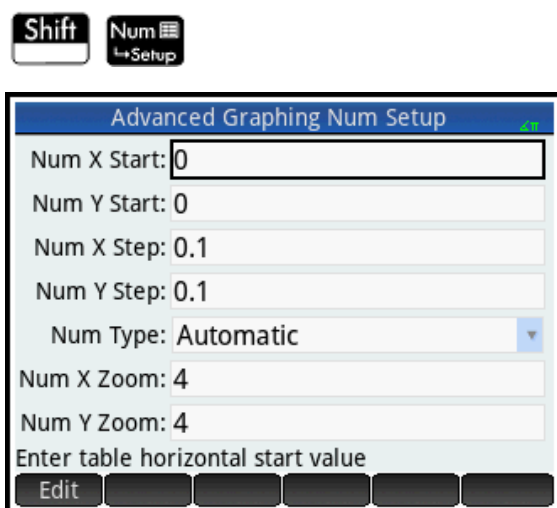
You can also enter a value in the Y column and tap . Press  and  to move between the columns in Numeric view.

You can also zoom in or out on the X-variable or Y-variable. Note that in Numeric view, zooming does not affect the size of what is displayed. Instead, it decreases or increases the increment between consecutive x- and y-values. Zooming in decreases the increment; zooming out increases the increment. This and other options are common Numeric view operations.

## Numeric Setup view

Although you can configure the X- and Y-values shown in Numeric view by entering values and zooming in or out, you can also directly set the values shown using Numeric setup.

- ▲ Display the Numeric Setup view.



You can set the starting value and step value (that is, the increment) for both the X-column and the Y-column, as well as the zoom factor for zooming in or out on a row of the table. You can also choose whether the table of data in Numeric view is automatically populated or whether it is populated by you typing in the particular x-values and y-values you are interested in. These options—**Automatic** or **BuildYourOwn**—are available from the **Num Type** list. These are custom table options.

## Trace in Numeric view

Besides the default configuration of the table in Numeric view, there are other options available in the Trace menu. The trace options in Numeric view mirror the trace options in Plot view. Both are designed to help you investigate the properties of relations numerically using a tabular format. Specifically, the table can be configured to show any of the following:

- Edge values (controlled by X or Y)
- Pol (Points of Interest)



- X-Intercepts
- Y-Intercepts
- Horizontal Extrema
- Vertical Extrema
- Inflections

| Advanced Graphing Numeric View |     |       |  |  |
|--------------------------------|-----|-------|--|--|
| X                              | Y   | V1    |  |  |
| 0                              | 0   | True  |  |  |
| 0.1                            | 0.1 | False |  |  |
| 0.2                            | 0.2 |       |  |  |
| 0.3                            | 0.3 |       |  |  |
| 0.4                            |     |       |  |  |
| 0.5                            |     |       |  |  |
| 0.6                            |     |       |  |  |
| 0.7                            |     |       |  |  |
| 0                              |     |       |  |  |
| Zoom Trace Size Defn Column    |     |       |  |  |

The values shown using the Trace options depend on the Plot view window; that is, the values shown in the table are restricted to points visible in Plot view. Zoom in or out in Plot view to get the values you want to see in the table in Numeric view.

## Edge

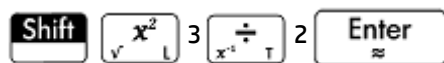
1. Tap **Trace•** and select **Edge**.

Now the table shows (if possible) pairs of values that make the relation true. By default, the first column is the Y-column and there are multiple X-columns in case more than one X-value can be paired with the Y-value to make the relation true. Tap **X** to make the first column an X-column followed by a set of Y-columns. In the following figure, for  $Y = 0$ , there are 10 values of X in the default Plot view that make the relation  $Y = \sin(X)$  true. These are shown in the first row of the table. It can be clearly seen that the sequence of X-values have a common difference of  $\pi$ .

| Advanced Graphing Numeric View |           |           |            |   |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|---|
| Y                              | X         | X         | X          | X |
| 0                              | -15.70796 | -12.56637 | -9.424778  |   |
| 0.1                            | -15.80813 | -12.4662  | -9.5249454 |   |
| 0.2                            | -12.36501 | -9.626136 | -6.0818274 |   |
| 0.3                            | -12.26168 | -9.729471 | -5.9784927 |   |
| 0.4                            | -12.15485 | -9.836295 | -5.8716685 |   |
| 0.5                            | -12.04277 | -9.948377 | -5.7595865 |   |
| 0.6                            | -11.92287 | -10.06828 | -5.6396842 |   |
| 0.7                            | -11.79997 | -10.20018 | -5.5077878 |   |
| 0                              |           |           |            |   |
| Zoom Trace• X Size Defn Column |           |           |            |   |

Again, you can enter a value for Y that is of interest.

- With **0** highlighted in the Y-column, enter  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ .



- Tap **Column** and select 4.

| Advanced Graphing Numeric View |           |           |            |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| Y                              | X         | X         | X          |
| 0.86603                        | -11.51917 | -10.47198 | -5.2359878 |
| 0.96603                        | -11.25699 | -10.73416 | -4.9738034 |
| 1.06603                        |           |           |            |
| 1.16603                        |           |           |            |
| 1.26603                        |           |           |            |
| 1.36603                        |           |           |            |
| 1.46603                        |           |           |            |
| 1.56603                        |           |           |            |
| 0.866025403785                 |           |           |            |
| Zoom Trace• X Size Defn Column |           |           |            |

The first row of the table now illustrates that there are two branches of solutions. In each branch, the consecutive solution values are  $2\pi$  apart.

## Pol

- Tap **Trace•**, select Pol and select Vertical Extrema to see the extrema listed in the table.
- Tap **Size** and select Small for a small font size.
- Tap **Column** and select 2 to see just two columns.

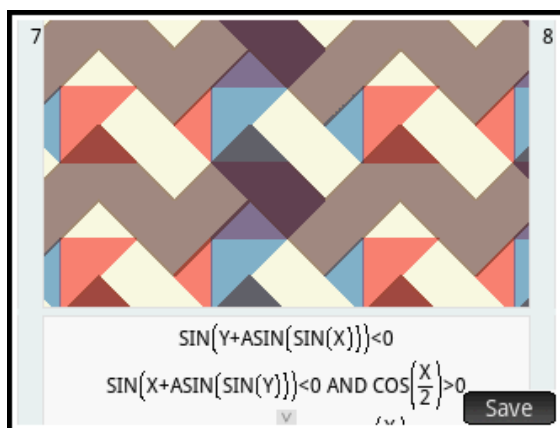
| Advanced Graphing Numeric View |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| V1                             |    |
| -14.1371669412                 | -1 |
| -7.85398163397                 | -1 |
| -1.57079632679                 | -1 |
| 4.71238898038                  | -1 |
| 10.9955742876                  | -1 |
| -10.9955742876                 | 1  |
| -4.71238898038                 | 1  |
| 1.57079632679                  | 1  |
| 7.85398163397                  | 1  |
| 14.1371669412                  | 1  |
| (-14.1371669412, -1)           |    |
| Trace• Size Defn Column        |    |



The table lists the 5 minima visible in Plot view, followed by the 5 maxima.

## Plot Gallery

A gallery of interesting graphs—and the equations that generated them—is provided with the calculator. You open the gallery from Plot view:

1. With Plot view open, press the **Menu** key. Note that you press the Menu key here, not the Menu touch button on the screen.
2. From the menu, select **Visit Plot Gallery**. The first graph in the Gallery appears, along with its equation.






3. Press  to display the next graph in the Gallery, and continue likewise until you want to close the Gallery.
4. To close the Gallery and return to Plot view, press .

## Exploring a plot from the Plot Gallery

If a particular plot in the Plot Gallery interests you, you can save a copy of it. The copy is saved as a new app—a customized instance of the Advanced Graphing app. You can modify and explore the app as you would with built-in version of the Advanced Graphing app.

To save a plot from the Plot Gallery:

1. With the plot of interest displayed, tap .
2. Enter a name for your new app and tap .
3. Tap  again. Your new app opens, with the equations that generated the plot displayed in Symbolic view. The app is also added to the Application Library so that you can return to it later.


## 9 Geometry

The Geometry app enables you to draw and explore geometric constructions. A geometric construction can be composed of any number of geometric objects, such as points, lines, polygons, curves, tangents, and so on. You can take measurements (such as areas and distances), manipulate objects, and note how measurements change.

There are five app views:

- Plot view: provides drawing tools for you to construct geometric objects
- Symbolic view: provides editable definitions of the objects in Plot view
- Numeric view: for making calculations about the objects in Plot view
- Plot Setup view: for customizing the appearance of Plot view
- Symbolic Setup view: for overriding certain system-wide settings

There is no Numeric Setup view in this app.



To open the Geometry app, press  and select **Geometry**. The app opens in Plot view.

### Getting started with the Geometry app

The following example shows how you can graphically represent the derivative of a curve, and have the value of the derivative automatically update as you move a point of tangency along the curve. The curve to be explored is  $y = 3\sin(x)$ .




Since the accuracy of our calculation in this example is not too important, we will first change the number format to fixed at 3 decimal places. This will also help keep our geometry workspace uncluttered.

#### Preparation

1. Press  .
2. On the first **CAS settings** page, set the number format to **Standard** and the number of decimal places to **4**.

#### Opening the app and plotting the graph

1. Press  and select **Geometry**.

If there are objects showing that you don't need, press   and confirm your intention by tapping .

The app opens in Plot view. This view displays a Cartesian plane with a menu bar at the bottom. Next to the menu bar, this view displays the coordinates of the cursor. After you interact with the app, the

bottom of the display displays the currently active tool or command, help for the current tool or command, and a list of all objects recognized as being under the current pointer location.

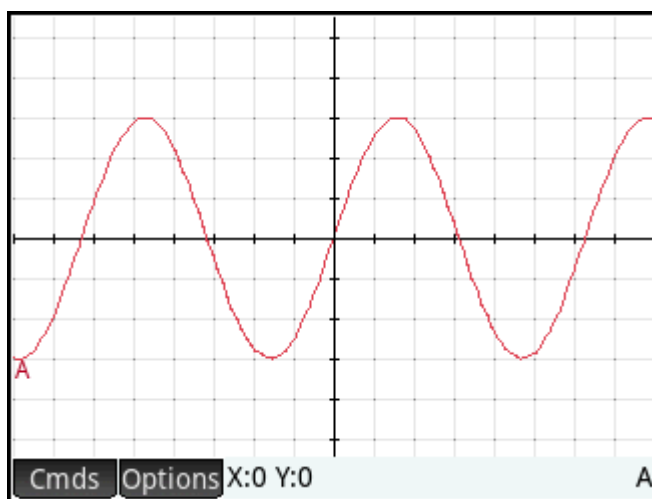
2. Select the type of graph you want to plot. In this example we are plotting a simple sinusoidal function, so choose:

**Cmds** > **Plot** > **Function**

3. With `plotfunc(` on the entry line, enter  $3\sin(x)$ :

3  $\times$   $\frac{\pi}{x}$  **SIN** ASIN G **ALPHA** alpha **Shift**  $\times$   $\frac{\pi}{x}$  **Enter**  $\approx$

Note that  $x$  must be entered in lowercase in the Geometry app.



If your graph doesn't resemble the previous figure, adjust the **X Rng** and **Y Rng** values in Plot Setup view (**Shift** **Plot**  $\leftarrow$  **Setup**).

We'll now add a point to the curve, a point that will be constrained always to follow the contour of the curve.

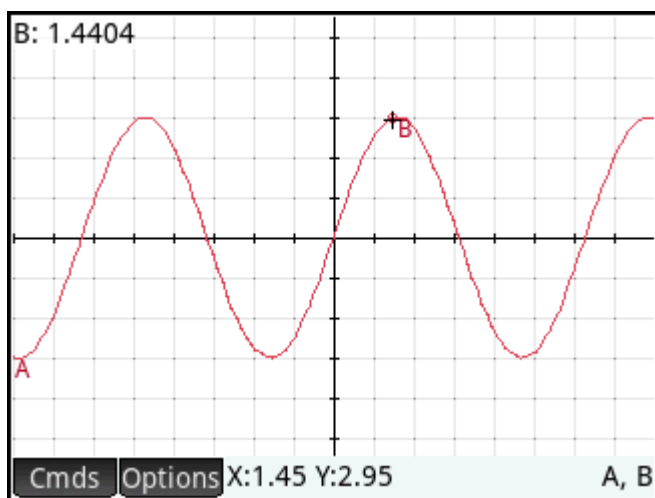
## Adding a constrained point

1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Point**, and then select **Point On**.

Choosing **Point On** rather than **Point** means that the point will be constrained to whatever it is placed on.

2. Tap anywhere on the graph, press **Enter** and then press **Esc**.

Notice that a point is added to the graph and given a name (**B** in this example). Tap a blank area of the screen to deselect everything. (Objects colored light blue are selected.)



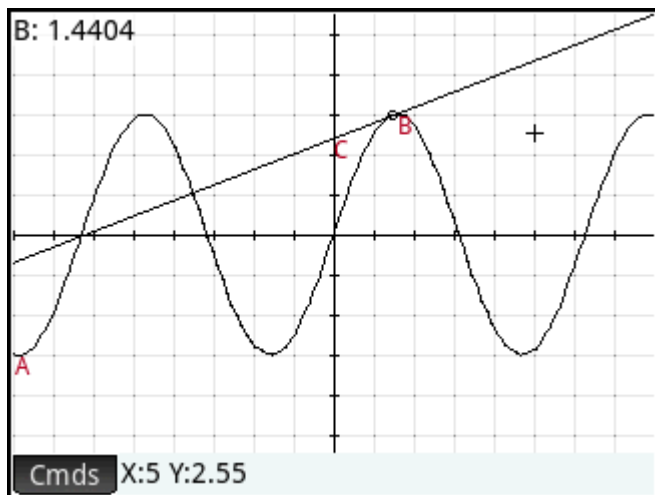
## Adding a tangent





1. We will now add a tangent to the curve, making point **B** the point of tangency:

**Cmds** > **Line** > **Tangent**

2. When prompted to select a curve, tap anywhere on the curve and press **Enter**. When prompted to select a point, tap point **B** and press **Enter** to see the tangent. Press **Esc** to close the Tangent tool.

Depending on where you placed point **B**, your graph might be different from the following figure. Now, make the tangent stand out by giving it a bright color.




3. Tap on the tangent to select it. After the tangent is selected, the new menu key **Options** appears. Tap **Options** or press , and then select **Choose color**.
4. Pick a color, and then tap on a blank area of the screen to see the new color of the tangent line.
5. Tap point **B** and drag it along the curve; the tangent moves accordingly. You can also drag the tangent line itself.
6. Tap point **B** and then press  to select the point. The point turns light blue to show that it has been selected. Now, you can either drag the point with your finger or use the cursor keys for finer control of the movement of point **B**. To deselect point **B**, either press  or tap point **B** and press .

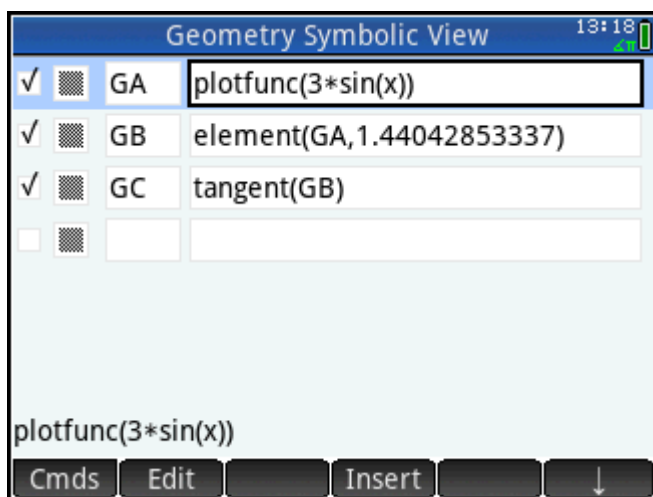
Note that whatever you do, point **B** remains constrained to the curve. Moreover, as you move point **B**, the tangent moves as well. If it moves off the screen, you can bring it back by dragging your finger across the screen in the appropriate direction.

## Creating a derivative point

The derivative of a graph at any point is the slope of its tangent at that point. We'll now create a new point that will be constrained to point **B** and whose ordinate value is the derivative of the graph at point **B**. We'll constrain it by forcing its  $x$  coordinate (that is, its abscissa) to always match that of point **B**, and its  $y$  coordinate (that is, its ordinate) to always equal the slope of the tangent at that point.

1. To define a point in terms of the attributes of other geometric objects, press  to go to Symbolic view.

Note that each object you have so far created is listed in Symbolic view. Note too that the name for an object in Symbolic view is the name it was given in Plot view but prefixed with a "G". Thus the graph—labeled **A** in Plot view—is labeled **GA** in Symbolic view.



2. Highlight the blank definition following **GC** and tap **New**.

When creating objects that are dependent on other objects, the order in which they appear in Symbolic view is important. Objects are drawn in Plot view in the order in which they appear in Symbolic view. Since we are about to create a new point that is dependent on the attributes of **GB** and **GC**, it is important that we place its definition after that of both **GB** and **GC**. That is why we made sure we were at the bottom the list of definitions before tapping **New**. If the new definition appeared higher up in Symbolic view, the point created in the following step would not be active in Plot view.

3. Tap **Cmds** and choose **Point > point**.

You now need to specify the  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates of the new point. The former is defined as the abscissa of point **B** (referred to as **GB** in Symbolic view) and the latter is defined as the slope of tangent line **C** (referred to as **GC** in Symbolic view).

4. You should have `point()` on the entry line. Between the parentheses, add:

`abscissa(GB), slope(GC)`

For the abscissa command, press **Mem B** and tap **Catlg**. Press **Vars Chars A** to jump to commands that start with the letter A and then scroll to **abscissa** and tap **OK**. For the slope command, press

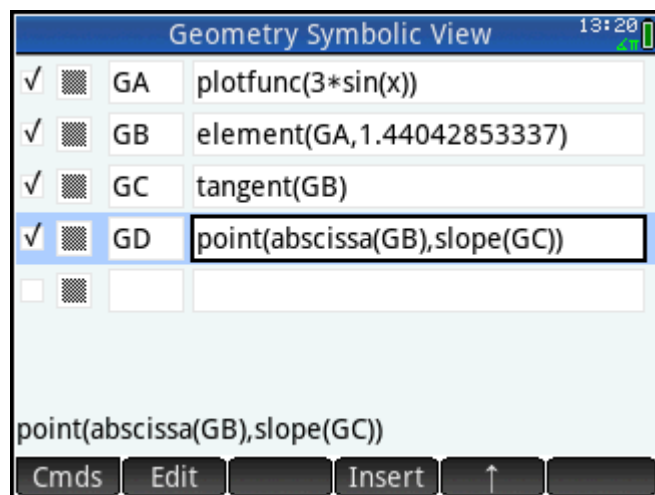
**Mem B** and tap **Catlg**. Press **9 5** to jump to commands that start with the letter S and then scroll to **slope** and tap **OK**. Of course, you can type the commands in letter by letter as well.

Press **ALPHA alpha** **Shift** **ALPHA alpha** for the lower-case alpha lock. Press **ALPHA alpha** again to unlock.



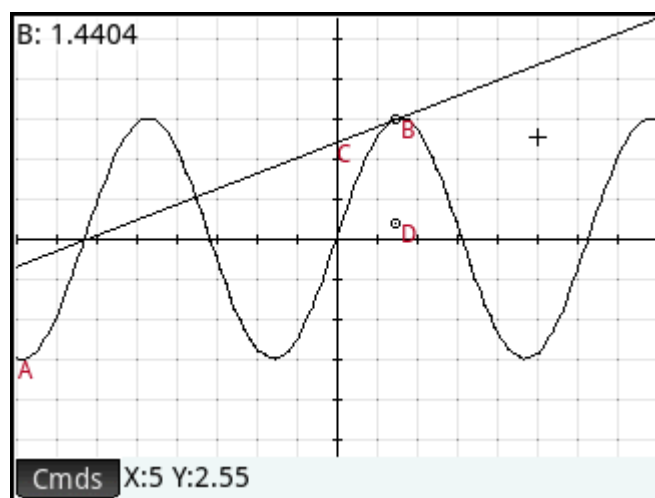
5. Tap **OK**.

The definition of your new point is added to Symbolic view. When you return to Plot view, you will see a point named **D** and it will have the same x-coordinate as point **B**.



6. Press **Plot Setup**.

If you can't see point **D**, pan until it comes into view. The y coordinate of **D** will be the derivative of the curve at point **B**.



Since it is difficult to read coordinates off the screen, we'll add a calculation that will give the exact derivative (to three decimal places) and which we can display in Plot view.

## Adding some calculations

1. Press **Num Setup**.  
Numeric view is where you enter calculations.
2. Tap **New**.
3. Tap **Cmds** and choose **Measure > slope**.

4. Between parentheses, add the name of the tangent, namely  $GC$ , and tap **OK**.

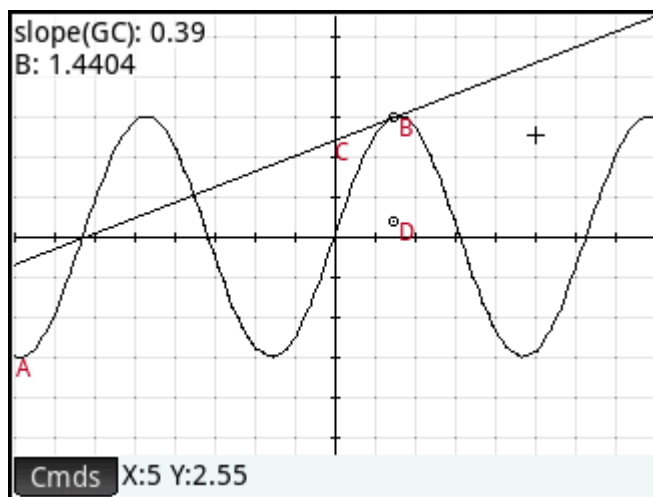
Notice that the current slope is calculated and displayed. The value here is dynamic, that is, if the slope of the tangent changes in Plot view, the value of the slope is automatically updated in Numeric view.

5. With the new calculation highlighted in Numeric view, tap **✓**.


Selecting a calculation in Numeric view means that it will also be displayed in Plot view.

6. Press **Plot**  to return to Plot view.

Notice the calculation that you have just created in Numeric view is displayed at the top left of the screen.

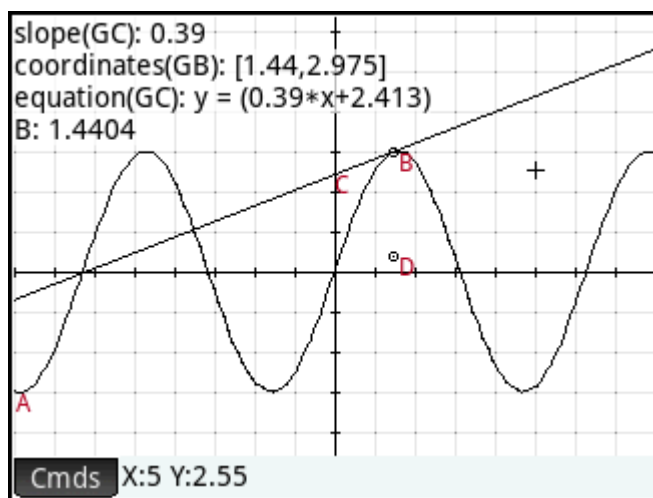




Let's now add two more calculations to Numeric view and have them displayed in Plot view.

7. Press **Num**  to return to Numeric view.
8. Tap the last blank field to select it, and then tap **New** to start a new calculation. Tap **Cmds**, select **Cartesian**, and then select **Coordinates**. Between the parentheses, enter  $GB$  and then tap **OK**.
9. To start a third calculation, tap **Cmds**, select **Cartesian**, and then select **Equation of**. Between the parentheses, enter  $GC$  and then tap **OK**.
10. Make sure both of these new equations are selected (by choosing each one and pressing **✓**).

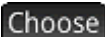

11. Press  to return to Plot view.

Notice that your new calculations are displayed.



12. Tap point **B** and then press  to select it.
13. Use the cursor keys to move point **B** along the graph. Note that with each move, the results of the calculations shown at the top left of the screen change. To deselect point **B**, tap point **B** and then press .





## Calculations in Plot view

By default, calculations in Plot view are docked to the upper left of the screen. You can drag a calculation from its dock and position it anywhere you like; however, after being undocked, the calculation scrolls with the display. Tap and hold a calculation to edit its label. An edit line opens so that you can enter your own label. You can also tap  and select a different color for the calculation and its label. Tap  when you are done.

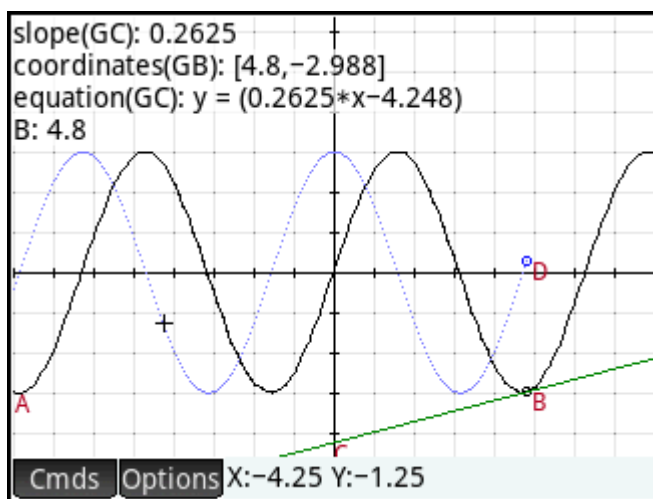
## Trace the derivative

Point **D** is the point whose ordinate value matches the derivative of the curve at point **B**. It is easier to see how the derivative changes by looking at a plot of it rather than comparing subsequent calculations. We can do that by tracing point **D** as it moves in response to movements of point **B**.

First we'll hide the calculations so that we can better see the trace curve.

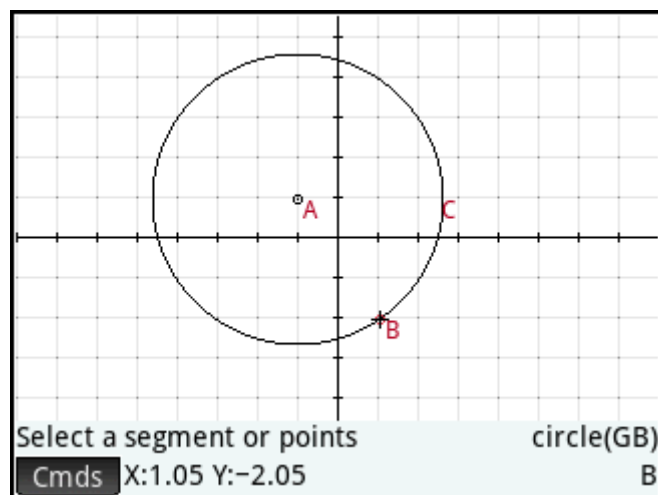
1. Press  to return to Numeric view.
2. Select each calculation in turn and tap . All calculations should now be deselected.
3. Press  to return to Plot view.
4. Tap point **D** and then press  to select it.

5. Tap **Options** (or press **Menu** ) and then select **Trace**. Press **Enter** to deselect point **D**.
6. Tap point **B** and then press **Enter** to select it.
7. Using the cursor keys, move point **B** along the curve. Notice that a shadow curve is traced out as you move point **B**. This is the curve of the derivative of  $3\sin(x)$ . Tap point **B** and then press **Enter** to deselect it.




## Plot view in detail

In Plot view you can directly draw objects on the screen using various drawing tools. For example, to draw a circle, tap **Cmds**, tap **Curve**, and then select **Circle**. Now, tap where you want the center of the circle to be and press **Enter**. Next, tap a point that is to be on the circumference and press **Enter**. A circle is drawn with a center at the location of your first tap, and with a radius equal to the distance between your first tap and second tap.




Note that there are on-screen instructions to help you. These instructions appear near the bottom of the screen, next to the command listing for the active tool (circle, point, and so on).

You can draw any number of geometric objects in Plot view. See [Plot view: Cmds menu on page 146](#) for a list of the objects you can draw. The drawing tool you choose—line, circle, hexagon, and so on—remains selected until you deselect it. This enables you to quickly draw a number of objects of the same type (such as a number of hexagons). After you have finished drawing objects of a particular type, deselect the drawing tool by pressing . You can tell if a drawing tool is still active by the presence of the on-screen instructions and the command name at the bottom of the screen.



An object in Plot view can be manipulated in numerous ways, and its mathematical properties can be easily determined (see [Listing all objects on page 145](#)).


## Selecting objects

Selecting an object involves at least two steps: tapping the object and pressing . Pressing

 is necessary to confirm your intention to select an object.

When you tap a location, objects recognized as being under the pointer are colored light red and added to the list of objects in the bottom right corner of the display. You can select any or all of these objects by pressing



. You can tap the screen and then use the cursor keys to accurately position the pointer before pressing .

When more than one object is recognized as being under the pointer, in most cases, preference is given to any point under the pointer when  is pressed. In other cases, a pop-up box appears enabling you to select the desired objects.

You can also select multiple objects using a selection box. Tap and hold your finger at the location on the screen that represents one corner of the selection rectangle. Then drag your finger to the opposite corner of the selection rectangle. A light blue selection rectangle is drawn as you drag. Objects that touch this rectangle are selected.

## Hiding names


You can choose to hide the name of an object in Plot view:

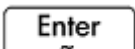
1. Select the object whose label you want to hide.
2. Tap  or press .
3. Select **Hide Label**.

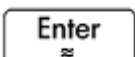
Redisplay a hidden name by repeating this procedure and selecting **Show Label**.



## Moving objects

There are many ways to move objects. First, to move an object quickly, you can drag the object without selecting it.



Second, you can tap an object and press  to select it. Then, you can drag the object to move it quickly or use the cursor keys to move it one pixel at a time. With the second method, you can select multiple objects to move together. When you have finished moving objects, tap a location where there are no objects

and press  to deselect everything. If you have selected a single object, you can tap the object

and press  to deselect it.



Third, you can move a point on an object. Each point on an object has a calculation labeled with its name in Plot view. Tap and hold this item to display a slider bar. You can drag the slider or use the cursor keys to move it.  appears as a new menu key. Tap this key to display a dialog box where you can specify the start, step, and stop values for the slider. Also, you can create an animation based on this point using the slider. You can set the speed and pause for the animation, as well as its type. To start or stop an animation, select it, tap , and then select or clear the **Animate** option.

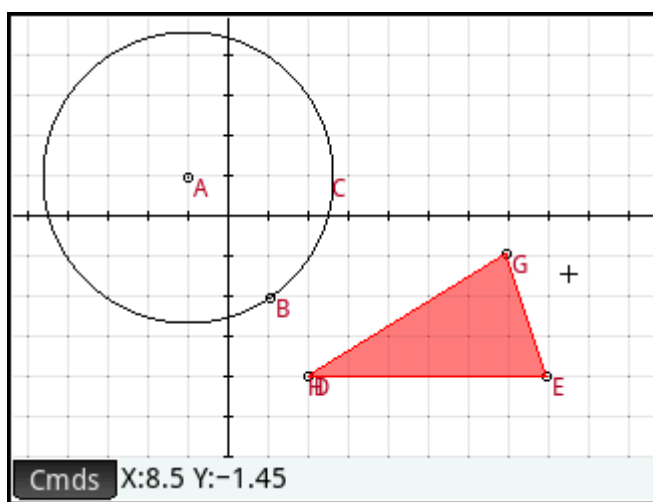
## Coloring objects

Objects are colored black by default. The procedure to change the color of an object depends on which view you are in. In both the Symbolic and Numeric view, each item includes a set of color icons. Tap these icons and select a color. In Plot view, select the object, tap  (or press ) , tap **Choose Color**, and then select a color.

## Filling objects


An object with closed contours (such as a circle or polygon) can be filled with color.


1. Select the object.
2. Tap  or press .
3. Select **filled**.




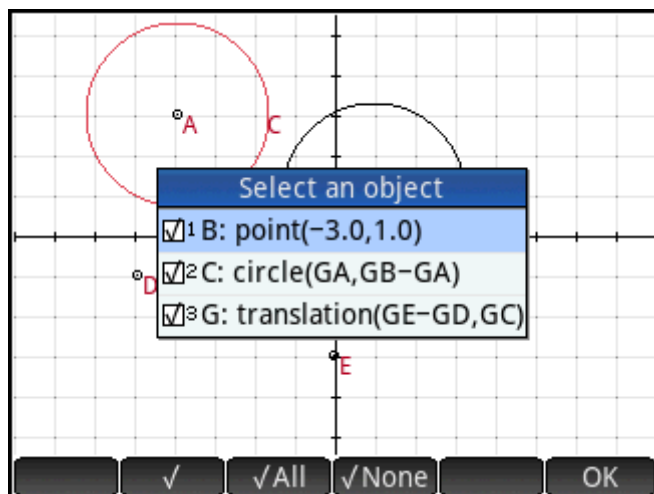
Filled is a toggle. To remove a fill, repeat the above procedure.


## Clearing an object

To clear one object, select it and tap . Note that an object is distinct from the points you entered to create it. Thus deleting the object does not delete the points that define it. Those points remain in the app.

For example, if you select a circle and press , the circle is deleted but the center point and radius point remain.





If other objects are dependent on the one you have selected for deletion, a pop-up displays the selected object and all dependent objects checked for deletion. Confirm your intention by tapping .





You can select multiple items for deletion. Either select them one at a time or use a selection box, and then press .

Note that points you add to an object once the object has been defined are cleared when you clear the object. Thus if you place a point (say **D**) on a circle and delete the circle, the circle and **D** are deleted, but the defining points—the center and radius points—remain.


## Clearing all objects

To clear the app of all geometric objects, press  . You will be asked to confirm your intention to do so. Tap  to clear all objects defined in Symbolic view or  to keep the app as it is. You can clear all measurements and calculations in Numeric view in the same way.













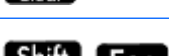
## Gestures in Plot view

You can pan by dragging a finger across the screen: either up, down, left, or right. You can also use the cursor keys to pan once the cursor is at the edge of the screen. You can use a pinch gesture to zoom in or out. Place two fingers on the screen. Move them apart to zoom in or bring them together to zoom out. You can also press  to zoom in on the pointer or press  to zoom out on the pointer.

## Zooming

You can zoom by tapping  and choosing a zoom option. The zoom options are the same as you find in the Plot view of many apps in the calculator.

## Plot view: buttons and keys

| Button or key   | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|    | Opens the Commands menu. See <a href="#">Plot view: Cmds menu on page 146</a> .  |
|    | Opens the Options menu for the selected object.  |
|    | Hides (or displays) the axes.  |
|    | Selects the circle drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see <a href="#">Circle on page 151</a> ).             |
|    | Erases all trace lines   |
|    | Selects the intersection drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see <a href="#">Intersection on page 147</a> ). |
|    | Selects the line drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see <a href="#">Line on page 148</a> ).                 |
|    | Selects the point drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see <a href="#">Point on page 146</a> ).               |
|    | Selects the segment drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see <a href="#">Segment on page 148</a> ).           |
|  | Selects the triangle drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see <a href="#">Triangle on page 149</a> ).         |
|  | Deletes a selected object (or the character to the left of the cursor if the entry line is active).                              |
|  | Deselects the current drawing tool.  |
|  | Clears the Plot view of all geometric objects or the Numeric view of all measurements and calculations.                          |



## The Options menu

When you select an object, a new menu key appears: **Options**. Tap this key to view and select options for the selected object, such as color. The Options menu changes depending on the type of object selected. The complete set of Geometry options are listed in the following table and are also displayed when you press



| Option              | Purpose   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>Choose Color</b> | Displays a set of color icons so you can select a color for the selected object.  |
| <b>Hide</b>         | Hides the selected object. This is a shortcut for deselecting the object in Symbolic view. To select an object to display after it has been hidden, go to Symbolic or Numeric view. |
| <b>Hide Label</b>   | Hides the label of a selected object. This option changes to <b>Show Label</b> if the selected object has a hidden label.   |
| <b>Filled</b>       | Fills the selected object with a color. Clear this option to remove the fill.   |
| <b>Trace</b>        | Starts tracing for any selected point if selected, then stops tracing for the selected point.   |
| <b>Clear Trace</b>  | Erases the current trace of the selected point but does not stop tracing.   |
| <b>Animate</b>      | Starts the current animation of a selected point on an object. If the selected point is currently animated, this option stops the animation.  |


## Plot Setup view

The Plot Setup view enables you to configure the appearance of Plot view.

The fields and options are as follows:


- **X Rng:** There are two boxes, but only the minimum x-value is editable. The maximum x-value is calculated automatically, based on the minimum value and the pixel size. You can also change the x range by panning and zooming in Plot view.
- **Y Rng:** There are two boxes, but only the minimum y-value is editable. The maximum y-value is calculated automatically, based on the minimum value and the pixel size. You can also change the y range by panning and zooming in Plot view.

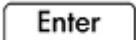
- **Pixel Size:** Each pixel in the Plot view must be square. You can change the size of each pixel. The lower left corner of the Plot view display remains the same, but the upper right-corner coordinates are automatically recalculated.
- **Axes:** A toggle option to hide (or show) the axes in Plot view.


Keyboard shortcut: 

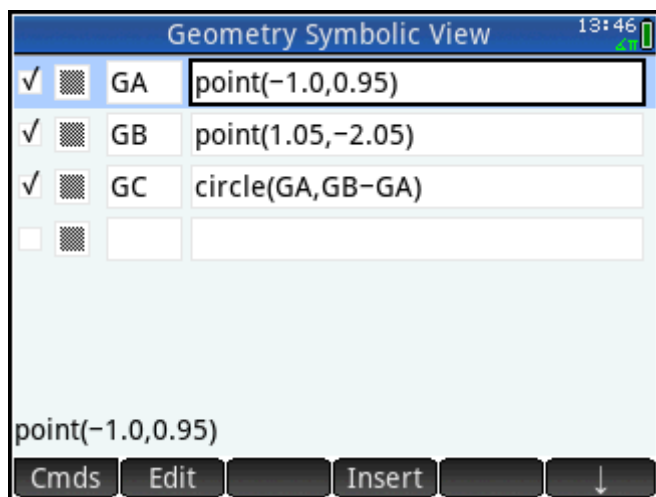
- **Labels:** A toggle option to hide (or show) the labels for the axes.
- **Grid Dots:** A toggle option to hide (or show) the grid dots.
- **Grid Lines:** A toggle option to hide (or show) the grid lines.




## Symbolic view in detail

Every object—whether a point, segment, line, polygon, or curve—is given a name, and its definition is displayed in Symbolic view (  ). The name is the name for it you see in Plot view, but prefixed by “G”. Thus a point labeled A in Plot view is given the name GA in Symbolic view.

The G-prefixed name is a variable that can be read by the computer algebra system (CAS). Thus in the CAS you can include such variables in calculations. Note in the illustration above that GC is the name of the variable that represents a circle drawn in Plot view. If you are working in the CAS and wanted to know what the area of that circle is, you could enter `area (GC)` and press  .

 **NOTE:** Calculations referencing geometry variables can be made in the CAS or in the Numeric view of the Geometry app (explained below on [Numeric view in detail on page 142](#)).



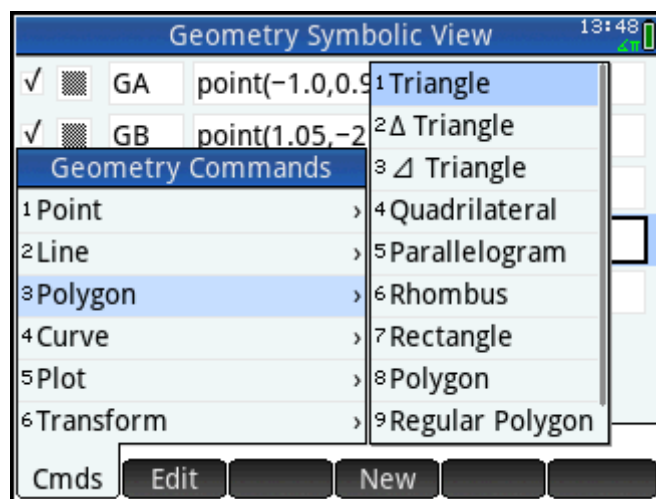
You can change the definition of an object by selecting it, tapping  , and altering one or more of its defining parameters. The object is modified accordingly in Plot view. For example, if you selected point **GB** in the illustration above, tapped  , changed one or both of the point’s coordinates, and tapped  , you would find, on returning to Plot view, a circle of a different size.

## Creating objects

You can also create an object in Symbolic view. Tap **New**, define the object—for example, `point(4, 6)`—and press **Enter**. The object is created and can be seen in Plot view.

Another example: to draw a line through points P and Q, enter `line(GP, GQ)` in Symbolic view and press **Enter**. When you return to Plot view, you will see a line passing through points P and Q.

The object-creation commands available in Symbolic view can be seen by tapping **Cmds**. The syntax for each command is given in [Geometry functions and commands on page 165](#).



## Reordering entries

You can reorder the entries in Symbolic view. Objects are drawn in Plot view in the order in which they are defined in Symbolic view. To change the position of an entry, highlight it and tap either **↓** (to move it down the list) or **↑** (to move it up).

## Hiding an object

To prevent an object displaying in Plot view, deselect it in Symbolic view:

1. Highlight the item to be hidden.
2. Tap **✓**.


– or –




Select the check box for an object and press **+** to select it and press **-** to clear it.

Repeat the procedure to make the object visible again.

## Deleting an object

As well as deleting an object in Plot view (see [Clearing an object on page 136](#)) you can delete an object in Symbolic view.


1. Highlight the definition of the object you want to delete.
2. Press .

To delete all objects, press  . When prompted, tap  to confirm the deletion.

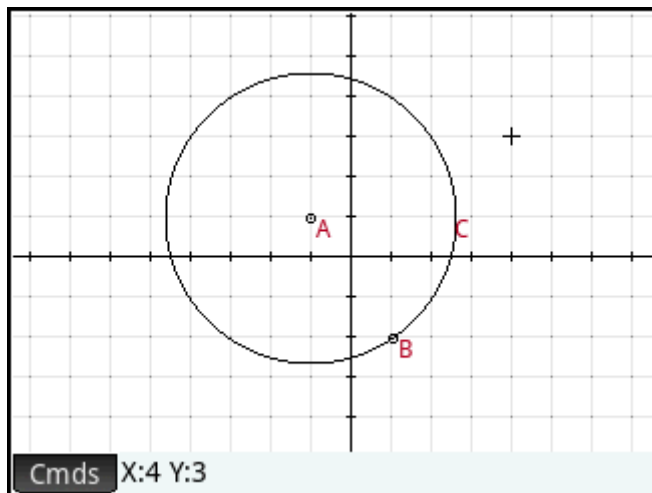
## Symbolic Setup view

The Symbolic view of the Geometry app is common with many apps. It is used to override certain system-wide settings.

## Numeric view in detail

Numeric view (  ) enables you to do calculations in the Geometry app. The results displayed are dynamic—if you manipulate an object in Plot view or Symbolic view, any calculations in Numeric view that refer to that object are automatically updated to reflect the new properties of that object.

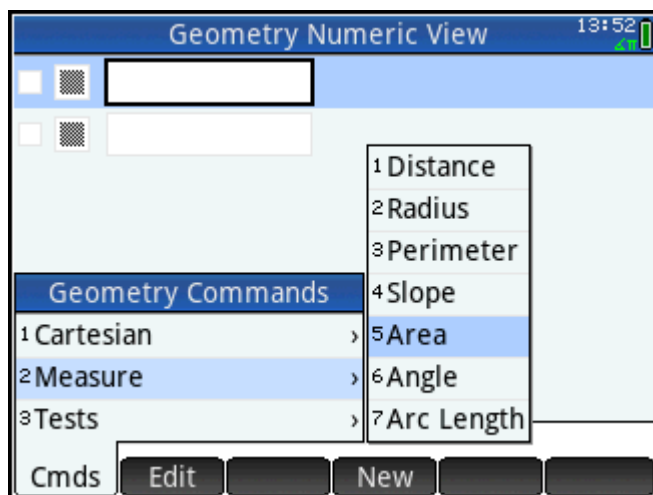
Consider circle **C** in the following figure. To calculate the area and radius of C:



1. Press  to open Numeric view.
2. Tap .

3. Tap **Cmds** and choose **Measure > Area**.

Note that **area()** appears on the entry line, ready for you to specify the object whose area you are interested in.



4. Tap **Vars**, choose **Curves** and then the curve whose area you are interested in.

The name of the object is placed between the parentheses.

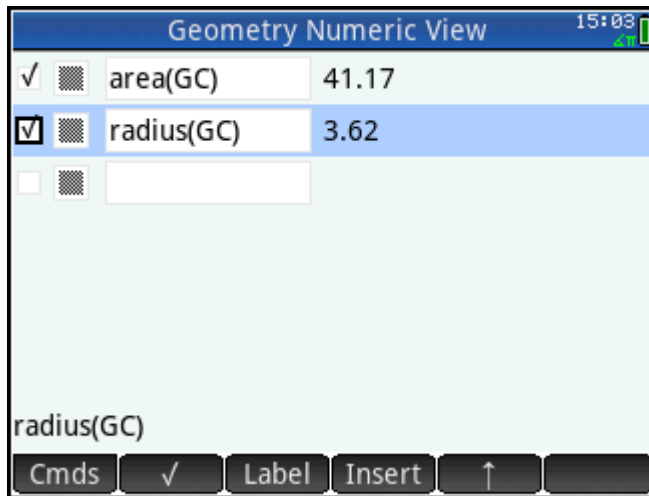
You could have entered the command and object name manually, that is, without choosing them from menus. If you enter object names manually, remember that the name of the object in Plot view must be given a "G" prefix if it is used in any calculation. Thus the circle named **C** in Plot view must be referred to as **GC** in Numeric view and Symbolic view.

5. Press **Enter** or tap **OK**. The area is displayed.
6. Tap **New**.

7. Enter `radius(GC)` and tap **OK**. The radius is displayed. Use **✓** to verify both of these measurements so that they will be available in Plot view.

Note that the syntax used here is the same as you use in the CAS to calculate the properties of geometric objects.

The Geometry functions and their syntax are described in [Geometry functions and commands on page 165](#).



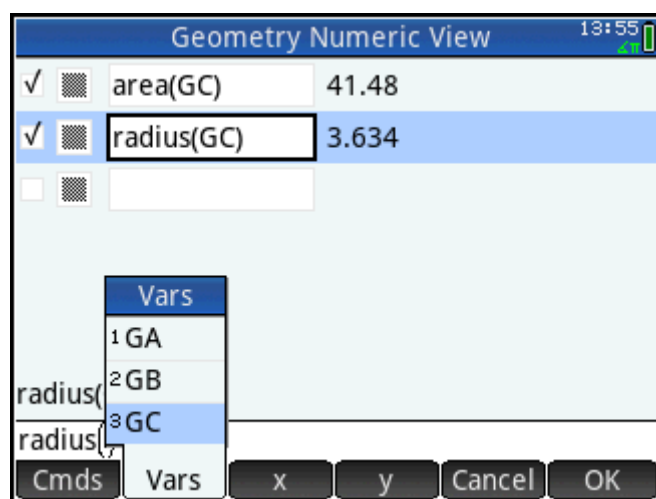
8. Press **Plot** to go back to Plot view. Now, manipulate the circle in some way that changes its area and radius. For example, select the center point (**A**) and use the cursor keys to move it to a new location. Notice that the area and radius calculations update automatically as you move the point. Remember to press **Esc** when you are finished.



**NOTE:** If an entry in Numeric view is too long for the screen, you can press **▶** to scroll the rest of the entry into view. Press **◀** to scroll back to the original view.

## Listing all objects

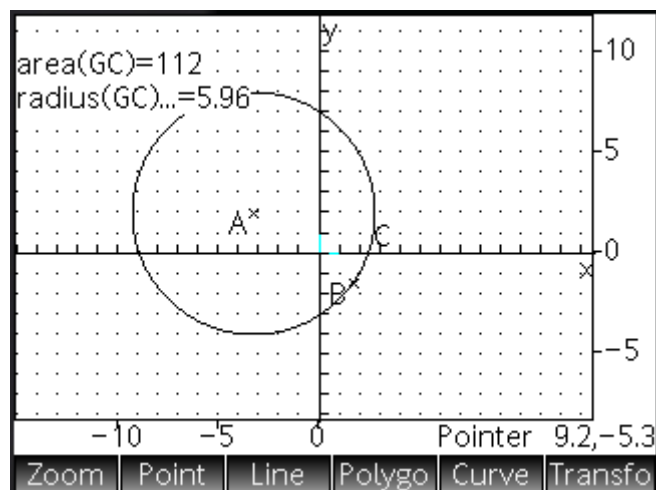
When you are creating a new calculation in Numeric view, the **Vars** menu item appears. Tapping **Vars** gives you a list of all the objects in your Geometry workspace.



If you are building a calculation, you can select an object's variable name from this menu. The name of the selected object is placed at the insertion point on the entry line.

## Displaying calculations in Plot view

To have a calculation made in Numeric view appear in Plot view, just highlight it in Numeric view and tap **✓**. A checkmark appears beside the calculation.






Repeat the procedure to prevent the calculation being displayed in Plot view. The checkmark is cleared.

## Editing a calculation

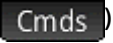
1. Highlight the calculation you want to edit.
2. Tap **Edit** to change the calculation or tap **Label** to change the label.
3. Make your changes and tap **OK**.

## Deleting a calculation

1. Highlight the calculation you want to delete.
2. Press  .

To delete all calculations, press   . Note that deleting a calculation does not delete any geometric objects from either the Plot or Symbolic view.


## Plot view: Cmds menu


The geometric objects discussed in this section are those that can be created in either Plot view or Symbolic view using the Commands menu (). This section discusses how to use the commands in Plot view. Objects can also be created in Symbolic view—more, in fact, than in Plot view—but these are discussed in [Geometry functions and commands on page 165](#). Finally, measurements and other calculations can be performed in Plot view as well.



In Plot view, you choose a drawing tool to draw an object. The tools are listed in this section. Note that once you select a drawing tool, it remains selected until you deselect it. This enables you to quickly draw a number of objects of the same type (such as a number of circles). To deselect the current drawing tool, press




. You can tell if a drawing tool is still active by the presence of the on-screen help in the bottom left-side of the screen and the current command statement to its right.

The steps provided in this section are based on touch entry. For example, to add a point, the steps will tell you to **tap** the screen where you want the point to be and press  . However, you can also use the


cursor keys to position the cursor where you want the point to be and then press  .


The drawing tools for the geometric objects listed in this section can be selected from the Commands menu at the bottom of the screen (). Some objects can also be entered using a keyboard shortcut. For example, you can select the triangle drawing tool by pressing  . See [Plot view: buttons and keys on page 138](#).

## Point

Tap  to display a menu and submenus of options for entering various types of points. The menus and submenus are:

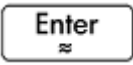
### Point

Tap where you want the point to be and press  .


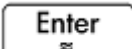
Keyboard shortcut: 




## Point On


Tap the object where you want the new point to be and press . If you select a point that has been placed on an object and then move that point, the point will be constrained to the object on which it was placed. For example, a point placed on a circle will remain on that circle regardless of how you move the point.

## Midpoint

Tap where you want one point to be and press . Tap where you want the other point to be and press . A point is automatically created midway between those two points.


If you choose an object first—such as a segment—choosing the Midpoint tool and pressing  adds a point midway between the ends of that object. (In the case of a circle, the midpoint is created at the circle's center.)

## Center



Tap a circle and press . A point is created at the center of the circle.

## Intersection


Tap the desired intersection and press . A point is created at one of the points of intersection.

Keyboard shortcut: 

## Intersections




Tap one object other than a point and press . Tap another object and press . The point(s) where the two objects intersect are created and named. Note that an intersections object is created in Symbolic view even if the two objects selected do not intersect.

---

 **NOTE:** This command creates a point. The command uses the location of this point to look for the desired intersection. You can move the point to select a different nearby intersection.


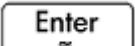
---

## Random Points

Press  to randomly create a point in Plot view. Continue pressing  to create more random points. Press  when you are done.



## Line

### Segment



Tap where you want one endpoint to be and press . Tap where you want the other endpoint to be and press . A segment is drawn between the two end points.

Keyboard shortcut: 


### Ray

Tap where you want the endpoint to be and press . Tap a point that you want the ray to pass through and press . A ray is drawn from the first point and through the second point.



## Line

Tap a point you want the line to pass through and press . Tap another point you want the line to pass through and press . A line is drawn through the two points.



Keyboard shortcut: 

Tap a third point (**C**) and press . A line is drawn through **A** bisecting the angle formed by line **AB** and line **AC**.



### Parallel

Tap on a point (**P**) and press . Tap on a line (**L**) and press . A new line is drawn parallel to **L** and passing through **P**.



### Perpendicular

Tap on a point (**P**) and press . Tap on a line (**L**) and press . A new line is drawn perpendicular to **L** and passing through **P**.



### Tangent

Tap on a curve (**C**) and press . Tap on a point (**P**) and press . If the point (**P**) is on the curve (**C**), then a single tangent is drawn. If the point (**P**) is not on the curve (**C**), then zero or more tangents may be drawn.



## Median

Tap on a point **(A)** and press . Tap on a segment and press . A line is drawn through the point **(A)** and the midpoint of the segment.

## Altitude

Tap on a point **(A)** and press . Tap on a segment and press . A line is drawn through the point **(A)** perpendicular to the segment (or its extension).

## Angle bisector


Tap the point that is the vertex of the angle to be bisected **(A)** and press . Tap another point **(B)** and press .

## Polygon

The **Polygon** menu provides tools for drawing various polygons.

## Triangle

Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

Keyboard shortcut: .

## Isosceles Triangle

Draws an isosceles triangle defined by two of its vertices and an angle. The vertices define one of the two sides equal in length and the angle defines the angle between the two sides of equal length. Like `equilateral_triangle`, you have the option of storing the coordinates of the third point into a CAS variable.

```
isosceles_triangle(point1, point2, angle)
```

Example:

`isosceles_triangle(GA, GB, angle(GC, GA, GB))` defines an isosceles triangle such that one of the two sides of equal length is AB, and the angle between the two sides of equal length has a measure equal to that of  $\angle ACB$ .

## Right Triangle

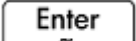
Draws a right triangle given two points and a scale factor. One leg of the right triangle is defined by the two points, the vertex of the right angle is at the first point, and the scale factor multiplies the length of the first leg to determine the length of the second leg.

```
right_triangle(point1, point2, realk)
```




Example:

`right_triangle(GA, GB, 1)` draws an isosceles right triangles with its right angle at point A, and with both legs equal in length to segment AB.

## Quadrilateral

Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

## Parallelogram

Tap one vertex and press . Tap another vertex and press . Tap a third vertex and press . The location of the fourth vertex is automatically calculated and the parallelogram is drawn.

## Rhombus

Draws a rhombus, given two points and an angle. As with many of the other polygon commands, you can specify optional CAS variable names for storing the coordinates of the other two vertices as points.

```
rhombus(point1, point2, angle)
```

Example:

`rhombus(GA, GB, angle(GC, GD, GE))` draws a rhombus on segment AB such that the angle at vertex A has the same measure as  $\angle DCE$ .

## Rectangle

Draws a rectangle given two consecutive vertices and a point on the side opposite the side defined by the first two vertices or a scale factor for the sides perpendicular to the first side. As with many of the other polygon commands, you can specify optional CAS variable names for storing the coordinates of the other two vertices as points.

```
rectangle(point1, point2, point3) or rectangle(point1, point2, realk)
```

Examples:

`rectangle(GA, GB, GE)` draws a rectangle whose first two vertices are points A and B (one side is segment AB). Point E is on the line that contains the side of the rectangle opposite segment AB.

`rectangle(GA, GB, 3, p, q)` draws a rectangle whose first two vertices are points A and B (one side is segment AB). The sides perpendicular to segment AB have length  $3 \cdot AB$ . The third and fourth points are stored into the CAS variables p and q, respectively.

## Polygon

Draws a polygon from a set of vertices.

`polygon(point1, point2, ..., pointn)`

Example:

`polygon(GA, GB, GD)` draws  $\triangle ABD$

## Regular Polygon



Draws a regular polygon given the first two vertices and the number of sides, where the number of sides is greater than 1. If the number of sides is 2, then the segment is drawn. You can provide CAS variable names for storing the coordinates of the calculated points in the order they were created. The orientation of the polygon is counterclockwise.

`isopolygon(point1, point2, realn)`, where `realn` is an integer greater than 1.

Example:



`isopolygon(GA, GB, 6)` draws a regular hexagon whose first two vertices are the points A and B.

## Square

Tap one vertex and press . Tap another vertex and press . The location of the third and fourth vertices are automatically calculated and the square is drawn.

## Curve

### Circle


Tap at the center of the circle and press . Tap at a point on the circumference and press . A circle is drawn about the center point with a radius equal to the distance between the two tapped points.

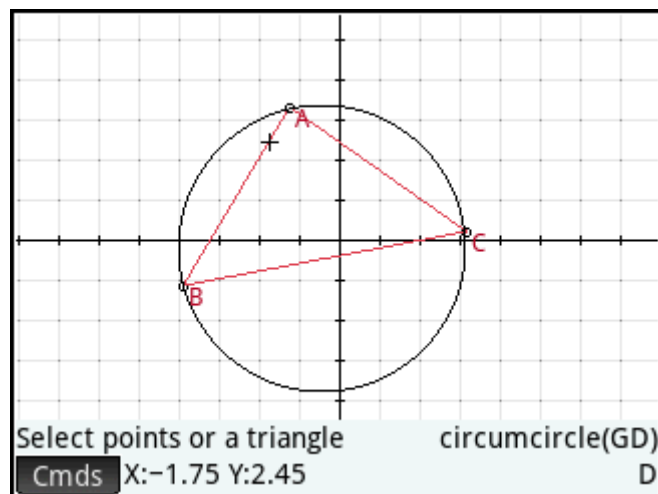
Keyboard shortcut: 

You can also create a circle by first defining it in Symbolic view. The syntax is `circle(GA, GB)` where **A** and **B** are two points. A circle is drawn in Plot view such that **A** and **B** define the diameter of the circle.


## Circumcircle

A circumcircle is the circle that passes through each of the triangle's three vertices, thus enclosing the triangle.

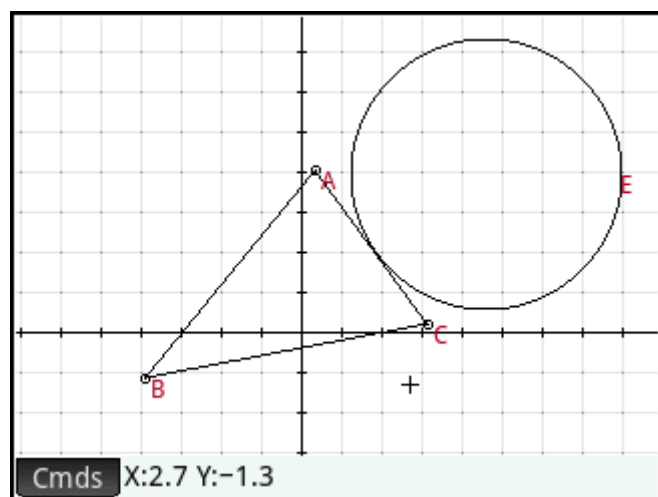
Tap at each vertex of the triangle, pressing  after each tap.



## Excircle

An excircle is a circle that is tangent to one segment of a triangle and also tangent to the rays through the segment's endpoints from the vertex of the triangle opposite the segment. Tap at each vertex of the triangle, pressing  after each tap.

The excircle is drawn tangent to the side defined by the last two vertices tapped. In the following figure, the last two vertices tapped were A and C (or C and A). Thus the excircle is drawn tangent to the line segment AC.

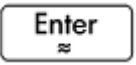
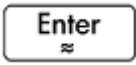



## Incircle

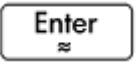


An incircle is a circle that is tangent to all three sides of a triangle. Tap each vertex of the triangle, pressing

 after each tap.



## Ellipse

Tap at one focus point and press . Tap at the second focus point and press . Tap at a point on the circumference and press .

## Hyperbola

Tap at one focus point and press . Tap at the second focus point and press . Tap at a point on one branch of the hyperbola and press .

## Parabola

Tap at the focus point and press . Tap either on a line (the directrix) or a ray or segment and press .

## Conic

Plots the graph of a conic section defined by an expression in  $x$  and  $y$ .

`conic(expr)`

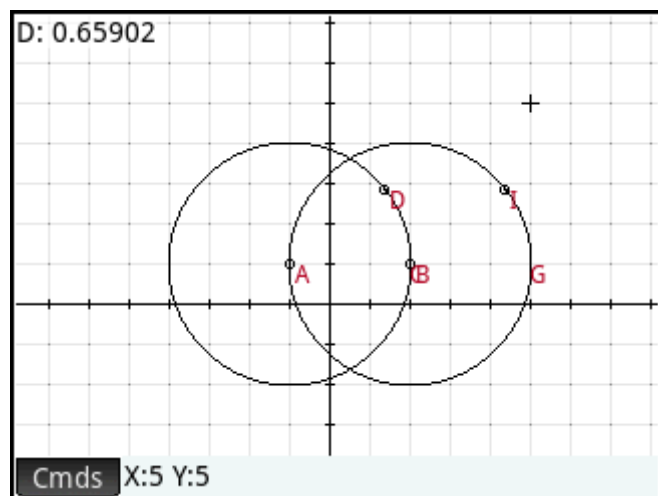
Example:

`conic(x^2+y^2-81)` draws a circle with center at (0,0) and radius of 9

## Locus

Takes two points as its arguments: the first is the point whose possible locations form the locus; the second is a point on an object. This second point drives the first through its locus as the second moves on its object.

In the following figure, circle C has been drawn and point D is a point placed on C (using the **Point On** function described above). Point I is a translation of point D. Choosing **Curve > Special > Locus** places **locus** on the entry line. Complete the command as `locus(GI, GD)` and point I traces a path (its locus) that parallels point D as it moves around the circle to which it is constrained.

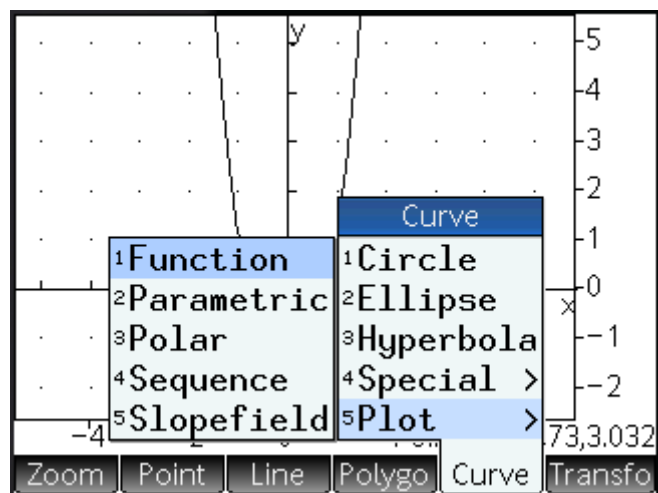


## Plot

You can plot expressions of the following types in Plot view:

- Function
- Parametric
- Polar
- Sequence

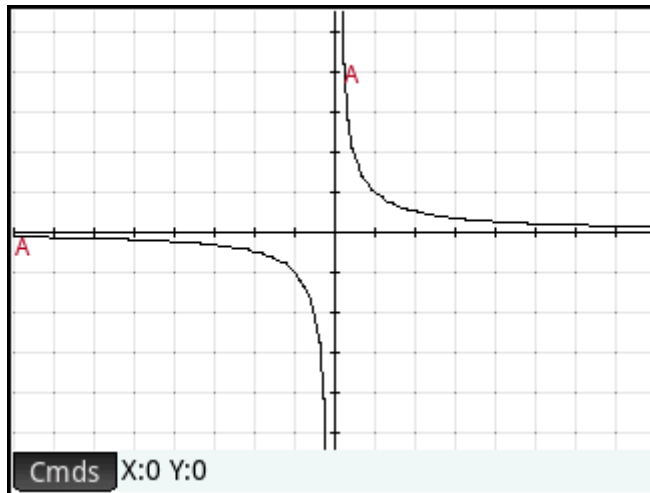
Tap , select **Plot**, and then the type of expression you want to plot. The entry line is enabled for you to define the expression.



Note that the variables you specify for an expression must be in lowercase.

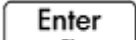


In this example, **Function** has been selected as the plot type and the graph of  $y = 1/x$  is plotted.



## Function

**Syntax:** `plotfunc (Expr)`

Draws the plot of a function, given an expression in the independent variable  $x$ . An edit line appears. Enter your expression and press . Note the use of lowercase  $x$ .

**Example:**

`plotfunc (3*sin(x))` draws the graph of  $y=3*\sin(x)$

## Parametric

**Syntax:** `plotparam(f(Var)+i*g(Var), Var= Start..Stop, [tstep=Value])`

Takes a complex expression in one variable and an interval for that variable as arguments. Interprets the complex expression  $f(t) + i*g(t)$  as  $x = f(t)$  and  $y = g(t)$  and plots the parametric equation over the interval specified in the second argument. An edit line opens for you to enter the complex expression and the interval.

**Examples:**

`plotparam(cos(t)+ i*sin(t), t=0..2*pi)` plots the unit circle

`plotparam(cos(t)+ i*sin(t), t=0..2*pi, tstep=pi/3)` plots a regular hexagon inscribed in the unit circle (note the `tstep` value)

## Polar

**Syntax:** `plotpolar(Expr,Var=Interval, [Step])` or `plotpolar(Expr, Var, Min, Max, [Step])`

Draws a polar graph in Plot view. An edit line opens for you to enter an expression in  $x$  as well as an interval (and optional step).

`plotpolar(f(x), x, a, b)` draws the polar curve  $r=f(x)$  for  $x$  in  $[a, b]$

## Sequence

**Syntax:** `plotseq(f(Var), Var={Start, Xmin, Xmax}, Integer n)`

Given an expression in  $x$  and a list containing three values, draws the line  $y=x$ , the plot of the function defined by the expression over the domain defined by the interval between the last two values, and draws the cobweb plot for the first  $n$  terms of the sequence defined recursively by the expression (starting at the first value).

**Example:**

`plotseq(1-x/2, x={3 -1 6}, 5)` plots  $y=x$  and  $y=1-x/2$  (from  $x=-1$  to  $x=6$ ), then draws the first 5 terms of the cobweb plot for  $u(n)=1-(u(n-1))/2$ , starting at  $u(0)=3$

## Implicit

**Syntax:** `plotimplicit(Expr, [XIntrvl, YIntrvl])`

Plots an implicitly defined curve from  $\text{Expr}$  (in  $x$  and  $y$ ). Specifically, plots  $\text{Expr}=0$ . Note the use of lowercase  $x$  and  $y$ . With the optional  $x$ -interval and  $y$ -interval, this command plots only within those intervals.

**Example:**

`plotimplicit((x+5)^2+(y+4)^2-1)` plots a circle, centered at the point  $(-5, -4)$ , with a radius of 1

## Slopefield

**Syntax:** `plotfield(Expr, [x=X1..X2 y=Y1..Y2], [Xstep, Ystep], [Option])`

Plots the graph of the slopefield for the differential equation  $y'=f(x,y)$  over the given  $x$ -range and  $y$ -range. If **Option** is `normalize`, the slopefield segments drawn are equal in length.

**Example:**

`plotfield(x*sin(y), [x=-6..6, y=-6..6], normalize)` draws the slopefield for  $y'=x\sin(y)$ , from  $-6$  to  $6$  in both directions, with segments that are all of the same length

## ODE

**Syntax:** `plotode(Expr, [Var1, Var2, ...], [Val1, Val2. ...])`

Draws the solution of the differential equation  $y'=f(\text{Var1}, \text{Var2}, \dots)$  that contains as initial condition for the variables  $\text{Val1}, \text{Val2}, \dots$ . The first argument is the expression  $f(\text{Var1}, \text{Var2}, \dots)$ , the second argument is the vector of variables, and the third argument is the vector of initial conditions.

**Example:**

`plotode(x*sin(y), [x,y], [-2, 2])` draws the graph of the solution to  $y'=x\sin(y)$  that passes through the point  $(-2, 2)$  as its initial condition

## List

**Syntax:** `plotlist(Matrix 2xn)`

Plots a set of  $n$  points and connects them with segments. The points are defined by a  $2 \times n$  matrix, with the abscissas in the first row and the ordinates in the second row.

**Example:**

`plotlist([[0,3],[2,1],[4,4],[0,3]])` draws a triangle

## Slider

Creates a slider bar that can be used to control the value of a parameter. A dialog box displays the slider bar definition and any animation for the slider.

## Transform

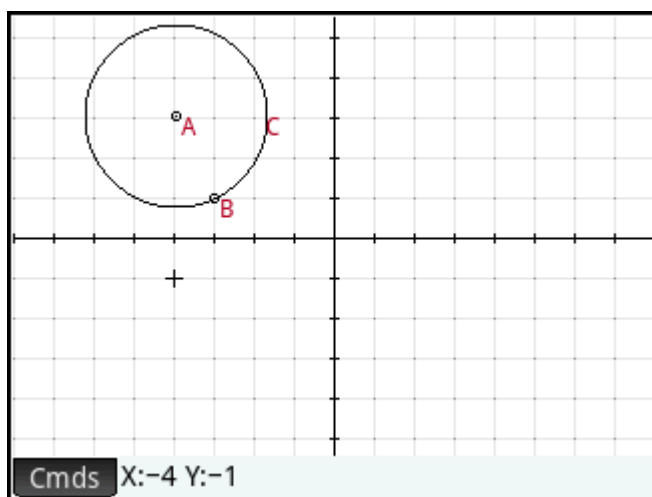
The **Transform** menu provides numerous tools for you to perform transformations on geometric objects in Plot view. You can also define transformations in Symbolic view.

### Translation

A translation is a transformation of a set of points that moves each point the same distance in the same direction.  $T: (x,y) \rightarrow (x+a, y+b)$ .

Suppose you want to translate circle B in the following figure down a little and to the right:

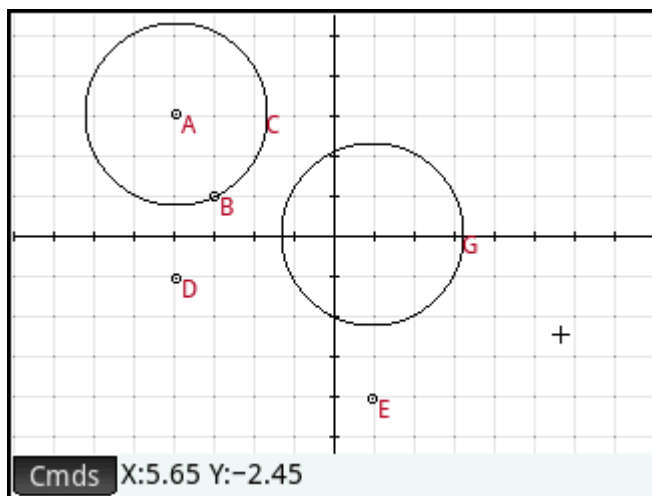
1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Transform**, and select **Translation**.
2. Tap the object to be moved and press **Enter**.



3. Tap an initial location and press **Enter**.

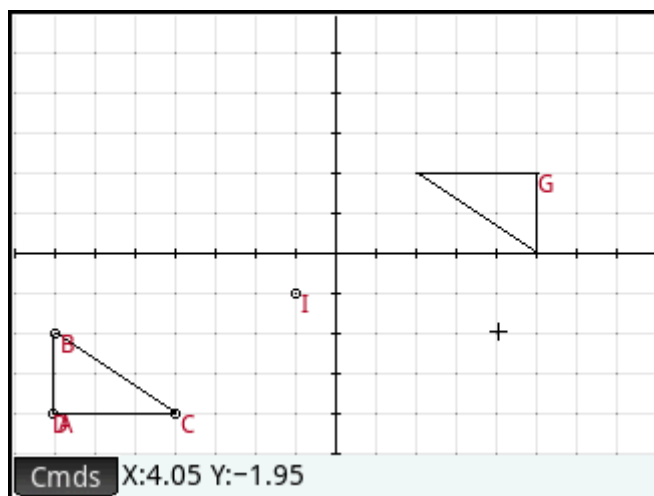
4. Tap a final location and press **Enter** .

The object is moved the same distance and direction from the initial to the final locations. The original object is left in place.



## Reflection

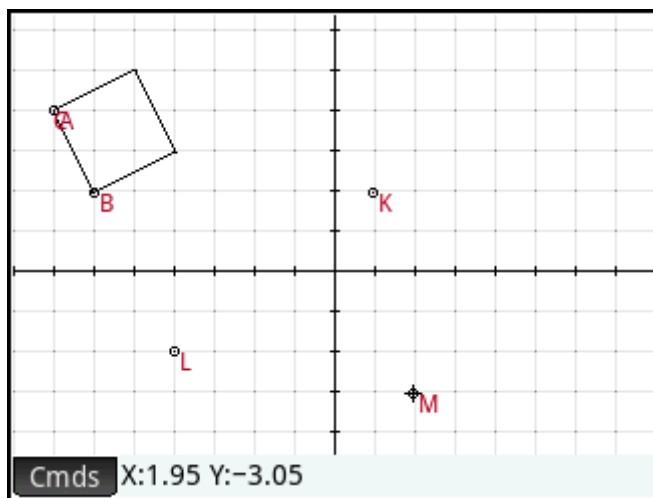
A reflection is a transformation which maps an object or set of points onto its mirror image, where the mirror is either a point or a line. A reflection through a point is sometimes called a half-turn. In either case, each point on the mirror image is the same distance from the mirror as the corresponding point on the original. In the following figure, the original triangle **D** is reflected through point **I**.



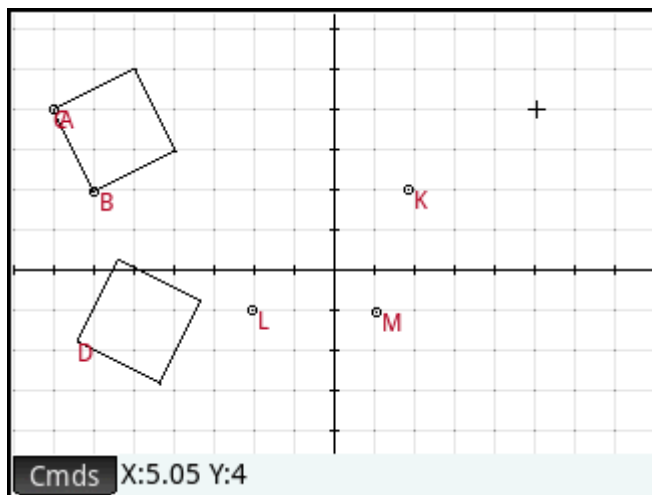
1. Tap **Cmds** , tap **Transform**, and select **Reflection**.
2. Tap the point or straight object (segment, ray, or line) that will be the symmetry axis (that is, the mirror) and press **Enter** .
3. Tap the object that is to be reflected across the symmetry axis and press **Enter** . The object is reflected across the symmetry axis defined in step 2.

## Rotation

A rotation is a mapping that rotates each point by a fixed angle around a center point. The angle is defined using the `angle()` command, with the vertex of the angle as the first argument. Suppose you wish to rotate the square (GC) around point K (GK) through  $\angle LKM$  in the following figure.



1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Transform**, and select **Rotation**. `rotation()` appears on the entry line.
2. Between the parentheses, enter:  
`GK, angle (GK, GL, GM) , GC`
3. Press **Enter** or tap **OK**.
4. Press **Plot** to return to Plot view to see the rotated square.

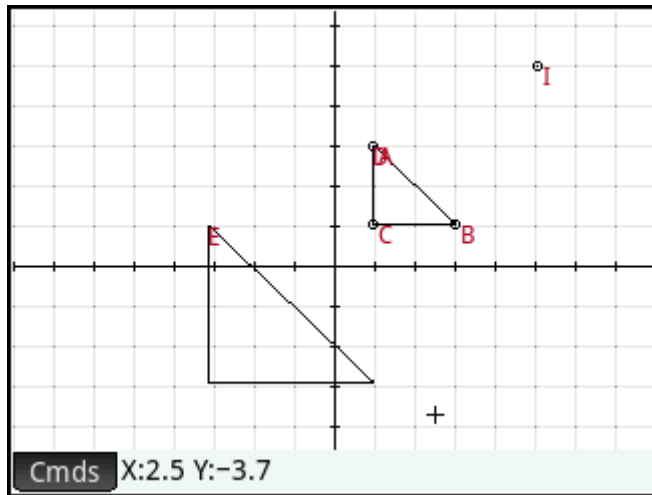


## Dilation

A dilation (also called a homothety or uniform scaling) is a transformation where an object is enlarged or reduced by a given scale factor around a given point as center.

In the following figure, the scale factor is 2 and the center of dilation is indicated by a point near the top right of the screen (named I). Each point on the new triangle is collinear with its corresponding point on the

original triangle and point I. Further, the distance from point I to each new point will be twice the distance to the original point (since the scale factor is 2).



1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Transform**, and select **Dilation**.
2. Tap the point that is to be the center of dilation and press **Enter**.
3. Enter the scale factor and press **Enter**.
4. Tap the object that is to be dilated and press **Enter**.

## Similarity

Dilates and rotates a geometric object about the same center point.

`similarity(point, realk, angle, object)`

Example:

`similarity(0, 3, angle(0,1,i),point(2,0))` dilates the point at (2,0) by a scale factor of 3 (a point at (6,0)), then rotates the result 90° counterclockwise to create a point at (0, 6).

## Projection

A projection is a mapping of one or more points onto an object such that the line passing through the point and its image is perpendicular to the object at the image point.

1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Transform**, and select **Projection**.
2. Tap the object onto which points are to be projected and press **Enter**.
3. Tap the point that is to be projected and press **Enter**.

Note the new point added to the target object.

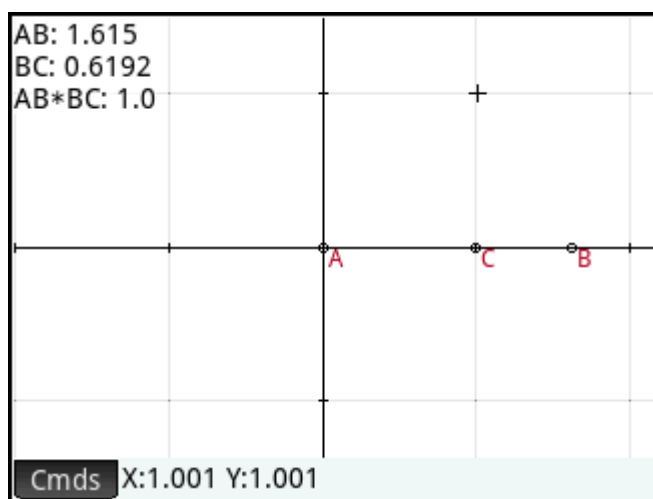
## Inversion

An inversion is a mapping involving a center point and a scale factor. Specifically, the inversion of point A through center C, with scale factor k, maps A onto A', such that A' is on line CA and  $CA \cdot CA' = k$ , where CA and CA' denote the lengths of the corresponding segments. If  $k=1$ , then the lengths CA and CA' are reciprocals.

Suppose you wish to find the inversion of point B with respect to point A.

1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Transform**, and select **Inversion**.
2. Tap point **A** and press **Enter**.
3. Enter the inversion ratio—use the default value of 1—and press **Enter**.
4. Tap point **B** and press **Enter**.


In the figure, point **C** is the inversion of point **B** in respect to point **A**.



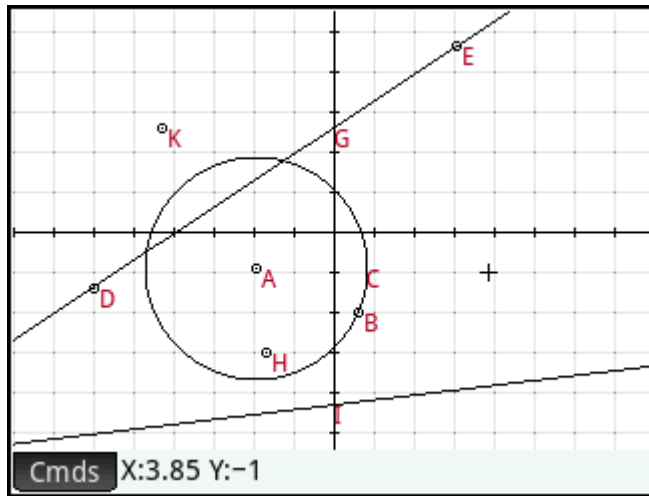
## Reciprocation

A reciprocation is a special case of inversion involving circles. A reciprocation with respect to a circle transforms each point in the plane into its polar line. Conversely, the reciprocation with respect to a circle maps each line in the plane into its pole.

1. Tap **Cmds**, tap **Transform**, and select **Reciprocation**.
2. Tap the circle and press **Enter**.
3. Tap a point and press **Enter** to see its polar line.


4. Tap a line and press  to see its pole.

In the following figure, point **K** is the reciprocation of line **DE** (G) and Line **I** (at the bottom of the display) is the reciprocation of point **H**.




## Cartesian


### Abscissa

Tap a point and press  to select it. The abscissa (x-coordinate) of the point will appear at the top left of the screen.


### Ordinate

Tap a point and press  to select it. The ordinate (y-coordinate) of the point will appear at the top left of the screen.


### Coordinates

Tap a point and press  to select it. The coordinates of the point will appear at the top left of the screen.

### Equation of


Tap an object other than a point and press  to select it. The equation of the object (in x and/or y) is displayed.

### Parametric

Tap an object other than a point and press  to select it. The parametric equation of the object ( $x(t)+i*y(t)$ ) is displayed.




## Polar coordinates


Tap a point and press  to select it. The polar coordinates of the point will appear at the top left of the screen.

## Measure


### Distance

Tap a point and press  to select it. Repeat to select a second point. The distance between the two points is displayed.


### Radius

Tap a circle and press  to select it. The radius of the circle is displayed.

### Perimeter

Tap a circle and press  to select it. The perimeter of the circle is displayed.


### Slope

Tap a straight object (segment, line, and so on) and press  to select it. The slope of the object is displayed.


### Area

Tap a circle or polygon and press  to select it. The area of the object is displayed.

### Angle


Tap a point and press  to select it. Repeat to select three points. The measure of the directed angle from the second point through the third point, with the first point as vertex, is displayed.

### Arc Length


Tap a curve and press  to select it. Then, enter a start value and a stop value. The length of the arc on the curve between the two x-values is displayed.

## Tests



### Collinear

Tap a point and press  to select it. Repeat to select three points. The test appears at the top of the display, along with its result. The test returns 1 if the points are collinear; otherwise, it returns 0.



## On circle

Tap a point and press  to select it. Repeat to select four points. The test appears at the top of the display, along with its result. The test returns 1 if the points are on the same circle; otherwise, it returns 0.



## On object

Tap a point and press  to select it. Then tap an object and press . The test appears at the top of the display, along with its result. The test returns 1 if the point is on the object; otherwise, it returns 0.


## Parallel

Tap a straight object (segment, line, and so on) and press  to select it. Then tap another straight object and press . The test appears at the top of the display, along with its result. The test returns 1 if the objects are parallel; otherwise, it returns 0.


## Perpendicular

Tap a straight object (segment, line, and so on) and press  to select it. Then tap another straight object and press . The test appears at the top of the display, along with its result. The test returns 1 if the objects are perpendicular; otherwise, it returns 0.


## Isosceles

Tap a triangle and press  to select it. Or select three points in order. Returns 0 if the triangle is not isosceles or if the three points do not form an isosceles triangle. If the triangle is isosceles (or the three points form an isosceles triangle), returns the number order of the common point of the two sides of equal length (1, 2, or 3). Returns 4 if the three points form an equilateral triangle or if the selected triangle is equilateral.


## Equilateral

Tap a triangle and press  to select it. Or select three points in order. Returns 1 if the triangle is equilateral or if the three points form an equilateral triangle; otherwise, it returns 0.


## Parallelogram

Tap a point and press  to select it. Repeat to select four points. The test appears at the top of the display, along with its result. The test returns 0 if the points do not form a parallelogram. Returns 1 if they form a parallelogram, 2 if they form a rhombus, 3 if they form a rectangle, and 4 if they form a square.

## Conjugate

Tap a circle and press  to select it. Then, select two points or two lines. The test returns 1 if the two points or lines are conjugates for the circle; otherwise, it returns 0.

## Geometry functions and commands

The list of geometry-specific functions and commands in this section covers those that can be found by tapping  in both Symbolic and Numeric view and those that are only available from the Catlg menu.

Calculations referring to geometric objects—in the Numeric view of the Geometry app and in the CAS—must use the G-prefixed name given for it in Symbolic view.


For example, `altitude(GA, GB, GC)` is the form you need to use in calculations.

Further, in many cases the specified parameters in the following syntax can be the name of a point (such as GA) or a complex number representing a point.

Thus `angle(A, B, C)` could be:

- `angle(GP, GR, GB)`
- `angle(3+2i, 1-2i, 5+i)` or
- a combination of named points and points defined by a complex number, as in `angle(GP, 1-2*i, i)`.

## Symbolic view: Cmds menu

For the most part, the Commands menu in Symbolic View is the same as it is in Plot view. The Zoom category does not appear in Symbolic view, nor do the Cartesian, Measure, and Tests categories, although the latter three appear in Numeric view. In Symbolic view, the commands are entered using their syntax. Highlight a command and press  to learn its syntax. The advantage of entering or editing a definition in Symbolic view is that you can specify the exact location of points. After the exact locations of points are entered, the properties of any dependent objects (lines, circles, and so on) are reported exactly by the CAS. Use this fact to test conjectures on geometric objects using the Test commands. All these commands can be used in the CAS view, where they return the same objects.

## Point

### Point

Creates a point, given the coordinates of the point. Each coordinate may be a value or an expression involving variables or measurements on other objects in the geometric construction.

`point(real1, real2)` or `point(expr1, expr2)`

Examples:

`point(3, 4)` creates a point whose coordinates are (3,4). This point may be selected and moved later.

`point(abscissa(A), ordinate(B))` creates a point whose x-coordinate is the same as that of a point A and whose y-coordinate is the same as that of a point B. This point will change to reflect the movements of point A or point B.

## Point on




Creates a point on a geometric object whose abscissa is a given value or creates a real value on a given interval.

`element(object, real)` or `element(real1..real2)`

Examples:

`element(plotfunc(x^2), -2)` creates a point on the graph of  $y = x^2$ . Initially, this point will appear at (-2,4). You can move the point, but it will always remain on the graph of its function.

`element(0..5)` creates a slider bar with a value of 2.5 initially. Tap and hold this value to open the slider.

Select  or  to increase or decrease the value on the slider bar. Press  to close the slider bar. The value that you set can be used as a coefficient in a function that you subsequently plot or in some other object or calculation.

## Midpoint

Returns the midpoint of a segment. The argument can be either the name of a segment or two points that define a segment. In the latter case, the segment need not actually be drawn.

`midpoint(segment)` or `midpoint(point1, point2)`

Example:

`midpoint(0, 6+6i)` returns `point(3, 3)`

## Center

Syntax: `center(Circle)`

Plots the center of a circle. The circle can be defined by the circle command or by name (for example, **GC**).

Example:

`center(circle(x^2+y^2-x-y))` plots `point(1/2, 1/2)`

## Intersection

Syntax: `single_inter(Curve1, Curve2, [Point])`

Plots the intersection of Curve1 and Curve2 that is closest to Point.

Example:

`single_inter(line(y=x), circle(x^2+y^2=1), point(1,1))` plots  
`point((1+i)*√2/2)`

## Intersections

Returns the intersection of two curves as a vector.

`inter(Curve1, Curve2)`

Example:

`inter(8-x^2/6, x/2-1)` returns `[[6 2], [-9 -11/2]]`



**NOTE:** This command creates a point. The command uses the location of this point to look for the desired intersection. You can move the point to select a different nearby intersection.

## Line

### Segment

Draws a segment defined by its endpoints.

```
segment(point1, point2)
```

Examples:

`segment(1+2i, 4)` draws the segment defined by the points whose coordinates are (1, 2) and (4, 0).

`segment(GA, GB)` draws segment AB.

### Ray

Given 2 points, draws a ray from the first point through the second point.

```
half_line((point1, point2)
```

### Line

Draws a line. The arguments can be two points, a linear expression of the form  $a*x+b*y+c$ , or a point and a slope as shown in the examples.

```
line(point1, point2) or line(a*x+b*y+c) or line(point1, slope=realm)
```

Examples:

`line(2+i, 3+2i)` draws the line whose equation is  $y=x-1$ ; that is, the line through the points (2,1) and (3,2).

`line(2x-3y-8)` draws the line whose equation is  $2x-3y=8$

`line(3-2i, slope=1/2)` draws the line whose equation is  $x-2y=7$ ; that is, the line through (3, -2) with slope  $m=1/2$ .

### Parallel

Draws a line through a given point that is parallel to a given line.

```
parallel(point, line)
```

Examples:

`parallel(A, B)` draws the line through point A that is parallel to line B.

`parallel(3-2i, x+y-5)` draws the line through the point (3, -2) that is parallel to the line whose equation is  $x+y=5$ ; that is, the line whose equation is  $y=-x+1$ .

## Perpendicular

Draws a line through a given point that is perpendicular to a given line. The line may be defined by its name, two points, or an expression in  $x$  and  $y$ .

```
perpendicular(point, line) or perpendicular(point1, point2, point3)
```

Examples:

```
perpendicular(GA, GD) draws a line perpendicular to line D through point A.
```

```
perpendicular(3+2i, GB, GC) draws a line through the point whose coordinates are (3, 2) that is perpendicular to line BC.
```

```
perpendicular(3+2i, line(x-y=1)) draws a line through the point whose coordinates are (3, 2) that is perpendicular to the line whose equation is  $x - y = 1$ ; that is, the line whose equation is  $y = -x + 5$ .
```

## Tangent

Draws the tangent(s) to a given curve through a given point. The point does not have to be a point on the curve.

```
tangent(curve, point)
```

Examples:

```
tangent(plotfunc(x^2), GA) draws the tangent to the graph of  $y=x^2$  through point A.
```

```
tangent(circle(GB, GC-GB), GA) draws one or more tangent lines through point A to the circle whose center is at point B and whose radius is defined by segment BC.
```

## Median

Given three points that define a triangle, creates the median of the triangle that passes through the first point and contains the midpoint of the segment defined by the other two points.

```
median_line(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

```
median_line(0, 8i, 4) draws the line whose equation is  $y=2x$ ; that is, the line through (0,0) and (2,4), the midpoint of the segment whose endpoints are (0, 8) and (4, 0).
```

## Altitude

Given three non-collinear points, draws the altitude of the triangle defined by the three points that passes through the first point. The triangle does not have to be drawn.

```
altitude(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

```
altitude(A, B, C) draws a line passing through point A that is perpendicular to line BC.
```

## Bisector

Given three points, creates the bisector of the angle defined by the three points whose vertex is at the first point. The angle does not have to be drawn in the Plot view.

```
bisector(point1, point2, point3)
```

Examples:

`bisector(A, B, C)` draws the bisector of  $\angle BAC$ .

`bisector(0, -4i, 4)` draws the line given by  $y = -x$

## Polygon

### Triangle

Draws a triangle, given its three vertices.

```
triangle(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

`triangle(GA, GB, GC)` draws  $\triangle ABC$ .

### Isosceles Triangle

Draws an isosceles triangle defined by two of its vertices and an angle. The vertices define one of the two sides equal in length and the angle defines the angle between the two sides of equal length. Like `equilateral_triangle`, you have the option of storing the coordinates of the third point into a CAS variable.

```
isosceles_triangle(point1, point2, angle)
```

Example:

`isosceles_triangle(GA, GB, angle(GC, GA, GB))` defines an isosceles triangle such that one of the two sides of equal length is AB, and the angle between the two sides of equal length has a measure equal to that of  $\angle ACB$ .

### Right Triangle

Draws a right triangle given two points and a scale factor. One leg of the right triangle is defined by the two points, the vertex of the right angle is at the first point, and the scale factor multiplies the length of the first leg to determine the length of the second leg.

```
right_triangle(point1, point2, realk)
```

Example:

`right_triangle(GA, GB, 1)` draws an isosceles right triangles with its right angle at point A, and with both legs equal in length to segment AB.

### Quadrilateral

Draws a quadrilateral from a set of four points.

```
quadrilateral(point1, point2, point3, point4)
```

Example:

`quadrilateral(GA, GB, GC, GD)` draws quadrilateral ABCD.

## Parallelogram

Draws a parallelogram given three of its vertices. The fourth point is calculated automatically but is not defined symbolically. As with most of the other polygon commands, you can store the fourth point's coordinates into a CAS variable. The orientation of the parallelogram is counterclockwise from the first point.

```
parallelogram(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

`parallelogram(0, 6, 9+5i)` draws a parallelogram whose vertices are at (0, 0), (6, 0), (9, 5), and (3, 5). The coordinates of the last point are calculated automatically.

## Rhombus

Draws a rhombus, given two points and an angle. As with many of the other polygon commands, you can specify optional CAS variable names for storing the coordinates of the other two vertices as points.

```
rhombus(point1, point2, angle)
```

Example:

`rhombus(GA, GB, angle(GC, GD, GE))` draws a rhombus on segment AB such that the angle at vertex A has the same measure as  $\angle DCE$ .

## Rectangle

Draws a rectangle given two consecutive vertices and a point on the side opposite the side defined by the first two vertices or a scale factor for the sides perpendicular to the first side. As with many of the other polygon commands, you can specify optional CAS variable names for storing the coordinates of the other two vertices as points.

```
rectangle(point1, point2, point3) or rectangle(point1, point2, realk)
```

Examples:

`rectangle(GA, GB, GE)` draws a rectangle whose first two vertices are points A and B (one side is segment AB). Point E is on the line that contains the side of the rectangle opposite segment AB.

`rectangle(GA, GB, 3, p, q)` draws a rectangle whose first two vertices are points A and B (one side is segment AB). The sides perpendicular to segment AB have length  $3 \cdot AB$ . The third and fourth points are stored into the CAS variables p and q, respectively.

## Polygon

Draws a polygon from a set of vertices.

```
polygon(point1, point2, ..., pointn)
```

Example:

`polygon(GA, GB, GD)` draws  $\triangle ABD$



## Regular Polygon

Draws a regular polygon given the first two vertices and the number of sides, where the number of sides is greater than 1. If the number of sides is 2, then the segment is drawn. You can provide CAS variable names for storing the coordinates of the calculated points in the order they were created. The orientation of the polygon is counterclockwise.

`isopolygon(point1, point2, realn)`, where `realn` is an integer greater than 1.

Example:

`isopolygon(GA, GB, 6)` draws a regular hexagon whose first two vertices are the points A and B.

## Square

Draws a square, given two consecutive vertices as points.

`square(point1, point2)`

Example:

`square(0, 3+2i, p, q)` draws a square with vertices at (0, 0), (3, 2), (1, 5), and (-2, 3). The last two vertices are computed automatically and are saved into the CAS variables `p` and `q`.

## Curve

### Circle

Draws a circle, given the endpoints of the diameter, or a center and radius, or an equation in  $x$  and  $y$ .

`circle(point1, point2)` or `circle(point1, point 2-point1)` or `circle(equation)`

Examples:

`circle(GA, GB)` draws the circle with diameter AB.

`circle(GA, GB-GA)` draws the circle with center at point A and radius AB.

`circle(x^2+y^2=1)` draws the unit circle.

This command can also be used to draw an arc.

`circle(GA, GB, 0,  $\pi/2$ )` draws a quarter-circle with diameter AB.

### Circumcircle

Draws the circumcircle of a triangle; that is, the circle circumscribed about a triangle.

`circumcircle(point1, point2, point3)`

Example:

`circumcircle(GA, GB, GC)` draws the circle circumscribed about  $\triangle ABC$ .

### Excircle

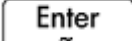
Given three points that define a triangle, draws the excircle of the triangle that is tangent to the side defined by the last two points and also tangent to the extensions of the two sides where the common vertex is the first point.

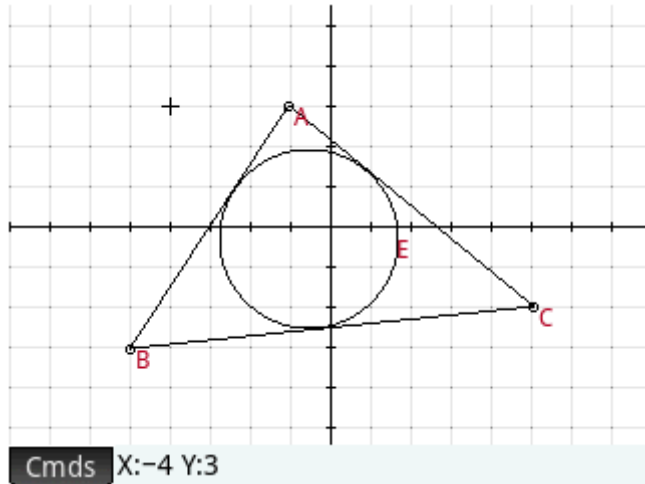
Example:

`excircle(GA, GB, GC)` draws the circle tangent to segment BC and to the rays AB and AC.

## Incircle

An incircle is a circle that is tangent to each of a polygon's sides. The HP Prime can draw an incircle that is tangent to the sides of a triangle.

Tap at each vertex of the triangle, pressing  after each tap.



## Ellipse

Draws an ellipse, given the foci and either a point on the ellipse or a scalar that is one half the constant sum of the distances from a point on the ellipse to each of the foci.

`ellipse(point1, point2, point3)` or `ellipse(point1, point2, realk)`

Examples:

`ellipse(GA, GB, GC)` draws the ellipse whose foci are points A and B and which passes through point C.

`ellipse(GA, GB, 3)` draws an ellipse whose foci are points A and B. For any point P on the ellipse,  $AP + BP = 6$ .

## Hyperbola

Draws a hyperbola, given the foci and either a point on the hyperbola or a scalar that is one half the constant difference of the distances from a point on the hyperbola to each of the foci.

`hyperbola(point1, point2, point3)` or `hyperbola(point1, point2, realk)`

Examples:

`hyperbola(GA, GB, GC)` draws the hyperbola whose foci are points A and B and which passes through point C.

`hyperbola(GA, GB, 3)` draws a hyperbola whose foci are points A and B. For any point P on the hyperbola,  $|AP - BP| = 6$ .

## Parabola

Draws a parabola, given a focus point and a directrix line, or the vertex of the parabola and a real number that represents the focal length.

`parabola(point, line)` **or** `parabola(vertex, real)`

**Examples:**

`parabola(GA, GB)` **draws a parabola whose focus is point A and whose directrix is line B.**

`parabola(GA, 1)` **draws a parabola whose vertex is point A and whose focal length is 1.**

## Conic

**Plots the graph of a conic section defined by an expression in x and y.**

`conic(expr)`

**Example:**

`conic(x^2+y^2-81)` **draws a circle with center at (0,0) and radius of 9**

## Locus

**Given a first point and a second point that is an element of (a point on) a geometric object, draws the locus of the first point as the second point traverses its object.**

`locus(point, element)`

## Plot

### Function

**Draws the plot of a function, given an expression in the independent variable x. Note the use of lowercase x.**

**Syntax:** `plotfunc(Expr)`

**Example:**

`plotfunc(3*sin(x))` **draws the graph of  $y=3\sin(x)$**

### Parametric

**Takes a complex expression in one variable and an interval for that variable as arguments. Interprets the complex expression  $f(t)+i*g(t)$  as  $x=f(t)$  and  $y=g(t)$  and plots the parametric equation over the interval specified in the second argument.**

**Syntax:** `plotparam(f(Var)+i*g(Var), Var= Start..Stop, [tstep=Value])`

**Examples:**

`plotparam(cos(t)+ i*sin(t), t=0..2*pi)` **plots the unit circle**

`plotparam(cos(t)+ i*sin(t), t=0..2*pi, tstep=pi/3)` **plots a regular hexagon inscribed in the unit circle (note the tstep value)**

### Polar

**Draws a polar plot.**

**Syntax:** `plotpolar(Expr, Var=Interval, [Step])` **or** `plotpolar(Expr, Var, Min, Max, [Step])`

**Example:**

`plotpolar(f(x), x, a, b)` **draws the polar curve  $r=f(x)$  for x in  $[a, b]$**

## Sequence

Given an expression in  $x$  and a list containing three values, draws the line  $y=x$ , the plot of the function defined by the expression over the domain defined by the interval between the last two values, and draws the cobweb plot for the first  $n$  terms of the sequence defined recursively by the expression (starting at the first value).

**Syntax:** `plotseq(f(Var), Var={Start, Xmin, Xmax}, Integern)`

**Example:**

`plotseq(1-x/2, x={3 -1 6}, 5)` plots  $y=x$  and  $y=1-x/2$  (from  $x=-1$  to  $x=6$ ), then draws the first 5 terms of the cobweb plot for  $u(n)=1-(u(n-1))/2$ , starting at  $u(0)=3$

## Implicit

Plots an implicitly defined curved from Expr (in  $x$  and  $y$ ). Specifically, plots  $\text{Expr}=0$ . Note the use of lowercase  $x$  and  $y$ . With the optional  $x$ -interval and  $y$ -interval, plots only within those intervals.

**Syntax:** `plotimplicit(Expr, [XIntrvl, YIntrvl])`

**Example:**

`plotimplicit((x+5)^2+(y+4)^2-1)` plots a circle, centered at the point  $(-5, -4)$ , with a radius of 1

## Slopefield

Plots the graph of the slopefield for the differential equation  $y'=f(x,y)$ , where  $f(x,y)$  is contained in Expr. VectorVar is a vector containing the variables. If VectorVar is of the form  $[x=\text{Interval}, y=\text{Interval}]$ , then the slopefield is plotted over the specified  $x$ -range and  $y$ -range. Given  $x\text{step}$  and  $y\text{step}$  values, plots the slopefield segments using these steps. If Option is `normalize`, then the slopefield segments drawn are equal in length.

**Syntax:** `plotfield(Expr, VectorVar, [xstep=Val, ystep=Val, Option])`

**Example:**

`plotfield(x*sin(y), [x=-6..6, y=-6..6], normalize)` draws the slopefield for  $y'=x*\sin(y)$ , from  $-6$  to  $6$  in both directions, with segments that are all of the same length.

## ODE

Draws the solution of the differential equation  $y'=f(\text{Va1}, \text{Var2}, \dots)$  that contains as initial condition for the variables  $\text{Val1}, \text{Val2}, \dots$ . The first argument is the expression  $f(\text{Var1}, \text{Var2}, \dots)$ , the second argument is the vector of variables, and the third argument is the vector of initial conditions.

**Syntax:** `plotode(Expr, [Var1, Var2, ...], [Val1, Val2. ...])`

**Example:**

`plotode(x*sin(y), [x,y], [-2, 2])` draws the graph of the solution to  $y'=x*\sin(y)$  that passes through the point  $(-2, 2)$  as its initial condition

## List

Plots a set of  $n$  points and connects them with segments. The points are defined by a  $2 \times n$  matrix, with the abscissas in the first row and the ordinates in the second row.

**Syntax:** `plotlist(Matrix 2xn)`

Example:

`plotlist([[0,3],[2,1],[4,4],[0,3]])` draws a triangle

## Slider

Creates a slider bar that can be used to control the value of a parameter. A dialog box displays the slider bar definition and any animation for the slider. When completed, the slider bar appears near the top left of Plot view. You can then move it to another location.

## Transform

### Translation

Translates a geometric object along a given vector. The vector is given as the difference of two points (head-tail).

`translation(vector, object)`

Examples:

`translation(0-i, GA)` translates object A down one unit.

`translation(GB-GA, GC)` translates object C along the vector AB.

### Reflection

Reflects a geometric object over a line or through a point. The latter is sometimes referred to as a half-turn.

`reflection(line, object)` or `reflection(point, object)`

Examples:

`reflection(line(x=3), point(1,1))` reflects the point at (1, 1) over the vertical line  $x=3$  to create a point at (5,1).

`reflection(1+i, 3-2i)` reflects the point at (3,-2) through the point at (1, 1) to create a point at (-1, 4).

### Rotation

Rotates a geometric object, about a given center point, through a given angle.

`rotate(point, angle, object)`

Example:

`rotate(GA, angle(GB, GC, GD), GK)` rotates the geometric object labeled K, about point A, through an angle equal to  $\angle CBD$ .

### Dilation

Dilates a geometric object, with respect to a center point, by a scale factor.

`homothety(point, realk, object)`

Example:

`homothety(GA, 2, GB)` creates a dilation centered at point A that has a scale factor of 2. Each point P on geometric object B has its image P' on ray AP such that  $AP'=2AP$ .

## Similarity

Dilates and rotates a geometric object about the same center point.

```
similarity(point, realk, angle, object)
```

Example:

`similarity(0, 3, angle(0,1,i),point(2,0))` dilates the point at (2,0) by a scale factor of 3 (a point at (6,0)), then rotates the result 90° counterclockwise to create a point at (0, 6).

## Projection

Draws the orthogonal projection of a point onto a curve.

```
projection(curve, point)
```

## Inversion

Draws the inversion of a point, with respect to another point, by a scale factor.

```
inversion(point1, realk, point2)
```

Example:

`inversion(GA, 3, GB)` draws point C on line AB such that  $AB \cdot AC = 3$ . In this case, point A is the center of the inversion and the scale factor is 3. Point B is the point whose inversion is created.

In general, the inversion of point A through center C, with scale factor k, maps A onto A', such that A' is on line CA and  $CA \cdot CA' = k$ , where CA and CA' denote the lengths of the corresponding segments. If  $k=1$ , then the lengths CA and CA' are reciprocals.

## Reciprocation

Given a circle and a vector of objects that are either points or lines, returns a vector where each point is replaced with its polar line and each line is replaced with its pole, with respect to the circle.

```
reciprocation(Circle, [Obj1, Obj2, ...Objn])
```

Example:

```
reciprocation(circle(0,1), [line(1+i,2), point(1+i*2)]) returns [point(1/2, 1/2) line(y=-x/2+1/2)]
```

## Numeric view: Cmds menu

### Cartesian

#### Abscissa

Returns the x coordinate of a point or the x length of a vector.

```
abscissa(point) or abscissa(vector)
```

Example:

`abscissa(GA)` returns the x-coordinate of the point A.

## Ordinate

Returns the y coordinate of a point or the y length of a vector.

`ordinate(point)` or `ordinate(vector)`

Example:

`ordinate(GA)` returns the y-coordinate of the point A.

## Coordinates

Given a vector of points, returns a matrix containing the x- and y-coordinates of those points. Each row of the matrix defines one point; the first column gives the x-coordinates and the second column contains the y-coordinates.

`coordinates([point1, point2, ..., pointn])`

## Equation of

Returns the Cartesian equation of a curve in x and y, or the Cartesian coordinates of a point.

`equation(curve)` or `equation(point)`

Example:

If GA is the point at (0, 0), GB is the point at (1, 0), and GC is defined as `circle(GA, GB-GA)`, then `equation(GC)` returns  $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ .

## Parametric

Works like the **equation** command, but returns parametric results in complex form.

`parameq(GeoObj )`

## Polar Coordinates

Returns a vector containing the polar coordinates of a point or a complex number.

`polar_coordinates(point)` or `polar_coordinates(complex)`

Example:

`polar_coordinates( $\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\sqrt{2}$ )` returns  $[2, \pi/4]$

## Measure

### Distance

Returns the distance between two points or between a point and a curve.

`distance(point1, point2)` or `distance(point, curve)`

Examples:

`distance(1+i, 3+3i)` returns 2.828... or  $2\sqrt{2}$ .

If GA is the point at (0, 0) and GB is defined as `plotfunc(4-x^2/4)`, then `distance(GA, GB)` returns 3.464... or  $2\sqrt{3}$ .

## Radius

Returns the radius of a circle.

```
radius(circle)
```

Example:

If GA is the point at (0, 0), GB is the point at (1, 0), and GC is defined as `circle(GA, GB-GA)`, then `radius(GC)` returns 1.

## Perimeter

Returns the perimeter of a polygon or the circumference of a circle.

```
perimeter(polygon) or perimeter(circle)
```

Examples:

If GA is the point at (0, 0), GB is the point at (1, 0), and GC is defined as `circle(GA, GB-GA)`, then `perimeter(GC)` returns  $2\pi$ .

If GA is the point at (0, 0), GB is the point at (1, 0), and GC is defined as `square(GA, GB-GA)`, then `perimeter(GC)` returns 4.

## Slope

Returns the slope of a straight object (segment, ray, or line).

```
slope(Object)
```

Example:

```
slope(line(point(1, 1), point(2, 2))) returns 1.
```

## Area

Returns the area of a circle or polygon.

```
area(circle) or area(polygon)
```

This command can also return the area under a curve between two points.

```
area(expr, value1, value2)
```

Examples:

If GA is defined to be the unit circle, then `area(GA)` returns  $\pi$ .

```
area(4-x^2/4, -4, 4) returns 14.666...
```

## Angle

Returns the measure of a directed angle. The first point is taken as the vertex of the angle as the next two points in order give the measure and sign.

```
angle(vertex, point2, point3)
```

Example:

```
angle(GA, GB, GC) returns the measure of  $\angle$ BAC.
```



## Arc Length

Returns the length of the arc of a curve between two points on the curve. The curve is an expression, the independent variable is declared, and the two points are defined by values of the independent variable.

This command can also accept a parametric definition of a curve. In this case, the expression is a list of 2 expressions (the first for x and the second for y) in terms of a third independent variable.

```
arcLen(expr, real1, real2)
```

Examples:

```
arcLen(x^2, x, -2, 2) returns 9.29....
```

```
arcLen({sin(t), cos(t)}, t, 0,  $\pi/2$ ) returns 1.57...
```

## Tests

### Collinear

Takes a set of points as argument and tests whether or not they are collinear. Returns 1 if the points are collinear and 0 otherwise.

```
is_collinear(point1, point2, ..., pointn)
```

Example:

```
is_collinear(point(0,0), point(5,0), point(6,1)) returns 0
```

### On circle

Takes a set of points as argument and tests if they are all on the same circle. Returns 1 if the points are all on the same circle and 0 otherwise.

```
is_concyclic(point1, point2, ..., pointn)
```

Example:

```
is_concyclic(point(-4,-2), point(-4,2), point(4,-2), point(4,2)) returns 1
```

### On object

Tests if a point is on a geometric object. Returns 1 if it is and 0 otherwise.

```
is_element(point, object)
```

Example:

```
is_element(point(2/ $\sqrt{2}$ , 2/ $\sqrt{2}$ ), circle(0,1)) returns 1.
```

### Parallel

Tests whether or not two lines are parallel. Returns 1 if they are and 0 otherwise.

```
is_parallel(line1, line2)
```

Example:

```
is_parallel(line(2x+3y=7), line(2x+3y=9)) returns 1.
```

## Perpendicular

Similar to **is\_orthogonal**. Tests whether or not two lines are perpendicular.

```
is_perpendicular(line1, line2)
```

## Isosceles

Takes three points and tests whether or not they are vertices of a single isosceles triangle. Returns 0 if they are not. If they are, returns the number order of the common point of the two sides of equal length (1, 2, or 3). Returns 4 if the three points form an equilateral triangle.

```
is_isosceles(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

```
is_isosceles1(point(0,0), point(4,0), point(2,4)) returns 3.
```

## Equilateral

Takes three points and tests whether or not they are vertices of a single equilateral triangle. Returns 1 if they are and 0 otherwise.

```
is_equilateral(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

```
is_equilateral(point(0,0), point(4,0), point(2,4)) returns 0.
```

## Parallelogram

Tests whether or not a set of four points are vertices of a parallelogram. Returns 0 if they are not. If they are, then returns 1 if they form only a parallelogram, 2 if they form a rhombus, 3 if they form a rectangle, and 4 if they form a square.

```
is_parallelogram(point1, point2, point3, point4)
```

Example:

```
is_parallelogram(point(0,0), point(2,4), point(0,8), point(-2,4)) returns 2.
```

## Conjugate

Tests whether or not two points or two lines are conjugates for the given circle. Returns 1 if they are and 0 otherwise.

```
is_conjugate(circle, point1, point2) or is_conjugate(circle, line1, line2)
```

## Other Geometry functions

The following functions are not available from a menu in the Geometry app, but are available from the Catlg menu.

### affix

Returns the coordinates of a point or both the x- and y-lengths of a vector as a complex number.

```
affix(point) or affix(vector)
```

Example:

If GA is a point at (1, -2), then `affix(GA)` returns  $1-2i$ .

## barycenter

Calculates the hypothetical center of mass of a set of points, each with a given weight (a real number). Each point, weight pair is enclosed in square brackets as a vector.

`barycenter([[point1, weight1], [point2, weight2], ..., [pointn, weightn]])`

Example:

`barycenter`  $\left( \begin{bmatrix} \text{point}(1) & 1 \\ \text{point}(1+i) & 2 \\ \text{point}(1-i) & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$  returns point (1/2, 1/4)

## convexhull

Returns a vector containing the points that serve as the convex hull for a given set of points.

`convexhull(point1, point2, ..., pointn)`

Example:

`convexhull(0, 1, 1+i, 1+2i, -1-i, 1-3i, -2+i)` returns `[1-3*i 1+2*i -2+i -1-i]`

## distance2

Returns the square of the distance between two points or between a point and a curve.

`distance2(point1, point2)` or `distance2(point, curve)`

Examples:

`distance2(1+i, 3+3i)` returns 8.

If GA is the point at (0, 0) and GB is defined as `plotfunc(4-x^2/4)`, then `distance2(GA, GB)` returns 12.

## division\_point

For two points A and B, and a numerical factor k, returns a point C such that  $C-B=k*(C-A)$ .

`division_point(point1, point2, realk)`

Example:

`division_point(0, 6+6*i, 4)` returns point (8,8)

## equilateral\_triangle

Draws an equilateral triangle defined by one of its sides; that is, by two consecutive vertices. The third point is calculated automatically, but is not defined symbolically. If a lowercase variable is added as a third argument, then the coordinates of the third point are stored in that variable. The orientation of the triangle is counterclockwise from the first point.

`equilateral_triangle(point1, point2)` or `equilateral_triangle(point1, point2, var)`

Examples:

`equilateral_triangle(0, 6)` draws an equilateral triangle whose first two vertices are at (0, 0) and (6,0); the third vertex is calculated to be at  $(3, 3\sqrt{3})$ .

`equilateral_triangle(0, 6, v)` draws an equilateral triangle whose first two vertices are at (0, 0) and (6, 0); the third vertex is calculated to be at  $(3, 3\sqrt{3})$  and these coordinates are stored in the CAS variable `v`. In CAS view, entering `v` returns `point(3*( $\sqrt{3}$ *i+1))`, which is equal to  $(3, 3\sqrt{3})$ .

## exbisector

Given three points that define a triangle, creates the bisector of the exterior angles of the triangle whose common vertex is at the first point. The triangle does not have to be drawn in the Plot view.

`exbisector(point1, point2, point3)`

Examples:

`exbisector(A, B, C)` draws the bisector of the exterior angles of  $\triangle ABC$  whose common vertex is at point A.

`exbisector(0, -4i, 4)` draws the line given by  $y=x$ .

## extract\_measure

Returns the definition of a geometric object. For a point, that definition consists of the coordinates of the point. For other objects, the definition mirrors their definition in Symbolic view, with the coordinates of their defining points supplied.

`extract_measure(Var)`

## harmonic\_conjugate

Returns the harmonic conjugate of 3 points. Specifically, returns the harmonic conjugate of point3 with respect to point1 and point2. Also accepts three parallel or concurrent lines; in this case, it returns the equation of the harmonic conjugate line.

`harmonic_conjugate(point1, point2, point3)` or `harmonic_conjugate(line1, line2, line3)`

Example:

`harmonic_conjugate(point(0, 0), point(3, 0), point(4, 0))` returns `point(12/5, 0)`

## harmonic\_division

Returns the harmonic conjugate of 3 points. Specifically, returns the harmonic conjugate of point3 with respect to point1 and point2 and stores the result in the variable `var`. Also accepts three parallel or concurrent lines; in this case, it returns the equation of the harmonic conjugate line.

`harmonic_division(point1, point2, point3, var)` or `harmonic_division(line1, line2, line3, var)`

Example:

`harmonic_division(point(0, 0), point(3, 0), point(4, 0), p)` returns `point(12/5, 0)` and stores it in the variable `p`

## isobarycenter

Returns the hypothetical center of mass of a set of points. Works like barycenter but assumes that all points have equal weight.

```
isobarycenter(point1, point2, ..., pointn)
```

Example:

```
isobarycenter(-3, 3, 3*√3*i) returns point(3*√3*i/3), which is equivalent to (0,√3).
```

## is\_harmonic

Tests whether or not 4 points are in a harmonic division or range. Returns 1 if they are or 0 otherwise.

```
is_harmonic(point1, point2, point3, point4)
```

Example:

```
is_harmonic(point(0, 0), point(3, 0), point(4, 0), point(12/5, 0)) returns 1
```

## is\_harmonic\_circle\_bundle

Returns 1 if the circles build a beam, 2 if they have the same center, 3 if they are the same circle and 0 otherwise.

```
is_harmonic_circle_bundle({circle1, circle2, ..., circlen})
```

## is\_harmonic\_line\_bundle

Returns 1 if the lines are concurrent, 2 if they are all parallel, 3 if they are the same line and 0 otherwise.

```
is_harmonic_line_bundle({line1, line2, ..., linen}))
```

## is\_orthogonal

Tests whether or not two lines or two circles are orthogonal (perpendicular). In the case of two circles, tests whether or not the tangent lines at a point of intersection are orthogonal. Returns 1 if they are and 0 otherwise.

```
is_orthogonal(line1, line2) or is_orthogonal(circle1, circle2)
```

Example:

```
is_orthogonal(line(y=x), line(y=-x)) returns 1.
```

## is\_rectangle

Tests whether or not a set of four points are vertices of a rectangle. Returns 0 if they are not, 1 if they are, and 2 if they are vertices of a square.

```
is_rectangle(point1, point2, point3, point4)
```

Examples:

```
is_rectangle(point(0,0), point(4,2), point(2,6), point(-2,4)) returns 2.
```

With a set of only three points as argument, tests whether or not they are vertices of a right triangle. Returns 0 if they are not. If they are, returns the number order of the common point of the two perpendicular sides (1, 2, or 3).

```
is_rectangle(point(0,0), point(4,2), point(2,6)) returns 2.
```

## is\_rhombus

Tests whether or not a set of four points are vertices of a rhombus. Returns 0 if they are not, 1 if they are, and 2 if they are vertices of a square.

```
is_rhombus(point1, point2, point3, point4)
```

Example:

```
is_rhombus(point(0,0), point(-2,2), point(0,4), point(2,2)) returns 2
```

## is\_square

Tests whether or not a set of four points are vertices of a square. Returns 1 if they are and 0 otherwise.

```
is_square(point1, point2, point3, point4)
```

Example:

```
is_square(point(0,0), point(4,2), point(2,6), point(-2,4)) returns 1.
```

## LineHorz

Draws the horizontal line  $y=a$ .

```
LineHorz(a)
```

Example:

```
LineHorz(-2) draws the horizontal line whose equation is  $y = -2$ 
```

## LineVert

Draws the vertical line  $x=a$ .

```
LineVert(a)
```

Example:

```
LineVert(-3) draws the vertical line whose equation is  $x = -3$ 
```

## open\_polygon

Connects a set of points with line segments, in the given order, to produce a polygon. If the last point is the same as the first point, then the polygon is closed; otherwise, it is open.

```
open_polygon(point1, point2, ..., point1) or open_polygon(point1, point2, ..., pointn)
```

## orthocenter

Returns the orthocenter of a triangle; that is, the intersection of the three altitudes of a triangle. The argument can be either the name of a triangle or three non-collinear points that define a triangle. In the latter case, the triangle does not need to be drawn.

```
orthocenter(triangle) or orthocenter(point1, point2, point3)
```

Example:

```
orthocenter(0, 4i, 4) returns (0,0)
```

## perpendicular bisector

Draws the perpendicular bisector of a segment. The segment is defined either by its name or by its two endpoints.

`perpen_bisector(segment)` or `perpen_bisector(point1, point2)`

Examples:

`perpen_bisector(GC)` draws the perpendicular bisector of segment C.

`perpen_bisector(GA, GB)` draws the perpendicular bisector of segment AB.

`perpen_bisector(3+2i, i)` draws the perpendicular bisector of a segment whose endpoints have coordinates (3, 2) and (0, 1); that is, the line whose equation is  $y=x/3+1$ .

## point2d

Randomly redistributes a set of points such that, for each point,  $x \in [-5,5]$  and  $y \in [-5,5]$ . Any further movement of one of the points will randomly redistribute all of the points with each tap or direction key press.

`point2d(point1, point2, ..., pointn)`

## polar

Returns the polar line of the given point as pole with respect to the given circle.

`polar(circle, point)`

Example:

`polar(circle(x^2+y^2=1), point(1/3, 0))` returns  $x=3$

## pole

Returns the pole of the given line with respect to the given circle.

`pole(circle, line)`

Example:

`pole(circle(x^2+y^2=1), line(x=3))` returns `point(1/3, 0)`

## power\_pc

Given a circle and a point, returns the difference between the square of the distance from the point to the circle's center and the square of the circle's radius.

`powerpc(circle, point)`

Example:

`powerpc(circle(point(0,0), point(1,1)-point(0,0)), point(3,1))` returns 8

## radical\_axis

Returns the line whose points all have the same powerpc values for the two given circles.

```
radical_axis(circle1, circle2)
```

Example:

```
radical_axis(circle((x+2)2+y2 = 8), circle((x-2)2+y2 = 8)) returns line(x=0)
```

## vector

Creates a vector from point1 to point2. With one point as argument, the origin is used as the tail of the vector.

```
vector(point1, point2) or vector(point)
```

Example:

```
vector(point(1,1), point(3,0)) creates a vector from (1, 1) to (3, 0).
```

## vertices

Returns a list of the vertices of a polygon.

```
vertices(polygon)
```

## vertices\_abca

Returns the closed list of the vertices of a polygon.

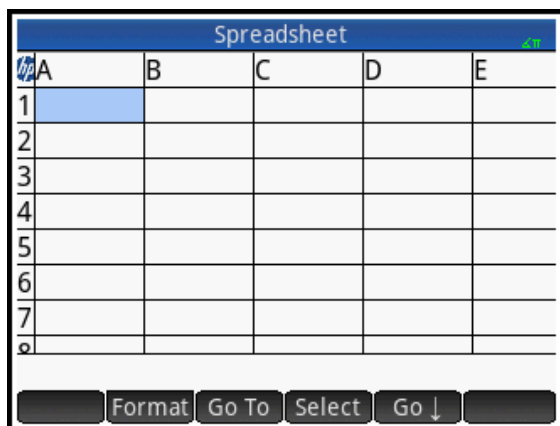
```
vertices_abca(polygon)
```




## 10 Spreadsheet

The Spreadsheet app provides a grid of cells for you to enter content (such as numbers, text, expressions, and so on) and to perform certain operations on what you enter.



To open the Spreadsheet app, press  and select **Spreadsheet**.



You can create any number of customized spreadsheets, each with its own name, much like creating an app.

You open a customized spreadsheet in the same way: by pressing  and selecting the particular spreadsheet.


The maximum size of any one spreadsheet is 10,000 rows by 676 columns.


The app opens in Numeric view. There is no Plot or Symbolic view. There is a Symbolic Setup view (   ) that enables you to override certain system-wide settings. (This is a common Symbolic Setup view operation.)

### Getting started with the Spreadsheet app

Suppose you have a stall at a weekend market. You sell furniture on consignment for their owners, taking a 10% commission for yourself. You have to pay the landowner \$100 a day to set up your stall and you will keep the stall open until you have made \$250 for yourself.

1. Open the Spreadsheet app.

Press  and select **Spreadsheet**.

2. Select column A. Either tap **A** or use the cursor keys to highlight the A cell (that is, the heading of the A column).
3. Enter PRICE and tap  to name the entire first column PRICE.
4. Select column B. Either tap **B** or use the cursor keys to highlight the B cell.

5. Enter a formula for your commission (being 10% of the price of each item sold):



Because you entered the formula in the heading of a column, it is automatically copied to every cell in that column. At the moment only 0 is shown, since there are no values in the PRICE column yet.

| Spreadsheet |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE       | B | C | D | E |
| 1           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 2           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 3           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 4           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 5           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 6           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 7           | 0 |   |   |   |
| 8           | 0 |   |   |   |

=PRICE\*0.1

Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓

6. Select column B.
7. Tap **Format** and select **Name**.
8. Type **COMMIS** and tap **OK**. The heading of column B is now **COMMIS**.
9. It is always a good idea to check your formulas by entering some dummy values and noting if the result is as expected. Select cell A1 and make sure that **Go ↓** and not **Go →** is showing in the menu. (If not, tap the button.) This option means that your cursor automatically selects the cell immediately following the one you have just entered content into.
10. Add some values in the **PRICE** column and note the result in the **COMMIS** column. If the results do not look right, you can tap the **COMMIS** heading, tap **Edit** and fix the formula.


| Spreadsheet |        |   |   |   |
|-------------|--------|---|---|---|
| PRICE       | COMMIS | C | D | E |
| 1120        | 12     |   |   |   |
| 2200        | 20     |   |   |   |
| 3300        | 30     |   |   |   |
| 4450        | 45     |   |   |   |
| 5           | 0      |   |   |   |
| 6           | 0      |   |   |   |
| 7           | 0      |   |   |   |
| 8           | 0      |   |   |   |

Format Go To Select Go ↓

11. To delete the dummy values, select cell **A1**, tap **Select**, press until all the dummy values are selected, and then press .
12. Select cell **C1**.

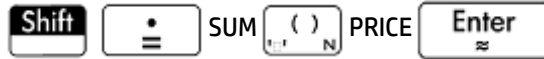
13. Enter a label for your takings:



 **NOTE:** Text strings, but not names, need to be enclosed within quotation marks.

14. Select cell **D1**.

15. Enter a formula to add up your takings:




You can specify a range—such as **A1 : A100**—but by specifying the name of the column, you can be sure that the sum includes all the entries in the column.

16. Select cell **C3**.

17. Enter a label for your total commission:



18. To widen column C to see the entire label in C3, select the heading cell for column C, tap **Format** and select Column .

An input form appears for you to specify the required width of the column.


19. Enter **100** and tap .

You might have to experiment until you get the column width exactly as you want it. The value you enter is the width of the column in pixels.

20. Select cell **D3**.

21. Enter a formula to add up your commission:



 **TIP:** Instead of entering **SUM** by hand, you can choose it from the **Apps** menu (one of the Toolbox menus).

22. Select cell **C5**.

23. Enter a label for your fixed costs:



24. In cell **D5**, enter 100. This is what you have to pay the landowner for renting the space for your stall.

| Spreadsheet |       |         |         |     |
|-------------|-------|---------|---------|-----|
|             | PRICE | COMMISC | D       | E   |
| 1           |       | 0       | TAKINGS | 0   |
| 2           |       | 0       |         |     |
| 3           |       | 0       |         | 0   |
| 4           |       | 0       |         |     |
| 5           |       | 0       | COSTS   | 100 |
| 6           |       | 0       |         |     |
| 7           |       | 0       |         |     |
| 8           |       | 0       |         |     |

Format Go To Select Go ↓

25. Enter the label `PROFIT` in cell **C7**.
26. In cell **D7**, enter a formula to calculate your profit:



You can also name D3 and D5. For example, `TOTCOM` and `COSTS` respectively. Then, the formula in D7 is `=TOTCOM-COSTS`.

27. Enter the label `GOAL` in cell **E1**.
- You can swipe the screen with a finger, or repeatedly press the cursor keys, to bring **E1** into view.
28. Enter 250 in cell **F1**.
- This is the minimum profit you want to make on the day.
29. In cell **C9**, enter the label `GO HOME`.

30. In cell **D9**, enter the following formula:



You can select  $\geq$  from the relations palette ( **Shift** ).

This formula displays **0** in **D9** if you have not reached your goal profit, and **1** if you have. It provides a quick way for you to see when you have made enough profit and can go home.

| Spreadsheet |         |      |   |   |
|-------------|---------|------|---|---|
|             | ISC     | D    | E | F |
| 3           |         |      |   |   |
| 4           |         |      |   |   |
| 5           | COSTS   | 100  |   |   |
| 6           |         |      |   |   |
| 7           |         | -100 |   |   |
| 8           |         |      |   |   |
| 9           | GO HOME | 0    |   |   |
| 10          |         |      |   |   |

=D7>=F1

Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓ Show

31. Select **C9** and **D9**.

You can select both cells with a finger drag, or by highlighting **C9**, selecting **Select**, and pressing



32. Tap **Format** and select **Color**.

33. Choose a color for the contents of the selected cells.

34. Tap **Format** and select **Fill**.

35. Choose a color for the background of the selected cells.

The most important cells in the spreadsheet will now stand out from the rest.

| Spreadsheet |       |        |         |       |
|-------------|-------|--------|---------|-------|
|             | PRICE | COMMIS | C       | D     |
| 1           | 520   | 52     | TAKINGS | 3,795 |
| 2           | 900   | 90     |         |       |
| 3           | 65    | 6.5    |         | 379.5 |
| 4           | 750   | 75     |         |       |
| 5           | 1,560 | 156    | COSTS   | 100   |
| 6           |       | 0      |         |       |
| 7           |       | 0      |         | 279.5 |
| 8           |       | 0      |         |       |

Format Go To Select Go ↓

The spreadsheet is complete, but you may want to check all the formulas by adding some dummy data to the **PRICE** column. When the profit reaches 250, you should see the value in **D9** change from **0** to **1**.

# Basic operations

## Navigation, selection, and gestures

You can move about a spreadsheet by using the cursor keys, by swiping, or by tapping **Go To** and specifying the cell you want to move to.

You select a cell simply by moving to it. You can also select an entire column—by tapping the column letter—and select an entire row (by tapping the row number). You can also select the entire spreadsheet: just tap on the unnumbered cell at the top-left corner of the spreadsheet. (It has the HP logo in it.)

A block of cells can be selected by pressing down on a cell that will be a corner cell of the selection and, after a second, dragging your finger to the diagonally opposite cell. You can also select a block of cells by moving to a corner cell, tapping **Select** and using the cursor keys to move to the diagonally opposite cell. Tapping **Sel•** or another cell deselects the selection.

## Cell references

You can refer to the value of a cell in formulas as if it were a variable. A cell is referenced by its column and row coordinates, and references can be absolute or relative. An absolute reference is written as \$C\$R (where C is the column number and R the row number). Thus \$B\$7 is an absolute reference. In a formula it will always refer to the data in cell B7 wherever that formula, or a copy of it, is placed. On the other hand, B7 is a relative reference. It is based on the relative position of cells. Thus a formula in, say, B8 that references B7 will reference C7 instead of B7 if it is copied to C8.

Ranges of cells can also be specified, as in C6:E12, as can entire columns (E:E) or entire rows (\$3:\$5). Note that the alphabetic component of column names can be uppercase or lowercase except for columns g, l, m, and z. These must be in lowercase if not preceded by \$. Thus cell B1 can be referred to as B1, b1, \$B\$1 or \$b\$1 whereas M1 can only be referred to as m1, \$m\$1, or \$M\$1. (G, L, M, and Z are names reserved for graphic objects, lists, matrices, and complex numbers.)

## Cell naming

Cells, rows, and columns can be named. The name can then be used in a formula. A named cell is given a blue border.

### Method 1

To name an empty cell, row, or column, go to the cell, row header, or column header, enter a name and tap **Name**.

### Method 2

To name a cell, row, or column—whether it is empty or not:

1. Select the cell, row, or column.
2. Tap **Format** and select **Name**.
3. Enter a name and tap **OK**.

## Using names in calculations

The name you give a cell, row, or column can be used in a formula. For example, if you name a cell **TOTAL**, you could enter in another cell the formula =TOTAL\*1.1.

The following is a more complex example involving the naming of an entire column.

1. Select cell **A** (that is the header cell for column A).
2. Enter `COST` and tap **Name**.
3. Select cell **B** (that is the header cell for column B).
4. Enter **Shift** **=** `COST*0.33`, and then tap **OK**.
5. Enter some values in column **A** and observe the calculated results in column **B**.

| Spreadsheet                   |      |        |   |   |   |
|-------------------------------|------|--------|---|---|---|
|                               | COST | B      | C | D | E |
| 1                             | 62   | 20.46  |   |   |   |
| 2                             | 45   | 14.85  |   |   |   |
| 3                             | 33   | 10.89  |   |   |   |
| 4                             | 36   | 11.88  |   |   |   |
| 5                             | 42.5 | 14.025 |   |   |   |
| 6                             | 62   | 20.46  |   |   |   |
| 7                             |      | 0      |   |   |   |
| 8                             |      | 0      |   |   |   |
| =COST*0.33                    |      |        |   |   |   |
| Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓ |      |        |   |   |   |

## Entering content

You can enter content directly in the spreadsheet or import data from a statistics app.

### Direct entry

A cell can contain any valid calculator object: a real number (3.14), a complex number ( $a + ib$ ), an integer (#1Ah), a list ( $\{1, 2\}$ ), a matrix or vector ( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ ), a string ("text"), a unit (2\_m) or an expression (that is, a formula). Move to the cell you want to add content to and start entering the content as you would in Home view. Press **Enter** when you have finished. You can also enter content into a number of cells with a

single entry. Just select the cells, enter the content—for example, `=Row*3`—and press **Enter**.

What you enter on the entry line is evaluated as soon as you press **Enter**, with the result placed in the

cell or cells. However, if you want to retain the underlying formula, precede it with **Shift** **=**. For example, suppose that want to add cell A1 (which contains 7) to cell B2 (which contains 12). Entering A1

**+** B2 **Enter** in, say, A4 yields 19, as does entering **Shift** **=** A1 **+** B2 in A5.

However, if the value in A1 (or B2) changes, the value in A5 changes but not the value in A4. This is because the expression (or formula) was retained in A5. To see if a cell contains just the value shown in it or also an underlying formula that generates the value, move your cursor to the cell. The entry line shows a formula if there is one.

A single formula can add content to every cell in a column or row. For example, move to C (the heading cell for column C), enter **Shift** **=** SIN(Row) and press **Enter**. Each cell in the column is populated with the sine of the cell's row number. A similar process enables you to populate every cell in a row with the same formula. You can also add a formula once and have it apply to every cell in the spreadsheet. You do this by placing the formula in the cell at the top left (the cell with the HP logo in it). To see how this works, suppose you want to generate a table of powers (squares, cubes, and so on) starting with the squares:

1. Tap on the cell with the HP logo in it (at the top left corner). Alternatively, you can use the cursor keys to move to that cell (just as you can to select a column or row heading).
2. On the entry line type **Shift** **=** Row **x<sup>2</sup>** Col **+** 1

Note that Row and Col are built-in variables. They are placeholders for the row number and column number of the cell that has a formula containing them.

| Spreadsheet                                |    |     |       |        |
|--|----|-----|-------|--------|
| A  | B  | C   | D     | E      |
| 1  | 1  | 1   | 1     | 1      |
| 2  | 4  | 16  | 32    | 64     |
| 3  | 9  | 27  | 81    | 243    |
| 4  | 16 | 64  | 256   | 1,024  |
| 5  | 25 | 125 | 625   | 3,125  |
| 6  | 36 | 216 | 1,296 | 7,776  |
| 7  | 49 | 343 | 2,401 | 16,807 |
| 8  | 64 | 512 | 4,096 | 32,768 |
| =Row^(Col+1)                               |    |     |       |        |
| <div> Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓ </div> |    |     |       |        |

3. Tap **OK** or press **Enter**.

Note that each column gives the nth power of the row number starting with the squares. Thus 9<sup>5</sup> is 59,049.

## Importing data

You can import data from the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps (and from any app customized from a statistics app). In the procedure immediately below, dataset D1 from the Statistics 1Var app is being imported.

1. Select a cell.
2. Enter `Statistics_1Var.D1`.
3. Press **Enter**.

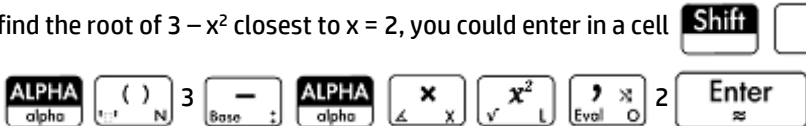
The column is filled with the data from the statistics app, starting with the cell selected at step 1. Any data in that column will be overwritten by the data being imported.

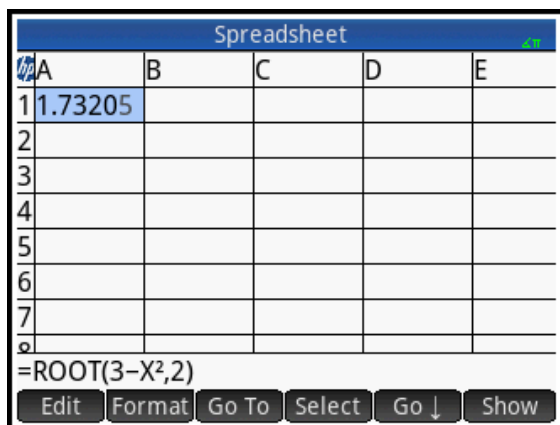
You can also export data from the Spreadsheet app to a statistics app, using the entering and editing statistical data procedure. It can also be used in both the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps.




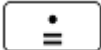


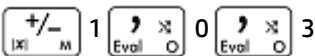

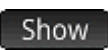

## External functions


You can use in a formula any function available on the Math, CAS, App, User or Catlg menus. For example, to find the root of  $3 - x^2$  closest to  $x = 2$ , you could enter in a cell

 . The answer displayed is 1.732...







You can also select a function from a menu. For example, see the following procedure:

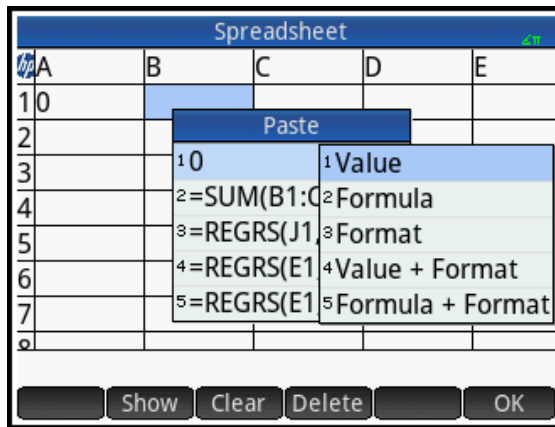
1. Press  .
2. Press  and tap .
3. Select **Polynomial > Find Roots**.  
Your entry line now looks like this: **=CAS.proot()**.
4. Enter the coefficients of the polynomial, in descending order, separating each with a comma:  

5. Press  to see the result. Select the cell and tap  to see a vector containing both roots: [1.732... -1.732...].
6. Tap  to return to the spreadsheet.

Note that the CAS prefix added to your function is to remind you that the calculation will be carried out by the CAS (and thus a symbolic result will be returned, if possible). You can also force a calculation to be handled by the CAS by tapping  in the spreadsheet.

There are additional spreadsheet functions that you can use (mostly related to finance and statistics calculations).

## Copy and paste

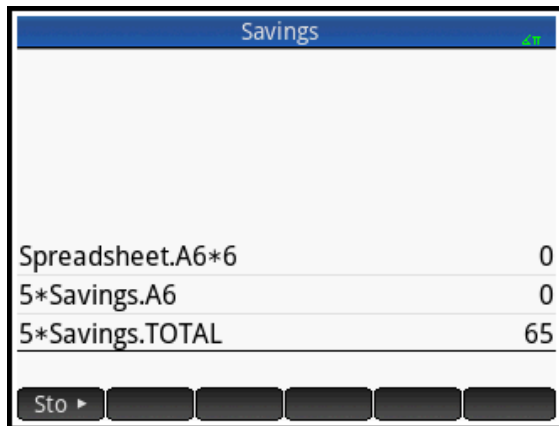
1. To copy one or more cells, select them and press  .
2. Move to the desired location and press  .



You can choose to paste either the value, formula, format, both value and format, or both formula and format.

## External references

You can refer to data in a spreadsheet from outside the Spreadsheet app by using the reference **SpreadsheetName.CR**. For example, in Home view you can refer to cell A6 in the built-in spreadsheet by entering `Spreadsheet.A6`. Thus the formula `6*Spreadsheet.A6` would multiply whatever value is currently in cell A6 in the built-in app by 6.



If you have created a customized spreadsheet called, say, Savings, you simply refer to it by its name, as in `5*Savings.A6`.

An external reference can also be to a named cell, as in `5*Savings.TOTAL`.


In the same way, you can also enter references to spreadsheet cells in the CAS.


If you are working outside a spreadsheet, you cannot refer to a cell by its absolute reference. Thus, entering `Spreadsheet.$A$6` produces an error message.

 **NOTE:** A reference to a spreadsheet name is case-sensitive.



## Referencing variables





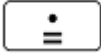



Any variable can be inserted in a cell. This includes Home variables, App variables, CAS variables and user variables.


Variables can be referenced or entered. For example, if you have assigned 10 to P in Home view, you could enter  $=P*5$  in a spreadsheet cell, press  and get 50. If you subsequently changed the value of P, the value in that cell automatically changes to reflect the new value. This is an example of a referenced variable.

If you just wanted the current value of P and not have the value change if P changes, just enter P and press . This is an example of an entered variable.

Variables given values in other apps can also be referenced in a spreadsheet. The Solve app can be used to solve equations. An example used is  $V^2 = U^2 + 2AD$ . You could have four cells in a spreadsheet with  $=V$ ,  $=U$ ,  $=A$ , and  $=D$  as formulas. As you experiment with different values for these variables in the Solve app, the entered and the calculated values are copied to the spreadsheet (where further manipulation could be done).

The variables from other apps includes the results of certain calculations. For example, if you have plotted a function in the Function app and calculated the signed area between two x-values, you can reference that value in a spreadsheet by pressing , tapping , and then selecting **Function > Results > SignedArea**.

Numerous system variables are also available. For example, you could enter    to get the last answer calculated in Home view. You could also enter      to get the last answer calculated in Home view and have the value automatically updated as new calculations are made in Home view. (Note that this works only with the Ans from Home view, not the Ans from CAS view.)

All the variables available to you are listed on the variables menus, displayed by pressing .

## Using the CAS in spreadsheet calculations

You can force a spreadsheet calculation to be performed by the CAS, thereby ensuring that results are symbolic (and thus exact). For example, the formula  $=\sqrt{\text{Row}}$  in row 5 gives 2.2360679775 if not calculated by the CAS, and  $\sqrt{5}$  if it is.

You choose the calculation engine when you are entering the formula. As soon as you begin entering a formula, the **Format** button changes to **CAS** or **CAS•** (depending on the last selection). This is a toggle key. Tap it to change it from one to the other.




When **CAS** is showing, the calculation will be numeric (with the number of significant digits limited by the precision of the calculator). When **CAS•** is showing, the calculation will be performed by CAS and be exact.

In the following figure, the formula in cell A is exactly the same as the formula in cell B:  $= \text{Row}2 - \sqrt{(\text{Row}-1)}$ . The only difference is that **CAS•** was showing (or selected) while the formula was being entered in B, thereby forcing the calculation to be performed by the CAS. Note that CAS appears in red on the entry line if the cell selected contains a formula that is being calculated by the CAS.

|   | A | B               | C | D | E |
|---|---|-----------------|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | 1               |   |   |   |
| 2 | 2 | 3               |   |   |   |
| 3 | 3 | $9 - \sqrt{2}$  |   |   |   |
| 4 | 4 | $16 - \sqrt{3}$ |   |   |   |
| 5 | 5 | 23              |   |   |   |
| 6 | 6 | $36 - \sqrt{5}$ |   |   |   |
| 7 | 7 | $49 - \sqrt{6}$ |   |   |   |
| 8 | 8 | $64 - \sqrt{7}$ |   |   |   |

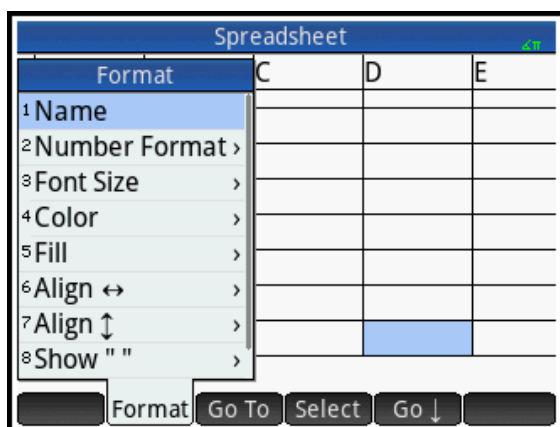
# Buttons and keys

| Button or key              | Purpose   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit</b>                | Activates the entry line for you to edit the object in the selected cell. (Only visible if the selected cell has content.)  |
| <b>Name</b>                | Converts the text you have entered on the entry line to a name. (Only visible when the entry line is active.)   |
| <b>CAS</b> / <b>CAS•</b>   | A toggle button that is only visible when the entry line is active. Both options force the expression to be handled by the CAS, but only <b>CAS</b> evaluates it.   |
| <b>\$</b>                  | Tap to enter the \$ symbol. A shortcut when entering absolute references. (Only visible when the entry line is active.)   |
| <b>Format</b>              | Displays formatting options for the selected cell, block, column, row, or the entire spreadsheet. See <a href="#">Formatting options on page 199</a> .  |
| <b>Go To</b>               | Displays an input form for you to specify the cell you want to jump to.   |
| <b>Select</b>              | Sets the calculator to select mode so that you can easily select a block of cells using the cursor keys. It changes to <b>Sel•</b> to enable you to deselect cells. (You can also press, hold and drag to select a block of cells.) |
| <b>Go ↓</b> or <b>Go →</b> | A toggle button that sets the direction the cursor moves after content has been entered in a cell.  |
| <b>Show</b>                | Displays the result in the selected cell in full-screen mode, with horizontal and vertical scrolling enabled. (Only visible if the selected cell has content.)  |
| <b>Sort</b>                | Enables you to select a column to sort by, and to sort it in ascending or descending order. (Only visible if cells are selected.)   |
| <b>Cancel</b>              | Cancel the input and clear the entry line.  |





| Button or key   | Purpose                        |
|---|--------------------------------|
|    | Accept and evaluate the input. |
|   | Clears the spreadsheet.        |

## Formatting options

The formatting options appear when you tap **Format**. They apply to whatever is currently selected: a cell, block, column, row, or the entire spreadsheet.



The options are as follows:

- **Name**—Displays an input form for you to give a name to whatever is selected.
- **Number Format**—Auto, Standard, Fixed, Scientific, or Engineering. (This is similar to the settings in Home Settings.)
- **Font Size**—Auto or from 10 to 22 point.
- **Color**—Color for the content (text, number, etc.) in the selected cells; the gray-dotted option represents Auto.
- **Fill**—Background color that fills the selected cells; the gray-dotted option represents Auto.
- **Align** —Auto, Left, Center, or Right horizontal alignment.
- **Align** —Auto, Top, Center, or Bottom vertical alignment.
- **Column** —Displays an input form for you to specify the required width of the selected columns; only available if you have selected the entire spreadsheet or one or more entire columns.  
You can also change the width of a selected column with an open or closed horizontal pinch gesture.
- **Row** —Displays an input form for you to specify the required height of the selected rows; only available if you have selected the entire spreadsheet or one or more entire rows.
- **show " "**—Show quote marks around strings in the body of the spreadsheet. Options are Auto, Yes, or No.

- **Textbook**—Display formulas in textbook format. Options are Auto, Yes, or No.
- **Caching**—Turn this option on to speed up calculations in spreadsheets with many formulas; only available if you have selected the entire spreadsheet.

## Format parameters

Each format attribute is represented by a parameter that can be referenced in a formula. For example, =D1(1) returns the formula in cell D1 (or nothing if D1 has no formula). The attributes that can be retrieved in a formulas by referencing its associated parameter are listed below.



| Parameter | Attribute                                    | Result   |
|-----------|--|--|
| 0         | content                                      | contents (or empty)  |
| 1         | formula                                      | formula  |
| 2         | name   | name (or empty)  |
| 3         | number format                                | Standard—0<br>Fixed—1<br>Scientific—2<br>Engineering—3                 |
| 4         | number of decimal places                     | 1 to 11, or unspecified (–1)   |
| 5         | font   | 0 to 6, or unspecified (–1)<br>0 equals 10 point and 6 equals 22 point |
| 6         | background color                             | cell fill color, or 32786 if unspecified                               |
| 7         | foreground color                             | cell contents color, or 32786 if unspecified                           |
| 8         | horizontal alignment                         | Left—0<br>Center—1<br>Right—2<br>unspecified—–1                        |
| 9         | vertical alignment                           | Top—0<br>Center—1<br>Bottom—2<br>unspecified—–1                        |
| 10        | show strings in quotes                       | Yes—0<br>No—1<br>unspecified—–1  |
| 11        | textbook mode (as opposed to algebraic mode) | Yes—0<br>No—1<br>unspecified—–1  |



As well as retrieving format attributes, you can set a format attribute (or cell content) by specifying it in a formula in the relevant cell. For example, wherever it is placed g5(1):=6543 enters 6543 in cell g5. Any

previous content in g5 is replaced. Similarly, entering  $B3 (5) := 2$  forces the contents of B3 to be displayed in medium font size.

## Spreadsheet functions

As well as the functions on the **Math**, **CAS**, and **Catlg** menus, you can use special spreadsheet functions.

These can be found on the **App** menu, one of the Toolbox menus. Press , tap , and select **Spreadsheet**.

Remember to precede a function by an equals sign (   ) if you want the result to automatically update as the values it is dependent on change. Without an equals sign you will be entering just the current value.

## 11 Statistics 1Var app

The Statistics 1Var app can store up to ten data sets at one time. It can perform one-variable statistical analysis of one or more sets of data.


The Statistics 1Var app starts with the Numeric view which is used to enter data. The Symbolic view is used to specify which columns contain data and which column contains frequencies.

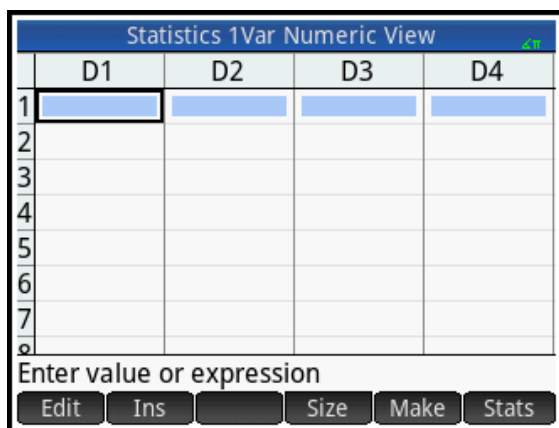
You can also compute statistics in Home and recall the values of specific statistics variables.

The values computed in the Statistics 1Var app are saved in variables, and can be re-used in Home view and in other apps.

### Getting started with the Statistics 1Var app

Suppose that you are measuring the heights of students in a classroom to find the mean height. The first five students have the following measurements: 160 cm, 165 cm, 170 cm, 175 cm and 180 cm.

1. Press , and then select Statistics 1Var to open the Statistics 1Var app.



|   | D1 | D2 | D3 | D4 |
|---|----|----|----|----|
| 1 |    |    |    |    |
| 2 |    |    |    |    |
| 3 |    |    |    |    |
| 4 |    |    |    |    |
| 5 |    |    |    |    |
| 6 |    |    |    |    |
| 7 |    |    |    |    |
| 8 |    |    |    |    |

Enter value or expression

Edit Ins  Size Make Stats



- Enter the measurement data in column D1:

160

165

170

175

180

| Statistics 1Var Numeric View |     |    |    |    |
|------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|
|                              | D1  | D2 | D3 | D4 |
| 1                            | 160 |    |    |    |
| 2                            | 165 |    |    |    |
| 3                            | 170 |    |    |    |
| 4                            | 175 |    |    |    |
| 5                            | 180 |    |    |    |
| 6                            |     |    |    |    |
| 7                            |     |    |    |    |
| 8                            |     |    |    |    |



Enter value or expression

- Find the mean of the sample.

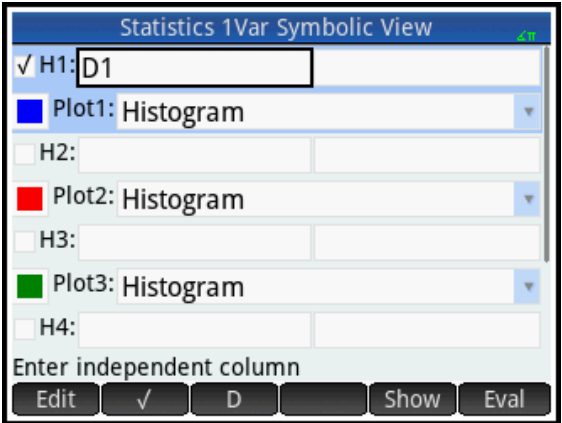
Tap  to see the statistics calculated from the sample data in D1. The mean ( $\bar{x}$ ) is 170. There are more statistics than can be displayed on one screen. Thus you may need to scroll to see the statistic you are after.

Note that the title of the column of statistics is H1. There are 5 data-set definitions available for one-variable statistics: H1–H5. If data is entered in D1, H1 is automatically set to use D1 for data, and the frequency of each data point is set to 1. You can select other columns of data from the Symbolic view of the app.

| Stats        |         |  |  |
|--------------|---------|--|--|
| X            | H1      |  |  |
| n            | 5       |  |  |
| Min          | 160     |  |  |
| Q1           | 162.5   |  |  |
| Med          | 170     |  |  |
| Q3           | 177.5   |  |  |
| Max          | 180     |  |  |
| $\Sigma X$   | 850     |  |  |
| $\Sigma X^2$ | 144,750 |  |  |
| 5            |         |  |  |





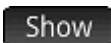
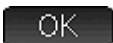
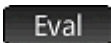
4. Tap  to close the statistics window.
5. Press  to see the data-set definitions.

The first field in each set of definitions is where you specify the column of data that is to be analyzed, the second field is where you specify the column that has the frequencies of each data point, and the third field (Plotn) is where you choose the type of plot that will represent the data in Plot view: Histogram, Box and Whisker, Normal Probability, Line, Bar, or Pareto.



### Symbolic view: menu items


The menu items you can tap in Symbolic view are as follows:

| Menu item   | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|  | Copies the column variable (or variable expression) to the entry line for editing. Tap  when done. |
|  | Selects (or deselects) a statistical analysis (H1–H5) for exploration.  |
|  | Enters D directly (to save you having to press two keys).   |
|  | Displays the current expression in textbook format in full-screen view. Tap  when done.          |
|  | Evaluates the highlighted expression, resolving any references to other definitions.  |

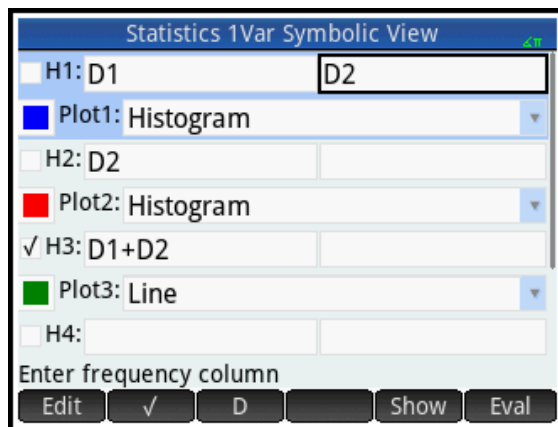
To continue our example, suppose that the heights of the rest of the students in the class are measured and that each one is rounded to the nearest of the five values first recorded. Instead of entering all the new data in D1, we simply add another column, D2, that holds the frequencies of our five data points in D1.

| Height (cm) | Frequency |
|-------------|-----------|
| 160         | 5         |
| 165         | 3         |
| 170         | 8         |

| Height (cm) | Frequency |
|-------------|-----------|
| 175         | 2         |
| 180         | 1         |

1. Tap **Freq** to the right of H1 (or press  to highlight the second H1 field).
2. Enter the name of the column that you will contain the frequencies (in this example, D2):

D 2 



3. Optionally, select a color for the graph.
4. If you have more than one analysis defined in Symbolic view, deselect any analysis you are not currently interested in.
5. Return to Numeric view.



6. In column D2, enter the frequency data shown in the previous table:

5 Enter

3 Enter

8 Enter

2 Enter

1 Enter

| Statistics 1Var Numeric View             |     |    |    |    |
|--|-----|----|----|----|
|  | D1  | D2 | D3 | D4 |
| 1  | 160 | 5  |    |    |
| 2  | 165 | 3  |    |    |
| 3  | 170 | 8  |    |    |
| 4  | 175 | 2  |    |    |
| 5  | 180 | 1  |    |    |
| 6  |     |    |    |    |
| 7  |     |    |    |    |
| 8  |     |    |    |    |
| 160                                      |     |    |    |    |
| <div>Edit Ins Sort Size Make Stats</div> |     |    |    |    |

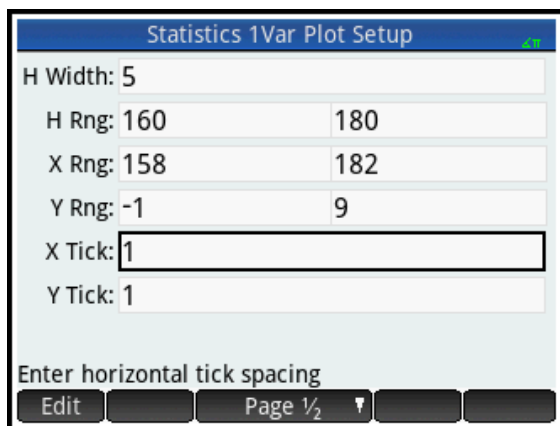
7. To recalculate the statistics, tap **Stats**.

The mean height now is approximately 167.631 cm.

| Stats                     |           |  |  |
|---------------------------|-----------|--|--|
| X                         | H1        |  |  |
| Q1                        | 160       |  |  |
| Med                       | 170       |  |  |
| Q3                        | 170       |  |  |
| Max                       | 180       |  |  |
| $\Sigma X$                | 3,185     |  |  |
| $\Sigma X^2$              | 534,525   |  |  |
| $\bar{x}$                 | 167.63158 |  |  |
| $s_x$                     | 15.861461 |  |  |
| 167.631578947             |           |  |  |
| <div>Size Column OK</div> |           |  |  |

8. Configure a histogram plot for the data. Tap **OK**, and then press **Shift** **Plot** **Setup**.

Enter parameters appropriate to your data. Those shown in the following figure ensure that all the data in this particular example are displayed in Plot view.



Statistics 1Var Plot Setup

H Width: 5

H Rng: 160 180

X Rng: 158 182

Y Rng: -1 9

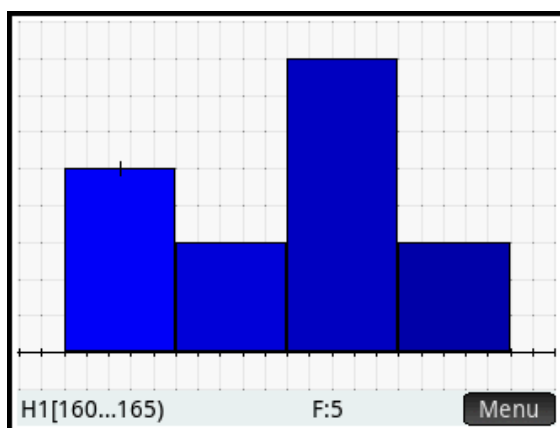
X Tick: 1

Y Tick: 1

Enter horizontal tick spacing

Edit Page 1/2

9. To plot a histogram of the data, press **Plot** **Setup**.



Press **◀** and **▶** to move the tracer and see the interval and frequency of each bin. You can also tap to select a bin. Tap and drag to scroll the Plot view. You can also zoom in or out on the cursor by pressing

**+** **Ans** and **-** **Base** respectively.

## Entering and editing statistical data

Each column in Numeric view is a dataset and is represented by a variable named D0 to D9. There are three ways to get data into a column as follows:

- Go to Numeric view and enter the data directly. See [Getting started with the Statistics 1Var app on page 202](#) for an example.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from a list. For example, if you enter **L1** **Sto** **D1** in Home view, the items in list L1 are copied into column D1 in the Statistics 1Var app.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from the Spreadsheet app. For example, suppose the data of interest is in A1:A10 in the Spreadsheet app and you want to copy it into column D7. With the Statistics

1Var app open, return to Home view and enter **Spreadsheet.A1:A10** **Sto** **D7** **Enter**.

Whichever method you use, the data you enter is automatically saved. You can leave this app and come back to it later. You will find that the data you last entered is still available.

After entering the data, you must define data sets—and the way they are to be plotted—in Symbolic view.

### Numeric view: menu items

The menu items you can tap in Numeric view are as follows:








|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| <b>Edit</b>  | Copies the highlighted item into the entry line.  |
| <b>Ins</b>   | Inserts a zero value above the highlighted cell.  |
| <b>Sort</b>  | Sorts the data in various ways. See <a href="#">Sorting data values on page 209</a> .   |
| <b>Size</b>  | Displays a menu from which you can choose small, medium, or large font.   |
| <b>Make</b>  | Displays an input form for you to enter a formula that will generate a list of values for a specified column. See <a href="#">Generating data on page 209</a> . |
| <b>Stats</b> | Calculates statistics for each data set selected in Symbolic view. See <a href="#">Computed statistics on page 210</a> .  |

### Editing a data set


In Numeric view, highlight the data to change, type a new value, and press **Enter**. You can also

highlight the data, tap **Edit** to copy it to the entry line, make your change, and press **Enter**.

## Deleting data

- To delete a data item, highlight it and press . The values below the deleted cell will scroll up one row.
- To delete a column of data, highlight an entry in that column and press  . Select the column and tap .
- To delete all data in every column, press  , select **All columns**, and tap .

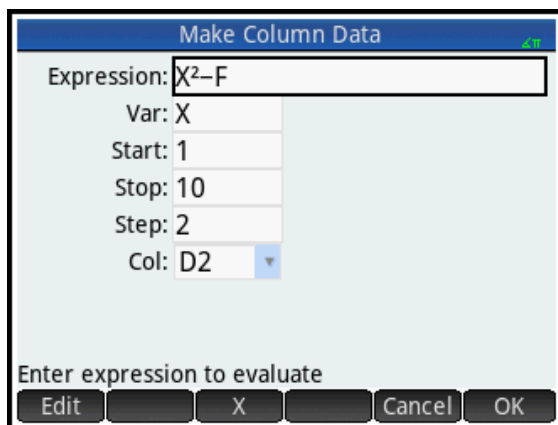
## Inserting data

1. Highlight the cell below where you want to insert a value.
2. Tap  and enter the value.

If you just want to add more data to the data set and it is not important where it goes, select the last cell in the data set and start entering the new data.

## Generating data

You can enter a formula to generate a list of data points for a specified column. In the following example, 5 data-points are placed in column D2. They are generated by the expression  $X^2 - F$  where  $X$  comes from the set {1, 3, 5, 7, 9}. These are the values between 1 and 10 that differ by 2.  $F$  is whatever value has been assigned to it elsewhere (such as in Home view). If  $F$  happened to be 5, column D2 is populated with {-4, 4, 20, 44, 76}.



Make Column Data

Expression:  $X^2 - F$

Var: X

Start: 1

Stop: 10

Step: 2

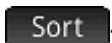
Col: D2


Enter expression to evaluate

Edit X Cancel OK

## Sorting data values


You can sort up to three columns of data at a time, based on a selected independent column.

1. In Numeric view, place the highlight in the column you want to sort, and tap .
2. Specify the sort order: **Ascending** or **Descending**.
3. Specify the independent and dependent data columns. Sorting is by the independent column. For instance, if ages are in C1 and incomes in C2 and you want to sort by income, then you make C2 the independent column and C1 the dependent column.

4. Specify any frequency data column.
5. Tap .

The independent column is sorted as specified and any other columns are sorted to match the independent column. To sort just one column, choose **None** for the **Dependent** and **Frequency** columns.

## Computed statistics

Tapping  displays the following results for each dataset selected in Symbolic view.

| Statistic    | Definition  |
|--------------|---|
| n            | Number of data points                               |
| Min          | Minimum value                                       |
| Q1           | First quartile: median of values to left of median  |
| Med          | Median value  |
| Q3           | Third quartile: median of values to right of median |
| Max          | Maximum value                                       |
| $\Sigma X$   | Sum of data values (with their frequencies)         |
| $\Sigma X^2$ | Sum of the squares of the data values               |
| $\bar{x}$    | Mean  |
| sX           | Sample standard deviation                           |
| $\sigma X$   | Population standard deviation                       |
| serrX        | Standard error                                      |

When the data set contains an odd number of values, the median value is not used when calculating Q1 and Q3. For example, for the data set {3,5,7,8,15,16,17} only the first three items—3, 5, and 7—are used to calculate Q1, and only the last three terms—15, 16, and 17—are used to calculate Q3.

## Plotting



You can plot the following:

- Histograms
- Box-and-whisker plots
- Normal probability plots
- Line plots
- Bar graphs
- Pareto charts

Once you have entered your data and defined your data set, you can plot your data. You can plot up to five box-and-whisker plots at a time; however, with the other types, you can only plot one at a time.





## Plotting statistical data

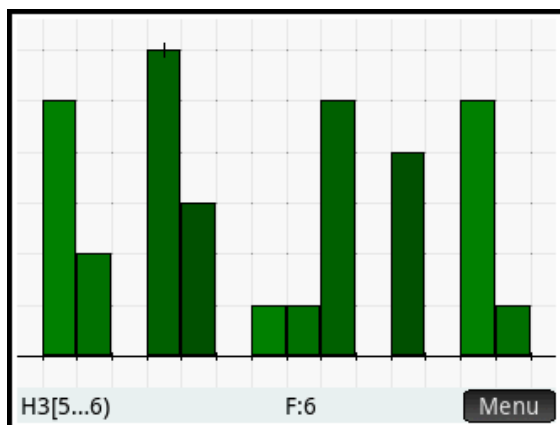
1. In the Symbolic view, select the data sets you want to plot.
2. From the **Plotn** menu, select the plot type.
3. For any plot, but especially for a histogram, adjust the plotting scale and range in the Plot Setup view. If you find histogram bars too fat or too thin, you can adjust them by changing the **H Width** setting. (See [Setting up the plot on page 214.](#))
4. Press . If the scaling is not to your liking, press  and select **Autoscale**.

Autoscale can be relied upon to give a good starting scale which can then be adjusted, either directly in the Plot view or in the Plot Setup view.

## Plot types

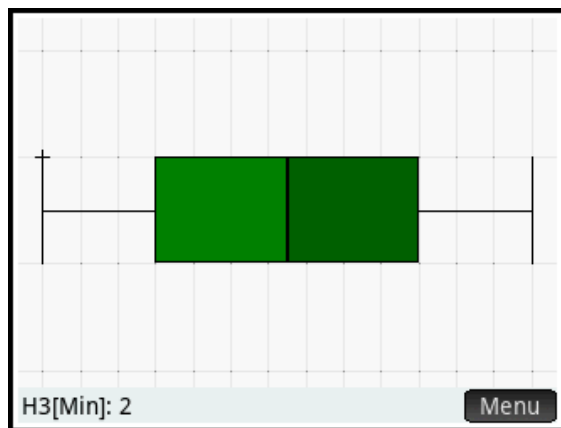
### Histogram

The first set of numbers below the plot indicate where the cursor is. In the following example, the cursor is in the bin for data between 5 and 6 (but not including 6), and the frequency for that bin is 6. The data set is defined by H3 in Symbolic view. You can see information about other bins by pressing  or .



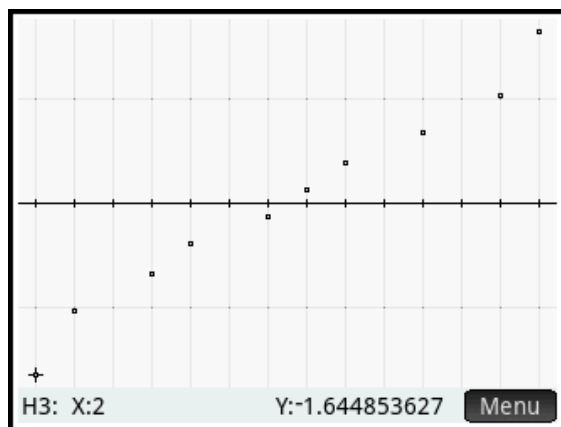
## Box-and-whisker plot

The left whisker marks the minimum data value. The box marks the first quartile, the median, and the third quartile. The right whisker marks the maximum data value. The numbers below the plot give the statistic at the cursor. You can see other statistics by pressing ◀ or ▶ .



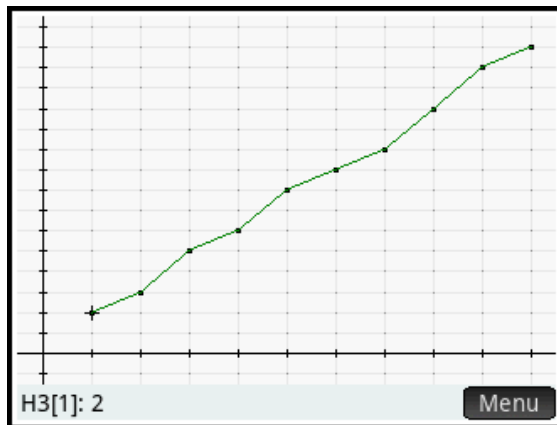
## Normal probability plot

The normal probability plot is used to determine whether or not sample data is more or less normally distributed. The more linear the data appear, the more likely that the data are normally distributed.



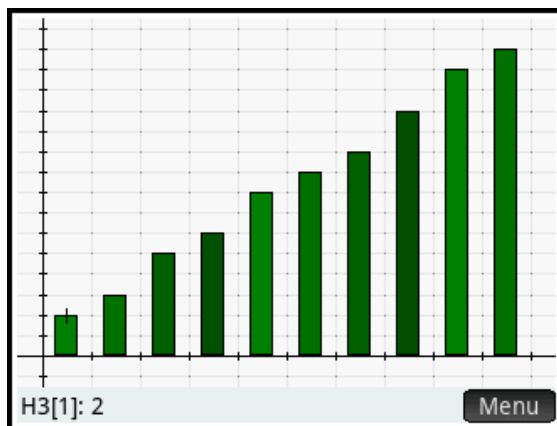
## Line plot

The line plot connects points of the form  $(x, y)$ , where  $x$  is the row number of the data point and  $y$  is its value.



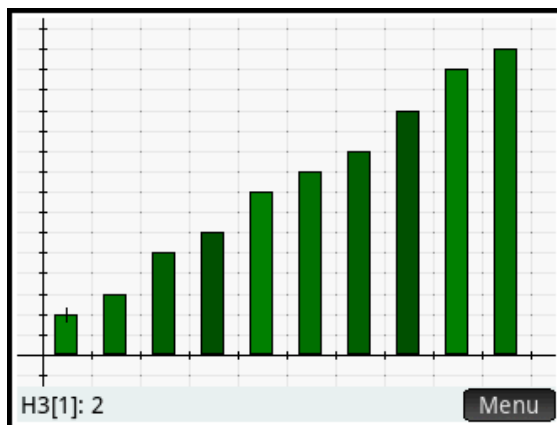
## Bar graph

The bar graph shows the value of a data point as a vertical bar placed along the x-axis at the row number of the data point.





## Pareto chart

A pareto chart places the data in descending order and displays each with its percentage of the whole.



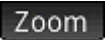




## Setting up the plot

The Plot Setup view (   ) enables you to specify many of the same plotting parameters as other apps (such as X Rng and Y Rng). There are two settings unique to the Statistics 1Var app, as follows:

- **Histogram width—H Width** enables you to specify the width of a histogram bin. This determines how many bins will fit in the display, as well as how the data is distributed (that is, how many data points each bin contains).
- **Histogram range—H Rng** enables you to specify the range of values for a set of histogram bins. The range runs from the left edge of the leftmost bin to the right edge of the rightmost bin.

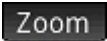

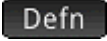

## Exploring the graph

The Plot view (  ) has zooming and tracing options, as well as coordinate display. The Autoscale option is available from the View menu (  ) as well as the  menu. The View menu also enables you to view graphs in split-screen mode.

For all plot types, you can tap and drag to scroll the Plot view. You can also zoom in or out on the cursor by pressing  and  respectively.

### Plot view: menu items

The menu items you can tap in Plot view are as follows:

| Button  | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|  | Displays the Zoom menu.                                  |
|  | Turns trace mode on or off.                              |
|  | Displays the definition of the current statistical plot. |
|  | Shows or hides the menu.                                 |

## 12 Statistics 2Var app

The Statistics 2Var app can store up to ten data sets at one time. It can perform two-variable statistical analysis of one or more sets of data.

The Statistics 2Var app starts with the Numeric view which is used to enter data. The Symbolic view is used to specify which columns contain data and which column contains frequencies.

You can also compute statistics in Home and in the Spreadsheet app.

The values computed in the Statistics 2Var app are saved in variables. These can be referenced in Home view and in other apps.

### Getting started with the Statistics 2Var app

The following example uses the advertising and sales data in the table below. In the example, you will enter the data, compute summary statistics, fit a curve to the data, and predict the effect of more advertising on sales.

| Advertising minutes<br>(independent, x) | Resulting sales (\$)<br>(dependent, y) |
|---|--|
| 2                                       | 1400                                   |
| 1                                       | 920                                    |
| 3                                       | 1100                                   |
| 5                                       | 2265                                   |
| 5                                       | 2890                                   |
| 4                                       | 2200                                   |

### Opening the Statistics 2Var app

▲ Press **Apps Info** and then select **Statistics 2Var** to open the Statistics 2Var app.

|   | C1 | C2 | C3 | C4 |
|---|----|----|----|----|
| 1 |    |    |    |    |
| 2 |    |    |    |    |
| 3 |    |    |    |    |
| 4 |    |    |    |    |
| 5 |    |    |    |    |
| 6 |    |    |    |    |
| 7 |    |    |    |    |
| 8 |    |    |    |    |

Enter value or expression

Edit Ins Size Make Stats

## Entering data

1. Enter the advertising minutes data in column C1:

2  1  3  5  5  4

2. Enter the resulting sales data in column C2:

1400

920

1100

2265

2890

2200


| Statistics 2Var Numeric View |    |       |    |    |
|------------------------------|----|-------|----|----|
|                              | C1 | C2    | C3 | C4 |
| 1                            | 2  | 1,400 |    |    |
| 2                            | 1  | 920   |    |    |
| 3                            | 3  | 1,100 |    |    |
| 4                            | 5  | 2,265 |    |    |
| 5                            | 5  | 2,890 |    |    |
| 6                            | 4  | 2,200 |    |    |
| 7                            |    |       |    |    |
| 8                            |    |       |    |    |

Enter value or expression

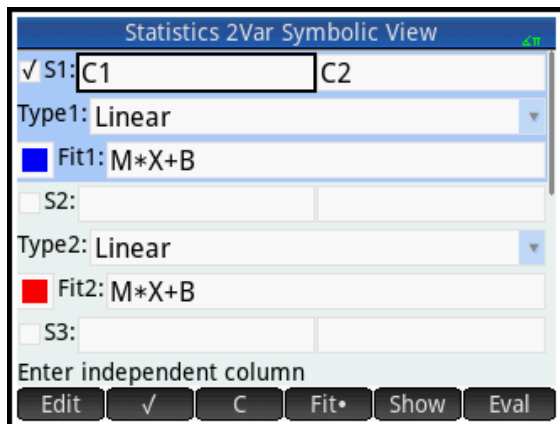
Edit Ins Sort Size Make Stats

## Choosing data columns and fit

In Symbolic view, you can define up to five analyses of two-variable data, named S1 to S5. In this example, we will define just one: S1. The process involves choosing data sets and a fit type.

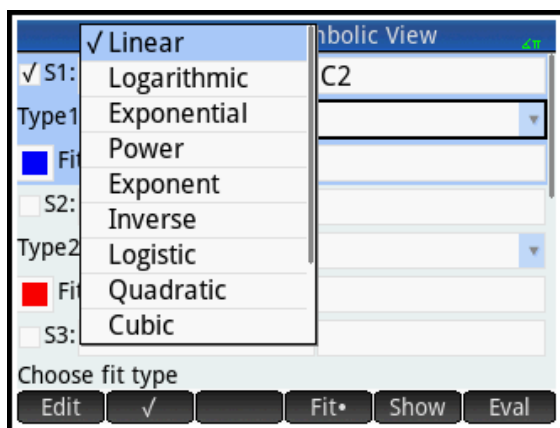
1. Press  to specify the columns that contain the data you want to analyze.

In this case, C1 and C2 appear by default. But you could have entered your data into columns other than C1 and C2.



2. Select a fit:

From the **Type 1** box select a fit. In this example, select **Linear**.



3. Optionally, select a color for the graph.
4. If you have more than one analysis defined in Symbolic view, deselect any analysis you are not currently interested in.

## Exploring statistics

1. Find the correlation,  $r$ , between advertising time and sales:



The correlation is  $r=0.8995...$

| Stats          |            |   |                |
|----------------|------------|---|----------------|
| X              | S1         |   |                |
| n              | 6          |   |                |
| r              | 0.8995309  |   |                |
| R <sup>2</sup> | 0.8091559  |   |                |
| sCOV           | 1,135.6667 |   |                |
| σCOV           | 946.38889  |   |                |
| ΣXY            | 41,595     |   |                |
|                |            |   |                |
|                |            |   |                |
| 0.899530938561 |            |   |                |
| Stats•         | X          | Y | Size Column OK |

2. Find the mean advertising time ( $\bar{x}$ ).

X

The mean advertising time,  $\bar{x}$ , is 3.33333... minutes.

| Stats           |           |   |                |
|-----------------|-----------|---|----------------|
| X               | S1        |   |                |
| $\bar{x}$       | 3.3333333 |   |                |
| ΣX              | 20        |   |                |
| ΣX <sup>2</sup> | 80        |   |                |
| sX              | 1.6329932 |   |                |
| σX              | 1.490712  |   |                |
| serrX           | 0.6666667 |   |                |
|                 |           |   |                |
|                 |           |   |                |
| 3.33333333333   |           |   |                |
| Stats           | X•        | Y | Size Column OK |

3. Find the mean sales ( $\bar{y}$ ).

Y

The mean sales,  $\bar{y}$ , is approximately \$1,796.

| Stats           |            |    |                |
|-----------------|------------|----|----------------|
| X               | S1         |    |                |
| $\bar{y}$       | 1,795.8333 |    |                |
| ΣY              | 10,775     |    |                |
| ΣY <sup>2</sup> | 22,338,725 |    |                |
| sY              | 773.12623  |    |                |
| σY              | 705.76446  |    |                |
| serrY           | 315.62746  |    |                |
|                 |            |    |                |
|                 |            |    |                |
| 1,795.83333333  |            |    |                |
| Stats           | X          | Y• | Size Column OK |

Press **OK** to return to Numeric view.



## Setting up the plot

- ▲ Change the plotting range to ensure that all the data points are plotted (and to select a different data-point indicator, if you wish).

**Shift** **Plot** **↩ Setup** **+/-** 1 **Enter** 6 **Enter** **+/-** 100 **Enter** 3200 **Enter** **500** **Enter**

Statistics 2Var Plot Setup

S1 Mark: ☐ S2 Mark: ☒ S3 Mark: ☒  
S4 Mark: ☒ S5 Mark: ☒

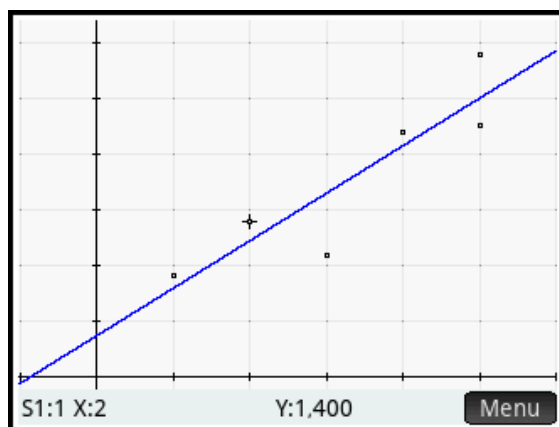
X Rng: -1 6  
Y Rng: -100 3,200  
X Tick: 1  
Y Tick: 500

Enter minimum horizontal value  
Edit Page 1/2 Menu


## Plotting the graph

- ▲ Press **Plot** **↩ Setup** to plot the graph.

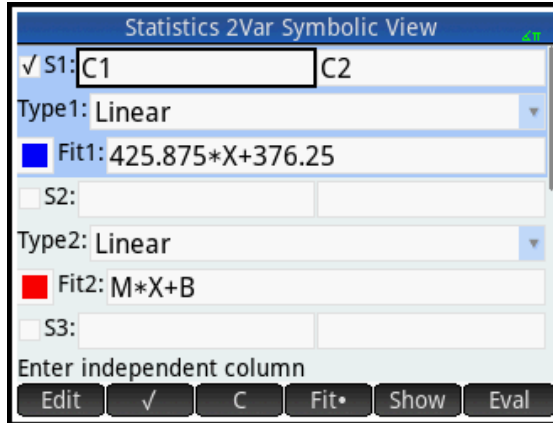
Notice that the regression curve (that is, a curve to best fit the data points) is plotted by default.



## Displaying the equation

- ▲ Press  to return to Symbolic view.

Note the expression in the **Fit1** field. It shows that the slope (m) of the regression line is 425.875 and the y-intercept (b) is 376.25.





The screenshot shows the 'Statistics 2Var Symbolic View' interface. It includes fields for S1 (C1), S2 (C2), Type1 (Linear), Fit1 ( $425.875 * X + 376.25$ ), Type2 (Linear), Fit2 ( $M * X + B$ ), and S3. At the bottom, there are buttons for Edit, ✓, C, Fit•, Show, and Eval.

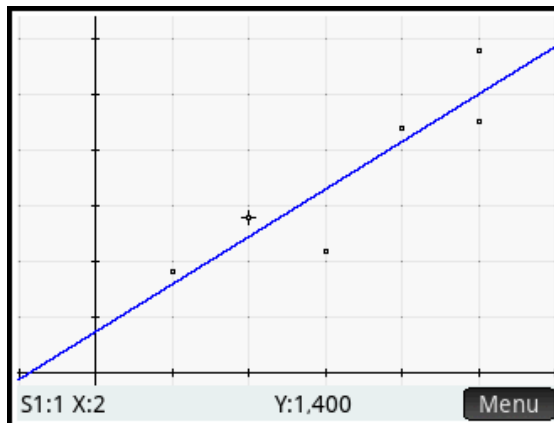
## Predicting values

Let's now predict the sales figure if advertising were to go up to 6 minutes.

1. Press  to return to Plot view.

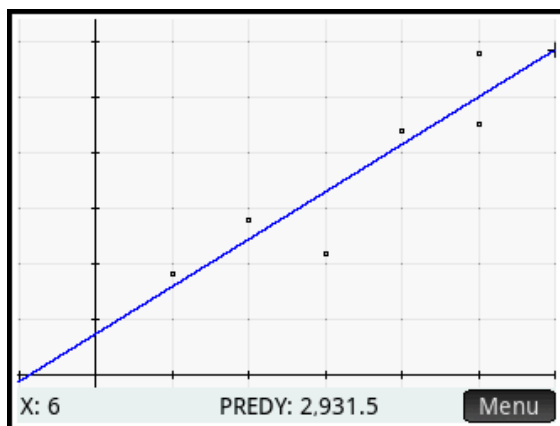
The trace option is active by default. This option will move the cursor from data point to data point as you press  or . As you move from data point to data point, the corresponding x- and y-values appear at the bottom of the screen. In this example, the x-axis represents minutes of advertising and the y-axis represents sales.



However, there is no data point for 6 minutes. Thus we cannot move the cursor to  $x = 6$ . Instead, we need to predict what y will be when  $x = 6$ , based on the data we do have. To do that, we need to trace the regression curve, not the data points we have.




2. Press  or  to set the cursor to trace the regression line rather than the data points.

The cursor jumps from whatever data point it was on to the regression curve.

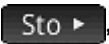
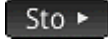
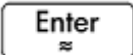



3. Tap on the regression line near  $x = 6$  (near the right edge of the display). Then press  until  $x = 6$ . If the  $x$ -value is not shown at the bottom left of the screen, tap . When you reach  $x = 6$ , you will see that the **PREDY** value (also displayed at the bottom of the screen) reads 2931.5. Thus the model predicts that sales would rise to \$2,931.50 if advertising were increased to 6 minutes.

 **TIP:** You could use the same tracing technique to predict—although roughly—how many minutes of advertising you would need to gain sales of a specified amount. However, a more accurate method is available: return to Home view and enter  $\text{Predx}(s)$  where  $s$  is the sales figure.  $\text{Predy}$  and  $\text{Predx}$  are app functions.

## Entering and editing statistical data

Each column in Numeric view is a dataset and is represented by a variable named C0 to C9. There are three ways to get data into a column, as follows:

- Go to Numeric view and enter the data directly. See [Getting started with the Statistics 2Var app on page 215](#) for an example.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from a list. For example, if you enter  $L1$ , tap , and then enter  $C1$  in Home view, the items in list  $L1$  are copied into column  $C1$  in the Statistics 1Var app.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from a the Spreadsheet app. For example, suppose the data of interest is in  $A1:A10$  in the Spreadsheet app and you want to copy it into column  $C7$ . With the Statistics 2Var app open, return to Home view and enter  $\text{Spreadsheet.A1:A10}$ , tap , enter  $C7$ , and then press .







 **NOTE:** A data column must have at least four data points to provide valid two-variable statistics.

Whichever method you use, the data you enter is automatically saved. You can leave this app and come back to it later. You will find that the data you last entered is still available.




After entering the data, you must define data sets—and the way they are to be plotted—in Symbolic view.

## Numeric view: menu items







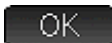
The buttons you can tap in Numeric view are as follows:

|   |   |
|---|---|
|  | Copies the highlighted item into the entry line.  |
|  | Inserts a zero value above the highlighted cell.<br>By default, the cell has a value of zero.                                 |
|  | Opens an input form for you to choose to sort the data in various ways. See <a href="#">Sorting data values on page 222</a> . |
|  | Displays a menu from which you can choose small, medium, or large font.   |
|  | Opens an input form for you to create a sequence based on an expression, and to store the result in a specified data column.  |
|  | Calculates statistics for each data set selected in Symbolic view. See <a href="#">Computed statistics on page 224</a> .      |

## Editing a data set

In Numeric view, highlight the data to change, type a new value, and press . You can also highlight the data, tap , make your change, and tap .

## Deleting data

- To delete a data item, highlight it and press . The values below the deleted cell will scroll up one row.
- To delete a column of data, highlight an entry in that column and press  . Select the column and tap .
- To delete all data in every column, press  , select **All columns**, and tap .

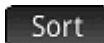
## Inserting data


Highlight the cell below where you want to insert a value. Tap  and enter the value.

If you just want to add more data to the data set and it is not important where it goes, select the last cell in the data set and start entering the new data.

## Sorting data values

You can sort up to three columns of data at a time, based on a selected independent column.

1. In Numeric view, place the highlight in the column you want to sort, and tap .
2. Specify the Sort Order: **Ascending** or **Descending**.

3. Specify the independent and dependent data columns. Sorting is by the independent column. For instance, if ages are in C1 and incomes in C2 and you want to sort by Income, then you make C2 the independent column and C1 the dependent column.
4. Specify any Frequency data column.
5. Tap .


The independent column is sorted as specified and any other columns are sorted to match the independent column. To sort just one column, choose **None** for the **Dependent** and **Frequency** columns.

## Defining a regression model

You define a regression model in Symbolic view. There are three ways to do so, as follows:

- Accept the default option to fit the data to a straight line.
- Choose a predefined fit type (logarithmic, exponential, and so on).
- Enter your own mathematical expression. The expression will be plotted so that you can see how closely it fits the data points.

## Choosing a fit

1. Press  to display the Symbolic view.
2. For the analysis you are interested in (S1 through S5), select the **Type** field.
3. Tap the field again to see the menu of fit types.
4. Select your preferred fit type from the menu. (See [Fit types on page 223](#).)



## Fit types

Twelve fit types are available, as follows:





| Fit type    | Meaning  |
|-------------|--|
| Linear      | (Default.) Fits the data to a straight line: $y = mx + b$ . Uses a least-squares fit.  |
| Logarithmic | Fits the data to a logarithmic curve: $y = m \ln x + b$ .  |
| Exponential | Fits the data to the natural exponential curve: $y = b * e^{mx}$   |
| Power       | Fits the data to a power curve: $y = b * x^m$  |
| Exponent    | Fits the data to an exponential curve: $y = b * m^x$   |
| Inverse     | Fits the data to an inverse variation: $y = m/x + b$   |
| Logistic    | Fits the data to a logistic curve: $y = \frac{L}{1 + ae^{(-bx)}}$ where L is the saturation value for growth. You can store a positive real value in L, or—if L = 0—let L be computed automatically. |
| Quadratic   | Fits the data to a quadratic curve: $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ . Needs at least three points.   |
| Cubic       | Fits the data to a cubic polynomial: $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$  |
| Quartic     | Fits to a quartic polynomial: $y = ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e$  |


| Fit type      | Meaning   |
|---------------|---|
| Trigonometric | Fits the data to a trigonometric curve: $y = a * \sin(bx + c) + d$ . Needs at least three points. |
| User Defined  | Define your own fit (see the following).  |

## Defining your own fit


1. Press  to display the Symbolic view.
2. For the analysis you are interested in (S1 through S5), select the **Type** field.
3. Tap the field again to see a menu of fit types.
4. Select **User Defined** from the menu.
5. Select the corresponding fit field.
6. Enter an expression and press . The independent variable must be X, and the expression must not contain any unknown variables. For example,  $1.5 * \cos(x) + 0.3 * \sin(x)$ . Note that in this app, variables must be entered in uppercase.

## Computed statistics


When you tap , three sets of statistics become available. By default, the statistics involving both the independent and dependent columns are shown. Tap  to see the statistics involving just the independent column or  to display the statistics derived from the dependent column. Tap  to return to the default view. The tables below describe the statistics displayed in each view.

The statistics computed when you tap  are as follows:

| Statistic    | Definition   |
|--------------|--|
| n            | The number of data points.   |
| r            | Correlation coefficient of the independent and dependent data columns, based only on the linear fit (regardless of the fit type chosen). Returns a value between $-1$ and $1$ , where $1$ and $-1$ indicate best fits. |
| $R^2$        | The coefficient of determination, that is, the square of the correlation coefficient. The value of this statistics is dependent on the Fit type chosen. A measure of $1$ indicates a perfect fit.                      |
| sCOV         | Sample covariance of independent and dependent data columns.   |
| $\sigma$ COV | Population covariance of independent and dependent data columns.   |
| $\Sigma XY$  | Sum of all the individual products of x and y.   |

The statistics displayed when you tap  are as follows:




| Statistic    | Definition   |
|--------------|--|
| $\bar{x}$    | Mean of x- (independent) values.                             |
| $\Sigma X$   | Sum of x-values.   |
| $\Sigma X^2$ | Sum of $x^2$ -values.  |
| sX           | The sample standard deviation of the independent column.     |
| $\sigma X$   | The population standard deviation of the independent column. |
| serrX        | The standard error of the independent column.                |


The statistics displayed when you tap  are as follows:

| Statistic    | Definition   |
|--------------|--|
| $\bar{y}$    | Mean of y- (dependent) values.                             |
| $\Sigma Y$   | Sum of y-values.   |
| $\Sigma Y^2$ | Sum of $y^2$ -values.                                      |
| sY           | The sample standard deviation of the dependent column.     |
| $\sigma Y$   | The population standard deviation of the dependent column. |
| serrY        | The standard error of the dependent column.                |

## Plotting statistical data


Once you have entered your data, selected the data set to analyze and specified your fit model, you can plot your data. You can plot up to five scatter plots at a time.

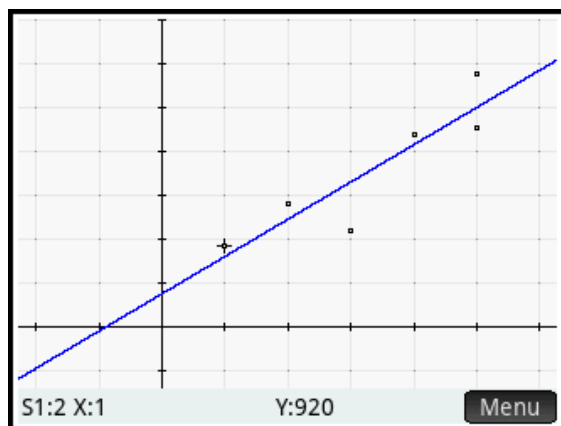
1. In Symbolic view, select the data sets you want to plot.
2. Make sure that the full range of your data will be plotted. You do this by reviewing (and adjusting, if necessary), the **X Rng** and **Y Rng** fields in Plot Setup view. (   ).
3. Press  .

If the data set and regression line are not ideally positioned, press  and select **Autoscale**.


Autoscale can be relied upon to give a good starting scale which can then be adjusted later in the Plot Setup view.


## Tracing a scatter plot

The figures below the plot indicate that the cursor is at the second data point of S1, at ((1, 920)). Press  to move to the next data point and display information about it.



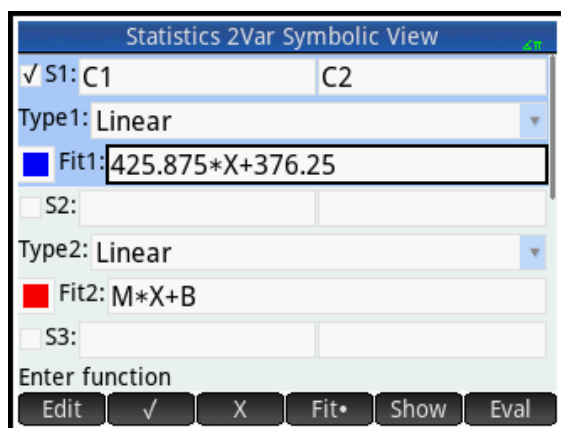
## Tracing a curve

If the regression line is not showing, tap **Fit**. The coordinates of the tracer cursor are shown at the bottom of the screen. (If they are not visible, tap )





Press  to see the equation of the regression line in Symbolic view.

If the equation is too wide for the screen, select it and tap **Show**.








The following example shows that the slope of the regression line (m) is 425.875 and the y-intercept (b) is 376.25.



## Tracing order




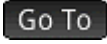



While  and  move the cursor along a fit or from point to point in a scatter plot, use  and  to choose the scatter plot or fit you wish to trace. For each active analysis (S1–S5), the tracing order is the scatter plot first and the fit second. So if both S1 and S2 are active, the tracer is by default on the S1





scatter plot when you press . Press  to trace the S1 fit. At this point, press  to return to the S1 scatter plot or  again to trace the S2 scatter plot. Press  a third time to trace the S2 fit. If you press  a fourth time, you will return to the S1 scatter plot. If you are confused as to what you are tracing, just tap  to see the definition of the object (scatter plot or fit) currently being traced.

## Plot view: menu items

The menu items in Plot view are as follows:

| Button  | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|    | Displays the Zoom menu.  |
|    | Turns trace mode on or off.  |
|    | Shows or hides a curve that best fits the data points according to the selected regression model.  |
|    | Enables you to specify a value on the regression line to jump to (or a data point to jump to if your cursor is on a data point rather than on the regression line). You might need to press  or  to move the cursor to the object of interest: the regression line or the data points. |
|  | Shows or hides the menu buttons.   |

## Plot Setup view

As with all the apps that provide a plotting feature, the Plot Setup view— —enables you to set the range and appearance of Plot view. The settings are common to other Plot Setup view operations. The Plot Setup view in the Statistics 2Var app has two additional settings, as follows:






- **Plotting mark**—Page 1 of the Plot Setup view has fields named S1MARK through S5MARK. These fields enable you to specify one of five symbols to use to represent the data points in each data set. This will help you distinguish data sets in Plot view if you have chosen to plot more than one.
- **Connect**—Page 2 of the Plot Setup view has a Connect field. If you choose this option, straight lines join the data points in Plot view.

## Predicting values

PredX is a function that predicts a value for X given a value for Y. Likewise, PredY is a function that predicts a value for Y given a value for X. In both cases, the prediction is based on the equation that best fits the data according to the specified fit type.

You can predict values in the Plot view of the Statistics 2Var app and also in Home view.



## Plot view

1. In the Plot view, tap **Fit** to display the regression curve for the data set (if it is not already displayed).
2. Make sure the trace cursor is on the regression curve. (Press  or  if it is not.)
3. Press  or . The cursor moves along the regression curve and the corresponding X and Y values are displayed across the bottom of the screen. (If these values are not visible, tap  **Menu** **Poste**.)

You can force the cursor to a specific X value by tapping **Go To**, entering the value and tapping **OK**. The cursor jumps to the specified point on the curve.


## Home view

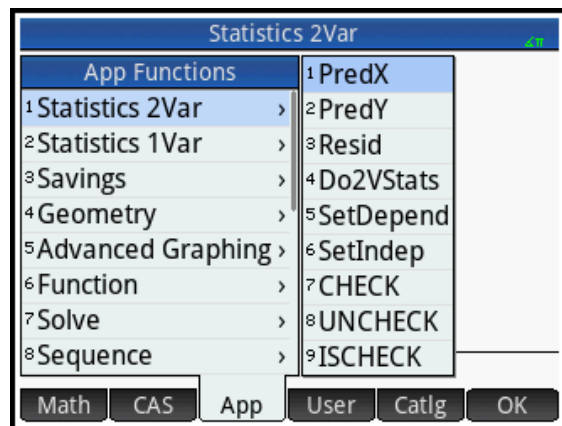
If the Statistics 2Var app is the active app, you can also predict X and Y values in the Home view.

- Enter  $\text{PredX}(Y)$  and then press  to predict the X value for the specified Y value.
- Enter  $\text{PredY}(X)$  and then press  to predict the Y value for the specified X value.




**NOTE:** In cases where more than one fit curve is displayed, the PredX and PredY functions use the first active fit defined in Symbolic view.

You can type PredX and PredY directly on the entry line, or select them from the App functions menu (under the Statistics 2Var category). The App functions menu is one of the Toolbox menus (  ).



## Troubleshooting a plot

If you have problems plotting, check the following:

- The fit (that is, regression model) that you intended to select is the one selected.
- Only those data sets you want to analyze or plot are selected in Symbolic view.
- The plotting range is suitable. Try pressing  and selecting **Autoscale**, or adjust the plotting parameters in Plot Setup view.
- Ensure that both paired columns contain data, and are of the same length.

---

## 13 Inference app

The Inference app calculates hypothesis tests, confidence intervals, and chi-square tests, in addition to both tests and confidence intervals based on inference for linear regression. In addition to the Inference app, the Math menu has a full set of probability functions based on various distributions (chi-square, F, binomial, poisson, and so on).

Based on statistics from one or two samples, you can test hypotheses and find confidence intervals for the following quantities:

- Mean
- Proportion
- Difference between two means
- Difference between two proportions

You can also perform goodness of fit tests and tests on two-way tables based on the chi-square distribution. Finally, you can perform the following calculations based on inference for linear regression:

- Linear t-test
- Confidence interval for slope
- Confidence interval for the intercept
- Confidence interval for mean response
- Prediction interval for a future response

### Sample data

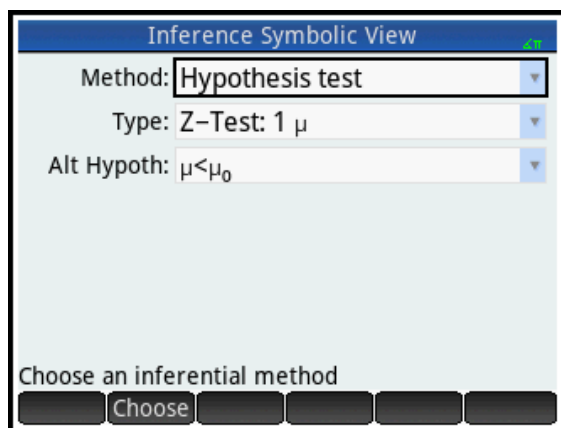
For many of the calculations, the Numeric view of the Inference app comes with sample data (which you can restore by resetting the app). This sample data is useful in helping you gain an understanding of the app.

### Getting started with the Inference app

Use the following sections to conduct a Z-Test on one mean using the sample data.

## Opening the Inference app

▲ Press **Apps Info** and then select **Inference**.



The screenshot shows the 'Inference Symbolic View' app interface. It has a title bar 'Inference Symbolic View' with a green status icon. Below the title bar are three dropdown menus: 'Method:' set to 'Hypothesis test', 'Type:' set to 'Z-Test: 1  $\mu$ ', and 'Alt Hypoth:' set to ' $\mu < \mu_0$ '. At the bottom, there is a text prompt 'Choose an inferential method' followed by a row of six buttons, the first of which is labeled 'Choose'.

The Inference app opens in Symbolic view.

## Symbolic view options

The following tables summarize the options available in Symbolic view.

**Table 13-1 Hypothesis tests**

| Test                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Z-Test: 1 $\mu$         | The Z-Test on one mean                               |
| Z-Test: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ | The Z-Test on the difference between two means       |
| Z-Test: 1 $\pi$         | The Z-Test on one proportion                         |
| Z-Test: $\pi_1 - \pi_2$ | The Z-Test on the difference between two proportions |
| T-Test: 1 $\mu$         | The T-Test on one mean                               |
| T-Test: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ | The T-Test on the difference between two means       |

**Table 13-2 Confidence intervals**

| Test                   | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| Z-Int: 1 $\mu$         | The confidence interval for one mean, based on the Normal distribution                               |
| Z-Int: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ | The confidence interval for the difference between two means, based on the Normal distribution       |
| Z-Int: 1 $\pi$         | The confidence interval for one proportion, based on the Normal distribution                         |
| Z-Int: $\pi_1 - \pi_2$ | The confidence interval for the difference between two proportions, based on the Normal distribution |
| T-Int: 1 $\mu$         | The confidence interval for one mean, based on the Student's t-distribution                          |
| T-Int: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ | The confidence interval for the difference between two means, based on the Student's t-distribution  |

**Table 13-3  $\chi^2$  test**

| Test            | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Goodness of fit | The chi-square goodness of fit test, based on categorical data    |
| 2-way test      | The chi-square test, based on categorical data in a two-way table |

**Table 13-4 Regression**

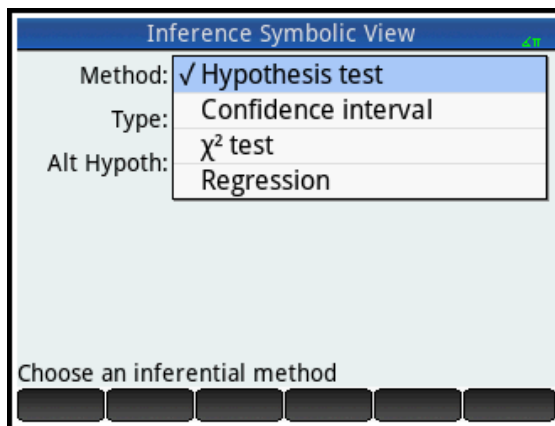
| Test                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Linear t-test           | The t-test for linear regression  |
| Interval: Slope         | The confidence interval for the slope of the true linear regression line, based on the t-distribution       |
| Interval: Intercept     | The confidence interval for the y-intercept of the true linear regression line, based on the t-distribution |
| Interval: Mean response | The confidence interval for a mean response, based on the t-distribution                                    |
| Prediction interval     | The prediction interval for a future response, based on the t-distribution                                  |

If you choose one of the hypothesis tests, you can choose an alternative hypothesis to test against the null hypothesis. For each test, there are three possible choices for an alternative hypothesis based on a quantitative comparison of two quantities. The null hypothesis is always that the two quantities are equal. Thus, the alternative hypotheses cover the various cases for the two quantities being unequal:  $<$ ,  $>$ , and  $\neq$ .

In this section, we will conduct a Z-Test on one mean on the example data to illustrate how the app works.

## Selecting the inference method

1. **Hypothesis test** is the default inference method. If it is not selected, tap **Method** and then select it.



- Choose the type of test. In this case, select **Z-Test: 1  $\mu$**  from the **Type** menu.

Inference Symbolic View

Method: Hypothesis test

Type:  $\sqrt{\text{Z-Test: 1 } \mu}$

Alt Hypoth:

Choose a distribution statistic

- Select an alternative hypothesis. In this case, select  $\mu < \mu_0$  from the **Alt Hypoth** menu.

Inference Symbolic View

Method: Hypothesis test

Type: Z-Test: 1  $\mu$

Alt Hypoth:  $\mu < \mu_0$

Choose the alternative hypothesis

## Entering data

- Go to Numeric view to see the sample data.



Inference Numeric View

$\bar{x}$ : 0.461368

n: 50

$\mu_0$ : 0.5

$\sigma$ : 0.2887

$\alpha$ : 0.05

Sample mean

Edit Import Calc

The following table describes the fields in this view for the sample data.

| Field name | Description   |
|------------|---|
| $\bar{x}$  | Sample mean   |
| $n$        | The confidence interval for the slope of the true linear regression line, based on the t-distribution |
| $\mu_0$    | Assumed population mean   |
| $\sigma$   | Population standard deviation   |
| $\alpha$   | Alpha level for the test  |

The Numeric view is where you enter the sample statistics and population parameters for the situation you are examining. The sample data supplied here belong to the case in which a student has generated 50 pseudo-random numbers on his graphing calculator. If the algorithm is working properly, the mean would be near 0.5 and the population standard deviation is known to be approximately 0.2887. The student is concerned that the sample mean (0.461368) seems a bit low and is testing the less than alternative hypothesis against the null hypothesis.

## Displaying the test results

▲ Tap **Calc**.

| Results                               |                 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| X                                     |                 |
| Result                                | 1               |
| Test Z                                | -0.946205374811 |
| Test $\bar{x}$                        | 0.461368        |
| P                                     | 0.172021922639  |
| Crit. Z                               | -1.64485362695  |
| Crit. $\bar{x}$                       | 0.432843347747  |
| Fail to reject $H_0$ at $\alpha=0.05$ |                 |
|                                       | Size OK         |

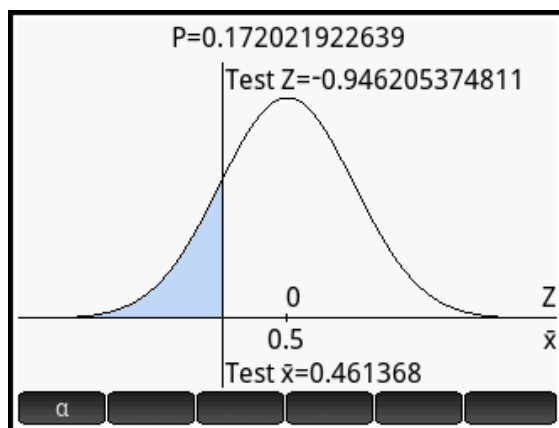
The test distribution value and its associated probability are displayed, along with the critical value(s) of the test and the associated critical value(s) of the statistic. In this case, the test indicates that one should not reject the null hypothesis.

Tap **OK** to return to Numeric view.





## Plotting the test results

▲ Press **Plot** .



The graph of the distribution is displayed, with the test Z-value marked. The corresponding X-value is also shown.

Tap  **$\alpha$**  to see the critical Z-value. With the alpha level showing, you can press  or  to decrease or increase the  $\alpha$ -level.

## Importing statistics


For many of the calculations, the Inference app can import summary statistics from data in the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps. For the others, the data can be manually imported. The following example illustrates the process.

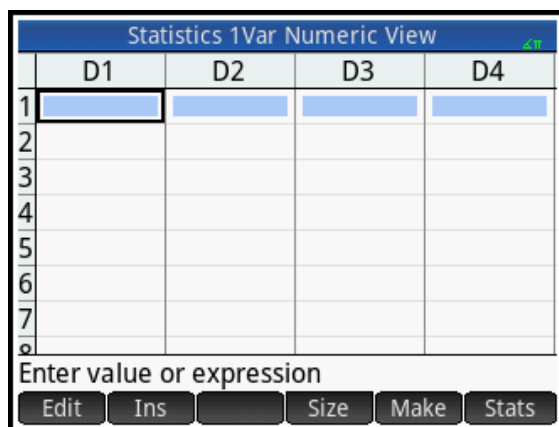
A series of six experiments gives the following values as the boiling point of a liquid:

82.5, 83.1, 82.6, 83.7, 82.4, and 83.0

Based on this sample, we want to estimate the true boiling point at the 90% confidence level.

## Opening the Statistics 1Var app

▲ Press **Apps**  and then select **Statistics 1Var**.





A screenshot of the Statistics 1Var Numeric View screen. The title bar says "Statistics 1Var Numeric View". Below the title bar, there are four columns labeled D1, D2, D3, and D4. The first row (row 1) has blue highlighted cells in all four columns. The rows are numbered 1 through 8 on the left side. At the bottom of the screen, there is a text input field labeled "Enter value or expression" and several buttons: Edit, Ins, Size, Make, and Stats.

|   | D1 | D2 | D3 | D4 |
|---|----|----|----|----|
| 1 |    |    |    |    |
| 2 |    |    |    |    |
| 3 |    |    |    |    |
| 4 |    |    |    |    |
| 5 |    |    |    |    |
| 6 |    |    |    |    |
| 7 |    |    |    |    |
| 8 |    |    |    |    |



## Clearing unwanted data



- ▲ If there is unwanted data in the app, clear it:



Press  , and then select **All columns**.



## Entering data



- ▲ In column D1, enter the boiling points found during the experiments.


82  5 

83  1 

82  6 







83  7 

82  4 

83 

| Statistics 1Var Numeric View |      |    |    |    |
|------------------------------|------|----|----|----|
|                              | D1   | D2 | D3 | D4 |
| 1                            | 82.5 |    |    |    |
| 2                            | 83.1 |    |    |    |
| 3                            | 82.6 |    |    |    |
| 4                            | 83.7 |    |    |    |
| 5                            | 82.4 |    |    |    |
| 6                            | 83   |    |    |    |
| 7                            |      |    |    |    |
| 8                            |      |    |    |    |

Enter value or expression

## Calculating the statistics

1. Tap **Stats**.

The statistics calculated will now be imported into the Inference app.

| Stats          |            |  |  |
|----------------|------------|--|--|
| X              | H3         |  |  |
| n              | 6          |  |  |
| Min            | 82.4       |  |  |
| Q1             | 82.5       |  |  |
| Med            | 82.8       |  |  |
| Q3             | 83.1       |  |  |
| Max            | 83.7       |  |  |
| $\Sigma X$     | 497.3      |  |  |
| $\Sigma X^2$   | 41,219.07  |  |  |
| $\bar{x}$      | 82.8833333 |  |  |
| $s_x$          | 0.48751068 |  |  |
| 6              |            |  |  |
| Size Column OK |            |  |  |

2. Tap **OK** to close the statistics window.

## Opening the Inference app

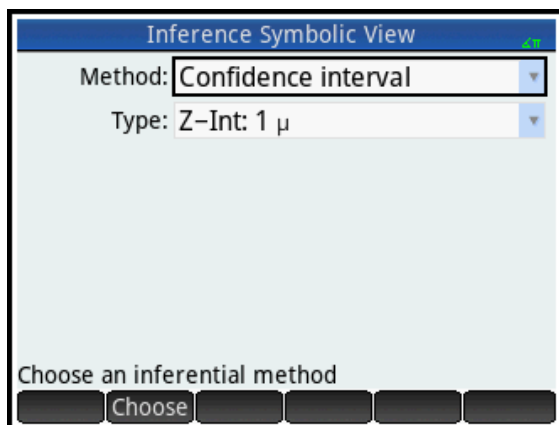
- ▲ Open the Inference app and clear the current settings.

Press **Apps** **Info**, select **Inference**, and then press **Shift** **Esc** **Clear**.

| Inference Symbolic View      |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Method:                      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hypothesis test |
| Type:                        | Confidence interval                                 |
| Alt Hypoth:                  | $\chi^2$ test                                       |
|                              | Regression  |
| Choose an inferential method |   |
|                              |   |

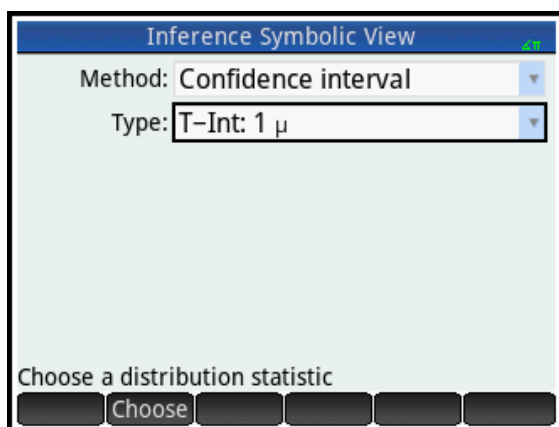
## Selecting the inference method and type

1. Select **Method**, and then select **Confidence Interval**.




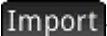
The screenshot shows the 'Inference Symbolic View' window. At the top, the title bar reads 'Inference Symbolic View'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus. The first is labeled 'Method:' and is set to 'Confidence interval'. The second is labeled 'Type:' and is set to 'Z-Int: 1 μ'. At the bottom of the window, there is a section titled 'Choose an inferential method' with a row of five buttons. The first button is labeled 'Choose' and is highlighted.

2. Select **Type**, and then select **T-Int: 1 μ**.



The screenshot shows the 'Inference Symbolic View' window. At the top, the title bar reads 'Inference Symbolic View'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus. The first is labeled 'Method:' and is set to 'Confidence interval'. The second is labeled 'Type:' and is set to 'T-Int: 1 μ'. At the bottom of the window, there is a section titled 'Choose a distribution statistic' with a row of five buttons. The first button is labeled 'Choose' and is highlighted.

## Importing the data

1. Press  .
2. Specify the data you want to import:  
Tap  .
3. In the **App** field select the statistics app that has the data you want to import.

4. In the **Column** field specify the column in that app where the data is stored. (D1 is the default.)

Import Sample Statistics

$\bar{x}$ : 82.8833333333

s: 0.487510683644

n: 6

App: Statistics 1Var

Column: D1

Choose column to import

Choose Cancel OK

5. Tap **OK**.
6. Specify a 90% confidence interval in the **C** field.

Inference Numeric View

$\bar{x}$ : 82.8833333333

s: 0.487510683644

n: 6

c: 0.9

Confidence Level

Edit Import Calc

## Displaying results numerically

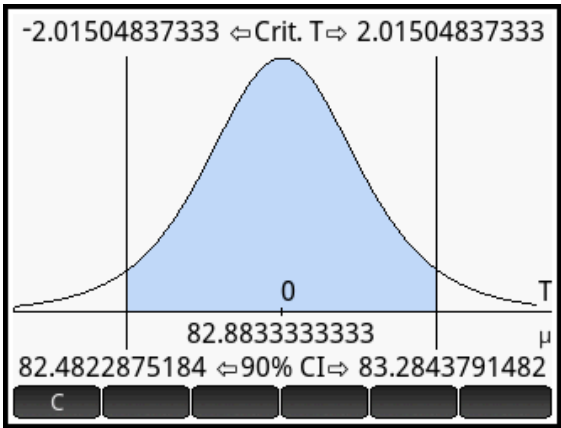
1. To display the confidence interval in Numeric view, tap **Calc**.

| Results |                |
|---------|----------------|
| X       |                |
| C       | 0.9            |
| DF      | 5              |
| Crit. T | ±2.01504837333 |
| Lower   | 82.4822875184  |
| Upper   | 83.2843791482  |
|         |                |
|         |                |
|         |                |
| 90%     |                |
|         | Size OK        |

2. Tap **OK** to return to Numeric view.

## Displaying results graphically

▲ To display the confidence interval in Plot view, press  .



The 90% confidence interval is [82.48..., 83.28...].

## Hypothesis tests

You use hypothesis tests to test the validity of hypotheses about the statistical parameters of one or two populations. The tests are based on statistics of samples of the populations.

The HP Prime hypothesis tests use the Normal Z-distribution or the Student's t-distribution to calculate probabilities. If you wish to use other distributions, please use the Home view and the distributions found within the Probability category of the Math menu.

### One-Sample Z-Test

#### Menu name

Z-Test: 1  $\mu$

On the basis of statistics from a single sample, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the population mean equals a specified value,  $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

- $H_0: \mu < \mu_0$
- $H_0: \mu > \mu_0$
- $H_0: \mu \neq \mu_0$

#### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| $\bar{x}$  | Sample mean |
| n          | Sample size |

| Field name | Description                   |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| $\mu_0$    | Hypothetical population mean  |
| $\sigma$   | Population standard deviation |
| $\alpha$   | Significance level            |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Result             | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Test Z             | Z-test statistic  |
| Test $\bar{x}$     | Value of $\bar{x}$ associated with the test Z-value                             |
| P                  | Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic                                |
| Critical Z         | Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied     |
| Critical $\bar{x}$ | Boundary value(s) of $\bar{x}$ required by the $\alpha$ value that you supplied |

## Two-Sample Z-Test

### Menu name

Z-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

On the basis of two samples, each from a separate population, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the means of the two populations are equal,  $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ .

You can select one of the following alternative hypotheses to test against the null hypothesis:

- $H_0: \mu_1 < \mu_2$
- $H_0: \mu_1 > \mu_2$
- $H_0: \mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name  | Description                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| $\bar{x}_1$ | Sample 1 mean                   |
| $\bar{x}_2$ | Sample 2 mean                   |
| $n_1$       | Sample 1 size                   |
| $n_2$       | Sample 2 size                   |
| $\sigma_1$  | Population 1 standard deviation |

| Field name | Description                     |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| $\sigma_2$ | Population 2 standard deviation |
| $\alpha$   | Significance level              |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Result                   | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Test Z                   | Z-Test statistic  |
| Test $\Delta\bar{x}$     | Difference in the means associated with the test Z-value                    |
| P                        | Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic                            |
| Critical Z               | Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied |
| Critical $\Delta\bar{x}$ | Difference in the means associated with the $\alpha$ level you supplied     |

## One-Proportion Z-Test

### Menu name

Z-Test: 1  $\pi$

On the basis of statistics from a single sample, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the proportion of successes is an assumed value,  $H_0: \pi = \pi_0$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

- $H_0: \pi < \pi_0$
- $H_0: \pi > \pi_0$
- $H_0: \pi \neq \pi_0$

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                        |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| x          | Number of successes in the sample  |
| n          | Sample size                        |
| $\pi_0$    | Population proportion of successes |
| $\alpha$   | Significance level                 |



## Results

The results are as follows:

| Result             | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Test Z             | Z-Test statistic  |
| Test $\hat{p}$     | Proportion of successes in the sample                                       |
| P                  | Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic                            |
| Critical Z         | Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied |
| Critical $\hat{p}$ | Proportion of successes associated with the level you supplied              |

## Two-Proportion Z-Test

### Menu name

Z-Test:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$

On the basis of statistics from two samples, each from a different population, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the proportions of successes in the two populations are equal,  $H_0: \pi_1 = \pi_2$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

- $H_0: \pi_1 < \pi_2$
- $H_0: \pi_1 > \pi_2$
- $H_0: \pi_1 \neq \pi_2$

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description            |
|------------|------------------------|
| $x_1$      | Sample 1 success count |
| $x_2$      | Sample 2 success count |
| $n_1$      | Sample 1 size          |
| $n_2$      | Sample 2 size          |
| $\alpha$   | Significance level     |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Results                   | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Test Z                    | Z-Test statistic   |
| Test $\Delta \hat{p}$     | Difference between the proportions of successes in the two samples that is associated with the test Z-value  |
| P                         | Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic   |
| Critical Z                | Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied                                  |
| Critical $\Delta \hat{p}$ | Difference in the proportion of successes in the two samples associated with the $\alpha$ level you supplied |

## One-Sample T-Test

### Menu name

T-Test: 1  $\mu$

This test is used when the population standard deviation is not known. On the basis of statistics from a single sample, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the sample mean has some assumed value,  $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

- $H_0: \mu < \mu_0$
- $H_0: \mu > \mu_0$
- $H_0: \mu \neq \mu_0$

## Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                  |
|------------|------------------------------|
| $\bar{x}$  | Sample mean                  |
| s          | Sample standard deviation    |
| n          | Sample size                  |
| $\mu_0$    | Hypothetical population mean |
| $\alpha$   | Significance level           |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Results            | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Test T             | T-Test statistic  |
| Test $\bar{x}$     | Value of $\bar{x}$ associated with the test t-value                             |
| P                  | Probability associated with the T-Test statistic                                |
| DF                 | Degrees of freedom  |
| Critical T         | Boundary value(s) of T associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied     |
| Critical $\bar{x}$ | Boundary value(s) of $\bar{x}$ required by the $\alpha$ value that you supplied |

## Two-Sample T-Test

### Menu name

T-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

This test is used when the population standard deviation is not known. On the basis of statistics from two samples, each sample from a different population, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the two populations means are equal,  $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

- $H_0: \mu_1 < \mu_2$
- $H_0: \mu_1 > \mu_2$
- $H_0: \mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name  | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| $\bar{x}_1$ | Sample 1 mean   |
| $\bar{x}_2$ | Sample 2 mean   |
| $s_1$       | Sample 1 standard deviation   |
| $s_2$       | Sample 2 standard deviation   |
| $n_1$       | Sample 1 size   |
| $n_2$       | Sample 2 size   |
| $\alpha$    | Significance level  |
| Pooled      | Select this option to pool samples based on their standard deviations |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Results                  | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Test T                   | T-Test statistic  |
| Test $\Delta\bar{x}$     | Difference in the means associated with the test t-value                  |
| P                        | Probability associated with the T-Test statistic                          |
| DF                       | Degrees of freedom  |
| Critical T               | Boundary values of T associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied |
| Critical $\Delta\bar{x}$ | Difference in the means associated with the $\alpha$ level you supplied   |

## Confidence intervals

The confidence interval calculations that the HP Prime can perform are based on the Normal Z-distribution or Student's t-distribution.

### One-Sample Z-Interval

#### Menu name

Z-Int: 1  $\mu$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for  $\mu$ , the true mean of a population, when the true population standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , is known.

#### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                   |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| $\bar{x}$  | Sample mean                   |
| n          | Sample size                   |
| $\sigma$   | Population standard deviation |
| C          | Confidence level              |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Result     | Description           |
|------------|-----------------------|
| C          | Confidence level      |
| Critical Z | Critical values for Z |

| Result | Description           |
|--------|-----------------------|
| Lower  | Lower bound for $\mu$ |
| Upper  | Upper bound for $\mu$ |

## Two-Sample Z-Interval

### Menu name

Z-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the difference between the means of two populations,  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , when the population standard deviations,  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ , are known.

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name  | Description                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| $\bar{x}_1$ | Sample 1 mean                   |
| $\bar{x}_2$ | Sample 2 mean                   |
| $n_1$       | Sample 1 size                   |
| $n_2$       | Sample 2 size                   |
| $\sigma_1$  | Population 1 standard deviation |
| $\sigma_2$  | Population 2 standard deviation |
| C           | Significance level              |

### Results

The results are as follows:

| Result     | Description                 |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| C          | Confidence level            |
| Critical Z | Critical values for Z       |
| Lower      | Lower bound for $\Delta\mu$ |
| Upper      | Upper bound for $\Delta\mu$ |

## One-Proportion Z-Interval

### Menu name

Z-Int: 1  $\pi$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the proportion of successes in a population for the case in which a sample of size  $n$  has a number of successes  $x$ .

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description          |
|------------|----------------------|
| $x$        | Sample success count |
| $n$        | Sample size          |
| $C$        | Confidence level     |

### Results

The results are as follows:

| Result     | Description           |
|------------|-----------------------|
| $C$        | Confidence level      |
| Critical Z | Critical values for Z |
| Lower      | Lower bound for $\pi$ |
| Upper      | Upper bound for $\pi$ |

## Two-Proportion Z-Interval

### Menu name

Z-Int:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the difference between the proportions of successes in two populations.

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description            |
|------------|------------------------|
| $x_1$      | Sample 1 success count |
| $x_2$      | Sample 2 success count |
| $n_1$      | Sample 1 size          |

| Field name | Description      |
|------------|------------------|
| $n_2$      | Sample 2 size    |
| C          | Confidence level |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Results    | Description                 |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| C          | Confidence level            |
| Critical Z | Critical values for Z       |
| Lower      | Lower bound for $\Delta\pi$ |
| Upper      | Upper bound for $\Delta\pi$ |

## One-Sample T-Interval

### Menu name

T-Int: 1  $\mu$

This option uses the Student's t-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for  $\mu$ , the true mean of a population, for the case in which the true population standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , is unknown.

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description               |
|------------|---------------------------|
| $\bar{x}$  | Sample mean               |
| s          | Sample standard deviation |
| n          | Sample size               |
| C          | Confidence level          |

## Results

The results are as follows:

| Results  | Description           |
|----------|-----------------------|
| C        | Confidence level      |
| DF       | Degrees of freedom    |
| Critical | Critical values for T |

| Results | Description           |
|---------|-----------------------|
| Lower   | Lower bound for $\mu$ |
| Upper   | Upper bound for $\mu$ |

## Two-Sample T-Interval

### Menu name

T-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

This option uses the Student's t-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the difference between the means of two populations,  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , when the population standard deviations,  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ , are unknown.

### Inputs

The inputs are as follows:

| Field name  | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| $\bar{x}_1$ | Sample 1 mean   |
| $\bar{x}_2$ | Sample 2 mean   |
| $s_1$       | Sample 1 standard deviation   |
| $s_2$       | Sample 2 standard deviation   |
| $n_1$       | Sample 1 size   |
| $n_2$       | Sample 2 size   |
| C           | Confidence level  |
| Pooled      | Whether or not to pool the samples based on their standard deviations |

### Results

The results are as follows:

| Results    | Description                 |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| C          | Confidence level            |
| DF         | Degrees of freedom          |
| Critical T | Critical values for T       |
| Lower      | Lower bound for $\Delta\mu$ |
| Upper      | Upper bound for $\Delta\mu$ |



# Chi-square tests

An HP Prime calculator can perform tests on categorical data based on the chi-square distribution. Specifically, HP Prime calculators support both goodness of fit tests and tests on two-way tables.

## Goodness of fit test

### Menu name

Goodness of Fit


This option uses the chi-square distribution to test the goodness of fit of categorical data on observed counts against either expected probabilities or expected counts. In the Symbolic view, make your selection in the **Expected** box: choose either **Probability** (the default) or **Count**.

### Inputs

With **Expected Probability** selected, the Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                        |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| ObsList    | The list of observed count data    |
| ProbList   | The list of expected probabilities |






### Results

When  is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results  | Description  |
|----------|--|
| $\chi^2$ | The value of the chi-square test statistic           |
| P        | The probability associated with the chi-square value |
| DF       | The degrees of freedom                               |

### Menu keys

The menu key options are as follows:

| Menu key  | Description   |
|---|---|
|  | Displays the default test results, as listed previously                     |
|  | Displays the expected counts  |
|  | Displays the list of contributions of each category to the chi-square value |
|  | Selects a small, medium, or large font                                      |
|  | Returns to the Numeric view   |

With Expected Count selected, the Numeric view inputs include ExpList for the expected counts instead of ProbList and the menu key labels in the Results screen do not include Exp.

## Two-way table test

### Menu name

2-way test

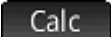
This option uses the chi-square distribution to test the goodness of fit of categorical data of observed counts contained in a two-way table.

### Inputs

The Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description  |
|------------|--|
| ObsMat     | The matrix of the observed count data in the two-way table |




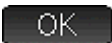
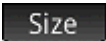

### Results

When  is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results  | Description  |
|----------|--|
| $\chi^2$ | The value of the chi-square test statistic           |
| P        | The probability associated with the chi-square value |
| DF       | The degrees of freedom                               |


### Menu keys

The menu key options are as follows:







| Menu key  | Description   |
|---|---|
|  | Displays the matrix of expected counts. Press  to exit.                                      |
|  | Displays the matrix of contributions of each category to the chi-square value. Press  to exit. |
|  | Selects a small, medium, or large font.   |
|  | Returns to the Numeric view.  |

## Inference for regression

An HP Prime calculator can perform tests and calculate intervals based on inference for linear regression. These calculations are based on the t-distribution.

 **TIP:** If you have been using the Statistics 2Var app to explore a linear regression and you want to use the same data for this procedure, you will have to import it manually. For example, suppose your x-values are in list C1 of the Statistics 2Var app and your y-values are in list C2.

To import the data into the Inference app:

1. Open the Statistics 2Var app and press  to enter Home view.
2. Enter `L1:=C1` and press .
3. Enter `L2:=C2` and press .
4. Open the Inference app and press  to enter Home view.
5. Enter `Xlist:=L1` and press .
6. Enter `Ylist:=L2` and press .
7. Press  to enter Symbolic view, and then select **Regression** for the Method field.
8. Press  to enter Numeric view. Your data is imported to Xlist and Ylist.

## Linear t-test

### Menu name

Linear t test


This option performs a t-test on the true linear regression equation, based on a list of explanatory data and a list of response data. You must choose an alternative hypothesis in Symbolic view using the **Alt Hypoth** field.

### Inputs

The Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                  |
|------------|------------------------------|
| Xlist      | The list of explanatory data |
| Ylist      | The list of response data    |

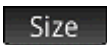
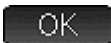
## Results

When  is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results   | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| Test T    | The value of the t-test statistic                                     |
| P         | The probability associated with the t-test statistic                  |
| DF        | The degrees of freedom  |
| $\beta_0$ | The intercept of the calculated regression line                       |
| $\beta_1$ | The slope of the calculated regression line                           |
| serrLine  | The standard error of the calculated regression line                  |
| serrSlope | The standard error of the slope of the calculated regression line     |
| serrInter | The standard error of the intercept of the calculated regression line |
| r         | The correlation coefficient of the data                               |
| $R^2$     | The coefficient of determination of the data                          |

## Menu keys


The menu key options are as follows:

| Menu key  | Description                             |
|---|---|
|  | Selects a small, medium, or large font. |
|  | Returns to the Numeric view.            |

## Confidence interval for slope

### Menu name

Interval: Slope


This option calculates a confidence interval for the slope of the true linear regression equation, based on a list of explanatory data, a list of response data, and a confidence level. After you enter your data in Numeric view and tap , enter the confidence level in the prompt that appears.

## Inputs

The Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                          |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| Xlist      | The list of explanatory data         |
| Ylist      | The list of response data            |
| C          | The confidence level ( $0 < C < 1$ ) |

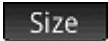

## Results

When  is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results   | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| C         | The input confidence level  |
| Crit. T   | The critical value of t   |
| DF        | The degrees of freedom  |
| $\beta_1$ | The slope of the calculated regression line                       |
| serrSlope | The standard error of the slope of the calculated regression line |
| Lower     | The lower bound of the confidence interval for the slope          |
| Upper     | The upper bound of the confidence interval for the slope          |

## Menu keys


The menu key options are as follows:

| Menu key   | Description                             |
|--|---|
|   | Selects a small, medium, or large font. |
|  | Returns to the Numeric view.            |

## Confidence interval for intercept

### Menu name

Interval: Intercept


This option calculates a confidence interval for the intercept of the true linear regression equation, based on a list of explanatory data, a list of response data, and a confidence level. After you enter your data in Numeric view and tap , enter the confidence level in the prompt that appears.

## Inputs

The Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description                          |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| Xlist      | The list of explanatory data         |
| Ylist      | The list of response data            |
| C          | The confidence level ( $0 < C < 1$ ) |



## Results

When  is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results   | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| C         | The input confidence level                                   |
| Crit. T   | The critical value of t                                      |
| DF        | The degrees of freedom                                       |
| $\beta_0$ | The intercept of the calculated regression line              |
| serrInter | The standard error of the y-intercept of the regression line |
| Lower     | The lower bound of the confidence interval for the intercept |
| Upper     | The upper bound of the confidence interval for the intercept |

## Menu keys

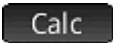
The menu key options are as follows:

| Menu key   | Description                             |
|--|---|
|   | Selects a small, medium, or large font. |
|  | Returns to the Numeric view.            |

## Confidence interval for a mean response

### Menu name

Interval: Mean response

This option calculates a confidence interval for the mean response ( $\hat{y}$ ), based on a list of explanatory data, a list of response data, a value of the explanatory variable (X), and a confidence level. After you enter your data in Numeric view and tap , enter the confidence level and the value of the explanatory variable (X) in the prompt that appears.

## Inputs

The Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description  |
|------------|--|
| Xlist      | The list of explanatory data   |
| Ylist      | The list of response data  |
| X          | The value of the explanatory variable for which you want a mean response and a confidence interval |
| C          | The confidence level ( $0 < C < 1$ )   |

## Results

When **Calc** is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results        | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| C              | The input confidence level                                       |
| Crit. T        | The critical value of t  |
| DF             | The degrees of freedom   |
| $\hat{y}$      | The mean response for the input X-value                          |
| serr $\hat{y}$ | The standard error of $\hat{y}$                                  |
| Lower          | The lower bound of the confidence interval for the mean response |
| Upper          | The upper bound of the confidence interval for the mean response |

## Menu keys

The menu key options are as follows:

| Menu key    | Description                             |
|-------------|---|
| <b>Size</b> | Selects a small, medium, or large font. |
| <b>OK</b>   | Returns to the Numeric view.            |

## Prediction interval

### Menu name

Prediction interval

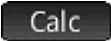
This option calculates a prediction interval for a future response, based on a list of explanatory data, a list of response data, a value of the explanatory variable (X), and a confidence level. After you enter your data in Numeric view and tap **Calc**, enter the confidence level and the value of the explanatory variable (X) in the prompt that appears.

## Inputs

The Numeric view inputs are as follows:

| Field name | Description  |
|------------|--|
| Xlist      | The list of explanatory data   |
| Ylist      | The list of response data  |
| X          | The value of the explanatory variable for which you want a future response and a confidence interval |
| C          | The confidence level ( $0 < C < 1$ )   |

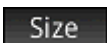

## Results

When  is tapped, the results are as follows:

| Results       | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| C             | The input confidence level                                       |
| Crit. T       | The critical value of t  |
| DF            | The degrees of freedom   |
| $\hat{y}$     | The future response for the input X-value                        |
| $serr\hat{y}$ | The standard error of $\hat{y}$                                  |
| Lower         | The lower bound of the confidence interval for the mean response |
| Upper         | The upper bound of the confidence interval for the mean response |

## Menu keys

The menu key options are as follows:

| Menu key   | Description                             |
|--|---|
|   | Selects a small, medium, or large font. |
|  | Returns to the Numeric view.            |



---

## 14 Solve app

The Solve app enables you to define up to ten equations or expressions each with as many variables as you like. You can solve a single equation or expression for one of its variables, based on a seed value. You can also solve a system of equations (linear or non-linear), again using seed values.

Note the following differences between an equation and an expression:

- An equation contains an equals sign. Its solution is a value for the unknown variable that makes both sides of the equation have the same value.
- An expression does not contain an equals sign. Its solution is a root, a value for the unknown variable that makes the expression have a value of zero.

For brevity, the term equation in this chapter will cover both equations and expressions.

Solve works only with real numbers.

### Getting started with the Solve app

The Solve app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric view; however, the Numeric view is significantly different from the other apps as it is dedicated to numerical solving rather than to displaying a table of values.

The Symbolic view and Plot view menu buttons are available in this app.

### One equation

Suppose you want to find the acceleration needed to increase the speed of a car from 16.67 m/s (60 kph) to 27.78 m/s (100 kph) over a distance of 100 m.

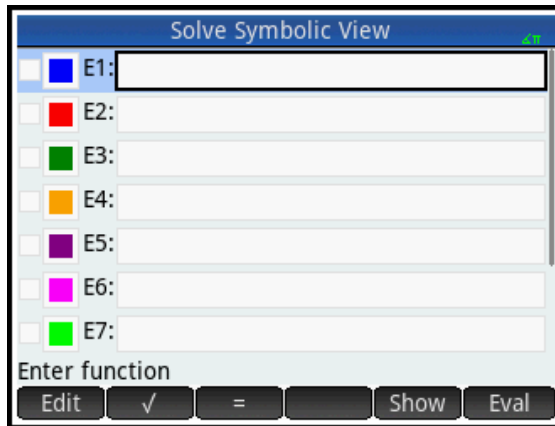
The following is the equation to solve is:

$$V^2 = U^2 + 2AD$$


In this equation, V = final speed, U = initial speed, A = acceleration needed, and D = distance.

## Opening the Solve app

- ▲ Press **Apps Info** and then select **Solve**.



The Solve app starts in Symbolic view, where you can specify the equation to solve.

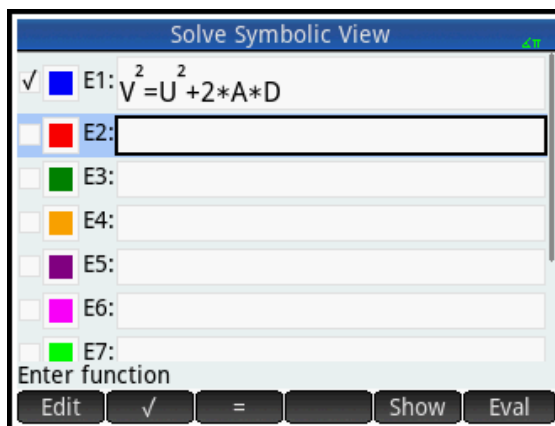
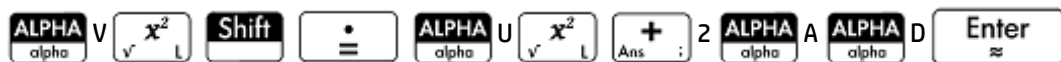
 **NOTE:** In addition to the built-in variables, you can use one or more variables you created yourself (either in Home view or in the CAS). For example, if you have created a variable called ME, you could include it in an equation such as this:  $Y^2 = G^2 + ME$ .

Functions defined in other apps can also be referenced in the Solve app. For example, if you have defined F1(X) to be  $X^2 + 10$  in the Function app, you can enter  $F1(X) = 50$  in the Solve app to solve the equation  $X^2 + 10 = 50$ .

## Clearing the app and defining the equation

1. If you have no need for any equations or expressions already defined, press **Shift** **Esc Clear**. Tap **OK** to confirm your intention to clear the app.

2. Define the equation.



## Entering known variables

1. Display the Numeric view.



Here you specify the values of the known variables, highlight the variable that you want to solve for, and then tap **Solve**.

2. Enter the values for the known variables.

27  $\frac{\cdot}{=}$  78 **Enter** 16  $\frac{\cdot}{=}$  67 **Enter**  $\nabla$  100 **Enter**

A screenshot of the 'Solve Numeric View' screen. It has a blue header with the title 'Solve Numeric View' and a green arrow icon. Below the header are four input fields labeled 'V:', 'U:', 'A:', and 'D:'. The 'V:' field is highlighted with a black border and contains the value '0'. The other fields contain '0'. At the bottom, there is a text prompt 'Enter value or press solve' and a row of buttons: 'Edit', an empty button, another empty button, 'Defn', and 'Solve'.

**NOTE:** Some variables may already have values against them when you display the Numeric view. This occurs if the variables have been assigned values elsewhere. For example, in Home view you might have assigned 10 to variable U by entering 10, tapping **Sto**, and then entering U. Then when you open the Numeric view to solve an equation with U as a variable, 10 will be the default value for U. This also occurs if a variable has been given a value in some previous calculation (in an app or program).

To reset all prepopulated variables to zero, press **Shift** **Esc** Clear.

## Solving for the unknown variable

- ▲ To solve for the unknown variable A, move the cursor to the **A** box and tap **Solve**.

A screenshot of the 'Solve Numeric View' screen, similar to the previous one, but with different values. The 'V:' field contains '27.78', 'U:' contains '16.67', 'A:' contains '2.4691975' (highlighted with a black border), and 'D:' contains '100'. The bottom buttons are 'Edit', 'Info', an empty button, 'Defn', and 'Solve'.


Therefore, the acceleration needed to increase the speed of a car from 16.67 m/s (60 kph) to 27.78 m/s (100 kph) over a distance of 100 m is approximately 2.4692 m/s<sup>2</sup>.

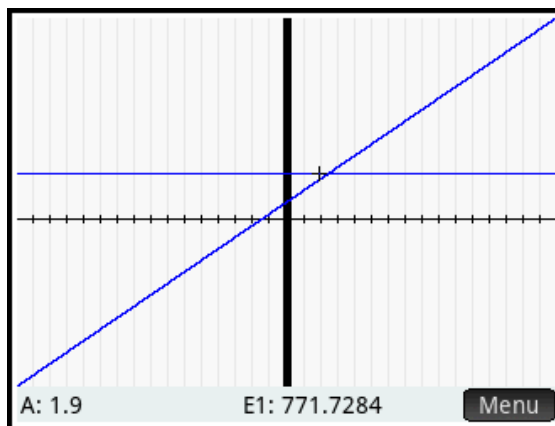
The equation is linear with respect to the variable A. Hence you can conclude that there are no further solutions for A. This is also visible if you plot the equation.

## Plotting the equation

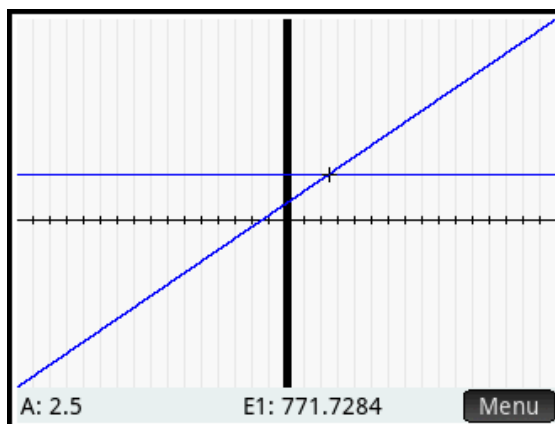
The Plot view shows one graph for each side of the solved equation. You can choose any of the variables to be the independent variable by selecting it in Numeric view. So in this example make sure that A is highlighted.

The current equation is  $V^2 = U^2 + 2AD$ . The plot view will plot two equations, one for each side of the equation. One of these is  $Y = V^2$ , with  $V = 27.78$ , making  $Y = 771.7284$ . This graph is a horizontal line. The other graph is  $Y = U^2 + 2AD$  with  $U = 16.67$  and  $D = 100$ , making,  $Y = 200A + 277.8889$ . This graph is also a line. The desired solution is the value of A where these two lines intersect.


1. To plot the equation for variable A, press  .
2. Select **Auto Scale**.
3. Select **Both sides of En** (where n is the number of the selected equation).



4. By default, the tracer is active. Using the cursor keys, move the trace cursor along either graph until it nears the intersection. Note that the value of A displayed near the bottom left corner of the screen closely matches the value of A that you calculated.



The Plot view provides a convenient way to find an approximation to a solution when you suspect that there are a number of solutions. Move the trace cursor close to the solution (that is, the intersection) of interest to you and then open Numeric view. The solution given in Numeric view is the solution nearest the trace cursor.





 **NOTE:** By dragging a finger horizontally or vertically across the screen, you can quickly see parts of the plot that are initially outside the x and y ranges you set.

## Several equations

You can define up to ten equations and expressions in Symbolic view and select those you want to solve together as a system. For example, suppose you want to solve the system of equations consisting of the following:

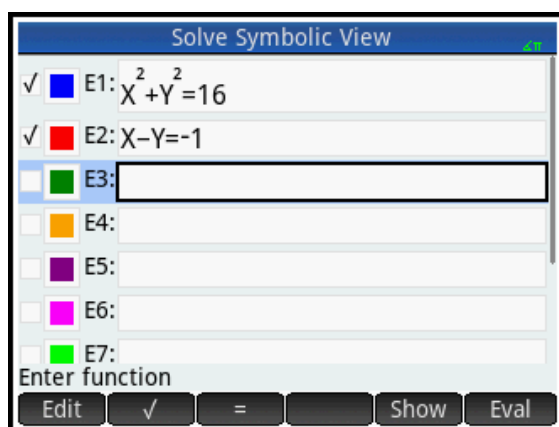
- $X^2 + Y^2 = 16$
- $X - Y = -1$

## Opening the solve app

1. Press  and then select **Solve**.
2. If you have no need for any equations or expressions already defined, press  . Tap  to confirm your intention to clear the app.

## Defining the equations

- ▲ Define the equations.



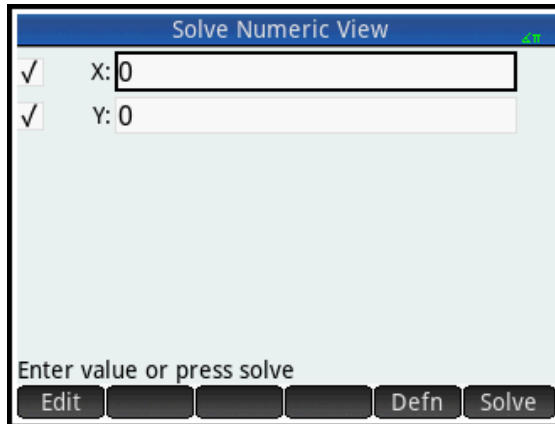
Make sure that both equations are selected, as we are looking for values of X and Y that satisfy both equations.

## Entering a seed value


1. Display Numeric view.



Unlike the one-equation example, in this example there are no given values for any variable. You can either enter a seed value for one of the variables, or let the calculator provide a solution. (Typically, a seed value is a value that directs the calculator to provide, if possible, a solution that is closest to it rather than some other value.) In this example, look for a solution in the vicinity of  $X = 2$ .



2. Enter the seed value in the X field.

For example, enter 2 and then tap .


The calculator provides one solution (if there is one) and you will not be alerted if there are multiple solutions. Vary the seed values to find other potential solutions.

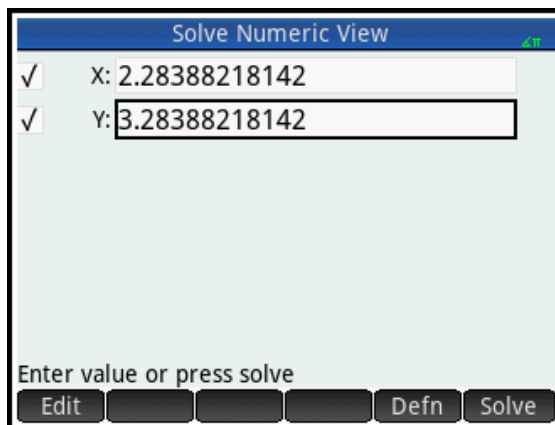
3. Select the variables you want solutions for. In this example, you want to find values for both X and Y, so make sure that both variables are selected.



**NOTE:** If you have more than two variables, you can enter seed values for more than one of them.

## Solving the unknown variables

- ▲ Tap  to find a solution near  $X = 2$  that satisfies each selected equation.



Solutions, if found, are displayed beside each selected variable.

## Limitations

You cannot plot equations if more than one is selected in Symbolic view.

The HP Prime calculator does not alert you to the existence of multiple solutions. If you suspect that another solution exists close to a particular value, repeat the exercise using that value as a seed. (In the example just discussed, you will find another solution if you enter  $-4$  as the seed value for  $X$ .)

In some situations, the Solve app uses a random number seed in its search for a solution. This means that it is not always predictable which seed leads to which solution when there are multiple solutions.

## Solution information

When you are solving a single equation, the **Info** button appears on the menu after you tap **Solve**. Tapping **Info** displays a message giving you some information about the solutions found (if any). Tap **OK** to clear the message.

| Message              | Meaning   |
|----------------------|---|
| Zero                 | The Solve app found a point where both sides of the equation were equal, or where the expression was zero (a root), within the calculator's 12-digit accuracy.  |
| Sign Reversal        | Solve found two points where the two sides of the equation have opposite signs, but it cannot find a point in between where the value is zero. Similarly, for an expression, where the value of the expression has different signs but is not precisely zero. Either the two values are neighbors (they differ by one in the twelfth digit) or the equation is not real-valued between the two points. Solve returns the point where the value or difference is closer to zero. If the equation or expression is continuously real, this point is Solve's best approximation of an actual solution. |
| Extremum             | <p>Solve found a point where the value of the expression approximates a local minimum (for positive values) or maximum (for negative values). This point may or may not be a solution.</p> <p>— or —</p> <p>Solve stopped searching at 9.999999999999E499, the largest number the calculator can represent.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Extremum</b> message indicates that it is highly likely that there is no solution. Use Numeric view to verify this (and note that any values shown are suspect).</p>   |
| Cannot find solution | No values satisfy the selected equation or expression.  |
| Bad Guess(es)        | The initial guess lies outside the domain of the equation. Therefore, the solution was not a real number or it caused an error.   |
| Constant?            | The value of the equation is the same at every point sampled.   |

## 15 Linear Solver app

The Linear Solver app enables you to solve a set of linear equations. The set can contain two or three linear equations.

In a two-equation set, each equation must be in the form  $ax + by = k$ . In a three-equation set, each equation must be in the form  $ax + by + cz = k$ .

You provide values for  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $k$  (and  $c$  in three-equation sets) for each equation, and the app will attempt to solve for  $x$  and  $y$  (and  $z$  in three-equation sets).

The HP Prime calculator alerts you if no solution can be found, or if there is an infinite number of solutions.

### Getting started with the Linear Solver app

The following example defines the following set of equations and then solves for the unknown variables:


- $6x + 9y + 6z = 5$
- $7x + 10y + 8z = 10$
- $6x + 4y = 6$

### Opening the Linear Solver app

▲ Press **Apps** **Info**, and then select **Linear Solver**.

| Linear Equation Solver       |     |      |    |   |    |   |
|------------------------------|-----|------|----|---|----|---|
| 0                            | X+  | 0    | Y+ | 0 | Z= | 0 |
| 0                            | X+  | 0    | Y+ | 0 | Z= | 0 |
| 0                            | X+  | 0    | Y+ | 0 | Z= | 0 |
| 0                            |     |      |    |   |    |   |
| Infinite number of solutions |     |      |    |   |    |   |
| Edit                         | 2x2 | 3x3• |    |   |    |   |

The app opens in Numeric view.

 **NOTE:** If the last time you used the Linear Solver app you solved for two equations, the two-equation input form is displayed. To solve a three-equation set, tap **3x3**; now the input form displays three equations.



## Defining and solving the equations

1. You define the equations you want to solve by entering the coefficients of each variable in each equation and the constant term. Notice that the cursor is positioned immediately to the left of x in the first equation, ready for you to insert the coefficient of x (6). Enter the coefficient and either tap

**OK** or press **Enter**.

2. The cursor moves to the next coefficient. Enter that co-efficient and either tap **OK** or press

**Enter**. Continue doing likewise until you have defined all the equations.

The screenshot shows the 'Linear Equation Solver' interface. It contains three equations in a table format:

|      |       |      |    |
|------|-------|------|----|
| 6 X+ | 9 Y+  | 6 Z= | 5  |
| 7 X+ | 10 Y+ | 8 Z= | 10 |
| 6 X+ | 0 Y+  | 0 Z= | 0  |

Below the equations, the solution is displayed: X: 0 Y: -1.66666666667 Z: 3.33333333333. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Edit', '2x2', '3x3', and three empty slots.

Once you have entered enough values for the solver to be able to generate solutions, those solutions appear near the bottom of the display. In this example, the solver was able to find solutions for x, y, and z as soon as the first coefficient of the last equation was entered.

As you enter each of the remaining known values, the solution changes. The following figure shows the final solution once all the coefficients and constants had been entered.

The screenshot shows the 'Linear Equation Solver' interface with the final solution. The equations are:

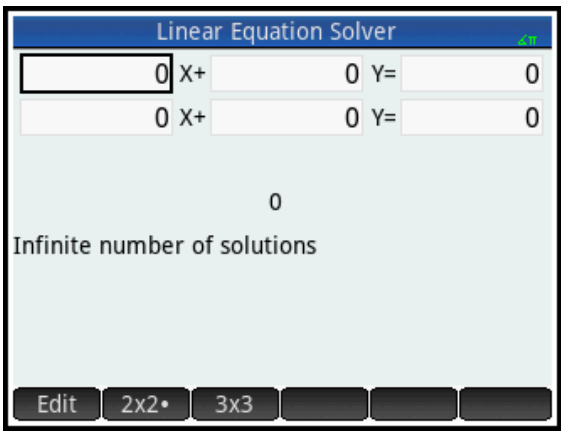
|      |       |      |    |
|------|-------|------|----|
| 6 X+ | 9 Y+  | 6 Z= | 5  |
| 7 X+ | 10 Y+ | 8 Z= | 10 |
| 6 X+ | 4 Y+  | 0 Z= | 6  |

Below the equations, the solution is displayed: X: 3.16666666667 Y: -3.25 Z: 2.54166666667. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Edit', '2x2', '3x3', and three empty slots.

## Solving a two-by-two system

If the three-equation input form is displayed and you want to solve a two-equation set, do the following:

- ▲ Tap **2x2**.



**NOTE:** You can enter any expression that resolves to a numerical result, including variables. Just enter the name of a variable.

## Menu items

The menu items are as follows:

| Menu item   | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| <b>Edit</b> | Moves the cursor to the entry line where you can add or change a value. You can also highlight a field, enter a value, and press <b>Enter</b> . The cursor automatically moves to the next field, where you can enter the next value and press <b>Enter</b> . |
| <b>2x2</b>  | Displays the page for solving a system of 2 linear equations in 2 variables; changes to <b>2x2•</b> when active.  |
| <b>3x3</b>  | Displays the page for solving a system of 3 linear equations in 3 variables; changes to <b>3x3•</b> when active.  |

# 16 Parametric app

The Parametric app enables you to explore parametric equations. These are equations in which both  $x$  and  $y$  are defined as functions of  $t$ . They take the forms  $x = f(t)$  and  $y = g(t)$ .

## Getting started with the Parametric app

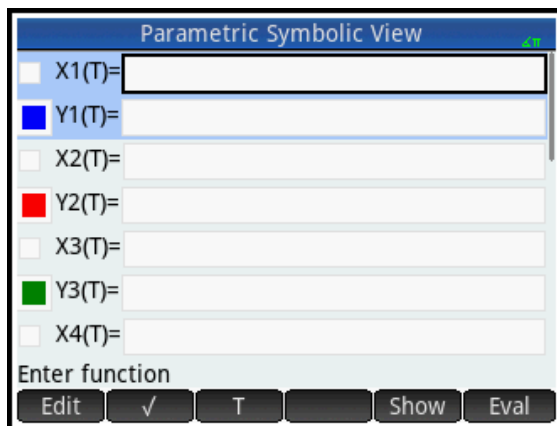
The Parametric app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric view.

The Symbolic view, Plot view, and Numeric view menu buttons are available in this app.

Throughout this chapter, we will explore the parametric equations  $x(T) = 8\sin(T)$  and  $y(T) = 8\cos(T)$ . These equations produce a circle.

## Opening the Parametric app

▲ Press **Apps** **Info**, and then select **Parametric**.



The Parametric app starts in Symbolic view. This is the defining view. It is where you symbolically define (that is, specify) the parametric expressions you want to explore.

The graphical and numerical data you see in Plot view and Numeric view are derived from the symbolic functions defined here.

## Defining the functions

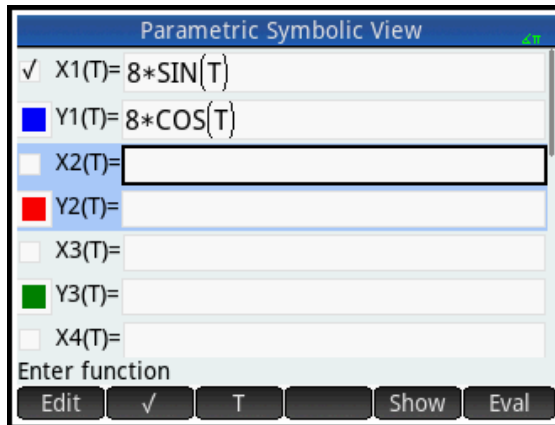
There are 20 fields for defining functions. These are labelled X1(T) through X9(T) and X0(T), and Y1(T) through Y9(T) and Y0(T). Each X function is paired with a Y function.

1. Highlight which pair of functions you want to use, either by tapping on, or scrolling to, one of the pair. If you are entering a new function, just start typing. If you are editing an existing function, tap **Edit** and make your changes. When you have finished defining or changing the function, press **Enter**.
2. Define the two expressions.

8 **SIN** **x t θ n** **Enter**  
ASIN G Define D ≈

8 **COS** **x t θ n** **Enter**  
ACOS H Define D ≈

The **x t θ n** key enters whatever variable is relevant to the current app. In this app, it enters a T.



3. Decide to do one of the following:
  - Give one or more function a custom color when it is plotted
  - Evaluate a dependent function
  - Clear a definition that you don't want to explore
  - Incorporate variables, math commands, and CAS commands in a definition

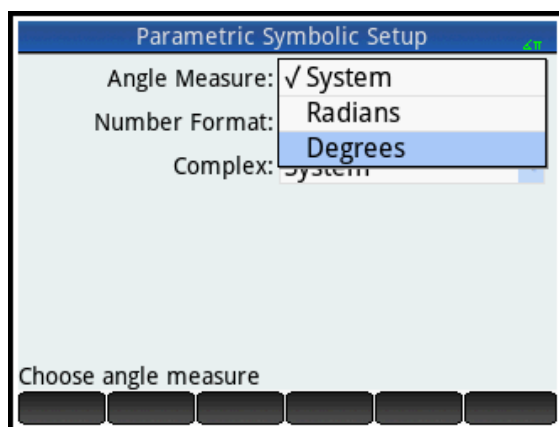
For the sake of simplicity we can ignore these operations in this example. However, they can be useful and are common Symbolic view operations.

## Setting the angle measure

To set the angle measure to degrees:

1. Press **Shift** **Symb**.

2. Select **Angle Measure**, and then select **Degrees**.



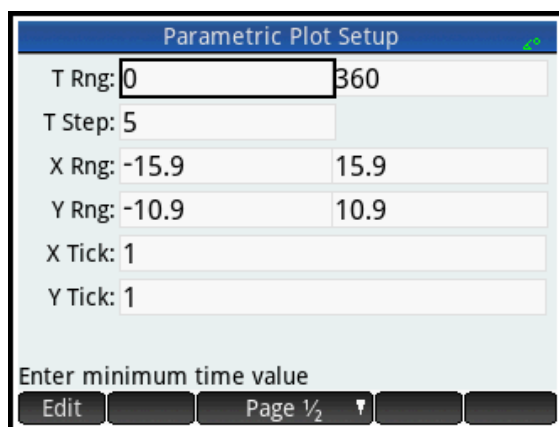
You can also have set the angle measure on the **Home Settings** screen. However, Home settings are system-wide. By setting the angle measure in an app rather than Home view, you are limiting the setting just to that app.

## Setting up the plot

1. To open Plot Setup view, press **Shift** **Plot** **Setup**.
2. Set up the plot by specifying appropriate graphing options. In this example, set the **T Rng** and **T Step** fields so that T steps from  $0^\circ$  to  $360^\circ$  in  $5^\circ$  steps.

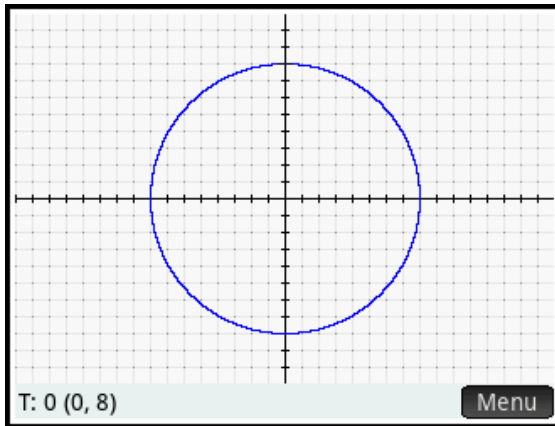
Select the second **T Rng** field and enter:

360 **OK** 5 **OK**





## Plotting the functions

▲ Press **Plot** .



## Exploring the graph

The menu button gives you access to the following common tools for exploring plots:

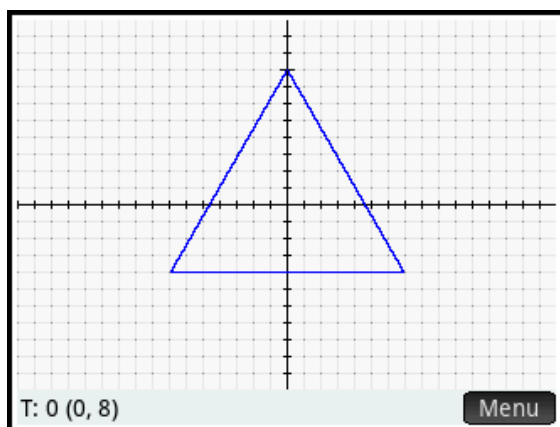
- **Zoom** —Displays a range of zoom options. (The  and  keys can also be used to zoom in and out.)
- **Trace** —When active, enables a tracing cursor to be moved along the contour of the plot (with the coordinates of the cursor displayed at the bottom of the screen).
- **Go To** —Specify a T value and the cursor moves to the corresponding x and y coordinates.
- **Defn** —Display the functions responsible for the plot.

These tools are common Plot view operations.

Typically, you would modify a plot by changing its definition in Symbolic view. However, you can modify some plots by changing the Plot Setup parameters. For example, you can plot a triangle instead of a circle simply by changing two plot setup parameters. The definitions in Symbolic view remain unchanged. To do this, use the following procedure.



1. Press **Shift** **Plot** .
2. Change **T Step** to **120**.
3. Tap **Page 1/2** .
4. From the **Method** menu, select **Fixed-Step Segments**.





- Press .



A triangle is displayed instead of a circle. This is because the new value of **T Step** makes the points being plotted  $120^\circ$  apart instead of the nearly continuous  $5^\circ$ . And by selecting **Fixed-Step Segments** the points  $120^\circ$  apart are connected with line segments.

## Displaying the Numeric view

- Press .
- With the cursor in the **T** column, type a new value and tap . The table scrolls to the value you entered.

| Parametric Numeric View  |            |           |  |
|--|------------|-----------|--|
| T  | X1         | Y1        |  |
| 0  | 0          | 8         |  |
| 0.1  | 1.39626E-2 | 7.9999878 |  |
| 0.2  | 2.79252E-2 | 7.9999513 |  |
| 0.3  | 4.18877E-2 | 7.9998903 |  |
| 0.4  | 5.58501E-2 | 7.999805  |  |
| 0.5  | 6.98123E-2 | 7.9996954 |  |
| 0.6  | 8.37743E-2 | 7.9995614 |  |
| 0.7  | 9.77260E-2 | 7.999402  |  |
| 0  |            |           |  |
| <div>     </div> |            |           |  |

You can also zoom in or out on the independent variable (thereby decreasing or increasing the increment between consecutive values). These are common Numeric view operations.

You can see the Plot and Numeric views side by side by combining the Plot and Numeric views.

## 17 Polar app

The Polar app enables you to explore polar equations. Polar equations are equations in which  $r$ —the distance a point is from the origin:  $(0,0)$ —is defined in terms of  $\theta$ , the angle a segment from the point to the origin makes with the polar axis. Such equations take the form  $r = f(\theta)$ .

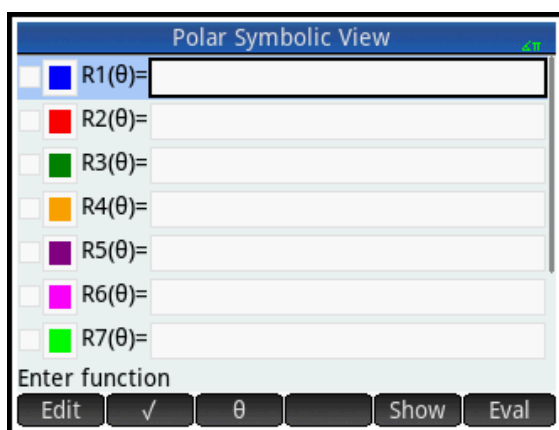
### Getting started with the Polar app

The Polar app uses the six standard app views. That chapter also describes the menu buttons used in the Polar app.

Throughout this chapter, we will explore the expression  $5\pi\cos(\theta/2)\cos(\theta)^2$ .

### Opening the Polar app

- ▲ Press **Apps** **Info**, and then select **Polar**.



The app opens in Symbolic view.

The graphical and numerical data you see in Plot view and Numeric view are derived from the symbolic functions defined here.

### Defining the function

There are 10 fields for defining polar functions. These are labelled  $R1(\theta)$  through  $R9(\theta)$  and  $R0(\theta)$ .

1. Highlight the field you want to use, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it. If you are entering a new function, just start typing. If you are editing an existing function, tap **Edit** and make your changes.

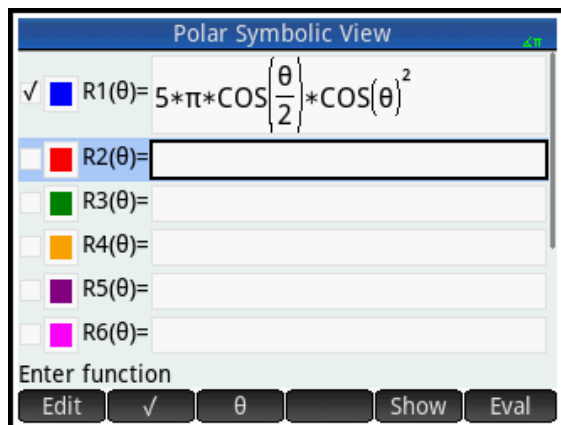
When you have finished defining or changing the function, press **Enter**.



- Define the expression  $5\pi\cos(\theta/2)\cos(\theta)^2$ .



The  $\text{x t } \theta \text{ n}$  key enters whatever variable is relevant to the current app. In this app, it enters a  $\theta$ .



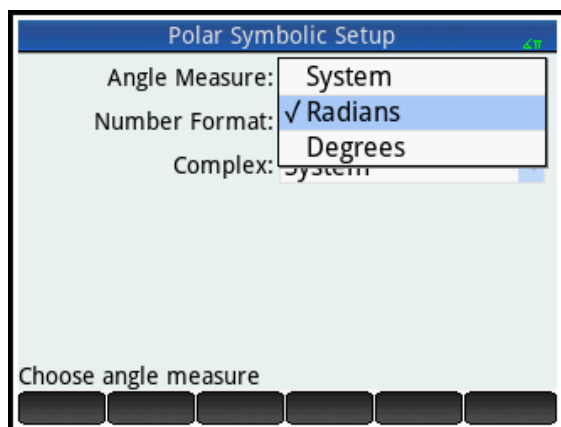
- If you wish, choose a color for the plot other than its default. You do this by selecting the colored square to the left of the function set, tapping **Choose**, and selecting a color from the color-picker.

Adding definitions, modifying definitions, and evaluating dependent definitions are common operations in Symbolic view.

## Setting the angle measure

To set the angle measure to radians:

- Press **Shift** **Symb** **Setup**.
- Select **Angle Measure**, and then select **Radians**.

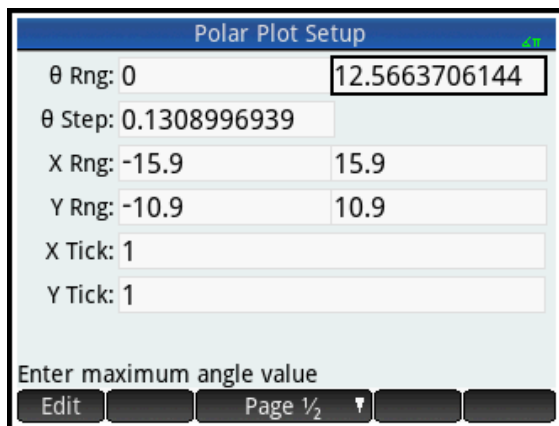


These are common operations in Symbolic Setup view.

## Setting up the plot

1. To open Plot Setup view, press **Shift** **Plot** **Setup**.
2. Set up the plot by specifying appropriate graphing options. In this example, set the upper limit of the range of the independent variable to  $4\pi$ :

Select the second  **$\theta$  Rng** field and enter 4 **Shift** **3** **OK**.



The image shows the 'Polar Plot Setup' dialog box. It contains several input fields for configuring the plot. The 'θ Rng' field is set to 12.5663706144. The 'θ Step' field is set to 0.1308996939. The 'X Rng' field is set to -15.9 and 15.9. The 'Y Rng' field is set to -10.9 and 10.9. The 'X Tick' field is set to 1. The 'Y Tick' field is set to 1. At the bottom, there is a label 'Enter maximum angle value' and a 'Page 1/2' indicator.

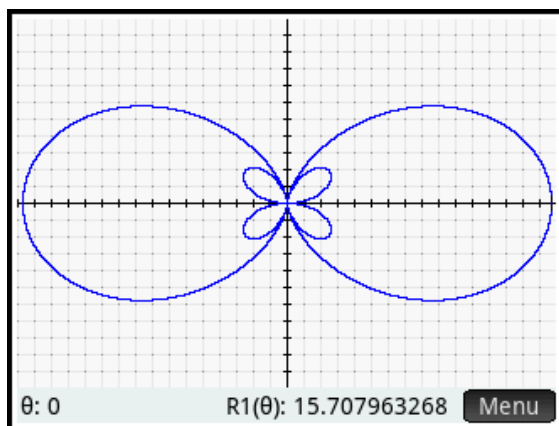
| Field  | Value         |
|--------|---------------|
| θ Rng  | 12.5663706144 |
| θ Step | 0.1308996939  |
| X Rng  | -15.9 15.9    |
| Y Rng  | -10.9 10.9    |
| X Tick | 1             |
| Y Tick | 1             |

Enter maximum angle value  
Edit Page 1/2

There are numerous ways of configuring the appearance of Plot view, using the common operations in Plot view.

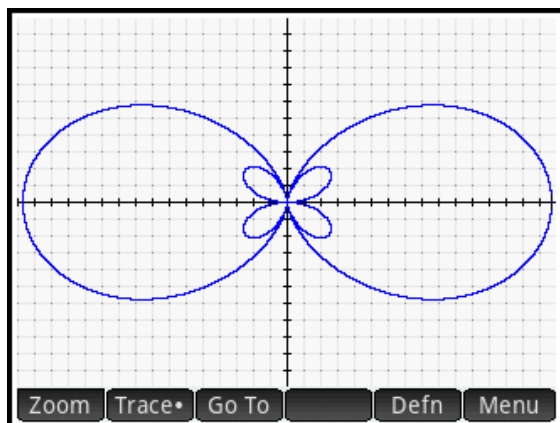
## Plotting the expression

- ▲ Press **Plot** **Setup**.



## Exploring the graph

- ▲ To display the Plot view menu, press **Menu**.



A number of options appear to help you explore the graph, such as zooming and tracing. You can also jump directly to a particular  $\theta$  value by entering that value. The Go To screen appears with the number you typed on the entry line. Just tap **OK** to accept it. (You could also tap the **Go To** and specify the target value.)

If only one polar equation is plotted, you can see the equation that generated the plot by tapping **Defn**. If there are several equations plotted, move the tracing cursor to the plot you are interested—by pressing **▲** or **▼**—and then tap **Defn**.

Exploring plots is a common operation in Plot view.

## Displaying the Numeric view

1. Press **Num** .

The Numeric view displays a table of values for  $\theta$  and R1. If you had specified, and selected, more than one polar function in Symbolic view, a column of evaluations would appear for each one: R2, R3, R4 and so on.

| Polar Numeric View          |           |  |  |
|-----------------------------|-----------|--|--|
| $\theta$                    | R1        |  |  |
| 0                           | 15.707963 |  |  |
| 0.1                         | 15.531971 |  |  |
| 0.2                         | 15.012601 |  |  |
| 0.3                         | 14.175173 |  |  |
| 0.4                         | 13.060272 |  |  |
| 0.5                         | 11.721424 |  |  |
| 0.6                         | 10.222036 |  |  |
| 0.7                         | 8.6218022 |  |  |
| 0                           |           |  |  |
| Zoom   Size   Defn   Column |           |  |  |

2. With the cursor in the  $\theta$  column, type a new value and tap **OK**. The table scrolls to the value you entered.

You can also zoom in or out on the independent variable (thereby decreasing or increasing the increment between consecutive values). This and other options are common operations in Numeric view.

You can see the Plot and Numeric views side by side by combining the Plot and Numeric views.

## 18 Sequence app

The Sequence app provides you with various ways to explore sequences.

You can define a sequence named, for example,  $U1$  in the following ways:

- In terms of  $n$
- In terms of  $U1(n - 1)$
- In terms of  $U1(n - 2)$
- In terms of another sequence; for example,  $U2(n)$
- In any combination of the above

You can define a sequence by specifying just the first term and the rule for generating all subsequent terms. However, you will have to enter the second term if the HP Prime calculator is unable to calculate it automatically. Typically if the  $n$ th term in the sequence depends on  $n - 2$ , then you must enter the second term.

The app enables you to create the following two types of graphs:

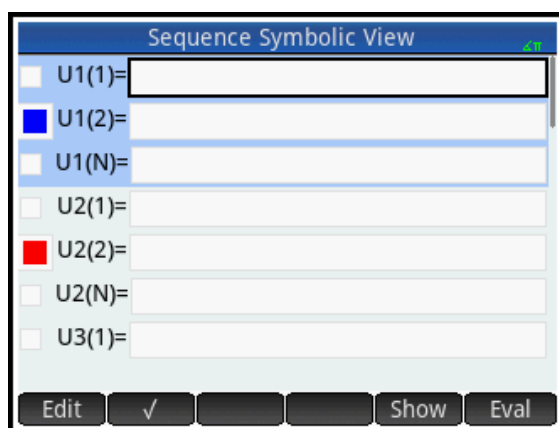
- **Stairsteps**—Plots points of the form  $(n, U_n)$ .
- **Cobweb**—Plots points of the form  $(U_{n-1}, U_n)$ .

### Getting started with the Sequence app

The following example explores the well-known Fibonacci sequence, where each term, from the third term on, is the sum of the preceding two terms. In this example, we specify three sequence fields: the first term, the second term and a rule for generating all subsequent terms.

#### Opening the Sequence app

- ▲ Press **Apps Info**, and then select **Sequence**.



The app opens in Symbolic view.

## Defining the expression

To define the following Fibonacci sequence:

$$U_1 = 1, U_2 = 1, U_n = U_{n-1} + U_{n-2} \text{ for } n > 2$$

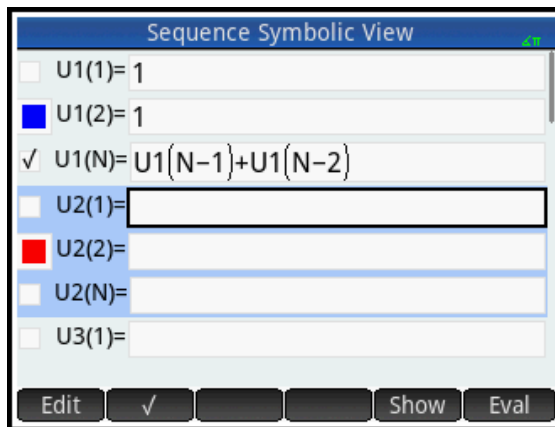
1. In the **U1(1)** field, specify the first term of the sequence:

1

2. In the **U1(2)** field, specify the second term of the sequence:

1

3. In the **U1(N)** field, specify the formula for finding the nth term of the sequence from the previous two terms (using the buttons at the bottom of the screen to help with some entries):



4. Optionally, select a color for your graph.

## Setting up the plot

1. To open Plot Setup view, press  .
2. To reset all settings to their default values, press  .
3. Select **Stairstep** from the Seq Plot menu.

4. Set the **X Rng** maximum, and the **Y Rng** maximum, to **8** (as shown in the following figure).

Sequence Plot Setup

Seq Plot: Stairstep

N Rng: 1 24

X Rng: -1.8 8

Y Rng: -1.8 8

X Tick: 1

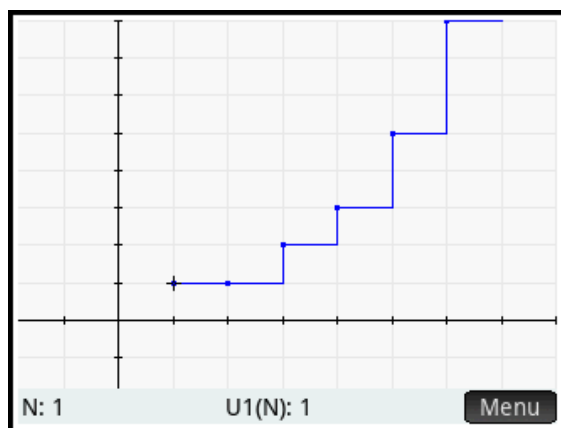
Y Tick: 1


Enter maximum vertical value

Edit Page 1/2

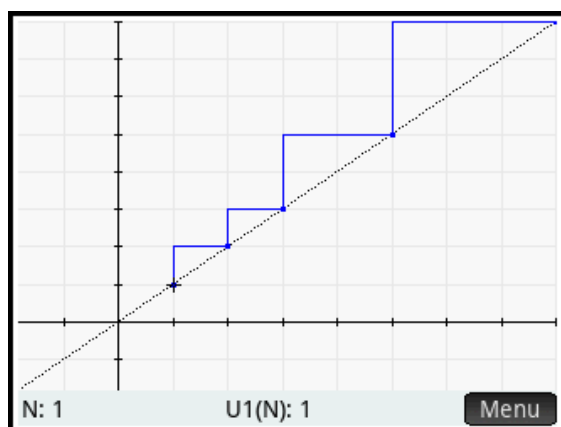
## Plotting the sequence

1. Press **Plot** .



2. To plot the sequence using the cobweb option, return to Plot Setup view ( **Shift** **Plot**  ) and select **Cobweb** from the **Seq Plot** menu.

3. Press **Plot** .




## Exploring the graph

The **Menu** button gives you access to common plot-exploration tools, such as:

- **Zoom**—Zoom in or out on the plot
- **Trace•**—Trace along a graph
- **Go To**—Go to a specified  $n$  value
- **Defn**—Display the sequence definition

These tools are common operations in Plot view.

Split screen and autoscaling options are also available by pressing  .

## Displaying Numeric view

1. Display Numeric view:



| Sequence Numeric View |      |        |  |
|-----------------------|------|--------|--|
| N                     | U1   |        |  |
| 1                     | 1    |        |  |
| 2                     | 1    |        |  |
| 3                     | 2    |        |  |
| 4                     | 3    |        |  |
| 5                     | 5    |        |  |
| 6                     | 8    |        |  |
| 7                     | 13   |        |  |
| 8                     | 21   |        |  |
| 1                     |      |        |  |
| Zoom                  |      |        |  |
| Size                  | Defn | Column |  |




## Exploring the table of values

The Numeric view gives you access to common table-exploration tools, such as the following:

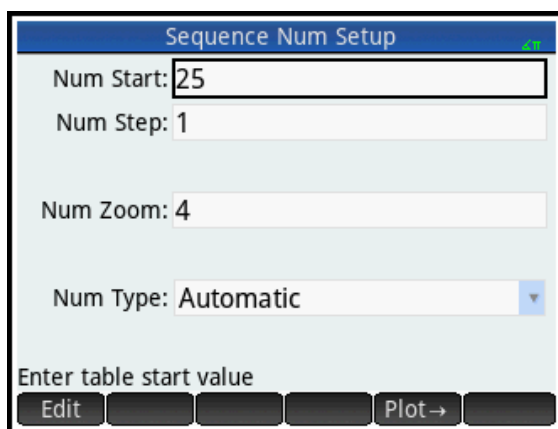
- **Zoom** —Change the increment between consecutive values
- **Size** —Change the size of the font
- **Defn** —Display the sequence definition
- **Column** —Choose the number of sequences to display

These tools are common operations in Numeric view.

Split screen and autoscaling options are also available by pressing  .

## Setting up the table of values

The Numeric Setup view provides options common to most of the graphing apps, although there is no zoom factor as the domain for the sequences is the set of counting numbers. These are common operations in Numeric Setup view.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Sequence Num Setup". It contains four input fields: "Num Start:" with the value 25, "Num Step:" with the value 1, "Num Zoom:" with the value 4, and "Num Type:" with a dropdown menu set to "Automatic". At the bottom, there is a label "Enter table start value" and a row of buttons: "Edit", three empty buttons, and "Plot→".

## Another example: Explicitly defined sequences

In the following example, we define the  $n$ th term of a sequence simply in terms of  $n$  itself. In this case, there is no need to enter either of the first two terms numerically.

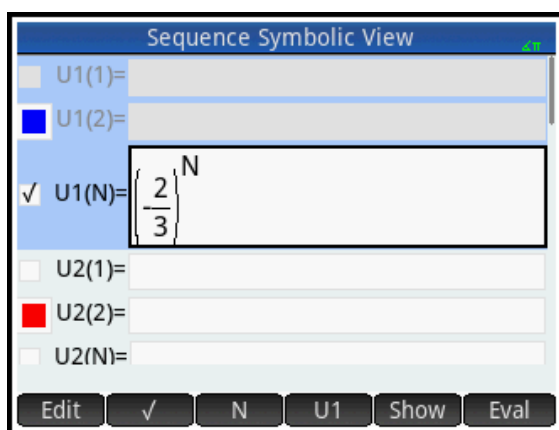
### Defining the expression

- ▲ Define  $U1(N) = (-2/3)^N$ .

Select U1N:

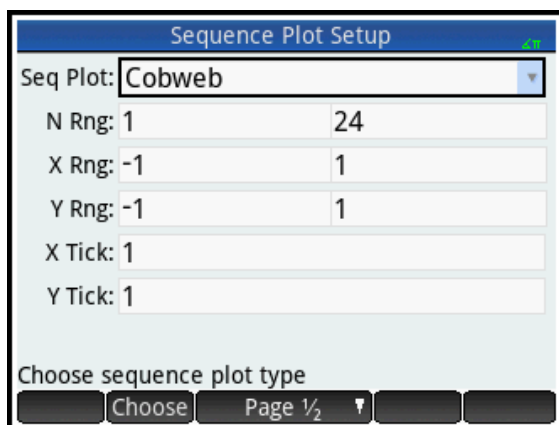
Enter  $\left( \frac{-2}{3} \right)^N$ , and then select  $\frac{\square}{\square}$ .

Enter 2  $\left( \blacktriangledown \right)$  3  $\left( \blacktriangleright \right)$   $\left( \blacktriangleright \right)$   $x^y$   $N$   $\text{Enter}$ .



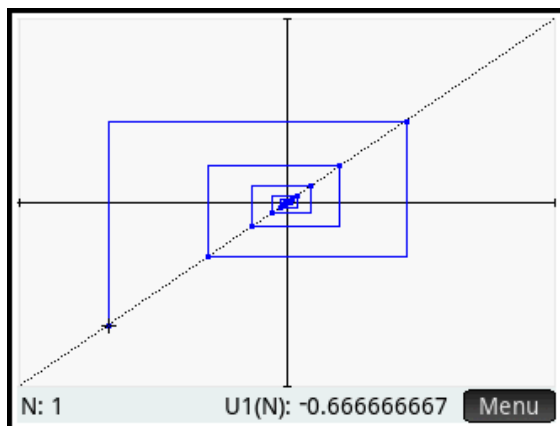
### Setting up the plot


1. To open Plot Setup view, press  $\text{Shift}$   $\text{Plot} \rightarrow \text{Setup}$ .
2. To reset all setting to their default values, press  $\text{Shift}$   $\text{Esc}$   $\text{Clear}$ .
3. Tap **Seq Plot** and select **Cobweb**.
4. Set both **X Rng** and **Y Rng** to **[-1, 1]** as shown in the following figure.





## Plotting the sequence

▲ Press .



Press  to see the dotted lines in the previous figure. Press it again to hide the dotted lines.

## Exploring the table of values

1. Press .
2. Tap  and select **1** to see the sequence values.

| Sequence Numeric View |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| N                     | U1               |
| 1                     | -0.66666666667   |
| 2                     | 0.44444444445    |
| 3                     | -0.2962962963    |
| 4                     | 0.1975308642     |
| 5                     | -0.1316872428    |
| 6                     | 0.0877914952     |
| 7                     | -0.05852766347   |
| 8                     | 0.02001844221    |
| 8.77914951992E-2      |                  |
| Zoom                  | Size Defn Column |

## 19 Finance app

The Finance app enables you to solve time-value-of-money (TVM) and amortization problems. You can use the app to do compound interest calculations and to create amortization tables.



Compound interest is accumulative interest, that is, interest on interest already earned. The interest earned on a given principal is added to the principal at specified compounding periods, and then the combined amount earns interest at a certain rate. Financial calculations involving compound interest include savings accounts, mortgages, pension funds, leases, and annuities.

### Getting started with the Finance app

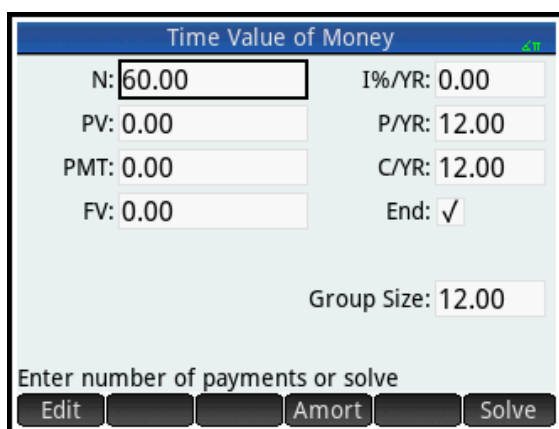
Suppose you finance the purchase of a car with a 5-year loan at 5.5% annual interest, compounded monthly. The purchase price of the car is \$19,500, and the down payment is \$3,000. First, what are the required monthly payments? Second, what is the largest loan you can afford if your maximum monthly payment is \$300? Assume that the payments start at the end of the first period.

1. To open the Finance app, press  and then select **Finance**.


The app opens in the Numeric view.

2. In the **N** field, enter 5  12 and press .

Notice that the result of the calculation (60) appears in the field. This is the number of months over a five-year period.



The screenshot shows the 'Time Value of Money' app interface. It has a blue header with the title and a green arrow. Below the header are several input fields: 'N: 60.00', 'I%/YR: 0.00', 'PV: 0.00', 'P/YR: 12.00', 'PMT: 0.00', 'C/YR: 12.00', 'FV: 0.00', and 'End: ✓'. There is also a 'Group Size: 12.00' field. At the bottom, there is a prompt 'Enter number of payments or solve' and four buttons: 'Edit', 'Amort', and 'Solve'.

3. In the **I%/YR** field, enter 5 . 5—the interest rate—and press .

4. In **PV** field, enter 19500  3000 and press . This is the present value of the loan, being the purchase price less the deposit.

5. Leave **P/YR** and **C/YR** both at 12 (their default values). Leave **End** as the payment option. Also, leave future value, **FV**, as **0** (as your goal is to end up with a future value of the loan of 0).

| Time Value of Money           |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| N: 60.00                      | I%/YR: 5.50                              |
| PV: 16,500.00                 | P/YR: 12.00                              |
| PMT: 0.00                     | C/YR: 12.00                              |
| FV: 0.00                      | End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Group Size: 12.00             |  |
| Enter payment amount or solve |  |
| Edit                          | Solve                                    |

6. Move the cursor to the **PMT** field and tap **Solve**. The PMT value is calculated as -315.17. In other words, your monthly payment will be \$315.17.

The PMT value is negative to indicate that it is money owed by you.

Note that the PMT value is greater than 300, that is, greater than the amount you can afford to pay each month. So you need to re-run the calculations, this time setting the PMT value to -300 and calculating a new PV value.

| Time Value of Money           |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| N: 60.00                      | I%/YR: 5.50                              |
| PV: 16,500.00                 | P/YR: 12.00                              |
| PMT: -315.17                  | C/YR: 12.00                              |
| FV: 0.00                      | End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Group Size: 12.00             |  |
| Enter payment amount or solve |  |
| Edit                          | Solve                                    |

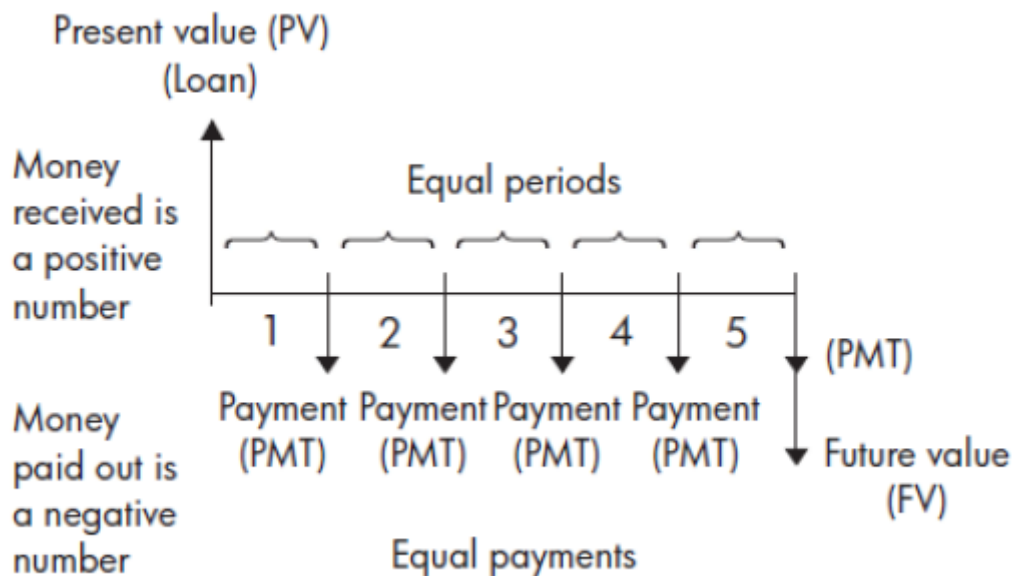
7. In the PMT field, enter  $\pm/$  300, point the cursor to the **PV** field, and tap **Solve**.

| Time Value of Money          |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| N: 60.00                     | I%/YR: 5.50                              |
| PV: 15,705.85                | P/YR: 12.00                              |
| PMT: -300.00                 | C/YR: 12.00                              |
| FV: 0.00                     | End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Group Size: 12.00            |  |
| Enter present value or solve |  |
| Edit                         | Solve                                    |

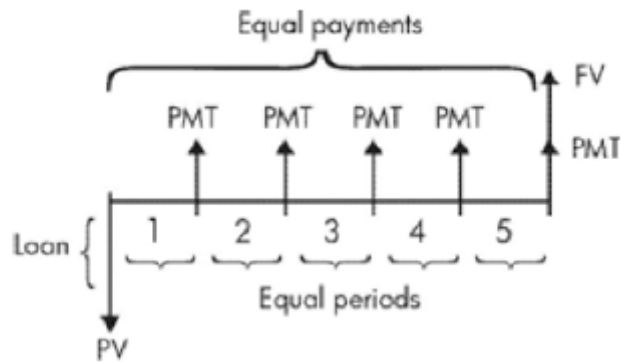
The PV value is calculated as 15,705.85, this being the maximum you can borrow. Thus, with your \$3,000 deposit, you can afford a car with a price tag of up to \$18,705.85.

## Cash flow diagrams

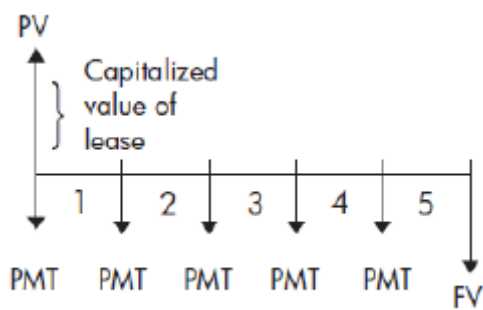
TVM transactions can be represented in cash flow diagrams. A cash flow diagram is a time line divided into equal segments representing the compounding periods. Arrows represent the cash flows. These could be positive (upward arrows) or negative (downward arrows), depending on the point of view of the lender or borrower. The following cash flow diagram shows a loan from a borrower's point of view.



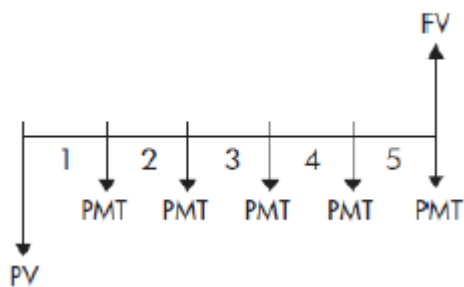
The following cash flow diagram shows a loan from the lender's point of view.



Cash flow diagrams also specify when payments occur relative to the compounding periods. The following diagram shows lease payments at the beginning of the period.



The following diagram shows deposits (PMT) into an account at the end of each period.



## Time value of money (TVM)

Time-value-of-money (TVM) calculations make use of the notion that a dollar today will be worth more than a dollar sometime in the future. A dollar today can be invested at a certain interest rate and generate a return that the same dollar in the future cannot. This TVM principle underlies the notion of interest rates, compound interest, and rates of return.

There are seven TVM variables as follows:

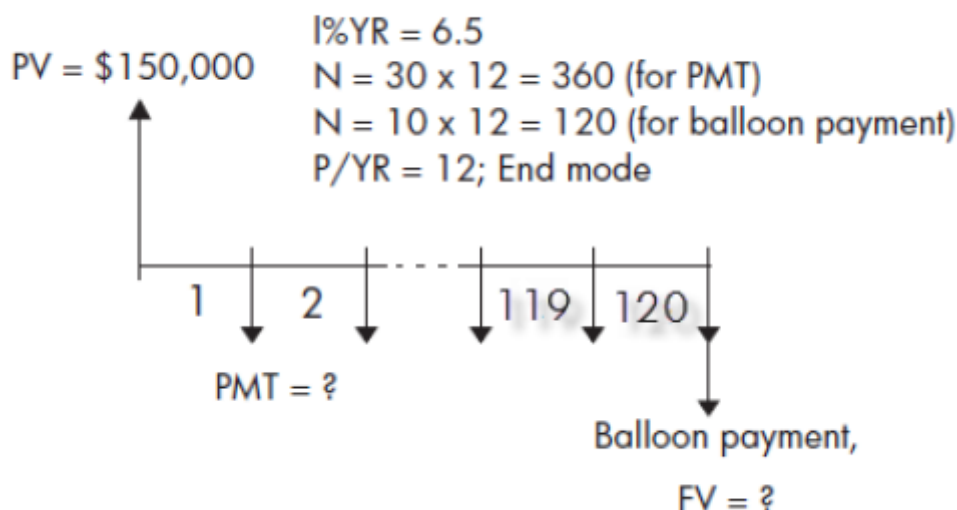
| Variable | Description  |
|----------|--|
| N        | The total number of compounding periods or payments.   |
| 1%YR     | The nominal annual interest rate (or investment rate). This rate is divided by the number of payments per year (P/YR) to compute the nominal interest rate per compounding period. This is the interest rate actually used in TVM calculations.  |
| PV       | The present value of the initial cash flow. To a lender or borrower, PV is the amount of the loan; to an investor, PV is the initial investment. PV always occurs at the beginning of the first period.  |
| P/YR     | The number of payments made in a year.   |
| PMT      | The periodic payment amount. The payments are the same amount each period and the TVM calculation assumes that no payments are skipped. Payments can occur at the beginning or the end of each compounding period—an option you control by selecting or clearing the <b>End</b> option.                    |
| C/YR     | The number of compounding periods in a year.   |
| FV       | The future value of the transaction: the amount of the final cash flow or the compounded value of the series of previous cash flows. For a loan, this is the size of the final balloon payment (beyond any regular payment due). For an investment, this is its value at the end of the investment period. |



## Another example: TVM calculations

Suppose you have taken out a 30-year, \$150,000 house mortgage at 6.5% annual interest. You expect to sell the house in 10 years, repaying the loan in a balloon payment. Find the size of the balloon payment—that is, the value of the mortgage after 10 years of payment.

The following cash flow diagram illustrates the case of a mortgage with balloon payment.



1. To open the Finance app, press **Apps Info** and select **Finance**.
2. To return all fields to their default values, press **Shift** **Esc Clear**.
3. Enter the known TVM variables, as shown in the following figure.

| Time Value of Money           |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| N: 360.00                     | I%/YR: 6.50                              |
| PV: 150,000.00                | P/YR: 12.00                              |
| PMT: 0.00                     | C/YR: 12.00                              |
| FV: 0.00                      | End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Group Size: 12.00             |  |
| Enter payment amount or solve |  |
| <b>Edit</b>                   | <b>Solve</b>                             |



4. Select **PMT** and tap **Solve**. The PMT field shows -984.10. In other words, the monthly payments are \$984.10.
5. To determine the balloon payment or future value (FV) for the mortgage after 10 years, enter 120 for **N**, select **FV**, and tap **Solve**.

The FV field shows -127,164.19, indicating that the future value of the loan (that is, how much is still owing) as \$127,164.19.

## Amortizations

Amortization calculations determine the amounts applied towards the principal and interest in a payment, or series of payments. They also use TVM variables.

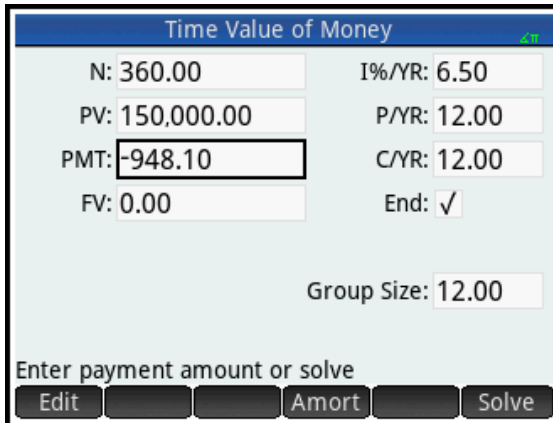
### Calculating amortizations

1. To open the Finance app, press  and select **Finance**.
2. Specify the number of payments per year (**P/YR**).
3. Specify whether payments are made at the beginning or end of periods.
4. Enter values for **I%/YR**, **PV**, **PMT**, and **FV**.
5. Enter the number of payments per amortization period in the **Group Size** box. By default, the group size is **12** to reflect annual amortization.
6. Tap . The calculator displays an amortization table. For each amortization period, the table shows the amounts applied to interest and principal, as well as the remaining balance of the loan.

### Amortization for a home mortgage example

Using the data from the previous example of a home mortgage with balloon payment (see [Another example: TVM calculations on page 291](#)), calculate how much has been applied to the principal, how much has been paid in interest, and the balance remaining after the first 10 years (that is, after  $12 \times 10 = 120$  payments).

1. Make sure that your data matches that shown in the following figure.



The screenshot shows the 'Time Value of Money' calculator interface. The input fields are as follows:

| Field      | Value                               |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| N          | 360.00                              |
| I%/YR      | 6.50                                |
| PV         | 150,000.00                          |
| P/YR       | 12.00                               |
| PMT        | -948.10                             |
| C/YR       | 12.00                               |
| FV         | 0.00                                |
| End        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Group Size | 12.00                               |

At the bottom, there is a text prompt 'Enter payment amount or solve' and four buttons: 'Edit', 'Amort', and 'Solve'.

2. Tap **Amort**.

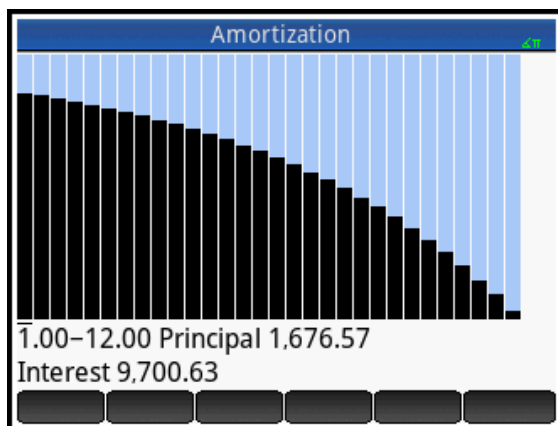
| Amortization |            |             |            |
|--------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| P            | Principal  | Interest    | Balance    |
| 1.00         | -1,676.57  | -9,700.63   | 148,323.43 |
| 2.00         | -3,465.42  | -19,288.98  | 146,534.58 |
| 3.00         | -5,374.07  | -28,757.53  | 144,625.93 |
| 4.00         | -7,410.55  | -38,098.25  | 142,589.45 |
| 5.00         | -9,583.41  | -47,302.59  | 140,416.59 |
| 6.00         | -11,901.80 | -56,361.40  | 138,098.20 |
| 7.00         | -14,375.46 | -65,264.94  | 135,624.54 |
| 8.00         | -17,014.77 | -74,002.83  | 132,985.23 |
| 9.00         | -19,830.85 | -82,563.95  | 130,169.15 |
| 10.00        | -22,835.53 | -90,936.47  | 127,164.47 |
| 11.00        | -26,041.42 | -99,107.77  | 122,058.57 |
| 12.00        | -29,451.42 | -107,089.82 | 115,607.15 |

3. Scroll down the table to payment group 10. Note that after 10 years, \$22,835.53 has been paid off the principal and \$90,936.47 paid in interest, leaving a balloon payment due of \$127,164.47.

| Amortization |            |             |            |
|--------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| P            | Principal  | Interest    | Balance    |
| 4.00         | -7,410.55  | -38,098.25  | 142,589.45 |
| 5.00         | -9,583.41  | -47,302.59  | 140,416.59 |
| 6.00         | -11,901.80 | -56,361.40  | 138,098.20 |
| 7.00         | -14,375.46 | -65,264.94  | 135,624.54 |
| 8.00         | -17,014.77 | -74,002.83  | 132,985.23 |
| 9.00         | -19,830.85 | -82,563.95  | 130,169.15 |
| 10.00        | -22,835.53 | -90,936.47  | 127,164.47 |
| 11.00        | -26,041.42 | -99,107.77  | 122,058.57 |
| 12.00        | -29,451.42 | -107,089.82 | 115,607.15 |



## Amortization graph

- ▲ Press **Plot** to see the amortization schedule presented graphically.



The balance owing at the end of each payment group is indicated by the height of a bar. The amount by which the principal has been reduced, and interest paid, during a payment group is shown at the bottom of the bottom of the screen. The previous example shows the first payment group selected. This represents the

first group of 12 payments (or the state of the loan at the end of the first year). By the end of that year, the principal had been reduced by \$1,676.57 and \$9,700.63 had been paid in interest.


Tap  or  to see the amount by which the principal has been reduced, and interest paid, during other payment groups.

## 20 Triangle Solver app

The Triangle Solver app enables you to calculate the length of a side of a triangle, or the size of an angle in a triangle, from information you supply about the other lengths, angles, or both.

You need to specify at least three of the six possible values—the lengths of the three sides and the size of the three angles—before the app can calculate the other values. Moreover, at least one value you specify must be a length. For example, you could specify the lengths of two sides and one of the angles; or you could specify two angles and one length; or all three lengths. In each case, the app will calculate the remaining values.


The HP Prime calculator alerts you if no solution can be found, or if you have provided insufficient data.

If you are determining the lengths and angles of a right-angled triangle, a simpler input form is available by tapping .

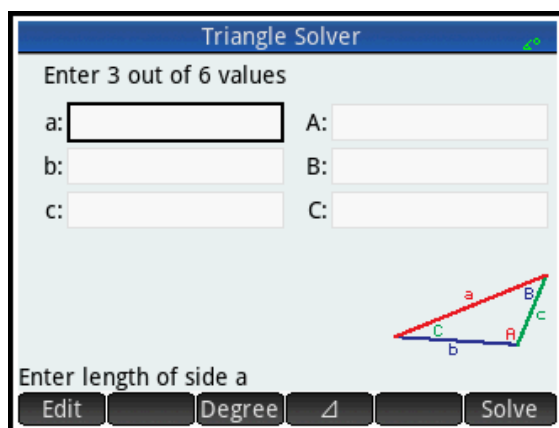
### Getting started with the Triangle Solver app



The following example calculates the unknown length of the side of a triangle whose two known sides—of lengths 4 and 6—meet at an angle of 30 degrees.

#### Opening the Triangle Solver app

1. Press , and then select **Triangle Solver**.

The app opens in Numeric view.



2. If there is unwanted data from a previous calculation, you can clear it all by pressing  .

## Setting the angle measure

Make sure that your angle measure mode is appropriate. By default, the app starts in degree mode. If the angle information you have is in radians and your current angle measure mode is degrees, change the mode to degrees before running the solver. Tap **Degree** or **Radians** depending on the mode you want. (The button is a toggle button.)



**NOTE:** The lengths of the sides are labeled **a**, **b**, and **c**, and the angles are labeled **A**, **B**, and **C**. It is important that you enter the known values in the appropriate fields. In our example, the length of two sides and the angle at which those sides meet is known. Therefore, if you specify the lengths of sides **a** and **b**, you must enter the angle as **C** (since C is the angle where A and B meet). If instead you entered the lengths as **b** and **c**, you would need to specify the angle as **A**. The calculator display helps you determine where to enter the known values.

## Specify the known values



Go to a field whose value you know, enter the value and either tap **OK** or press **Enter**.

Repeat for each known value.

a. In the **a** box, enter 4 and then press **Enter**.

b. In the **b** box, enter 6 and then press **Enter**.

c. In the **C** box, enter 30 and then press **Enter**.

Triangle Solver

Enter 3 out of 6 values

a: 4 A:

b: 6 B:

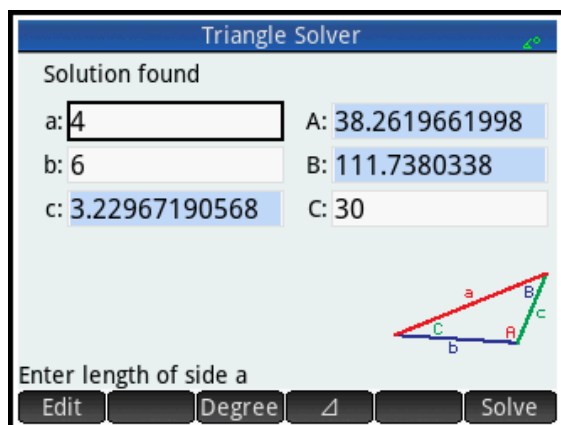
c:  C: 30

Enter length of side a

Edit Degree Solve

## Solving for the unknown values

▲ Tap **Solve**.



The screenshot shows the 'Triangle Solver' app interface. At the top, it says 'Solution found'. Below this, there are three rows of input fields and their corresponding calculated values:

| Input | Value         |
|-------|---------------|
| a:    | 4             |
| b:    | 6             |
| c:    | 3.22967190568 |
| A:    | 38.2619661998 |
| B:    | 111.7380338   |
| C:    | 30            |

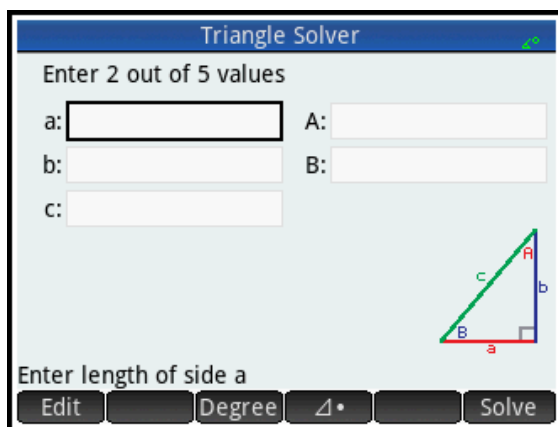
Below the table, there is a diagram of a triangle with sides labeled a, b, and c, and angles labeled A, B, and C. The side 'a' is red, 'b' is blue, and 'c' is green. The angle 'A' is at the bottom right, 'B' is at the top right, and 'C' is at the bottom left.

At the bottom, there is a text prompt 'Enter length of side a' and a row of buttons: 'Edit', 'Degree', a triangle icon, and 'Solve'.

The app displays the values of the unknown variables. As the previous figure shows, the length of the unknown side in our example is 3.22967... The other two angles have also been calculated.

## Choosing triangle types

The Triangle Solver app has two input forms: a general input form and a simpler, specialized form for right-angled triangles. If the general input form is displayed, and you are investigating a right-angled triangle, tap **△** to display the simpler input form. To return to the general input form, tap **Rect•**. If the triangle you are investigating is not a right-angled triangle, or you are not sure what type it is, you should use the general input form.



The screenshot shows the 'Triangle Solver' app interface in its specialized right-angled triangle mode. At the top, it says 'Enter 2 out of 5 values'. Below this, there are three rows of input fields for sides a, b, and c, and two rows of input fields for angles A and B. The side 'c' is highlighted in green, and the angle 'A' is highlighted in red.

Below the input fields, there is a diagram of a right-angled triangle with sides labeled a, b, and c, and angles labeled A, B, and C. The side 'a' is red, 'b' is blue, and 'c' is green. The angle 'A' is at the top right, 'B' is at the bottom left, and 'C' is at the bottom right, marked with a right-angle symbol.

At the bottom, there is a text prompt 'Enter length of side a' and a row of buttons: 'Edit', 'Degree', a triangle icon with a dot, and 'Solve'.

## Special cases

### Indeterminate case

If two sides and an adjacent acute angle are entered and there are two solutions, only one will be displayed initially.

In this case, the **Alt** button is displayed (as in the following figure). You can tap **Alt** to display the second solution and tap **Alt** again to return to the first solution.

Triangle Solver

Solution found

a: 14.9052520363 A: 111.317812546

b: 8 B: 30

c: 10 C: 38.6821874535

Enter angle C

Edit Degree  $\angle$  Alt Solve

### No solution with given data

If you are using the general input form and you enter more than 3 values, the values might not be consistent, that is, no triangle could possibly have all the values you specified. In these cases, **No sol with given data** appears on the screen.

The situation is similar if you are using the simpler input form (for a right-angled triangle) and you enter more than two values.

Triangle Solver

No solution with given data

a: 5 A:

b: 7 B: 40

c: 9 C:

Enter angle C

Edit Degree  $\angle$  Solve



## Not enough data

If you are using the general input form, you need to specify at least three values for the Triangle Solver to be able to calculate the remaining attributes of the triangle. If you specify less than three, **Not enough data** appears on the screen.

If you are using the simplified input form (for a right-angled triangle), you must specify at least two values.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Triangle Solver". Inside, the text "Not enough data" is displayed at the top. Below this, there are input fields for sides a, b, and c, and angles A, B, and C. Side 'a' is entered as 11, and angle 'C' is entered as 50. The other fields are empty. To the right of the input fields is a diagram of a triangle with vertices labeled A, B, and C. Side 'a' is opposite vertex A, side 'b' is opposite vertex B, and side 'c' is opposite vertex C. At the bottom, there is a prompt "Enter length of side a" and a row of buttons: "Edit", a button with a small square icon, "Degree", a button with a degree symbol, and "Solve".

## 21 The Explorer apps

There are three explorer apps. These are designed for you to explore the relationships between the parameters of a function and the shape of the graph of that function. The explorer apps are:

- Linear Explorer  
For exploring linear functions
- Quadratic Explorer  
For exploring quadratic functions
- Trig Explorer  
For exploring sinusoidal functions

There are two modes of exploration: graph mode and equation mode. In graph mode you manipulate a graph and note the corresponding changes in its equation. In equation mode you manipulate an equation and note the corresponding changes in its graphical representation. Each explorer app has a number of equations and graphs for to explore, and app has a test mode. In test mode, you test you skills at matching equations to graphs.

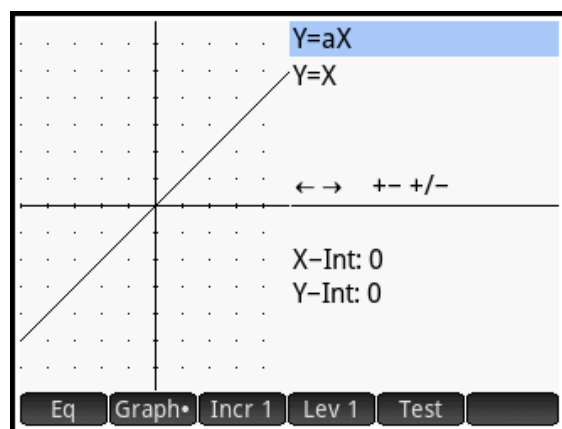
### Linear Explorer app

The Linear Explorer app can be used to explore the behavior of the graphs of and as the values of  $a$  and  $b$  change.

#### Open the app

Press **Apps** and select **Linear Explorer**.






The left half of the display shows the graph of a linear function. The right half shows the general form of the equation being explored at the top and, below it, the current equation of that form. The keys you can use to manipulate the graph or equation appear below the equation. The  $x$ - and  $y$ -intercepts are given at the bottom.



There are two types (or levels) of linear equation available for you to explore:  $y = ax$  and  $y = ax + b$ . You choose between them by tapping **Lev 1** or **Lev 2**.

The keys available to you to manipulate the graph or equation depend on the level you have chosen. For example, the screen for a level 1 equation shows this:








←→ +− +/−

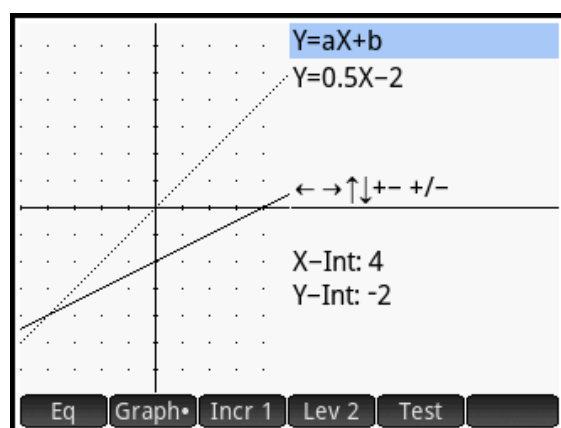
This means that you can press , , , , and . If you choose a level 2 equation, the screen shows this:

←→ ↑↓ +− +/−

This means that you can press , , , , , , and .

## Graph mode

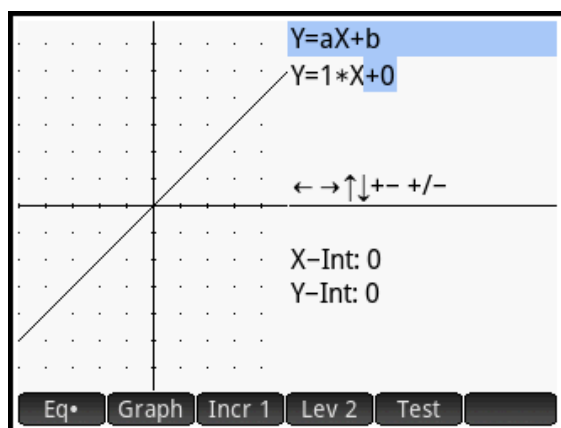
The app opens in graph mode (indicated by the dot on the **Graph** button at the bottom of the screen). In graph mode, the  and  keys translate the graph vertically, effectively changing the y-intercept of the line. Tap to change the magnitude of the increment for vertical translations. The  and  keys (as well as  and ) decrease and increase the slope. Press  to change the sign of the slope.



The form of the linear function is shown at the top right of the display, with the current equation that matches the graph just below it. As you manipulate the graph, the equation updates to reflect the changes.

## Equation mode

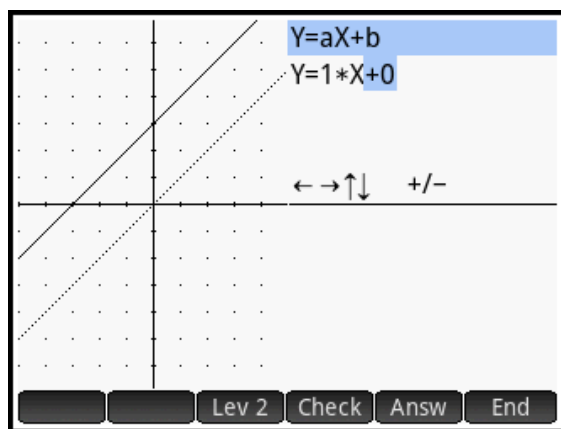
Tap  to enter equation mode. A dot will appear on the Eq button at the bottom of the screen.



In equation mode, you use the cursor keys to move between parameters in the equation and change their values, observing the effect on the graph displayed. Press or to decrease or increase the value of the selected parameter. Press or to select another parameter. Press to change the sign of  $a$ .

## Test mode

Tap **Test** to enter test mode. In Test mode you test your skill at matching an equation to the graph shown. Test mode is like equation mode in that you use the cursor keys to select and change the value of each parameter in the equation. The goal is to try to match the graph that is shown.



The app displays the graph of a randomly chosen linear function of the form dictated by your choice of level. (Tap **Lev 1** or **Lev 2** to change the level.) Now press the cursor keys to select a parameter and set its value. When you are ready, tap **Check** to see if you have correctly matched your equation to the given graph.

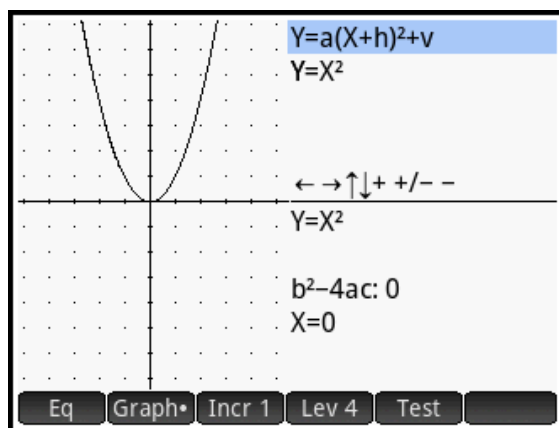
Tap **Answ** to see the correct answer and tap **End** to exit Test mode.

## Quadratic Explorer app

The Quadratic Explorer app can be used to investigate the behavior of  $y = a(x+h)^2 + v$  as the values of  $a$ ,  $h$  and  $v$  change.

## Open the app

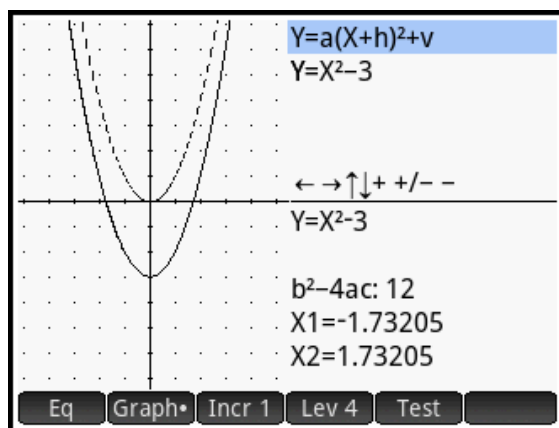
Press **Apps** and select **Quadratic Explorer**.



The left half of the display shows the graph of a quadratic function. The right half shows the general form of the equation being explored at the top and, below it, the current equation of that form. The keys you can use to manipulate the graph or equation appear below the equation. (These will change depending on the level of equation you choose.) Displayed beneath the keys is the equation, the discriminant (that is,  $b^2-4ac$ ), and the roots of the quadratic.

## Graph mode

The app opens in graph mode. In graph mode, you manipulate a copy of the graph using whatever keys are available. The original graph—converted to dotted lines—remains in place for you to easily see the result of your manipulations.



Four general forms of quadratic equations are available for you to explore:

$$y = ax^2 \text{ [Level 1]}$$






$$y = (x+h)^2 \text{ [Level 2]}$$

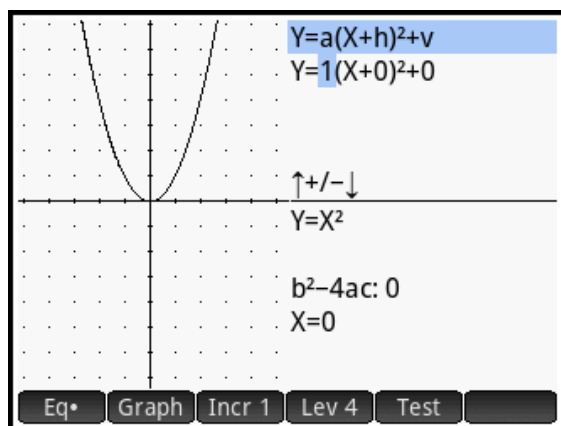
$$y = x^2 + v$$

$$y = a(x+h)^2 + x \text{ [Level 4]}$$

Choose a general form by tapping the Level button—**Lev 1**, **Lev 2**, and so on—until the form you want is displayed. The keys available to you to manipulate the graph vary from level to level.

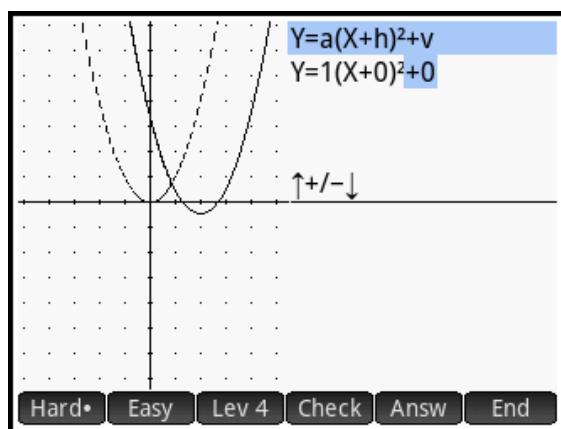
## Equation mode

Tap **Eq** to move to equation mode. In equation mode, you use the cursor keys to move between parameters in the equation and change their values, observing the effect on the graph displayed. Press  or  to decrease or increase the value of the selected parameter. Press  or  to select another parameter. Press  to change the sign. You have four forms (or levels) of graph, and the keys available for manipulating the equation depend on the level chosen.



## Test mode

Tap **Test** to enter test mode. In Test mode you test your skill at matching an equation to the graph shown. Test mode is like equation mode in that you use the cursor keys to select and change the value of each parameter in the equation. The goal is to try to match the graph that is shown.



The app displays the graph of a randomly chosen quadratic function. Tap the Level button to choose between one of four forms of quadratic equation. You can also choose graphs that are relatively easy to match or graphs that are harder match (by tapping **Easy** or **Hard** respectively).

Now press the cursor keys to select a parameter and set its value. When you are ready, tap **Check** to see if you have correctly matched your equation to the given graph.

Tap **Answ** to see the correct answer and tap **End** to exit Test mode.

## Trig Explorer app

The Trig Explorer app can be used to investigate the behavior of the graphs  $y = a \cdot \sin(bx + c) + d$  and  $y = a \cdot \cos(bx + c) + d$  as the values of  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  change.

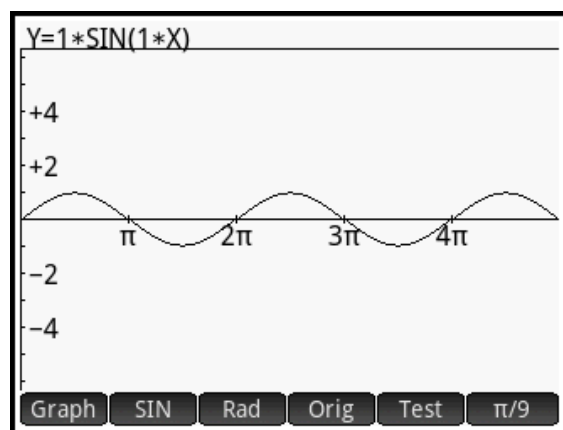
The menu items available in this app are:

- **Eq** or **Graph**: toggles between graph mode and equation mode
- **SIN** or **COS**: toggles between sine and cosine graphs
- **Rad** or **Deg**: toggles between radians and degrees as the angle measure for  $x$
- **Orig** or **Extr**: toggles between translating the graph (**Orig**), and changing its frequency or amplitude (**Extr**). You make these changes using the cursor keys.
- **Test**: enters test mode
- **$\pi/9$**  or  **$20^\circ$** : toggles the increment by which parameter values change:  $\pi/9$ ,  $\pi/6$ ,  $\pi/4$ , or  $20^\circ$ ,  $30^\circ$ ,  $45^\circ$  (depending on angle measure setting)

## Open the app

Press **Apps** and select Trig Explorer.

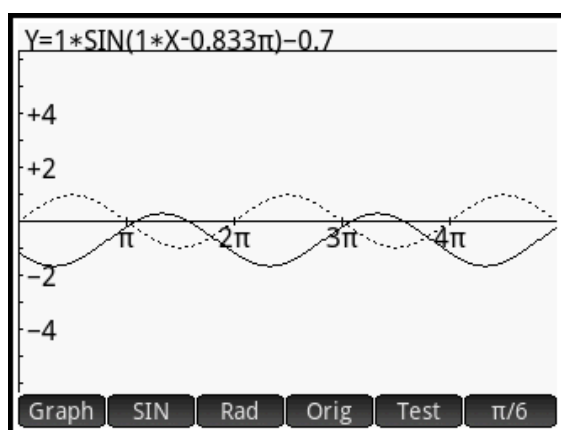
An equation is shown at the top of the display, with its graph shown below it.



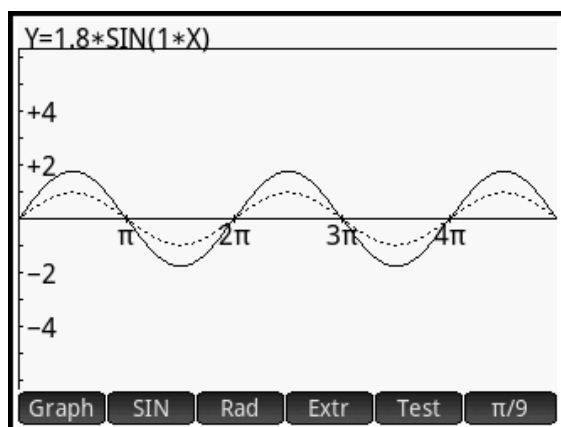
Choose the type of function you want to explore by tapping either **COS** or **SIN**.

## Graph mode

The app opens in graph mode. In graph mode, you manipulate a copy of the graph by pressing the cursor keys. All four keys are available. The original graph—converted to dotted lines—remains in place for you to easily see the result of your manipulations.



When **Orig** is chosen, the cursor keys simply translate the graph horizontally and vertically. When **Extr** is chosen, pressing  $\uparrow$  or  $\downarrow$  changes the amplitude of the graph (that is, it is stretched or shrunk vertically); and pressing  $\leftarrow$  or  $\rightarrow$  changes the frequency of the graph (that is, it is stretched or shrunk horizontally).

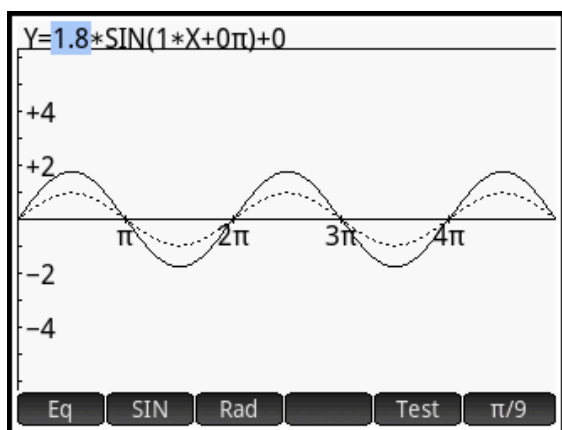


The **π/9** or **20°** button at the far right of the menu determines the increment by which the graph moves with each press of a cursor key. By default, the increment is set at  $\pi/9$  or  $20^\circ$ .

## Equation mode

Tap **Graph** to switch to equation mode. In equation mode, you use the cursor keys to move between parameters in the equation and change their values. You can then observe the effect on the graph displayed. Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to decrease or increase the value of the selected parameter. Press  $\rightarrow$  or  $\leftarrow$  to select another parameter.



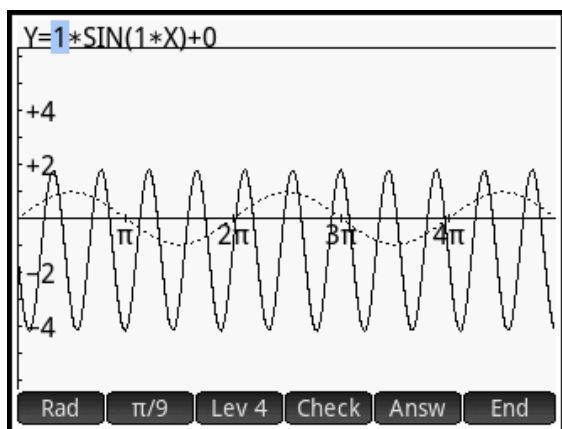


You can switch back to graph mode by tapping **Eq**.

## Test mode

Tap **Test** to enter test mode. In test mode you test your skill at matching an equation to the graph shown. Test mode is like equation mode in that you use the cursor keys to select and change the value of one or more parameters in the equation. The goal is to try to match the graph that is shown.

The app displays the graph of a randomly chosen sinusoidal function. Tap a Level button—**Lev 1**, **Lev 2** and so on—to choose between one of five types of sinusoidal equations.




Now press the cursor keys to select each parameter and set its value. When you are ready, tap **Check** to see if you have correctly matched your equation to the given graph.

Tap **Answ** to see the correct answer and tap **Test** to exit Test mode.

## 22 Functions and commands

Many mathematical functions are available from the calculator's keyboard. These are described in "Keyboard functions" on page 101. Other functions and commands are collected together in the Toolbox menus

(). There are five Toolbox menus:

### Math

A collection of non-symbolic mathematical functions (see [Math menu on page 314](#))

### CAS

A collection of symbolic mathematical functions (see [CAS menu on page 325](#))

### App

A collection of app functions that can be called from elsewhere in the calculator, such as Home view, CAS view, the Spreadsheet app, and in a program (see [App menu on page 346](#))

Note that the Geometry app functions can be called from elsewhere in the calculator, but they are designed to be used in the Geometry app. For that reason, the Geometry functions are not described in this chapter. They are described in the Geometry chapter.

### User

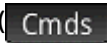

The functions that you have created (see [Creating your own functions on page 416](#)) and the programs you have created that contain functions that have been exported.

### Catlg


All the functions and commands:

- on the **Math** menu
- on the **CAS** menu
- used in the Geometry app
- used in programming
- used in the Matrix Editor
- used in the List Editor
- and some additional functions and commands

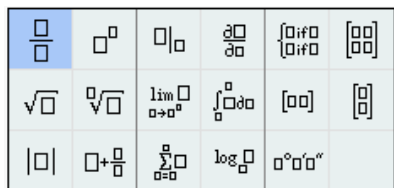
See [Ctlg menu on page 374](#).

Although the Catlg menu includes all the programming commands, the Commands menu () in the Program Editor contains all the programming commands grouped by category. It also contains the Template menu () , which contains the common programming structures.



**NOTE:** Some functions can be chosen from the math template (displayed by pressing ).

You can also create your own functions. See [Creating your own functions on page 416](#).



### Setting the form of menu items

You can choose to have entries on the Math and CAS menus presented either by their descriptive name or their command name. (The entries on the Catlg menu are always presented by their command name.)

| Descriptive name | Command name |
|------------------|--------------|
| Factor List      | ifactors     |
| Complex Zeros    | cZeros       |
| Groebner Basis   | gbasis       |
| Factor by Degree | factor_xn    |
| Find Roots       | proot        |

The default menu presentation mode is to provide the descriptive names for the Math and CAS functions. If you prefer the functions to be presented by their command name, deselect the **Menu Display** option on the second page of the Home Settings screen.

### Abbreviations used in this chapter

In describing the syntax of functions and commands, the following abbreviations and conventions are used:

Eqn: an equation

Expr: a mathematical expression

Fnc: a function

Frac: a fraction

Intgr: an integer

Obj: signifies that objects of more than one type are allowable here

Poly: a polynomial

RatFrac: a rational fraction

Val: a real value


Var: a variable






Parameters that are optional are given in square brackets, as in `NORMAL_ICDF([μ, σ, ]p)`.

For ease of reading, commas are used to separate parameters, but these are only necessary to separate parameters. Thus a single-parameter command needs no comma after the parameter even if, in the syntax



shown below, there is a comma between it and an optional parameter. An example is the syntax `zeros (Expr, [Var])`. The comma is needed only if you are specifying the optional parameter `Var`.

## Keyboard functions

The most frequently used functions are available directly from the keyboard. Many of the keyboard functions also accept complex numbers as arguments. Enter the keys and inputs shown below and press  to evaluate the expression.

 **NOTE:** In the examples below, shifted functions are represented by the actual keys to be pressed, with the function name shown in parentheses. For example,   (ASIN) means that to make an arc sine calculation (ASIN), you press  .

The examples below show the results you would get in Home view. If you are in the CAS, the results are given in simplified symbolic format. For example:

  320 returns 17.88854382 in Home view, and  $8\sqrt{5}$  in the CAS.



Add, subtract, multiply, divide. Also accepts complex numbers, lists, and matrices.

$value1 + value2$ , etc



Natural logarithm. Also accepts complex numbers.

$LN(value)$

Example:

$LN(1)$  returns 0



Natural exponential. Also accepts complex numbers.

$e^{value}$

Example:

$e^5$  returns 148.413159103

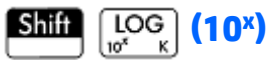


Common logarithm. Also accepts complex numbers.

$LOG(value)$

Example:

$\text{LOG}(100)$  returns 2



Common exponential (antilogarithm). Also accepts complex numbers.

$\text{ALOG}(\text{value})$

Example:

$\text{ALOG}(3)$  returns 1000



$\text{SIN}(\text{value})$

$\text{COS}(\text{value})$

$\text{TAN}(\text{value})$

Example:

$\text{TAN}(45)$  returns 1 (degrees mode)



Arc sine:  $\sin^{-1}x$ . Output range is from  $-90^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  or  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$ . Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.

$\text{ASIN}(\text{value})$

Example:

$\text{ASIN}(1)$  returns 90 (degrees mode)



Arc cosine:  $\cos^{-1}x$ . Output range is from  $0^\circ$  to  $180^\circ$  or 0 to  $\pi$ . Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers. Output will be complex for values outside the normal cosine domain of  $-1 \leq x \leq 1$ .

$\text{ACOS}(\text{value})$

Example:

$\text{ACOS}(1)$  returns 0 (degrees mode)



Arc tangent:  $\tan^{-1}x$ . Output range is from  $-90^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  or  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$ . Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.

$\text{ATAN}(\text{value})$

Example:

ATAN (1) returns 45 (degrees mode)



Square. Also accepts complex numbers.

$value^2$

Example:

$18^2$  returns 324



Square root. Also accepts complex numbers.

$\sqrt{value}$

Example:

$\sqrt{320}$  returns 17.88854382



x raised to the power of y. Also accepts complex numbers.

$value^{power}$

Example:

$2^8$  returns 256



The nth root of x.

$root\sqrt{value}$

Example:

$3\sqrt{8}$  returns 2



Reciprocal.

$value^{-1}$

Example:

$3^{-1}$  returns .333333333333

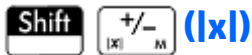


Negation. Also accepts complex numbers.

$-value$

Example:

$-(1+2*i)$  returns  $-1-2*i$



Absolute value.

|value|

|x+y\*i|

|matrix|

For a complex number, |x+y\*i| returns  $\sqrt{x^2+y^2}$ . For a matrix, |matrix| returns the Frobenius norm of the matrix.

Example:


|-1| returns 1



|(1,2)| returns 2.2360679775



Decimal to fraction conversion. In Home view, toggles the last entry in Home view between decimal, fraction, and mixed number forms. If a result from the History is selected, then it toggles the selection through these forms. Also works with lists and matrices. In CAS view, it only toggles between decimal and fractional equivalents, and adds them as new entries to the History.

Example:



In Home view, with 2.4 as the last entry in History or selected in History, press  to see 12/5; press



 again to see 2+2/5; press  again to return to 2.4.



Decimal to hexagesimal conversion. In Home view, toggles the last entry in Home view between decimal and hexagesimal forms. If a result from the History is selected, then it toggles the selection through these forms. Also works with lists and matrices. In CAS view, it adds them as new entries to the History.

Example:

In Home view, with 2.4 as the last entry in History or selected in History, press   to see

2°24'0"; press   again to return to 2.4.



The imaginary unit i.


Inserts the imaginary unit i.



The constant  $\pi$ .

Inserts the transcendental constant  $\pi$ .

## Math menu

Press  to open the Toolbox menus (one of which is the Math menu). The functions and commands available on the Math menu are listed as they are categorized on the menu.

## Numbers

### Ceiling

Smallest integer greater than or equal to value.

`CEILING(value)`

Examples:

`CEILING(3.2)` returns 4

`CEILING(-3.2)` returns -3

### Floor

Greatest integer less than or equal to value.

`FLOOR(value)`

Examples:

`FLOOR(3.2)` returns 3

`FLOOR(-3.2)` returns -4

### IP

Integer part.

`IP(value)`

Example:

`IP(23.2)` returns 23

### FP

Fractional part.

`FP(value)`

Example:

`FP(23.2)` returns .2



## Round

Rounds value to decimal places. Also accepts complex numbers.

`ROUND(value, places)`

`ROUND` can also round to a number of significant digits if places is a negative integer (as shown in the second example below).

Examples:

`ROUND(7.8676, 2)` returns 7.87

`ROUND(0.0036757, -3)` returns 0.00368

## Truncate

Truncates value to decimal places. Also accepts complex numbers.

`TRUNCATE(value, places)`

Examples:

`TRUNCATE(2.3678, 2)` returns 2.36

`TRUNCATE(0.0036757, -3)` returns 0.00367

## Mantissa

Mantissa—that is, the significant digits—of value, where value is a floating-point number.

`MANT(value)`

Example:

`MANT(21.2E34)` returns 2.12

## Exponent

Exponent of value. That is, the integer component of the power of 10 that generates value.

`XPON(value)`

Example:

`XPON(123456)` returns 5 (since  $105.0915... \times 10^5$  equals 123456)

## Arithmetic



### Maximum



Maximum. The greater of two values.

`MAX(value1, value2)`

Example:

`MAX(8/3, 11/4)` returns 2.75

Note that in Home view a non-integer result is given as a decimal fraction. If you want to see the result as a common fraction, press  . This key cycles through decimal, fraction, and mixed number

representations. Or, if you prefer, press . This opens the computer algebra system. If you want to return to Home view to make further calculations, press .

## Minimum

**Minimum.** Returns the least of the values given, or the least value of a list.

`MIN(value1, value2)`

**Example:**

`MIN(210, 25)` returns 25

## Modulus

**Modulo.** The remainder of value1/value2.

`value1 MOD value2`

**Example:**

`74 MOD 5` returns 4

## Find Root

**Function root-finder** (like the Solve app). Finds the value for the given variable at which expression most nearly evaluates to zero. Uses guess as initial estimate.

`FNROOT(expression, variable, guess)`

**Example:**

`FNROOT((A*9.8/600)-1, A, 1)` returns 61.2244897959.

## Percentage

**x percent of y;** that is,  $x/100*y$ .

`%(x, y)`

**Example:**

`%(20, 50)` returns 10

## Arithmetic – Complex

### Argument

**Argument.** Finds the angle defined by a complex number. Inputs and outputs use the current angle format set in Home modes.

`ARG(x+y*i)`

**Example:**

`ARG(3+3*i)` returns 45 (degrees mode)

## Conjugate

Complex conjugate. Conjugation is the negation (sign reversal) of the imaginary part of a complex number.

`CONJ(x+y*i)`

Example:

`CONJ(3+4*i)` returns `(3-4*i)`

## Real Part

Real part x, of a complex number,  $(x+y*i)$ .

`RE(x+y*i)`

Example:

`RE(3+4*i)` returns 3

## Imaginary Part

Imaginary part, y, of a complex number,  $(x+y*i)$ .

`IM(x+y*i)`

Example:

`IM(3+4*i)` returns 4

## Unit Vector

Sign of value. If positive, the result is 1. If negative,  $-1$ . If zero, result is zero. For a complex number, this is the unit vector in the direction of the number.

`SIGN(value)`

`SIGN((x,y))`

Examples:

`SIGN(POLYEVAL([1,2,-25,-26,2],-2))` returns  $-1$

`SIGN((3,4))` returns  $(.6+.8i)$

## Arithmetic – Exponential

### ALOG

Antilogarithm (exponential).

`ALOG(value)`

### EXPM1

Exponential minus 1:  $e^x-1$ .

`EXPM1(value)`

### LNP1

Natural log plus 1:  $\ln(x+1)$ .

`LNP1 (value)`

## Trigonometry

The trigonometry functions can also take complex numbers as arguments. For SIN, COS, TAN, ASIN, ACOS, and ATAN, see [Keyboard functions on page 310](#).

### CSC

Cosecant:  $1/\sin x$ .

`CSC (value)`

### ACSC

Arc cosecant.

`ACSC (value)`

### SEC

Secant:  $1/\cos x$ .

`SEC (value)`

### ASEC

Arc secant.

`ASEC (value)`

### COT

Cotangent:  $\cos x / \sin x$ .

`COT (value)`

### ACOT

Arc cotangent.

`ACOT (value)`

## Hyperbolic

The hyperbolic trigonometry functions can also take complex numbers as arguments.

### SINH

Hyperbolic sine.

`SINH (value)`

### ASINH

Inverse hyperbolic sine:  $\sinh^{-1}x$ .

`ASINH (value)`

## COSH

Hyperbolic cosine

`COSH (value)`

## ACOSH

Inverse hyperbolic cosine:  $\cosh^{-1}x$ .

`ACOSH (value)`

## TANH

Hyperbolic tangent.

`TANH (value)`

## ATANH

Inverse hyperbolic tangent:  $\tanh^{-1}x$ .

`ATANH (value)`

## Probability

### Factorial

Factorial of a positive integer. For non-integers,  $x! = \Gamma(x + 1)$ . This calculates the gamma function.

`value!`

Example:

`5!` returns 120

### Combination

The number of combinations (without regard to order) of  $n$  things taken  $r$  at a time.

`COMB(n, r)`

Example: Suppose you want to know how many ways five things can be combined two at a time.

`COMB(5, 2)` returns 10

### Permutation

Number of permutations (with regard to order) of  $n$  things taken  $r$  at a time:  $n!/(n-r)!$ .

`PERM(n, r)`

Example: Suppose you want to know how many permutations there are for five things taken two at a time.

`PERM(5, 2)` returns 20

## Probability – Random

### Number

Random number. With no argument, this function returns a random number between zero and one. With one argument  $a$ , it returns a random number between 0 and  $a$ . With two arguments,  $a$ , and  $b$ , returns a random number between  $a$  and  $b$ . With three arguments,  $n$ ,  $a$ , and  $b$ , returns  $n$  random number between  $a$  and  $b$ .

`RANDOM`

`RANDOM(a)`

`RANDOM(a, b)`

`RANDOM(n, a, b)`

### Integer

Random integer. With no argument, this function returns either 0 or 1 randomly. With one integer argument  $a$ , it returns a random integer between 0 and  $a$ . With two arguments,  $a$ , and  $b$ , returns a random integer between  $a$  and  $b$ . With three integer arguments,  $n$ ,  $a$ , and  $b$ , returns  $n$  random integers between  $a$  and  $b$ .

`RANDINT`

`RANDINT(a)`

`RANDINT(a, b)`

`RANDINT(n, a, b)`

## Normal

**Random normal.** Generates a random number from a normal distribution.

`RANDNORM ( $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ )`

**Example:**

`RANDNORM (0, 1)` returns a random number from the standard Normal distribution.

## Seed

Sets the seed value on which the random functions operate. By specifying the same seed value on two or more calculators, you ensure that the same random numbers appear on each calculator when the random functions are executed.

`RANDSEED (value)`

## Probability – Density

### Normal

**Normal probability density function.** Computes the probability density at value  $x$ , given the mean,  $\mu$ , and standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , of a normal distribution. If only one argument is supplied, it is taken as  $x$ , and the assumption is that  $\mu=0$  and  $\sigma=1$ .

`NORMALD ( [ $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ , ]  $x$ )`

**Example:**

`NORMALD (0.5)` and `NORMALD (0, 1, 0.5)` both return 0.352065326764.

### T

**Student's t probability density function.** Computes the probability density of the Student's t-distribution at  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

`STUDENT (n, x)`

**Example:**

`STUDENT (3, 5.2)` returns 0.00366574413491.

### $\chi^2$

**$\chi^2$  probability density function.** Computes the probability density of the  $\chi^2$  distribution at  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

`CHISQUARE (n, x)`

**Example:**

`CHISQUARE (2, 3.2)` returns 0.100948258997.

### F

**Fisher (or Fisher–Snedecor) probability density function.** Computes the probability density at the value  $x$ , given numerator  $n$  and denominator  $d$  degrees of freedom.

`FISHER (n, d, x)`

**Example:**

FISHER(5, 5, 2) returns 0.158080231095.

## Binomial

Binomial probability density function. Computes the probability of  $k$  successes out of  $n$  trials, each with a probability of success of  $p$ . Returns  $\text{Comb}(n,k)$  if there is no third argument. Note that  $n$  and  $k$  are integers with  $k \leq n$ .

`BINOMIAL(n, k, p)`

Example: Suppose you want to know the probability that just 6 heads would appear during 20 tosses of a fair coin.

`BINOMIAL(20, 6, 0.5)` returns 0.0369644165039.

## Poisson

Poisson probability mass function. Computes the probability of  $k$  occurrences of an event during a future interval given  $\mu$ , the mean of the occurrences of that event during that interval in the past. For this function,  $k$  is a non-negative integer and  $\mu$  is a real number.

`POISSON( $\mu$ , k)`

Example: Suppose that on average you get 20 emails a day. What is the probability that tomorrow you will get 15?

`POISSON(20, 15)` returns 0.0516488535318.

## Probability – Cumulative

### Normal

Cumulative normal distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the normal probability density function for the value  $x$ , given the mean,  $\mu$ , and standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , of a normal distribution. If only one argument is supplied, it is taken as  $x$ , and the assumption is that  $\mu=0$  and  $\sigma=1$ .

`NORMALD_CDF([ $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ , ] $x$ )`

Example:

`NORMALD_CDF(0, 1, 2)` returns 0.977249868052.

### T

Cumulative Student's  $t$  distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the Student's  $t$ -probability density function at  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

`STUDENT_CDF(n, x)`

Example:

`STUDENT_CDF(3, -3.2)` returns 0.0246659214814.

### $\chi^2$

Cumulative  $\chi^2$  distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the  $\chi^2$  probability density function for the value  $X$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

`CHISQUARE_CDF(n, k)`

Example:



`CHISQUARE_CDF(2, 6.3)` returns 0.957147873133.

## F

**Cumulative Fisher distribution function.** Returns the lower-tail probability of the Fisher probability density function for the value  $x$ , given numerator  $n$  and denominator  $d$  degrees of freedom.

`FISHER_CDF(n, d, x)`

**Example:**

`FISHER_CDF(5, 5, 2)` returns 0.76748868087.

## Binomial

**Cumulative binomial distribution function.** Returns the probability of  $k$  or fewer successes out of  $n$  trials, with a probability of success,  $p$  for each trial. Note that  $n$  and  $k$  are integers with  $k \leq n$ .

`BINOMIAL_CDF(n, p, k)`

**Example:** Suppose you want to know the probability that during 20 tosses of a fair coin you will get either 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 heads.

`BINOMIAL_CDF(20, 0.5, 6)` returns 0.05765914917.

## Poisson

**Cumulative Poisson distribution function.** Returns the probability  $x$  or fewer occurrences of an event in a given time interval, given expected occurrences.

`POISSON_CDF( , x)`

**Example:**

`POISSON_CDF(4, 2)` returns 0.238103305554.

## Probability – Inverse

### Normal

**Inverse cumulative normal distribution function.** Returns the cumulative normal distribution value associated with the lower-tail probability,  $p$ , given the mean,  $\mu$ , and standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , of a normal distribution. If only one argument is supplied, it is taken as  $p$ , and the assumption is that  $\mu=0$  and  $\sigma=1$ .

`NORMALD_ICDF([ $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ , ] $p$ )`

**Example:**

`NORMALD_ICDF(0, 1, 0.841344746069)` returns 1.

## T

**Inverse cumulative Student's  $t$  distribution function.** Returns the value  $x$  such that the Student's- $t$  lower-tail probability of  $x$ , with  $n$  degrees of freedom, is  $p$ .

`STUDENT_ICDF(n, p)`

**Example:**

`STUDENT_ICDF(3, 0.0246659214814)` returns -3.2.

## $\chi^2$

Inverse cumulative  $\chi^2$  distribution function. Returns the value  $\chi$  such that the  $\chi^2$  lower-tail probability of  $\chi$ , with  $n$  degrees of freedom, is  $p$ .

```
CHISQUARE_ICDF(n, p)
```

Example:

```
CHISQUARE_ICDF(2, 0.957147873133) returns 6.3.
```

## F

Inverse cumulative Fisher distribution function. Returns the value  $x$  such that the Fisher lower-tail probability of  $x$ , with numerator  $n$  and denominator  $d$  degrees of freedom, is  $p$ .

```
FISHER_ICDF(n, d, p)
```

Example:

```
FISHER_ICDF(5, 5, 0.76748868087) returns 2.
```

## Binomial

Inverse cumulative binomial distribution function. Returns the number of successes,  $k$ , out of  $n$  trials, each with a probability of  $p$ , such that the probability of  $k$  or fewer successes is  $q$ .

```
BINOMIAL_ICDF(n, p, q)
```

Example:

```
BINOMIAL_ICDF(20, 0.5, 0.6) returns 11.
```

## Poisson

Inverse cumulative Poisson distribution function. Returns the value  $x$  such that the probability of  $x$  or fewer occurrences of an event, with  $\mu$  expected (or mean) occurrences of the event in the interval, is  $p$ .

```
POISSON_ICDF( , p)
```

Example:

```
POISSON_ICDF(4, 0.238103305554) returns 3.
```

## List

These functions work on data in a list. For more information, see the Lists chapter of the *Prime Calculator User Guide*.

## Matrix

These functions work on matrix data stored in matrix variables. For more information, see the Matrices chapter of the *Prime Calculator User Guide*.

## Special

### Beta

Returns the value of the beta function (B) for two numbers  $a$  and  $b$

```
Beta(a, b)
```

## Gamma

Returns the value of the gamma function ( $\Gamma$ ) for a number  $a$ .

`Gamma (a)`

## Psi

Returns the value of the  $n$ th derivative of the digamma function at  $x=a$ , where the digamma function is the first derivative of  $\ln(\Gamma(x))$ .

`Psi (a,n)`

## Zeta

Returns the value of the zeta function ( $Z$ ) for a real  $x$ .

`Zeta (x)`

## erf

Returns the floating point value of the error function at  $x=a$ .

`erf (a)`

## erfc

Returns the value of the complementary error function at  $x=a$ .

`erfc (a)`

## Ei

Returns the exponential integral of an expression.

`Ei (Expr)`

## Si

Returns the sine integral of an expression.


`Si (Expr)`

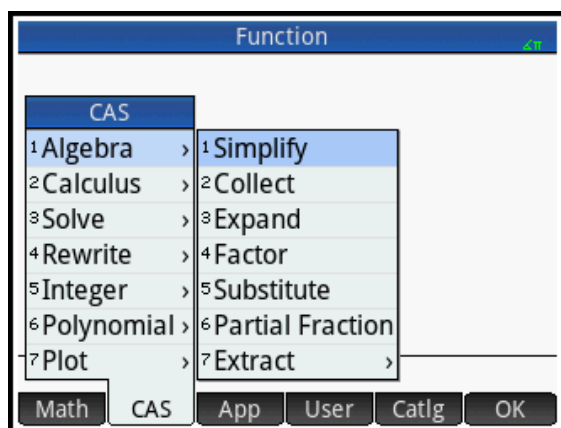
## Ci

Returns the cosine integral of an expression.

`Ci (Expr)`

## CAS menu

Press  to open the Toolbox menus (one of which is the CAS menu). The functions on the CAS menu are those most commonly used. Many more functions are available. See [Ctlg menu on page 374](#). Note that the Geometry functions appear on the App menu.



The result of a CAS command may vary depending on the CAS settings. The examples in this chapter assume the default CAS settings unless otherwise noted.

## Algebra

### Simplify

Returns an expression simplified.

```
simplify(Expr)
```

Example:

```
simplify(4*atan(1/5)-atan(1/239)) yields (1/4)*pi
```

### Collect

Collects like terms in a polynomial expression (or in a list of polynomial expressions). Factorizes the results, depending on the CAS settings.

```
collect(Poly) or collect({Poly1, Poly2, ..., Polyn})
```

Examples:

```
collect(x+2*x+1-4) returns 3*x-3
```

```
collect(x^2-9*x+5*x+3+1) returns (x-2)^2
```

### Expand

Returns an expression expanded.

```
expand(Expr)
```

Example:

```
expand((x+y)*(z+1)) gives y*z+x*z+y+x
```

### Factor

Returns a polynomial factorized.

```
factor(Poly)
```

Example:

```
factor(x^4-1) gives (x-1)*(x+1)*(x^2+1)
```

## Substitute

Substitutes a value for a variable in an expression.

Syntax: `subst(Expr, Var=value)`

Example:

`subst(x/(4-x^2), x=3)` returns  $-3/5$

## Partial Fraction

Performs partial fraction decomposition on a fraction.

`partfrac(RatFrac or Opt)`

Example:

`partfrac(x/(4-x^2))` returns  $(-1/2)/(x-2) - (1/2)/(x+2)$

## Algebra – Extract

### Numerator

Simplified Numerator. For the integers a and b, returns the numerator of the fraction a/b after simplification.

`numer(a/b)`

Example:

`numer(10/12)` returns 5

### Denominator

Simplified Denominator. For the integers a and b, returns the denominator of the fraction a/b after simplification.

`denom(a/b)`

Example:

`denom(10/12)` returns 6

### Left Side

Returns the left side of an equation or the left end of an interval.

`left(Expr1=Expr2) or left(Real1..Real2)`

Example:

`left(x^2-1=2*x+3)` returns  $x^2-1$

### Right Side

Returns the right side of an equation or the right end of an interval.

`right(Expr1=Expr2) or right(Real1..Real2)`

Example:

`right(x^2-1=2*x+3)` returns  $2*x+3$

## Calculus

### Differentiate

With one expression as argument, returns derivative of the expression with respect to  $x$ . With one expression and one variable as arguments, returns the derivative or partial derivative of the expression with respect to the variable. With one expression and more than one variable as arguments, returns the derivative of the expression with respect to the variables in the second argument. These arguments can be followed by  $k$  ( $k$  is an integer) to indicate the number of times the expression should be derived with respect to the variable. For example, `diff(exp(x*y),x$3,y$2,z)` is the same as `diff(exp(x*y),x,x,x,y,y,z)`.

```
diff(Expr, [var])
```

or

```
diff(Expr, var1$k1, var2$k2, ...)
```

Example:

```
diff(x^3-x) gives 3*x^2-1
```

### Integrate

Returns the indefinite integral of an expression. With one expression as argument, returns the indefinite integral with respect to  $x$ . With the optional second, third and fourth arguments you can specify the variable of integration and the bounds for a definite integral.

```
int(Expr, [Var(x)], [Real(a)], [Real(b)])
```

Example:

```
int(1/x) gives ln(abs(x))
```

### Limit

Returns the limit of an expression when the variable approaches a limit point  $a$  or  $\pm$  infinity. With the optional fourth argument you can specify whether it is the limit from below, above or bidirectional ( $-1$  for limit from below,  $+1$  for limit from above, and  $0$  for bidirectional limit). If the fourth argument is not provided, the limit returned is bidirectional. The limit function can return  $\pm\infty$ , which refers to complex infinity, an infinite number in the complex plane whose argument is unknown. In the context of a limit, complex infinity is usually construed as meaning the limit is undefined.

```
limit(Expr, Var, Val, [Dir(1, 0, -1)])
```

Example:

```
limit((n*tan(x)-tan(n*x))/(sin(n*x)-n*sin(x)), x, 0) returns 2
```

For example, `lim(1/x, x, 0)` returns  $\pm\infty$ ; this is mathematically correct and in this case indicates the limit is undefined.

### Series

Returns the series expansion of an expression in the vicinity of a given equality variable. With the optional third and fourth arguments you can specify the order and direction of the series expansion. If no order is specified the series returned is fifth order. If no direction is specified, the series is bidirectional.

```
series(Expr, Equal(var=limit_point), [Order], [Dir(1, 0, -1)])
```

Example:

`series((x^4+x+2)/(x^2+1), x=0, 5)` gives  $2+x-2x^2-x^3+3x^4+x^5+x^6\text{order\_size}(x)$

## Summation

Returns the discrete sum of Expr with respect to the variable Var from Real1 to Real2. You can also use the summation template in the Template menu. With only the first two arguments, returns the discrete antiderivative of the expression with respect to the variable.

`sum(Expr, Var, Real1, Real2, [Step])`

Example:

`sum(n^2, n, 1, 5)` returns 55

## Calculus – Differential

### Curl

Returns the rotational curl of a vector field.  $\text{Curl}([A\ B\ C], [x\ y\ z])$  is defined to be  $[dC/dy - dB/dz\ dA/dz - dC/dx\ dB/dx - dA/dy]$ .

`curl([Expr1, Expr2, ..., ExprN], [Var1, Var2, ..., VarN])`

Example:

`curl([2*x*y, x*z, y*z], [x, y, z])` returns  $[z-x, 0, z-2*x]$

### Divergence

Returns the divergence of a vector field, defined by:

$\text{divergence}([A, B, C], [x, y, z]) = dA/dx + dB/dy + dC/dz$ .

`divergence([Expr1, Expr2, ..., ExprN], [Var1, Var2, ..., VarN])`

Example:

`divergence([x^2+y, x+z+y, z^3+x^2], [x, y, z])` gives  $2*x+3*z^2+1$

### Gradient

Returns the gradient of an expression. With a list of variables as second argument, returns the vector of partial derivatives.

`grad(Expr, LstVar)`

Example:

`grad(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z])` gives  $[2*2*x*y-z^3, 2*x^2, -x*3*z^2]$

### Hessian

Returns the Hessian matrix of an expression.

`hessian(Expr, LstVar)`

Example:

`hessian(2*x^2*y-x*z, [x, y, z])` gives  $[[4*y, 4*x, -1], [2*2*x, 0, 0], [-1, 0, 0]]$

## Calculus – Integral

### By Parts u

Performs integration by parts of the expression  $f(x)=u(x)*v'(x)$ , with  $f(x)$  as the first argument and  $u(x)$  (or 0) as the second argument. Specifically, returns a vector whose first element is  $u(x)*v(x)$  and whose second element is  $v(x)*u'(x)$ . With the optional third, fourth and fifth arguments you can specify a variable of integration and bounds of the integration. If no variable of integration is provided, it is taken as  $x$ .

```
ibpu(f(Var), u(Var), [Var], [Real1], [Real2])
```

Example:

```
ibpu(x*ln(x), x) returns [x*(x*ln(x)-x*ln(x)+x)]
```

### By Parts v

Performs integration by parts of the expression  $f(x)=u(x)*v'(x)$ , with  $f(x)$  as the first argument and  $v(x)$  (or 0) as the second argument. Specifically, returns a vector whose first element is  $u(x)*v(x)$  and whose second element is  $v(x)*u'(x)$ . With the optional third, fourth and fifth arguments you can specify a variable of integration and bounds of the integration. If no variable of integration is provided, it is taken as  $x$ .

```
ibpdv(f(Var), v(Var), [Var], [Real1], [Real2])
```

Example:

```
ibpdv(ln(x), x) gives x*ln(x)-x
```

### F(b)–F(a)

Returns  $F(b)-F(a)$ .

```
preval(Expr(F(var)), Real(a), Real(b), [Var])
```

Example:

```
preval(x^2-2, 2, 3) gives 5
```

## Calculus – Limits

### Riemann Sum

Returns an equivalent of the sum of  $\text{Expr}$  for  $\text{var2}$  from  $\text{var2}=1$  to  $\text{var2}=\text{var1}$  (in the neighborhood of  $n=+\infty$ ) when the sum is looked at as a Riemann sum associated with a continuous function defined on  $[0,1]$ .

```
sum_riemann(Expr, [Var1 Var2])
```

Example:

```
sum_riemann(1/(n+k), [n, k]) gives ln(2)
```

### Taylor

Returns the Taylor series expansion of an expression at a point or at infinity (by default, at  $x=0$  and with relative order=5).

```
taylor(Expr, [Var=Value], [Order])
```

Example:

```
taylor(sin(x)/x, x=0) returns 1-(1/6)*x^2+(1/120)*x^4+x^6*order_size(x)
```



## Taylor of Quotient

Returns the n-degree Taylor polynomial for the quotient of 2 polynomials.

```
divpc(Poly1, Poly2, Integer)
```

Example:

```
divpc(x^4+x+2, x^2+1, 5) returns the 5th-degree polynomial  $x^5+3x^4-x^3-2x^2+x+2$ 
```

## Calculus – Transform

### Laplace

Returns the Laplace transform of an expression.

```
laplace(Expr, [Var], [LapVar])
```

Example:

```
laplace(exp(x)*sin(x)) gives  $1/(x^2-2x+2)$ 
```

### Inverse Laplace

Returns the inverse Laplace transform of an expression.

```
ilaplace(Expr, [Var], [IlapVar])
```

Example:

```
ilaplace(1/(x^2+1)^2) returns  $((-x)\cos(x))/2+\sin(x)/2$ 
```

### FFT

With one argument (a vector), returns the discrete Fourier transform in R.

```
fft(Vect)
```

With two additional integer arguments a and p, returns the discrete Fourier transform in the field  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , with a as primitive nth root of 1 ( $n=\text{size}(\text{vector})$ ).

```
fft((Vector, a, p)
```

Example:

```
fft([1,2,3,4,0,0,0,0]) gives [10.0,-0.414213562373-7.24264068712*i,-2.0+2.0*i,  
2.41421356237-1.24264068712*i,-2.0,2.41421356237+1.24264068712*i,-2.0-2.0*i]
```

### Inverse FFT

Returns the inverse discrete Fourier transform.

```
ifft(Vector)
```

Example:

```
ifft([100.0,-52.2842712475+6*i,-8.0*i,4.28427124746-6*i,  
4.0,4.28427124746+6*i,8*i,-52.2842712475-6*i]) gives  
[0.99999999999,3.99999999999,10.0,20.0,25.0,24.0,16.0,-6.39843733552e-12]
```

## Solve

### Solve

Returns a list of the solutions (real and complex) to a polynomial equation or a set of polynomial equations.

```
solve(Eq, [Var]) or solve({Eq1, Eq2,...}, [Var])
```

Examples:

```
solve(x^2-3=1) returns {-2,2}
```

```
solve({x^2-3=1, x+2=0}, x) returns {-2}
```

### Zeros

With an expression as argument, returns the real zeros of the expression; that is, the solutions when the expression is set equal to zero.

With a list of expressions as argument, returns the matrix where the rows are the real solutions of the system formed by setting each expression equal to zero.

```
zeros(Expr, [Var]) or zeros({Expr1, Expr2,...}, [{Var1, Var2,...}])
```

Example:

```
zeros(x^2-4) returns [-2 2]
```

### Complex Solve

Returns a list of the complex solutions to a polynomial equation or a set of polynomial equations.

```
cSolve(Eq, [Var]) or cSolve({Eq1, Eq2,...}, [Var])
```

Example:

```
cSolve(x^4-1=0, x) returns {1 -1 -i i}
```

### Complex Zeros

With an expression as argument, returns a vector containing the complex zeros of the expression; that is, the solutions when the expression is set equal to zero.

With a list of expressions as argument, returns the matrix where the rows are the complex solutions of the system formed by setting each expression equal to zero.

```
cZeros(Expr, [Var]) or cZeros({Expr1, Expr2,...}, [{Var1, Var2,...}])
```

Example:

```
cZeros(x^4-1) returns [1 -1 -i i]
```

## Numerical Solve

Returns the numerical solution of an equation or a system of equations.

```
Solve(Eq,Var) or nSolve(Expr, Var=Guess)
```

Example:

```
nSolve(cos(x)=x, x=1.3) gives 0.739085133215
```

## Differential Equation

Returns the solution to a differential equation.

```
deSolve(Eq, [TimeVar], Var)
```

Example:

```
desolve(y''+y=0, y) returns G_0*cos(x)+G_1*sin(x)
```

## ODE Solve

Ordinary Differential Equation solver. Solves an ordinary differential equation given by Expr, with variables declared in VectrVar and initial conditions for those variables declared in VectrInit. For example, `odesolve(f(t,y),[t,y],[t0,y0],t1)` returns the approximate solution of  $y'=f(t,y)$  for the variables  $t$  and  $y$  with initial conditions  $t=t_0$  and  $y=y_0$ .

```
odesolve(Expr, VectVar, VectInitCond, FinalVal, [tstep=Val, curve])
```

Example:

```
odesolve(sin(t*y), [t, y], [0, 1], 2) returns [1.82241255674]
```

## Linear System

Given a vector of linear equations and a corresponding vector of variables, returns the solution to the system of linear equations.

```
linsolve([LinEq1, LinEq2,...], [Var1, Var2,...])
```

Example:

```
linsolve([x+y+z=1, x-y=2, 2*x-z=3], [x, y, z]) returns [3/2, -1/2, 0]
```

## Rewrite

### Incollect

Rewrites an expression with the logarithms collected. Applies  $\ln(a)+n*\ln(b) = \ln(a*b^n)$  for an integer  $n$ .

```
lncollect(Expr)
```

Example:

```
lncollect(ln(x)+2*ln(y)) returns ln(x*y^2)
```

### powexpand

Rewrites an expression containing a power that is a sum or product as a product of powers. Applies  $a^{(b+c)}=(a^b)*(a^c)$ .

```
powexpand(Expr)
```

Example:

`powexpand (2 ^ (x+y) )` yields  $(2^x)(2^y)$

## **texexpand**

Expands a transcendental expression.

`texexpand (Expr)`

Example:

`texexpand (sin (2*x) +exp (x+y) )` returns  $\exp(x)\exp(y) + 2\cos(x)\sin(x)$

## **Rewrite – Exp & Ln**

### **$e^{y \ln x} \rightarrow x^y$**

Returns an expression of the form  $e^{n \ln(x)}$  rewritten as a power of x. Applies  $e^{n \ln(x)} = x^n$ .

`exp2pow (Expr)`

Example:

`exp2pow (exp (3*ln (x) ) )` gives  $x^3$

### **$x^y \rightarrow e^{y \ln x}$**

Returns an expression with powers rewritten as an exponential. Essentially the inverse of `exp2pow`.

`pow2exp (Expr)`

Example:

`pow2exp (a^b)` gives  $\exp(b \ln(a))$

## **exp2trig**

Returns an expression with complex exponentials rewritten in terms of sine and cosine.

`exp2trig (Expr)`

Example:

`exp2trig (exp (i*x) )` gives  $\cos(x) + (i)\sin(x)$

## **expexpand**

Returns an expression with exponentials in expanded form.

`expexpand (Expr)`

Example:

`expexpand (exp (3*x) )` gives  $\exp(x)^3$

## Rewrite – Sine

### asin $x \rightarrow$ acos $x$

Returns an expression with asin( $x$ ) rewritten as  $\pi/2 - \text{acos}(x)$ .

`asin2acos (Expr)`

Example:

`asin2acos (acos (x) + asin (x) )` returns  $\pi/2$

### asin $x \rightarrow$ atan $x$

Returns an expression with asin( $x$ ) rewritten as  $\text{atan}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)$ :

`asin2atan (Expr)`

Example:

`asin2atan (2*asin (x) )` returns  $2 \cdot \text{atan}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)$

### sin $x \rightarrow$ cos $x$ \*tan $x$

Returns an expression with sin( $x$ ) rewritten as cos( $x$ )\*tan( $x$ ).

`sin2costan (Expr)`

Example:

`sin2costan (sin (x) )` gives tan( $x$ )\*cos( $x$ )

## Rewrite – Cosine

### acos $x \rightarrow$ asin $x$

Returns an expression with acos( $x$ ) rewritten as  $\pi/2 - \text{asin}(x)$ .

`acos2asin (Expr)`

Example:

`acos2asin (acos (x) + asin (x) )` returns  $\pi/2$

### acos $x \rightarrow$ atan $x$

Returns an expression with acos( $x$ ) rewritten as  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \text{atan}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)$ :

`cos2atan (Expr)`

Example:

`acos2atan (2*acos (x) )` gives  $2 \cdot \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \text{atan}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)\right)$

### cos $x \rightarrow$ sin $x$ /tan $x$

Returns an expression with cos( $x$ ) rewritten as sin( $x$ )/tan( $x$ ).

`cos2sintan (Expr)`

Example:

`cos2sintan (cos (x))` gives  $\sin(x)/\tan(x)$

## Rewrite – Tangent

### atanx→asinx

Returns an expression with  $\operatorname{atan}(x)$  rewritten as  $\operatorname{asin}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)$ :

`atan2asin (Expr)`

Example:

`atan2asin (atan (2*x))` returns  $\operatorname{asin}\left(\frac{2 \cdot x}{\sqrt{1-(2 \cdot x)^2}}\right)$

### atanx→acosx

Returns an expression with  $\operatorname{atan}(x)$  rewritten as  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \operatorname{acos}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}\right)$ :

`atan2acos (Expr)`

### tanx→sinx/cosx

Returns an expression with  $\tan(x)$  rewritten as  $\sin(x)/\cos(x)$ .

`tan2sincos (Expr)`

Example:

`tan2sincos (tan (x))` gives  $\sin(x)/\cos(x)$

### halftan

Returns an expression with  $\sin(x)$ ,  $\cos(x)$  or  $\tan(x)$  rewritten as  $\tan(x/2)$ .

`halftan (Expr)`

Example:

`halftan (sin (x))` returns  $\frac{2 \cdot \tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)}{\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + 1}$

## Rewrite – Trig

### trigx→sinx

Returns an expression simplified using the formulas  $\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$  and  $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$ .  $\sin(x)$  is given precedence over  $\cos(x)$  and  $\tan(x)$  in the result.

`trigsin (Expr)`

Example:

`trigsin (cos (x) ^4 + sin (x) ^2)` returns  $\sin(x)^4 - \sin(x)^2 + 1$

### trigx→cosx

Returns an expression simplified using the formulas  $\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$  and  $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$ .  $\cos(x)$  is given precedence over  $\sin(x)$  and  $\tan(x)$  in the result.

`trigcos(Expr)`

Example:

`trigcos(sin(x)^4 + sin(x)^2)` returns  $\cos(x)^4 - 3 \cdot \cos(x)^2 + 2$

### trigx→tanx

Returns an expression simplified using the formulas  $\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$  and  $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$ .  $\tan(x)$  is given precedence over  $\sin(x)$  and  $\cos(x)$  in the result.

`trigtan(Expr)`

Example:

`trigtan(cos(x)^4 + sin(x)^2)` returns  $(\tan(x)^4 + \tan(x)^2 + 1)/(\tan(x)^4 + 2 \cdot \tan(x)^2 + 1)$

### atrig2ln

Returns an expression with inverse trigonometric functions rewritten using the natural logarithm function.

`trig2ln(Expr)`

Example:

`atrig2ln(atan(x))` returns  $\frac{i}{2} \cdot \ln\left(\frac{i+x}{i-x}\right)$

### tlin

Returns a trigonometric expression with the products and integer powers linearized.

`tlin(ExprTrig)`

Example:

`tlin(sin(x)^3)` gives  $\frac{3}{4} \cdot \sin(x) - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \sin(3 \cdot x)$

### tcollect

Returns a trigonometric expression linearized and with any sine and cosine terms of the same angle collected together.

`tcollect(Expr)`

Example:

`tcollect(sin(x) + cos(x))` returns  $\sqrt{2} \cdot \cos\left(x - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \pi\right)$

### trigexpand

Returns a trigonometric expression in expanded form.

`trigexpand(Expr)`

Example:

`trigexpand(sin(3*x))` gives  $(4*\cos(x)^2 - 1)*\sin(x)$

## trig2exp

Returns an expression with trigonometric functions rewritten as complex exponentials (without linearization).

`trig2exp(Expr)`

Example:

`trig2exp(sin(x))` returns

$$\frac{-i}{2} \cdot \left( \exp(i \cdot x) - \frac{1}{\exp(i \cdot x)} \right)$$

## Integer

### Divisors

Returns the list of divisors of an integer or a list of integers.

`idivis(Integer)` or `idivis({Intgr1, Intgr2,...})`

Example:

`idivis(12)` returns `[1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12]`

### Factors

Returns the prime factor decomposition of an integer.



**NOTE:** In some cases, `ifactor` may fail. In these cases, it will return the product of -1 and the opposite of the input. The -1 indicates that factorization has failed.

`ifactor(Integer)`

Example:

`ifactor(150)` returns `2*3*5^2`

### Factor List

Returns a vector containing the prime factors of an integer or a list of integers, with each factor followed by its multiplicity.

`ifactors(Integer)`

or

`ifactors({Intgr1, Intgr2,...})`

Example:

`ifactors(150)` returns `[2, 1, 3, 1, 5, 2]`

### GCD

Returns the greatest common divisor of two or more integers.



```
gcd(Intgr1, Intgr2,...)
```

**Example:**

```
gcd(32,120,636) returns 4
```

## LCM

Returns the least common multiple of two or more integers.

```
lcm(Intgr1, Intgr2,...)
```

**Example:**

```
lcm(6,4) returns 12
```

## Integer – Prime

### Test if Prime

Tests whether or not a given integer is a prime number.

```
isPrime(Integer)
```

**Example:**

```
isPrime(19999) returns false
```

### Nth Prime

Returns the nth prime number.

```
ithprime(Intg(n)) where n is between 1 and 200,000
```

**Example:**

```
ithprime(5) returns 11
```

### Next Prime

Returns the next prime or pseudo-prime after an integer.

```
nextprime(Integer)
```

**Example:**

```
nextprime(11) returns 13
```

### Previous Prime

Returns the prime or pseudo-prime number closest to but smaller than an integer.

```
prevprime(Integer)
```

**Example:**

```
prevprime(11) returns 7
```

## Euler

Compute's Euler's totient for an integer.

```
euler(Integer)
```

Example:

```
euler(6) returns 2
```

## Integer – Division

### Quotient

Returns the integer quotient of the Euclidean division of two integers.

```
iquo(Intgr1, Intgr2)
```

Example:

```
iquo(63, 23) returns 2
```

### Remainder

Returns the integer remainder from the Euclidean division of two integers.

```
irem(Intgr1, Intgr2)
```

Example:

```
irem(63, 23) returns 17
```

### $a^n \text{MOD } p$

For the three integers  $a$ ,  $n$ , and  $p$ , returns an modulo  $p$  in  $[0, p-1]$ .

```
powmod(a, n, p, [Expr], [Var])
```

Example:

```
powmod(5, 2, 13) returns 12
```

### Chinese Remainder

Integer Chinese Remainder Theorem for two equations. Takes two vectors of integers,  $[a \ p]$  and  $[b \ q]$ , and returns a vector of two integers,  $[r \ n]$  such that  $x \equiv r \pmod n$ . In this case,  $x$  is such that  $x \equiv a \pmod p$  and  $x \equiv b \pmod q$ ; also  $n=p*q$ .

```
ichinrem([a, p], [b, q])
```

Example:

```
ichinrem([2, 7], [3, 5]) returns [-12, 35]
```

## Polynomial

### Find Roots

Given a polynomial in  $x$  (or a vector containing the coefficients of a polynomial), returns a vector containing its roots.

```
proot(Poly) or proot(Vector)
```

Example:

```
proot([1, 0, -2]) returns [-1.41421356237, 1.41421356237]
```

## Coefficients

Given a polynomial in  $x$ , returns a vector containing the coefficients. If the polynomial is in a variable other than  $x$ , then declare the variable as the second argument. With an integer as the optional third argument, returns the coefficient of the polynomial whose degree matches the integer.

```
coeff(Poly, [Var], [Integer])
```

Example:

```
coeff(x^2-2) returns [1 0 -2]
```

```
coeff(y^2-2, y, 1) returns 0
```

## Divisors

Given a polynomial, returns a vector containing the divisors of the polynomial.

```
divis(Poly) or divis({Poly1, Poly2,...})
```

Example:

```
divis(x^2-1) returns [1 -1+x 1+x (-1+x)*(1+x)]
```

## Factor List

Returns a vector containing the prime factors of a polynomial or a list of polynomials, with each factor followed by its multiplicity.

```
factors(Poly) or factors({Poly1, Poly2,...})
```

Example:

```
factors(x^4-1) returns [x-1 1 x+1 1 x^2+1 1]
```

## GCD

Returns the greatest common divisor of two or more polynomials.

```
gcd(Poly1, Poly2...)
```

Example:

```
gcd(x^4-1, x^2-1) returns x^2-1
```

## LCM

Returns the least common multiple of two or more polynomials.

```
lcm(Poly1, Poly2,...)
```

Example:

```
lcm(x^2-2*x+1, x^3-1) gives (x-1)*(x^3-1)
```

## Polynomial – Create

### Poly to Coef

Given a polynomial, returns a vector containing the coefficients of the polynomial. With a variable as second argument, returns the coefficients of a polynomial with respect to the variable. With a list of variables as the second argument, returns the internal format of the polynomial.

`symb2poly(Expr, [Var])` or `symb2poly(Expr, {Var1, Var2, ...})`

Example:

`symb2poly(x*3+2.1)` returns `[3 2.1]`

## Coef to Poly

With one vector as argument, returns a polynomial in  $x$  with coefficients (in decreasing order) obtained from the argument vector. With a variable as second argument, returns a similar polynomial in that variable.

`poly2symb(Vector, [Var])`

Example:

`poly2symb([1, 2, 3], x)` returns  $(x+2)*x+3$

## Roots to Coef

Returns a vector containing the coefficients (in decreasing order) of the univariate polynomial whose roots are specified in the argument vector.

`pcoef(List)`

Example:

`pcoeff({1, 0, 0, 0, 1})` returns `[1 -2 1 0 0]`

## Roots to Poly

Takes as argument a vector. The vector contains each root or pole of a rational function. Each root or pole is followed by its order, with poles having negative order. Returns the rational function in  $x$  that has the roots and poles (with their orders) specified in the argument vector.

`fcoeff(Vector)` where `Vector` has the form `[Root1, Order1, Root2, Order2, ...]`

Example:

`fcoeff([1, 2, 0, 1, 3, -1])` returns  $(x-1)^2*x*(x-3)^{-1}$

## Random

Returns a vector of the coefficients of a polynomial of degree `Integer` and where the coefficients are random integers in the range  $-99$  through  $99$  with uniform distribution or in an interval specified by `Interval`. Use with `poly2symbol` to create a random polynomial in any variable.

`randpoly(Integer, Interval, [Dist])`, where `Interval` is of the form `Real1..Real2`.

Example:

`randpoly(t, 8, -1..1)` returns a vector of 9 random integers, all of them between  $-1$  and  $1$ .

## Minimum

With only a matrix as argument, returns the minimal polynomial in  $x$  of a matrix written as a list of its coefficients. With a matrix and a variable as arguments, returns the minimum polynomial of the matrix written in symbolic form with respect to the variable.

`pmin(Mtrx, [Var])`

Example:

`pmin([ [1,0], [0,1] ], x)` gives  $x-1$

## Polynomial – Algebra

### Quotient

Returns a vector containing the coefficients of the Euclidean quotient of two polynomials. The polynomials may be written as a list of coefficients or in symbolic form.

`quo(List1, List2, [Var])`

or

`quo(Poly1, Poly2, [Var])`

Example:

`quo({1, 2, 3, 4}, {-1, 2})` returns `[-1 -4 -11]`

### Remainder

Returns a vector containing the coefficients of the remainder of the Euclidean quotient of two polynomials. The polynomials may be written as a list of coefficients or in symbolic form.

`rem(List1, List2, [Var])`

or

`rem(Poly1, Poly2, [Var])`

Example:

`rem({1, 2, 3, 4}, {-1, 2})` returns `[26]`

### Degree

Returns the degree of a polynomial.

`degree(Poly)`

Example:

`degree(x^3+x)` gives 3

### Factor by Degree

For a given polynomial in  $x$  of degree  $n$ , factors out  $x^n$  and returns the resulting product.

`factor_xn(Poly)`

Example:

`factor_xn(x^4-1)` gives  $x^4(1-x^4)$

### Coef. GCD

Returns the greatest common divisor (GCD) of the coefficients of a polynomial.

`content(Poly, [Var])`

Example:

`content(2*x^2+10*x+6)` gives 2

## Zero Count

If  $a$  and  $b$  are real, this returns the number of sign changes in the specified polynomial in the interval  $[a,b]$ . If  $a$  or  $b$  are nonreal, it returns the number of complex roots in the rectangle bounded by  $a$  and  $b$ . If  $\text{Var}$  is omitted, it is assumed to be  $x$ .

```
sturmab(Poly[,Var],a,b)
```

Example:

```
sturmab(x^2*(x^3+2),-2,0) returns 1
```

```
sturmab(n^3-1,n,-2-i,5+3i) returns 3
```

## Chinese Remainder

Given two matrices whose two rows each contain the coefficients of polynomials, returns the Chinese remainder of the polynomials, also written as a matrix.

```
chinrem(Matrix1,Matrix2)
```

Example:

```
chinrem  $\left( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$  returns
```

```
[[2 2 1] [1 1 2 1 1]]
```

## Polynomial – Special

### Cyclotomic

Returns the list of coefficients of the cyclotomic polynomial of an integer.

```
cyclotomic(Integer)
```

Example:

```
cyclotomic(20) gives [1 0 -1 0 1 0 -1 0 1]
```

### Groebner Basis

Given a vector of polynomials and a vector of variables, returns the Groebner basis of the ideal spanned by the set of polynomials.

```
gbasis([Poly1 Poly2...], [Var1 Var2...])
```

Example:

```
gbasis([x^2-y^3,x+y^2],[x,y]) returns [y^4-y^3,x+y^2]
```

### Groebner Remainder

Given a polynomial and both a vector of polynomials and a vector of variables, returns the remainder of the division of the polynomial by the Groebner basis of the vector of polynomials.

```
greduce(Poly1, [Poly2 Poly3 ...], [Var1 Var2...])
```

Example:

```
greduce(x*y-1,[x^2-y^2,2*x*y-y^2,y^3],[x,y]) returns 1/2*y^2-1
```

## Hermite

Returns the Hermite polynomial of degree  $n$ , where  $n$  is an integer less than 1556.

`hermite(Integer)`

Example:

`hermite(3)` gives  $8x^3 - 12x$

## Lagrange

Given a vector of abscissas and a vector of ordinates, returns the Lagrange polynomial for the points specified in the two vectors. This function can also take a matrix as argument, with the first row containing the abscissas and the second row containing the ordinates.

`lagrange([X1 X2...], [Y1 Y2...])`

or

`lagrange( $\begin{bmatrix} X1 & X2 & \dots \\ Y1 & Y2 & \dots \end{bmatrix}$ )`

Example:

`lagrange([1, 3], [0, 1])` gives  $(x-1)/2$

## Laguerre

Given an integer  $n$ , returns the Laguerre polynomial of degree  $n$ .

`laguerre(Integer)`

Example:

`laguerre(4)` returns  $\frac{1}{24}a^4 + (-\frac{1}{6})a^3x + \frac{5}{12}a^3 + \frac{1}{4}a^2x^2 + (-\frac{3}{2})a^2x + \frac{35}{24}a^2 + (-\frac{1}{6})a^2x^3 + \frac{7}{4}a^2x^2 + (-\frac{13}{3})a^2x + \frac{25}{12}a + \frac{1}{24}x^4 + (-\frac{2}{3})x^3 + 3x^2 - 4x + 1$

## Legendre

Given an integer  $n$ , returns the Legendre polynomial of degree  $n$ .

`legendre(Integer)`

Example:

`legendre(4)` returns  $\frac{35}{8} \cdot x^4 + \frac{15}{4}x^2 + \frac{3}{8}$

## Chebyshev Tn

Given an integer  $n$ , returns the Tchebyshev polynomial (of the first kind) of degree  $n$ .

`tchebyshev1(Integer)`

Example:

`tchebyshev1(3)` gives  $4x^3 - 3x$

## Chebyshev Un

Given an integer  $n$ , returns the Tchebyshev polynomial (of the second kind) of degree  $n$ .

`tchebyshev2(Integer)`

Example:

`tchebyshev2(3)` gives  $8x^3-4x$

## Plot

### Function

Used to define a function graph in the Symbolic view of the Geometry app. Plots the graph of an expression written in terms of the independent variable  $x$ . Note that the variable is lowercase.

`plotfunc(Expr)`

Example:

`plotfunc(3*sin(x))` draws the graph of  $y=3\sin(x)$

### Contour

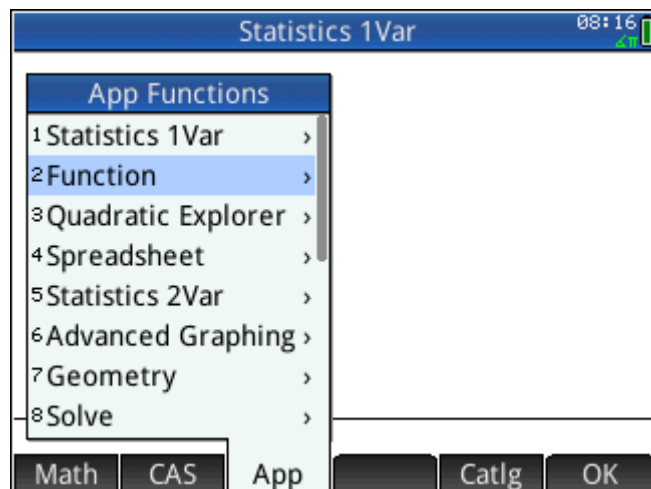
Used to define a contour graph in the Symbolic view of the Geometry app. Given an expression in  $x$  and  $y$ , as well as a list of variables and a list of values, plots the contour graph of the surface  $z=f(x,y)$ . Specifically, plots the contour lines  $z_1, z_2$ , etc. defined by the list of values.

Example:

`plotcontour(x^2+2*y^2-2, {x, y}, {2, 4, 6})` draws the three contour lines of  $z=x^2+2y^2-2$  for  $z=2, z=4$ , and  $z=6$ .

## App menu

Press D to open the Toolbox menus (one of which is the App menu). App functions are used in HP apps to perform common calculations. For example, in the Function app, the Plot view Fcn menu has a function called `SLOPE` that calculates the slope of a given function at a given point. The `SLOPE` function can also be used from the Home view or a program to give the same results. The app functions described in this section are grouped by app.





## Function app functions

The Function app functions provide the same functionality found in the Function app's Plot view under the FCN menu. All these operations work on functions. The functions may be expressions in X or the names of the Function app variables F0 through F9.

### AREA

Area under a curve or between curves. Finds the signed area under a function or between two functions. Finds the area under the function  $F_n$  or below  $F_n$  and above the function  $F_m$ , from lower X-value to upper X-value.

`AREA(Fn, [Fm, ] lower, upper)`

Example:

`AREA(-X, X2-2, -2, 1)` returns 4.5

### EXTREMUM

Extremum of a function. Finds the extremum (if one exists) of the function  $F_n$  that is closest to the X-value guess.

`EXTREMUM(Fn, guess)`

Example:

`EXTREMUM(X)2-X-2, 0` returns 0.5

### ISECT

Intersection of two functions. Finds the intersection (if one exists) of the two functions  $F_n$  and  $F_m$  that is closest to the Xvalue guess.

`ISECT(Fn, Fm, guess)`

Example:

`ISECT(X, 3-X, 2)` returns 1.5

### ROOT

Root of a function. Finds the root of the function  $F_n$  (if one exists) that is closest to the X-value guess.

`ROOT(Fn, guess)`

Example:

`ROOT(3-X)2, 2` returns 1.732...

### SLOPE

Slope of a function. Returns the slope of the function  $F_n$  at the X-value (if the function's derivative exists at that value).

`SLOPE(Fn, value)`

Example:

`SLOPE(3-X2, 2)` returns -4

## Solve app functions

The Solve app has a single function that solves a given equation or expression for one of its variables. En may be an equation or expression, or it may be the name of one of the Solve Symbolic variables E0–E9.

### SOLVE

Solves an equation for one of its variables. Solves the equation En for the variable var, using the value of guess as the initial value for the value of the variable var. If En is an expression, then the value of the variable var that makes the expression equal to zero is returned.

`SOLVE (En, var, guess)`




Example:

`SOLVE (X2 - X - 2, X, 3)` returns 2

This function also returns an integer that is indicative of the type of solution found, as follows:

- 0—an exact solution was found
- 1—an approximate solution was found
- 2—an extremum was found that is as close to a solution as possible
- 3—neither a solution, an approximation, nor an extremum was found

## Spreadsheet app functions

The spreadsheet app functions can be selected from the App Toolbox menu: press , tap  and select **Spreadsheet**. They can also be selected from the View menu () when the Spreadsheet app is open.

The syntax for many, but not all, the spreadsheet functions follows this pattern:

`functionName (input, [optional parameters])`

**Input** is the input list for the function. This can be a cell range reference, a simple list or anything that results in a list of values.

One useful optional parameter is **Configuration**. This is a string that controls which values are output. Leaving the parameter out produces the default output. The order of the values can also be controlled by the order that they appear in the string.

For example: `=STAT1 (A25:A37)` produces the following default output, based on the numerical values in cells A25 through A37.

However, if you just wanted to see the number of data points and the standard deviation, you would enter `=STAT1 (A25:A37, "h n σ")`. What the configuration string is indicating here is that row headings are required (h), and just the number of data-points (n) and the standard deviation (σ) will be displayed.

| Spreadsheet                                     |                            |           |   |   |   |
|---|----------------------------|-----------|---|---|---|
|   | A                          | B         | C | D | E |
| 1   | STAT1                      | A         |   |   |   |
| 2   | $\bar{x}$                  | 70        |   |   |   |
| 3   | $\Sigma X$                 | 910       |   |   |   |
| 4   | $\Sigma X^2$               | 81,900    |   |   |   |
| 5   | $sX$                       | 38.9444   |   |   |   |
| 6   | $sX^2$                     | 1,516.667 |   |   |   |
| 7   | $\sigma X$                 | 37.41657  |   |   |   |
| 8   | $\sigma X^2$               | 1,400     |   |   |   |
| 9   | $serrX$                    | 10.80123  |   |   |   |
| 10  | $\Sigma (X_i - \bar{x})^2$ | 18,200    |   |   |   |
| =STAT1(A25:A37)                                 |                            |           |   |   |   |
| <div> Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓ Show </div> |                            |           |   |   |   |

| Spreadsheet                                     |            |          |   |   |   |
|---|------------|----------|---|---|---|
|   | A          | B        | C | D | E |
| 1   | n          | 13       |   |   |   |
| 2   | $\sigma X$ | 37.41657 |   |   |   |
| 3   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 4   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 5   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 6   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 7   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 8   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 9   |            |          |   |   |   |
| 10  |            |          |   |   |   |
| "σX"  |            |          |   |   |   |
| <div> Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓ Show </div> |            |          |   |   |   |

## SUM

Calculates the sum of a range of numbers.

`SUM([input])`

For example, `SUM(B7:B23)` returns the sum of the numbers in the range B7 to B23. You can also specify a block of cells, as in `SUM(B7:C23)`.

An error is returned if a cell in the specified range contains a non-numeric object.

## AVERAGE

Calculates the arithmetic mean of a range of numbers.

`AVERAGE([input])`

For example, `AVERAGE(B7:B23)` returns the arithmetic mean of the numbers in the range B7 to B23. You can also specify a block of cells, as in `AVERAG(B7:C23)`.

An error is returned if a cell in the specified range contains a non-numeric object.

## AMORT

Amortization. Calculates the principal, interest, and balance of a loan over a specified period. Corresponds to pressing **Amort** in the Finance app.

`AMORT(Range, NbPmt, IPYR, PV, PMTV[, PPYR=12, CPYR=PPYR, GSize=PPYR, BEG=0, fix=current], "configuration")`

**Range:** the cell range where the results are to be placed. If only one cell is specified, then the range is automatically calculated starting from that cell.

**Configuration:** a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

h – show row headers

H – show column headers

S – show the start of the period

E – show the end of the period

P – show the principal paid this period

B – show the balance at the end of the period

I – show the interest paid this period

All the other input parameters (except `fix`) are Finance app Numeric view variables; see [Finance app functions on page 369](#) for details. Note that only the first four are required. `fix` is the number of decimal places to be used in the displayed results.

# STAT1

The STAT1 function provides a range of one-variable statistics. It can calculate all or any of  $\bar{x}$ ,  $\Sigma$ ,  $\Sigma^2$ ,  $s$ ,  $s^2$ ,  $\sigma$ ,  $\sigma^2$ ,  $serr$ ,  $\Sigma(x_i - \bar{x})^2$ ,  $n$ ,  $min$ ,  $q1$ ,  $med$ ,  $q3$ , and  $max$ .

`STAT1(Input range, [mode], [outlier removal Factor], ["configuration"])`

*Input range* is the data source (such as A1:D8).

*Mode* defines how to treat the input. The valid values are:

1 = Single data. Each column is treated as an independent dataset.

2 = Frequency data. Columns are used in pairs and the second column is treated as the frequency of appearance of the first column.

3 = Weight data. Columns are used in pairs and the second column is treated as the weight of the first column.

4 = One–Two data. Columns are used in pairs and the 2 columns are multiplied to generate a data point.

If more than one column is specified, they are each treated as a different input data set. If only one row is selected, it is treated as 1 data set. If two columns are selected, the mode defaults to frequency.

*Outlier Removal Factor:* This allows for the removal of any data point that is more than  $n$  times the standard deviation (where  $n$  is the outlier removal factor). By default this factor is set to 2.

*Configuration:* indicates which values you want to place in which row and if you want row or columns headers. Place the symbol for each value in the order that you want to see the values appear in the spreadsheet. The valid symbols are:

| H (Place column headers) |          |                           | h (Place row headers) |       |          |
|--------------------------|----------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------|----------|
| $\bar{x}$                | $\Sigma$ | $\Sigma^2$                | $s$                   | $s^2$ | $\sigma$ |
| $\sigma^2$               | $serr$   | $\Sigma(x_i - \bar{x})^2$ | $n$                   | $min$ | $q1$     |
| $med$                    | $q3$     | $max$                     |                       |       |          |

For example if you specify "h n  $\Sigma$  x", the first column will contain row headers, the first row will be the number of items in the input data, the second the sum of the items and the third the mean of the data. If you do not specify a configuration string, a default string will be used.

**Notes:**

The STAT1 f function only updates the content of the destination cells when the cell that contains the formula is calculated. This means that if the spreadsheet view contains at the same time results and inputs, but not the cell that contains the call to the STAT1 function, updating the data will not update the results as the cell that contains STAT1 is not recalculated (since it is not visible).

The format of cells that receive headers is changed to have `Show ""` set to false.

The STAT1 function will overwrite the content of destination cells, potentially erasing data.

**Examples:**

```
STAT1 (A25:A37)
```

```
STAT1 (A25:A37, "h n  $\times$   $\sigma$ ").
```

## REGRS

Attempts to fit the input data to a specified function (default is linear).

- Input range: specifies the data source; for example A1:D8. It must contain an even number of columns. Each pair will be treated as a distinct set of data points.
- model: specifies the model to be used for the regression:
  - 1  $y = sl \cdot x + int$
  - 2  $y = sl \cdot \ln(x) + int$
  - 3  $y = int \cdot \exp(sl \cdot x)$
  - 4  $y = int \cdot x^{sl}$
  - 5  $y = int \cdot sl^x$
  - 6  $y = sl/x + int$
  - 7  $y = L/(1 + a \cdot \exp(b \cdot x))$
  - 8  $y = a \cdot \sin(b \cdot x + c) + d$
  - 9  $y = cx^2 + bx + a$
  - 10  $y = dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$
  - 11  $y = ex^4 + dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$
- Configuration: a string which indicates which values you want to place in which row and if you want row and columns headers. Place each parameter in the order that you want to see them appear in the spreadsheet. (If you do not provide a configuration string, a default one will be provided.) The valid parameters are:
  - H (Place column headers)
  - h (Place row headers)
  - sl (slope, only valid for models 1–6)
  - int (intercept, only valid for models 1–6)

- `cor` (correlation, only valid for models 1–6)
- `cd` (Coefficient of determination, only valid for models 1–6, 8–10)
- `sCov` (Sample covariance, only valid for models 1–6)
- `pCov` (Population covariance, only valid for models 1–6)
- `L` (L parameter for model 7)
- `a` (a parameter for models 7–11)
- `b` (b parameter for models 7–11)
- `c` (c parameter for models 8–11)
- `d` (d parameter for models 8, 10–11)
- `e` (e parameter for model 11)
- `py` (place 2 cells, one for user input and the other to display the predicted y for the input)
- `px` (place 2 cells, one for user input and the other to display the predicted x for the input)

Example: `REGRS (A25:B37, 2)`

## predY

Returns the predicted Y for a given x.

`PredY(mode, x, parameters)`

- `Mode` governs the regression model used:
  - 1  $y = sl \cdot x + int$
  - 2  $y = sl \cdot \ln(x) + int$
  - 3  $y = int \cdot \exp(sl \cdot x)$
  - 4  $y = int \cdot x^{sl}$
  - 5  $y = int \cdot sl^x$
  - 6  $y = sl/x + int$
  - 7  $y = L / (1 + a \cdot \exp(b \cdot x))$
  - 8  $y = a \cdot \sin(b \cdot x + c) + d$
  - 9  $y = cx^2 + bx + a$
  - 10  $y = dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$
  - 11  $y = ex^4 + dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$
- `Parameters` is either one argument (a list of the coefficients of the regression line), or the n coefficients one after another.

## PredX

Returns the predicted x for a given y.

`PredX(mode, y, parameters)`

- **Mode** governs the regression model used:
  - 1  $y = sl \cdot x + int$
  - 2  $y = sl \cdot \ln(x) + int$
  - 3  $y = int \cdot \exp(sl \cdot x)$
  - 4  $y = int \cdot x^{sl}$
  - 5  $y = int \cdot sl^x$
  - 6  $y = sl/x + int$
  - 7  $y = L / (1 + a \cdot \exp(b \cdot x))$
  - 8  $y = a \cdot \sin(b \cdot x + c) + d$
  - 9  $y = cx^2 + bx + a$
  - 10  $y = dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$
  - 11  $y = ex^4 + dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$
- **Parameters** is either one argument (a list of the coefficients of the regression line), or the n coefficients one after another.

## HypZ1mean

The one-sample Z-test for a mean.

`HypZ1mean( $\bar{x}$ , n,  $\mu_0$ ,  $\sigma$ ,  $\alpha$ , mode, ["configuration"])`

The input parameters can be a range reference, a list of cell references, or a simple list of values.

**Mode:** Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\mu < \mu_0$
- 2:  $\mu > \mu_0$
- 3:  $\mu \neq \mu_0$

**Configuration:** a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- acc: the test result, 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- tZ: the test Z-value
- tM: the input  $\bar{x}$  value
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- cZ: the critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- cx1: the lower critical value of the mean associated with the critical Z-value

- **cx2**: the upper critical value of the mean associated with the critical Z-value
- **std**: the standard deviation

Example:

`HypZ1mean(0.461368, 50, 0.5, 0.2887, 0.05, 1, "")` returns two columns into the Spreadsheet app. The first column contains the headers and the second column contains the values for each of the following: Reject/Fail=1, Test Z = -0.94621, Test  $\bar{x}$  = 0.461368, P= 0.172022, Critical Z= -1.64485, Critical  $\bar{x}$  = 0.432843.

## HYPZ2mean

The two-sample Z-test for the difference of two means.

`HypZ2mean ( 1,2, n1,n2,σ1,σ2, α, mode, ["configuration"] )`

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\mu_1 < \mu_2$
- 2:  $\mu_1 > \mu_2$
- 3:  $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- **h**: header cells will be created
- **acc**: the test result, 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- **tZ**: the test Z-value
- **tM**: the input  $\Delta\bar{x}$  value
- **prob**: the lower-tail probability
- **cZ**: the critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- **cx1**: the lower critical value of  $\Delta\bar{x}$  associated with the critical Z-value
- **cx2**: the upper critical value of  $\Delta\bar{x}$  associated with the critical Z-value
- **std**: the standard deviation

Example:

`HypZ2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 50, 50, 0.2887, 0.2887, 0.05, 1, "")`

## HypZ1prop

The one-sample Z-test for a proportion.

`HypZ1prop(x, n, π0, α, mode, ["configuration"])` where x is the success count of the sample

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\pi < \pi_0$
- 2:  $\pi > \pi_0$
- 3:  $\pi \neq \pi_0$



Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- acc: the test result, 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- tZ: the test Z-value
- tP: the test proportion of successes
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- cZ: the critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- cp1: the lower critical proportion of successes associated with the critical Z-value
- cp2: the upper critical proportion of successes associated with the critical Z-value
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
HypZ1prop(21, 50, 0.5, 0.05, 1, "")
```

## HypZ2prop

The two-sample Z-test for comparing two proportions.

`HypZ2prop(x1, x2, n1, n2,  $\alpha$ , mode, ["configuration"])` where  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are the success counts of the two samples)

- 1:  $\pi_1 < \pi_2$
- 2:  $\pi_1 > \pi_2$
- 3:  $\pi_1 \neq \pi_2$

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- acc: the test result, 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- tZ: the test Z-value
- tP: the test  $\Delta\pi$  value
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- cZ: the critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- cp1: the lower critical value of  $\Delta\pi$  associated with the critical Z-value associated with the critical Z-value
- cp2: the upper critical value of  $\Delta\pi$  of associated with the critical Z-value

Example:

```
HypZ2prop(21, 26, 50, 50, 0.05, 1, "")
```

## HypT1mean

The one-sample t-test for a mean.

```
HypT1mean( $\bar{x}$ , n,  $\mu_0$ ,  $\alpha$ , mode, ["configuration"])
```

- 1:  $\mu < \mu_0$
- 2:  $\mu > \mu_0$
- 3:  $\mu \neq \mu_0$

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- acc: the test result, 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- tT: the test T-value
- tM: the input  $\bar{x}$  value
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- df: the degrees of freedom
- cT: the critical T-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- cx1: the lower critical value of the mean associated with the critical T-value
- cx2: the upper critical value of the mean associated with the critical T-value

Example:

```
HypT1mean(0.461368, 0.2776, 50, 0.5, 0.05, 1, "")
```

## HypT2mean

The two-sample T-test for the difference of two means.

```
HypT2mean( $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, n_1, n_2, s_1, s_2, \alpha$ , pooled, mode, ["configuration"])
```

Pooled: Specifies whether or not the samples are pooled

- 0: not pooled
- 1: pooled
- 1:  $\mu_1 < \mu_2$
- 2:  $\mu_1 > \mu_2$
- 3:  $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- acc: the test result, 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- tT: the test T-value

- $t_M$ : the input  $\Delta\bar{x}$  value
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- cT: the critical T-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- cx1: the lower critical value of  $\Delta\bar{x}$  associated with the critical T-value
- cx2: the upper critical value of  $\Delta\bar{x}$  associated with the critical T-value

Example:

```
HypT2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 0.2776, 0.2943, 50, 50, 0, 0.05, 1, "")
```

## ConfZ1mean

The one-sample Normal confidence interval for a mean.

```
ConfZ1mean( $\bar{x}$ , n, s, C, ["configuration"])
```

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- Z: the critical Z-value
- zXl: the lower bound of the confidence interval
- zXh: the upper bound of the confidence interval
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
ConfZ1mean(0.461368, 50, 0.2887, 0.95, "")
```

## ConfZ2mean

The two-sample Normal confidence interval for the difference of two means.

```
ConfZ2mean ( $\bar{x}_1$ ,  $\bar{x}_2$ ,  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$ ,  $s_1$ ,  $s_2$ , C, ["configuration"])
```

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- Z: the critical Z-value
- zXl: the lower bound of the confidence interval
- zXh: the upper bound of the confidence interval
- prob: the lower-tail probability
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
ConfZ2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 50, 50, 0.2887, 0.2887, 0.95, "")
```

## ConfZ1prop

The one-sample Normal confidence interval for a proportion.

```
ConfZ1prop(x,n,C,["configuration"])
```

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- Z: the critical Z-value
- zXl: the lower bound of the confidence interval
- zXh: the upper bound of the confidence interval
- zXm: the midpoint of the confidence interval
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
ConfZ1prop(21, 50, 0.95, "")
```

## ConfZ2prop

The two-sample Normal confidence interval for the difference of two proportions.

```
ConfZ2prop(x1,x2,n1,n2,C,["configuration"])
```

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- Z: the critical Z-value
- zXl: the lower bound of the confidence interval
- zXh: the upper bound of the confidence interval
- zXm: the midpoint of the confidence interval
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
ConfZ2prop(21, 26, 50, 50, 0.95, "")
```

## ConfT1mean

The one-sample Student's T confidence interval for a mean.

```
ConfT1mean(x̄,s,n,C,["configuration"])
```

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- DF: the degrees of freedom

- T: the critical T-value
- tXl: the lower bound of the confidence interval
- tXh: the upper bound of the confidence interval
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
ConfT1mean(0.461368, 0.2776, 50, 0.95, "")
```

## ConfT2mean

The two-sample Student's T confidence interval for the difference of two means.

```
ConfT2mean ( $\bar{x}_1$ ,  $\bar{x}_2$ ,  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$ ,  $s_1$ ,  $s_2$ , C, pooled, ["configuration"]
```

Configuration: a string that controls what results are shown and the order in which they appear. An empty string "" displays the default: all results, including headers. The options in the configuration string are separated by spaces.

- h: header cells will be created
- DF: the degrees of freedom
- T: the critical T-value
- tXl: the lower bound of the confidence interval
- tXh: the upper bound of the confidence interval
- tXm: the midpoint of the confidence interval
- std: the standard deviation

Example:

```
ConfT2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 0.2776, 0.2943, 50, 50, 0, 0.95, "")
```

## Statistics 1Var app functions

The Statistics 1Var app has three functions designed to work together to calculate summary statistics based on one of the statistical analyses (H1–H5) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 1Var app.

### Do1VStats

Do1-variable statistics. Performs the same calculations as tapping **Stats** in the Numeric view of the Statistics 1Var app and stores the results in the appropriate Statistics 1Var app results variables. Hn must be one of the Statistics 1Var app Symbolic view variables H1–H5.

```
Do1VStats(Hn)
```

Example:

```
Do1VStats(H1) executes summary statistics for the currently defined H1 analysis.
```

### SetFreq

Set frequency. Sets the frequency for one of the statistical analyses (H1–H5) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 1Var app. The frequency can be either one of the columns D0–D9, or any positive integer. Hn

must be one of the Statistics 1Var app Symbolic view variables  $H1-H5$ . If used,  $Dn$  must be one of the column variables  $D0-D9$ ; otherwise, value must be a positive integer.

`SetFreq(Hn, Dn)` or `SetFreq(Hn, value)`

Example:

`SetFreq(H2, D3)` sets the **Frequency** field for the H2 analysis to use the list D3.

## SetSample

Set sample data. Sets the sample data for one of the statistical analyses ( $H1-H5$ ) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 1Var app. Sets the data column to one of the column variables  $D0-D9$  for one of the statistical analyses  $H1-H5$ .

`SetSample(Hn, Dn)`

Example:

`SetSample(H2, D2)` sets the Independent **Column** field for the H2 analysis to use the data in the list D2.

## Statistics 2Var app functions

The Statistics 2Var app has a number of functions. Some are designed to calculate summary statistics based on one of the statistical analyses ( $S1-S5$ ) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 2Var app. Others predict X- and Y-values based on the fit specified in one of the analyses.

### PredX

Predict X. Uses the fit from the first active analysis ( $S1-S5$ ) found to predict an x-value given the y-value.

`PredX(value)`

### PredY

Predict Y. Uses the fit from the first active analysis ( $S1-S5$ ) found to predict a y-value given the x-value.

`PredY(value)`

### Resid

Residuals. Returns the list of residuals for the given analysis ( $S1-S5$ ), based on the data and a fit defined in the Symbolic view for that analysis.

`Resid(Sn)` or `Resid()`

`Resid()` looks for the first defined analysis in the Symbolic view ( $S1-S5$ ).

## Do2VStats

Do 2-variable statistics. Performs the same calculations as tapping **Stats** in the Numeric view of the Statistics 2Var app and stores the results in the appropriate Statistics 2Var app results variables.  $Sn$  must be one of the Statistics 2Var app Symbolic view variables  $S1-S5$ .

`Do2VStats(Sn)`

Example:

`Do1VStats(S1)` executes summary statistics for the currently defined S1 analysis.

## SetDepend

Set dependent column. Sets the dependent column for one of the statistical analyses S1–S5 to one of the column variables C0–C9.

`SetDepend(Sn, Cn)`

Example:

`SetDepend(S1, C3)` sets the **Dependent Column** field for the S1 analysis to use the data in list C3.

## SetIndep


Set independent column. Sets the independent column for one of the statistical analyses S1–S5 to one of the column variables C0–C9.

`SetIndep(Sn, Cn)`

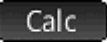
Example:

`SetIndep(S1, C2)` sets the **Independent Column** field for the S1 analysis to use the data in list C2.

## Inference app functions

The Inference app has a single function that returns the same results as tapping  in the Numeric view of the Inference app. The results depend on the contents of the Inference app variables `Method`, `Type`, and `AltHyp`.

## DoInference

Calculate confidence interval or test hypothesis. Uses the current settings in the Symbolic and Numeric views to calculate a confidence interval or test an hypothesis. Performs the same calculations as tapping  in the Numeric view of the Inference app and stores the results in the appropriate Inference app results variables.

`DoInference()`

## HypZ1mean

The one-sample Z-test for a mean. Returns a list containing (in order):

- 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- The test Z-value
- The input  $\bar{x}$  value
- The upper-tail probability
- The upper critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- The critical value of the statistic associated with the critical Z-value

`HypZ1mean( $\bar{x}$ , n,  $\mu_0$ ,  $\sigma$ ,  $\alpha$ , mode)`

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\mu < \mu_0$
- 2:  $\mu > \mu_0$
- 3:  $\mu \neq \mu_0$

Example:

`HypZ1mean(0.461368, 50, 0.5, 0.2887, 0.05, 1)` returns {1, -.9462..., 0.4614, 0.8277..., 1.6448..., 0.5671...}

## HypZ2mean

The two-sample Z-test for means. Returns a list containing (in order):

- 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- The test Z-value
- tZ: the test Z-value
- The test  $\Delta\bar{x}$  value
- The upper-tail probability
- The upper critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- The critical value of  $\Delta\bar{x}$  associated with the critical Z-value

`HypZ2mean( $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, n_1, n_2, \sigma_1, \sigma_2, \alpha, mode$ )`

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\mu_1 < \mu_2$
- 2:  $\mu_1 > \mu_2$
- 3:  $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

Example:

`HypZ2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 50, 50, 0.2887, 0.2887, 0.05, 1)` returns {1, -1.0648..., -0.0614..., 0.8565..., 1.6448..., 0.0334...}.

## HypZ1prop

The one-proportion Z-test. Returns a list containing (in order):

- 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- The test Z-value
- The test  $\pi$  value
- The upper-tail probability
- The upper critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- The critical value of  $\pi$  associated with the critical Z-value

`HypZ1mean(0.461368, 50, 0.5, 0.2887, 0.05, 1) HypZ1prop(x, n,  $\pi_0, \alpha, mode$ )`

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:



- 1:  $\pi < \pi_0$
- 2:  $\pi > \pi_0$
- 3:  $\pi \neq \pi_0$

Example:

`HypZ1prop(21, 50, 0.5, 0.05, 1)` returns {1, -1.1313..., 0.42, 0.8710..., 1.6448..., 0.6148...}

## HypZ2prop

The two-sample Z-test for proportions. Returns a list containing (in order):

- 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- The test Z-value
- The test Z-value
- The test  $\Delta\pi$  value
- The upper-tail probability
- The upper critical Z-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- The critical value of  $\Delta\pi$  associated with the critical Z-value

`HypZ2prop( $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, n_1, n_2, \alpha, mode$ )`

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\pi_1 < \pi_2$
- 2:  $\pi_1 > \pi_2$
- 3:  $\pi_1 \neq \pi_2$

Example:

`HypZ2prop(21, 26, 50, 50, 0.05, 1)` returns {1, -1.0018..., -0.1, 0.8417..., 1.6448..., 0.0633...}

## HypT1mean

The one-sample t-test for a mean. Returns a list containing (in order):

- 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- The test T-value
- The input  $\bar{x}$  value
- The upper-tail probability
- The degrees of freedom
- The upper critical T-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- The critical value of the statistic associated with the critical t-value

`HypT1mean( $\bar{x}, s, n, \mu_0, \alpha, mode$ )`

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\mu < \mu_0$
- 2:  $\mu > \mu_0$
- 3:  $\mu \neq \mu_0$

Example:

`HypT1mean(0.461368, 0.2776, 50, 0.5, 0.05, 1)` returns {1, -.9462..., 0.4614, 0.8277..., 1.6448..., 0.5671...}

## HypT2mean

The two-sample T-test for means. Returns a list containing (in order):

- 0 or 1 to reject or fail to reject the null hypothesis
- The test T-value
- The test  $\Delta\bar{x}$  value
- The upper-tail probability
- The degrees of freedom
- The upper critical T-value associated with the input  $\alpha$ -level
- The critical value of  $\Delta\bar{x}$  associated with the critical t-value

`HypT2mean(  $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, s_1, s_2, n_1, n_2, \alpha, pooled, mode$  )`

Pooled: Specifies whether or not the samples are pooled

- 0: not pooled
- 1: pooled

Mode: Specifies which alternative hypothesis to use:

- 1:  $\mu_1 < \mu_2$
- 2:  $\mu_1 > \mu_2$
- 3:  $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

Example:

`HypT2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 0.2776, 0.2943, 50, 50, 0.05, 0, 1)` returns {1, -1.0746..., -0.0614..., 0.8574..., 97.6674..., 1.6606..., 0.0335...}

## ConfZ1mean

The one-sample Normal confidence interval for a mean. Returns a list containing (in order):

- The lower critical Z-value
- The lower bound of the confidence interval
- The upper bound of the confidence interval

`ConfZ1mean(  $\bar{x}, n, \sigma, C$  )`

Example:

`ConfZ1mean(0.461368, 50, 0.2887, 0.95)` returns {- 1.9599..., 0.3813..., 0.5413...}

## ConfZ2mean

The two-sample Normal confidence interval for the difference of two means. Returns a list containing (in order):

- The lower critical Z-value
- The lower bound of the confidence interval
- The upper bound of the confidence interval

`ConfZ2mean( $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, n_1, n_2, \sigma_1, \sigma_2, C$ )`

Example:

`ConfZ2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 50, 50, 0.2887, 0.2887, 0.95)` returns `{-1.9599..., -0.1746..., 0.0516...}`

## ConfZ1prop

The one-sample Normal confidence interval for a proportion. Returns a list containing (in order):

- The lower critical Z-value
- The lower bound of the confidence interval
- The upper bound of the confidence interval

`ConfZ1prop(x, n, C)`

Example:

`ConfZ1prop(21, 50, 0.95)` returns `{-1.9599..., 0.2831..., 0.5568...}`

## ConfZ2prop

The two-sample Normal confidence interval for the difference of two proportions. Returns a list containing (in order):

- The lower critical Z-value
- The lower bound of the confidence interval
- The upper bound of the confidence interval

`ConfZ2prop( $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, n_1, n_2, C$ )`

Example:

`ConfZ2prop(21, 26, 50, 50, 0.95)` returns `{-1.9599..., -0.2946..., 0.0946...}`

## ConfT1mean

The one-sample Student's T confidence interval for a mean. Returns a list containing (in order):

- The degrees of freedom
- The lower bound of the confidence interval
- The upper bound of the confidence interval

`ConfT1mean( $\bar{x}, s, n, C$ )`

Example:

`ConfT1mean(0.461368, 0.2776, 50, 0.95)` returns {49, -.2009..., 0.5402...}

## ConfT2mean

The two-sample Student's T confidence interval for the difference of two means. Returns a list containing (in order):

- The degrees of freedom
- The lower bound of the confidence interval
- The upper bound of the confidence interval

`ConfT2mean( $\bar{x}_1, \bar{x}_2, s_1, s_2, n_1, n_2, \text{pooled}, C$ )`

Example:

`ConfT2mean(0.461368, 0.522851, 0.2887, 0.2887, 50, 50, 0.95, 0)` returns {98.0000..., -1.9844, - 0.1760..., 0.0531...}

## Chi2GOF

Chi-square goodness of fit test. Takes as arguments a list of observed count data, a second list, and a value of 0 or 1. If value=0, the second list is taken as a list of expected probabilities. If value=1, then the second list is taken as a list of expected counts. Returns a list containing the chi-square statistic value, the probability, and the degrees of freedom.

`Chi2GOF(List1, List2, Value)`

Example:

`Chi2GOF({10, 10, 12, 15, 10, 6}, {.24, .2, .16, .14, .13, .13}, 0)` returns {10.1799..., 0.07029..., 5}

## Chi2TwoWay

Chi-square two-way test. Given a matrix of count data, returns a list containing the chi-square statistic value, the probability, and the degrees of freedom.

`Chi2TwoWay(Matrix)`

Example:

`Chi2TwoWay([[30, 35, 30], [11, 2, 19], [43, 35, 35]])` returns {14.4302..., 0.0060..., 4}

## LinRegrTConf- Slope

The linear regression confidence interval for the slope. Given a list of explanatory variable data (X), a list of response variable data (Y), and a confidence level, returns a list containing the following values in the order shown:

- C: the given confidence level
- Critical T: the value of t associated with the given confidence level
- DF: the degrees of freedom
- $\beta_1$ : the slope of the linear regression equation
- serrSlope: the standard error of the slope

- Lower: the lower bound of the confidence interval for the slope
- Upper: the upper bound of the confidence interval for the slope

`LinRegrTConfSlope(List1, List2, C-value)`

Example:

`LinRegrTConfSlope({1, 2, 3, 4}, {3, 2, 0, -2}, 0.95)` returns {0.95, 4.302..., 2, -1.7, 0.1732..., -2.445..., -0.954...}

## LinRegrTConfInt

The linear regression confidence interval for the intercept. Given a list of explanatory variable data (X), a list of response variable data (Y), and a confidence level, returns a list containing the following values in the order shown:

- C: the given confidence level
- Critical T: the value of t associated with the given confidence level
- DF: the degrees of freedom
- $\beta_0$ : the intercept of the linear regression equation
- serrInter: the standard error of the intercept
- Lower: the lower bound of the confidence interval for the intercept
- Upper: the upper bound of the confidence interval for the intercept

`LinRegrTConfInt(List1, List2, C-value)`

Example:

`LinRegrTConfInt({1, 2, 3, 4}, {3, 2, 0, -2}, 0.95)` returns {0.95, 4.302..., 2, 5, 0.474..., 2.959..., 7.040...}

## LinRegrTMean-Resp

The linear regression confidence interval for a mean response. Given a list of explanatory variable data (X), a list of response variable data (Y), an X-value, and a confidence level, returns a list containing the following values in the order shown:

- X: the given X-value
- C: the given confidence level
- DF: the degrees of freedom
- $\hat{Y}$ : the mean response for the given X-value
- serr  $\hat{Y}$ : the standard error of the mean response
- serrInter: the standard error of the intercept
- Lower: the lower bound of the confidence interval for the mean response
- Upper: the upper bound of the confidence interval for the mean response

`LinRegrTMeanResp(List1, List2, X-value, Cvalue)`

Example:

`LinRegrTMeanResp({1, 2, 3, 4}, {3, 2, 0, -2}, 2.5, 0.95)` returns `{2.5, 0.95, 4.302..., 2, 0.75, 0.193..., -0.083, 1.583...}`

## LinRegrTPredInt

The linear regression prediction interval for a future response. Given a list of explanatory variable data (X), a list of response variable data (Y), a future X-value, and a confidence level, returns a list containing the following values in the order shown:

- X: the given future X-value
- C: the given confidence level
- DF: the degrees of freedom
- $\hat{Y}$ : the mean response for the given future X-value
- $\text{serr } \hat{Y}$ : the standard error of the mean response
- $\text{serrInter}$ : the standard error of the intercept
- Lower: the lower bound of the prediction interval for the mean response
- Upper: the upper bound of the prediction interval for the mean response

`LinRegrTPredInt(List1, List2, X-value, Cvalue)`

Example:

`LinRegrTPredInt({1, 2, 3, 4}, {3, 2, 0, -2}, 2.5, 0.95)` returns `{2.5, 0.95, 4.302..., 2, 0.75, 0.433..., -1.113..., 2.613...}`

## LinRegrTTest

The linear regression t-test. Given a list of explanatory variable data (X), a list of response variable data (Y), and a value for `AltHyp`, returns a list containing the following values in the order shown:

- T: the t-value
- P: the probability associated with the t-value
- DF: the degrees of freedom
- $\beta_0$ : the y-intercept of the regression line
- $\beta_1$ : the slope of the regression line
- $\text{serrLine}$ : the standard error of the regression line
- $\text{serr } \hat{Y}$ : the standard error of the mean response
- $\text{serrSlope}$ : the standard error of the slope
- $\text{serrInter}$ : the standard error of the y-intercept
- r: the correlation coefficient
- $R^2$ : the coefficient of determination

The values for `AltHyp` are as follows:

- $\text{AltHyp}=0$  for  $\mu < \mu_0$
- $\text{AltHyp}=1$  for  $\mu > \mu_0$
- $\text{AltHyp}=2$  for  $\mu \neq \mu_0$

Example:

`LinRegrTTest({1,2,3,4}, {3,2,0,-2}, 0)` returns `{-9.814..., 2, 5, -1.7, 0.387..., 0.173..., 0.474..., -0.989..., 0.979...}`

## Finance app functions

The Finance app uses a set of functions that all reference the same set of Finance app variables. These correspond to the fields in the Finance app Numeric view. There are 5 main TVM variables, 4 of which are mandatory for each of these functions, as they each solve for and return the value of the fifth variable to two decimal places. `DoFinance` is the sole exception to this syntax rule. Note that money paid to you is entered as a positive number and money you pay to others as part of a cash flow is entered as a negative number. There are 3 other variables that are optional and have default values. These variables occur as arguments to the Finance app functions in the following set order:

- `NbPmt`—the number of payments
- `IPYR`—the annual interest rate
- `PV`—the present value of the investment or loan
- `PMTV`—the payment value
- `FV`—the future value of the investment or loan
- `PPYR`—the number of payments per year (12 by default)
- `CPYR`—the number of compounding periods per year (12 by default)
- `BEG`—payments made at the beginning or end of the period; the default is `BEG=0`, meaning that payments are made at the end of each period

The arguments `PPYR`, `CPYR`, and `BEG` are optional; if not supplied, `PPYR=12`, `CPYR=PPYR`, and `BEG=0`.

### CalcFV

Solves for the future value of an investment or loan.

`CalcFV(NbPmt, IPYR, PV, PMTV[, PPYR, CPYR, BEG])`

Example:

`CalcFV(360, 6.5, 150000, -948.10)` returns `-2.25`

### CalcIPYR

Solves for the interest rate per year of an investment or loan.

`CalcIPYR(NbPmt, PV, PMTV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, BEG])`

Example:

`CalcIPYR(360, 150000, -948.10, -2.25)` returns `6.50`

## CalcNbPmt

Solves for the number of payments in an investment or loan.

```
CalcNbPmt (IPYR, PV, PMTV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, BEG] )
```

Example:

```
CalcNbPmt (6.5, 150000, -948.10, -2.25) returns 360.00
```

## CalcPMT

Solves for the value of a payment for an investment or loan.

```
CalcPMT (NbPmt, IPYR, PV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, BEG] )
```

Example:

```
CalcPMT (360, 6.5, 150000, -2.25) returns -948.10
```

## CalcPV

Solves for the present value of an investment or loan.

```
CalcPV (NbPmt, IPYR, PMTV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, BEG] )
```

Example:

```
CalcPV (360, 6.5, -948.10, -2.25) returns 150000.00
```

## DoFinance

Calculate TVM results. Solves a TVM problem for the variable TVMVar. The variable must be one of the Finance app's Numeric view variables. Performs the same calculation as tapping **Solve** in the Numeric view of the Finance app with TVMVar highlighted.

```
DoFinance (TVMVar)
```

Example:

`DoFinance (FV)` returns the future value of an investment in the same way as tapping **Solve** in the Numeric view of the Finance app with `FV` highlighted.

## Linear Solver app functions

The Linear Solver app has 3 functions that offer the user flexibility in solving 2x2 or 3x3 linear systems of equations.

### Solve2x2

Solves a 2x2 linear system of equations.

```
Solve2x2 (a, b, c, d, e, f)
```

Solves the linear system represented by:

$$ax+by=c$$

$$dx+ey=f$$



## Solve3x3

Solves a 3x3 linear system of equations.

```
Solve3x3(a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l)
```

Solves the linear system represented by:

$$ax+by+cz=d$$

$$ex+fy+gz=h$$

$$ix+jy+kz=l$$

## LinSolve

Solve linear system. Solves the 2x2 or 3x3 linear system represented by matrix.

```
LinSolve(matrix)
```

Example:

```
LinSolve([[A, B, C], [D, E, F]]) solves the linear system:
```

$$ax+by=c$$

$$dx+ey=f$$

## Triangle Solver app functions

The Triangle Solver app has a group of functions which allow you to solve a complete triangle from the input of three consecutive parts of the triangle (one of which must be a side length). The names of these commands use A to signify an angle and S to signify a side length. To use these commands, enter three inputs in the specified order given by the command name. These commands all return a list of the three unknown values (lengths of sides and/or measures of angles).

### AAS

Angle-Angle-Side. Takes as arguments the measures of two angles and the length of the side opposite the first angle and returns a list containing the length of the side opposite the second angle, the length of the third side, and the measure of the third angle (in that order).

```
AAS(angle, angle, side)
```

Example:

```
AAS(30, 60, 1) in degree mode returns {1.732..., 2, 90}
```

### ASA

Angle-Side-Angle. Takes as arguments the measure of two angles and the length of the included side and returns a list containing the length of the side opposite the first angle, the length of the side opposite the second angle, and the measure of the third angle (in that order).

```
ASA(angle, side, angle)
```

Example:

```
ASA(30, 2, 60) in degree mode returns {1, 1.732..., 90}
```

## SAS

**Side-Angle-Side.** Takes as arguments the length of two sides and the measure of the included angle and returns a list containing the length of the third side, the measure of the angle opposite the third side and the measure of the angle opposite the second side.

```
SAS(side, angle, side)
```

Example:

```
SAS(2, 60, 1) in degree mode returns {1.732..., 30, 90}
```

## SSA

**Side-Side-Angle.** Takes as arguments the lengths of two sides and the measure of a non-included angle and returns a list containing the length of the third side, the measure of the angle opposite the second side, and the measure of the angle opposite the third side. Note: In an ambiguous case, this command will only give you one of the two possible solutions.

```
SSA(side, side, angle)
```

Example:

```
SSA(1, 2, 30) returns {1.732..., 90, 60}
```

## SSS

**Side-Side-Side** Takes as arguments the lengths of the three sides of a triangle and returns the measures of the angles opposite them, in order.

```
SSS(side, side, side)
```

Example:

```
SSS(3, 4, 5) in degree mode returns {36.8..., 53.1..., 90}
```

## DoSolve

Solves the current problem in the Triangle Solver app. The Triangle Solver app must have enough data entered to ensure a successful solution; that is, there must be at least three values entered, one of which must be a side length. Returns a list containing the unknown values in the Numeric view, in their order of appearance in that view (left to right and top to bottom).

```
DoSolve()
```

## Linear Explorer functions

### SolveForSlope

**Solve for slope.** Takes as input the coordinates of two points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  and returns the slope of the line containing those two points.

```
SolveForSlope(x1, x2, y1, y2)
```

Example:

```
SolveForSlope(3, 2, 4, 2) returns 2
```

## SolveForYIntercept

Solve for y-intercept. Takes as input the coordinates of a point (x, y), and a slope m, and returns the y-intercept of the line with the given slope that contains the given point.

```
SolveForYIntercept(x, y, m)
```

Example:

```
SolveForYIntercept(2, 3, -1) returns 5
```

## Quadratic Explorer functions

### SOLVE

Solve quadratic. Given the coefficients of a quadratic equation  $ax^2+bx+c=0$ , returns the real solutions.

```
SOLVE(a, b, c)
```

Example:

```
SOLVE(1, 0, -4) returns [-2, 2]
```

### DELTA

Discriminant. Given the coefficients of a quadratic equation  $ax^2+bx+c=0$ , returns the value of the discriminant in the Quadratic Formula.

```
DELTA(a, b, c)
```

Example:

```
DELTA(1, 0, -4) returns 16
```

## Common app functions

In addition to the app functions specific to each app, there are three functions common to the following apps. These use as an argument an integer from 0 to 9, which corresponds to one of the Symbolic view variables for that app.

- Function (F0–F9)
- Solve (E0–E9)
- Statistics 1Var (H1–H5)
- Statistics 2Var (S1–S5)
- Parametric (X0/Y0–X9/Y9)
- Polar (R0–R9)
- Sequence (U0–U9)
- Advanced Graphing (V0–V9)

### CHECK

Check. Checks—that is, selects—the Symbolic view variable corresponding to `Digit`. Used primarily in programming to activate Symbolic view definitions in apps.

```
CHECK(Digit)
```

Example:

With the Function app as the current app, `CHECK(1)` checks the Function app Symbolic view variable `F1`. The result is that `F1(X)` is drawn in the Plot view and has a column of function values in the Numeric view of the Function app. With another app as the current app, you would have to enter `Function.CHECK(1)`.

## UNCHECK

**Un-Check.** Un-checks—that is, deselects—the Symbolic view variable corresponding to `Digit`. Used primarily in programming to de-activate symbolic view definitions in apps.

`UNCHECK(Digit)`

Example:

With the Sequence app as the current app, `UNCHECK(2)` unchecks the Sequence app Symbolic view variable `U2`. The result is that `U2(N)` is no longer drawn in Plot view and has no column of values in the Numeric view of the Sequence app. With another app as the current app, you would have to enter `SequenceUNCHECK(2)`.

## ISCHECK

**Test for check.** Tests whether a Symbolic view variable is checked. Returns 1 if the variable is checked and 0 if it is not checked.

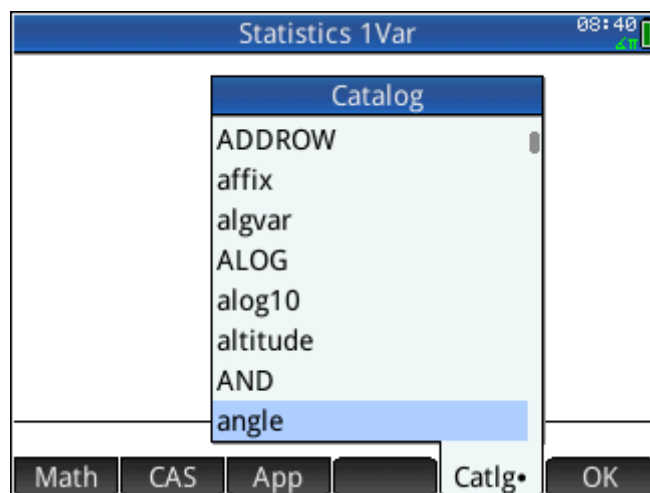
`ISCHECK(Digit)`



Example:

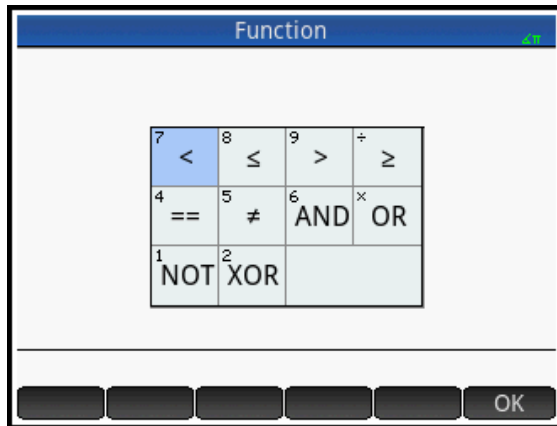
With the Function app as the current app, `ISCHECK(3)` checks to see if `F3(X)` is checked in the Symbolic view of the Function app.

## Ctlg menu

The Catlg menu brings together all the functions and commands available on the HP Prime. However, this section describes the functions and commands that can only be found on the Catlg menu. The functions and commands that are also on the Math menu are described in [Keyboard functions on page 310](#). Those that are also on the CAS menu are described in [CAS menu on page 325](#).



Some of the options on the Catlg menu can also be chosen from the relations palette (   )



!

**Factorial.** Returns the factorial of a positive integer. For nonintegers,  $! = \Gamma(x + 1)$ . This calculates the Gamma function.

value!

**Example:**

6! returns 720

%

**x percent of y.** Returns  $(x/100)*y$ .

`%(x, y)`

**Example:**

`%(20, 50)` returns 10

**%TOTAL**

**Percent total;** the percentage of x that is y. Returns  $100*y/x$ .

`%TOTAL(x, y)`

**Example:**

`%TOTAL(20, 50)` returns 250

(

**Inserts opening parenthesis.**

\*

**Multiplication symbol.** Returns the product of two numbers or the scalar product of two vectors.

+

**Addition symbol.** Returns the sum of two numbers, the term-by-term sum of two lists or two matrices, or adds two strings together.

—

Subtraction symbol. Returns the difference of two numbers, or the term-by-term subtraction of two lists or two matrices.

.\*

Term by term multiplication for matrices. Returns the term-by-term multiplication of two matrices.

```
Matrix1.*Matrix2
```

Example:

```
[[1,2],[3,4]].*[[3,4],[5,6]] gives [[3,8],[15,24]]
```

./

Term by term division for matrices. Returns the term-by-term division of two matrices.

```
Matrix1 ./ Matrix2
```

.^

Term by term exponentiation for matrices. Returns the term by term exponentiation for a matrix.

```
Matrix .^ Integer
```

/

Division symbol. Returns the quotient of two numbers, or the term by term quotient of two lists. For division of a matrix by a square matrix, returns the left-multiplication by the inverse of the square matrix.

:=

Stores the evaluated expression in the variable. Note that:= cannot be used with the graphics variables G0–G9. See the command `BLIT`.

```
var:=expression
```

Example:

```
A:=3 stores the value 3 in the variable A
```

<

Strict less-than-inequality test. Returns 1 if the left side of the inequality is less than the right side, and 0 otherwise. Note that more than two objects can be compared. Thus  $6 < 8 < 11$  returns 1 (because it is true) whereas  $6 < 8 < 3$  returns 0 (as it is false).

<=

Less than or equal inequality test. Returns 1 if the left side of the inequality is less than the right side or if the two sides are equal, and 0 otherwise. Note that more than two objects can be compared. See comment above regarding <.

<>

Inequality test. Returns 1 if the inequality is true, and 0 if the inequality is false.

**=**

Equality symbol. Connects two members of an equation.

**==**

Equality test. Returns 1 if the left side and right side are equal, and 0 otherwise.

**>**

Strict greater than inequality test. Returns 1 if the left side of the inequality is greater than the right side, and 0 otherwise. Note that more than two objects can be compared. See comment above regarding <.

**>=**

Greater than or equal inequality test. Returns 1 if the left side of the inequality is greater than the right side or if the two sides are equal, and 0 otherwise. Note that more than two objects can be compared. See comment above regarding <.

**^**

Power symbol. Raises a number to a power or a matrix to an integer power.

## **a2q**

Given a symmetric matrix and a vector of variables, returns the quadratic form of the matrix using the variables in the vector.

```
a2q(Matrix, [Var1, Var2....])
```

Example:

```
a2q([[1,2],[4,4]], [x,y]) returns x^2+6*x*y+4*y^2
```

## **abcuv**

Given a symmetric matrix and a vector of variables, returns the quadratic form of the matrix using the variables in the vector.

```
abcuv(Matrix, [Var1, Var2....])
```

Example:

```
abcuv([[1,2],[4,4]], [x,y]) returns x^2+6*x*y+4*y^2
```

## additionally

Used in programming with `assume` to state an additional assumption about a variable.

Example:

```
assume(n, integer);  
additionally(n>5);
```

## algvar

Returns the matrix of the symbolic variable names used in an expression. The list is ordered by the algebraic extensions required to build the original expression.

```
algvar(Expr)
```

Example:

```
algvar(sqrt(x)+y) gives  $\begin{bmatrix} y \\ x \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## AND

Logical And. Returns 1 if the left and right sides both evaluate to true and returns 0 otherwise.

```
Expr1 AND Expr2
```

Example:

```
3 + 1 == 4 AND 4 < 5 returns 1
```

## append

Appends an element to a list or vector.

```
append(List, Element)
```

or

```
append(Vector, Element)
```

Example:

```
append([1,2,3], 4) gives [1,2,3,4]
```

## apply

Returns a vector or matrix containing the results of applying a function to the elements in the vector or matrix.

```
apply(Var→f(Var), Vector) or apply(Var→f(Var), Matrix)
```

Example:

```
apply(x→x^3, [1 2 3]) gives [1 8 27]
```

## assume

Used in programming to state an assumption about a variable.

```
assume(Var, Expr)
```



Example:

```
assume(n, integer)
```

## basis

Given a matrix, returns the basis of the linear subspace defined by the set of vectors in the matrix.

```
basis(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
basis([[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9],[10,11,12]]) gives [[-3,0,3],[0,-3,-6]]
```

## bounded\_function

Argument returned by the limit command, indicating that the function is bounded.

## breakpoint

Used in programming to insert an intentional stopping or pausing point.

## canonical\_form

Returns a second degree trinomial in canonical form.

```
canonical_form(Trinomial,[Var])
```

Example:

```
canonical_form(2*x^2-12*x+1) gives 2*(x-3)^2- 17
```

## cat

Evaluates the objects in a sequence, then returns them concatenated as a string.

```
cat(Object1, Object2,...)
```

Example:

```
cat("aaa", c, 12*3) gives "aaac36"
```

## cFactor

Returns an expression factorized over the complex field (on Gaussian integers if there are more than two ).

```
cfactor(Expr)
```

Example:

```
cFactor(x^2*y+y) gives (x+i)*(x-i)*y
```

## charpoly

Returns the coefficients of the characteristic polynomial of a matrix. With only one argument, the variable used in the polynomial is x. With a variable as second argument, the polynomial returned is in terms of that variable.

```
charpoly(Matrix,[Var])
```

Example:

`charpoly([[1,2],[3,4]], z)` returns  $z^2-5z-2$

## chrem

Returns a vector containing the Chinese remainders for two sets of integers, contained in either two vectors or two lists.

`chrem(List1, List2)` or `chrem(Vector1, Vector2)`

Example:

`chrem([2,3],[7,5])` returns  $[-12,35]$

## col

Given a matrix and an integer n, returns the nth column of the matrix as a vector.

`col(Matrix, Integer)`

Example:

`col( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, 2)$`  returns  $[2,5,8]$

## colDim

Returns the number of columns of a matrix.

`colDim(Matrix)`

Example:

`colDim` returns 3

## comDenom

Rewrites a sum of rational fractions as a one rational fraction. The denominator of the one rational fraction is the common denominator of the rational fractions in the original expression. With a variable as second argument, the numerator and denominator are developed according to it.

`comDenom(Expr, [Var])`

Example:

`comDenom(1/x+1/y^2+1)` gives  $(x*y^2+x+y^2)/(x*y^2)$

## companion

Returns the companion matrix of a polynomial.

`companion(Poly, Var)`

Example:

`companion(x^2+5x-7, x)` returns  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 7 \\ 1 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$

## compare

Compares two objects and returns 1 if `type(Obj1)<type(Obj2)` or if `type(Obj1)=type(Obj2)` and `Obj1<Obj2`; otherwise, it returns 0.

```
compare(Obj1, Obj2)
```

Example:

```
compare(1, 2) gives 1
```

## complexroot

With a polynomial and a real as its two arguments, returns a matrix. Each row of the matrix contains either a complex root of the polynomial with its multiplicity or an interval containing such a root and its multiplicity. The interval defines a (possibly) rectangular region in the complex plane where a complex root lies.

With two additional complex numbers as third and fourth arguments, returns a matrix as described for two arguments, but only for those roots lying in the rectangular region defined by the diagonal created by the two complex numbers.

```
complexroot(Poly, Real, [Complex1], [Complex2])
```

Example:

```
complexroot(x^3+8, 0.01) returns 
$$\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ \left[ \frac{1017-1782 \cdot i}{1024}, \frac{1026-1773 \cdot i}{1024} \right] & 1 \\ \left[ \frac{1395+378 \cdot i}{512-512 \cdot i}, \frac{-189+702 \cdot i}{256+256 \cdot i} \right] & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

```

This matrix indicates there is 1 complex root at  $x=-2$ , with another root between the two values in the second row vector and a third root between the two values in the third row vector.

## contains

Given a list or vector and an element, returns the index of the first occurrence of the element in the list or vector; if the element does not appear in the list or vector, returns 0.

```
contains((List, Element) or contains(Vector, Element)
```

Example:

```
contains({0,1,2,3}, 2) returns 3
```

## CopyVar

Copies the first variable into the second variable without evaluation.

```
CopyVar(Var1, Var2)
```

## correlation

Returns the correlation of the elements of a list or matrix.

```
correlation(List) or correlation(Matrix)
```

Example:

`correlation`  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$  returns  $\frac{33}{6 \cdot \sqrt{31}}$

## count

There are two uses for this function, in which first argument is always a mapping of a variable onto an expression. If the expression is a function of the variable, the function is applied to each element in the vector or matrix (the second argument) and the sum of the results is returned; if the expression is a Boolean test, each element in the vector or matrix is tested and the number of elements that pass the test is returned.

`count(Var → Function, Matrix)` or `count(Var → Test, Matrix)`

Example:

`count(x→x2, [1 2 3])` returns 14

`count(x→ x>1, [1 2 3])` returns 2

## covariance

Returns the covariance of the elements in a list or matrix.

`covariance(List)` or `covariance(Matrix)`

Example:

`covariance`  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$  returns  $\frac{11}{3}$

## covariance\_correlation

Returns a vector containing both the covariance and the correlation of the elements of a list or matrix.

`covariance_correlation(List)` or

`covariance_correlation(Matrix)`

Example:

`covariance_correlation`  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{11}{3} & \frac{33}{6 \cdot \sqrt{31}} \end{bmatrix}$

## cpartfrac

Returns the result of partial fraction decomposition of a rational fraction in the complex field.

`cpartfrac(RatFrac)`

Example:

`cpartfrac`  $\left(\frac{x}{4-x^2}\right)$  returns  $-\frac{1}{x-2} - \frac{1}{x+2}$

## crationalroot

Returns the list of complex rational roots of a polynomial without indicating the multiplicity.

`crationalroot(Poly)`

Example:

`crationalroot(2*x^3+(-5-7*i)*x^2+ (-4+14*i)*x+8-4*i)` returns  $\left[\frac{3+i}{2}, 2-i, 1+i\right]$

## cumSum

Accepts as argument either a list or a vector and returns a list or vector whose elements are the cumulative sum of the original argument.

`cumSum(List)` or `cumSum(Vector)`

Example:

`cumSum([0,1,2,3,4])` returns `[0,1,3,6,10]`

## delcols

Given a matrix and an integer n, deletes the nth column from the matrix and returns the result. If an interval of two integers is used instead of a single integer, deletes all columns in the interval and returns the result.

`delcols(Matrix, Integer)` or `delcols(Matrix, Intg1..Intg2)`

Example:

`delcols` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, 2\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \\ 7 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

## delrows

Given a matrix and an integer n, deletes the nth row from the matrix and returns the result. If an interval of two integers is used instead of a single integer, deletes all rows in the interval and returns the result.

`delrows(Matrix, Integer)` or `delrows(Matrix, Intg1..Intg2)`

Example:

`delrows` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, 2..3\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

## deltalist

Returns the list of the differences between consecutive terms in the original list.

`deltalist(Lst)`

Example:

`deltalist([1,4,8,9])` gives `[3,4,1]`

## Dirac

Returns the value of the Dirac delta function for a real number.

`Dirac(Real)`

Example:

`Dirac(1)` gives 0

## e

Enters the mathematical constant e (Euler's number).

## egcd

Given two polynomials, A and B, returns three polynomials U, V and D such that:

$$U(x) * A(x) + V(x) * B(x) = D(x),$$

where  $D(x) = \text{GCD}(A(x), B(x))$ , the greatest common divisor of polynomials A and B.

The polynomials can be provided in symbolic form or as lists of coefficients in descending order.

Without a third argument, it is assumed that the polynomials are expressions of x. With a variable as third argument, the polynomials are expressions of it.

`egcd(PolyA, PolyB, [Var])` or `egcd(ListA, ListB, [Var])`

Example:

`egcd((x-1)^2, x^3-1)` gives `[-x-2, 1, 3*x-3]`

## eigenvals

Returns the sequence of eigenvalues of a matrix.

`eigenvals(Matrix)`

Example:

`eigenvals`  $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 & -2 \\ 1 & -2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$  returns `[3 -3 3]`

## eigenvects

Returns the eigenvectors of a diagonalizable matrix.

`eigenvects(Matrix)`

Example:

`eigenvects`  $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 & -2 \\ 1 & -2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & -3 \\ -2 & 0 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

## eigVl

Returns the Jordan matrix associated with a matrix when the eigenvalues are calculable.

## EVAL

Evaluates an expression.

`eval(Expr)`

Example:

`eval(2+3)` returns 5

## evalc

Returns a complex expression written in the form `real+i*imag`.

`evalc(Expr)`

Example:

`evalc( $\frac{1}{x+y \cdot i}$ )` returns  $\frac{x}{x^2+y^2} - \frac{i \cdot y}{x^2+y^2}$

## evalf

Given an expression and a number of significant digits, returns the numerical evaluation of the expression to the given number of significant digits. With just an expression, returns the numerical evaluation based on the CAS settings.

`evalf(Expr, [Integer])`

Example:

`evalf(2/3)` gives 0.666666666667

## even

Tests whether or not an integer is even. Returns 1 if it is and 0 if it is not.

Example:

`even(1251)` returns 0

## exact

Converts a decimal expression to a rational or real expression.

`exact(Expr)`

Example:

`exact(1.4141)` gives 14141/10000

## EXP

Returns the solution to the mathematical constant e to the power of an expression

`exp(Expr)`

Example:

`exp(0)` gives 1

## exponential\_regression

Given a set of points, returns a vector containing the coefficients a and b of  $y=b \cdot a^x$ , the exponential which best fits the set of points. The points may be the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.

`exponential_regression(Matrix)` or `exponential_regression(List1, List2)`

Example:

`exponential_regression` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1.0 & 2.0 \\ 0.0 & 1.0 \\ 4.0 & 7.0 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns 1.60092225473,1.10008339351

## EXPR

Parses a string into a number or expression and returns the result evaluated.

`EXPR(String)`

Examples:

`expr("2+3")` returns 5

`expr("X+10")` returns 100, if the variable X has the value 90

## ezgcd

Uses the EZ GCD algorithm to return the greatest common divisor of two polynomials with at least two variables.

`ezgcd(Poly1, Poly2)`

Example:

`ezgcd(x^2-2*x-x*y+2*y, x^2-y^2)` returns x-y

## f2nd

Returns a vector consisting of the numerator and denominator of an irreducible form of a rational fraction.

`f2nd(RatFrac)`

Example:

`f2nd( $\frac{x}{x \cdot \sqrt{x}}$ )` returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \sqrt{x} \end{bmatrix}$

## factorial

Returns the factorial of an integer or the solution to the gamma function for a non-integer. For an integer n, `factorial(n)=n!`. For a non-integer real number a, `factorial(a)=a! = Gamma(a + 1)`.

`factorial(Integer)` or `factorial(Real)`

Examples:

`factorial(4)` returns 24

`factorial(1.2)` returns 1.10180249088

## float

`FLOAT_DOM` or `float` is an option of the `assume` command; it is also a name returned by the `type` command.

## fMax

Given an expression in x, returns the value of x for which the expression has its maximum value. Given an expression and a variable, returns the value of that variable for which the expression has its maximum value.



`fMax(Expr, [Var])`

Example:

`fMax(-x^2+2*x+1, x)` gives 1

## fMin

Given an expression in x, returns the value of x for which the expression has its minimum value. Given an expression and a variable, returns the value of that variable for which the expression has its minimum value.

`fMin(Expr, [Var])`

Example:

`fMin(x^2-2*x+1, x)` gives 1

## format

Returns a real number as a string with the indicated format (f=float, s=scientific, e=engineering).

`format(Real, String)`

Example:

`format(9.3456, "s3")` returns 9.35

## fracmod

For a given integer n (representing a fraction) and an integer p (the modulus), returns the fraction a/b such that  $n \equiv a/b \pmod{p}$ .

`fracmod(Integern, Integerp)`

Example:

`fracmod(41, 121)` gives 2/3

## froot

Returns a vector containing the roots and poles of a rational polynomial. Each root or pole is followed by its multiplicity.

`froot(RatPoly)`

Example:

`froot( $\frac{x^5 - 2 \cdot x^4 + x^3}{x - 3}$ )` returns [0 3 1 2 3 -1]

## fsolve

Returns the numerical solution of an equation or a system of equations. With the optional third argument you can specify a guess for the solution or an interval within which it is expected that the solution will occur. With the optional fourth argument you can name the iterative algorithm to be used by the solver.

`fsolve(Expr, Var, [Guess or Interval], [Method])`

Example:

`fsolve(cos(x)=x, x, -1..1, bisection_solver)` gives [0.739085133215]

## function\_diff

Returns the derivative function of a function (as a mapping).

```
function_diff(Fnc)
```

Example:

```
function_diff(sin) gives (_x)→cos(_x)
```

## gauss

Given an expression followed by a vector of variables, uses the Gauss algorithm to return the quadratic form of the expression written as a sum or difference of squares of the variables given in the vector.

```
gauss(Expr, VectVar)
```

Example:

```
gauss(x^2+2*a*x*y, [x, y]) gives (a*y+x)^2+(-y^2)*a^2
```

## GF

Creates a Galois Field of characteristic p with p^n elements.

```
GF(Integerp, Integern)
```

Example:

```
GF(5, 9) gives GF(5, k^9-k^8+2*k^7+2*k^5-k^2+2*k-2, [k, K, g], undef)
```

## gramschmidt

Given a basis of a vector subspace, and a function that defines a scalar product on this vector subspace, returns an orthonormal basis for that function.

```
gramschmidt(Vector, Function)
```

Example:

```
gramschmidt([1 1+x], (p, q) → ∫-11 p · q dx) returns [1/√2, (1+x-1)/√6/3]
```

## halftan2hypexp

Returns an expression with sine, cosine, and tangent rewritten in terms of half-tangent, and sinh, cosh, and tanh rewritten in terms of the natural exponential.

```
halftan_hyp2exp(ExprTrig)
```

Example:

```
halftan_hyp2exp(sin(x)+sinh(x)) returns (2 · tan(x/2) / (tan(x/2)^2 + 1)) + (exp(x) - 1) / (exp(x) + 1)
```

## halt

Used in programming to go into step-by-step debugging mode.

## hamdist

Returns the Hamming distance between two integers.

`hamdist(Integer1, Integer2)`

Example:

`hamdist(0x12, 0x38)` gives 3

## has

Returns 1 if a variable is in an expression, and returns 0 otherwise.

`has(Expr, Var)`

Example:

`has(x+y, x)` gives 1

## head

Returns the first element of a given vector, sequence or string.

`head(Vector)` or `head(String)` or `head(Obj1, Obj2, ...)`

Example:

`head(1, 2, 3)` gives 1

## Heaviside

Returns the value of the Heaviside function for a given real number (i.e. 1 if  $x \geq 0$ , and 0 if  $x < 0$ ).

`Heaviside(Real)`

Example:

`Heaviside(1)` gives 1

## hyp2exp

Returns an expression with hyperbolic terms rewritten as exponentials.

`hyp2exp(Expr)`

Example:

`hyp2exp(cosh(x))` returns  $\frac{\exp(x) + \frac{1}{\exp(x)}}{2}$

## iabcuv

Returns  $[u, v]$  such that  $au + bv = c$  for three integers  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ . Note that  $c$  must be a multiple of the greatest common divisor of  $a$  and  $b$  for there to be a solution.

`iabcuv(Intgra, Intgrb, Intgrc)`

Example:

`iabcuv(21, 28, 7)` gives  $[-1, 1]$

## ibasis

Given two matrices, interprets them as two vector spaces and returns the vector basis of their intersection.

```
ibasis(Matrix1, Matrix2)
```

Example:

```
ibasis( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ ) returns [-1, -1, 0]
```

## icontent

Returns the greatest common divisor of the integer coefficients of a polynomial.

```
icontent(Poly, [Var])
```

Example:

```
icontent(24x^3+6x^2-12x+18) gives 6
```

## id

Returns a vector containing the solution to the identity function for the argument(s).

```
id(Object1, [Object2,...])
```

Example:

```
id([1 2], 3, 4) returns [[1 2] 3 4]
```

## identity

Given an integer n, returns the identity matrix of dimension n.

```
identity(Integer)
```

Example:

```
identity(3) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## iegcd

Returns the extended greatest common divisor of two integers.

```
iegcd(Integer1, Integer2)
```

Example:

```
iegcd(14, 21) returns [-1, 1, 7]
```

## igcd

Returns the greatest common divisor of two integers or two rational numbers or two polynomials of several variables.

```
igcd((Integer1, Integer2) or igcd(Ratn11, Ratn12) or igcd(Poly1, Poly2)
```

Example:

`igcd(24, 36)` returns 12

`igcd(2/3, 3/4)` returns 1/12

## interval2center

Returns the center of an interval.

`interval2center(Interval)`

Example:

`interval2center(2..5)` returns 7/2

## inv

Returns the inverse of an expression or matrix.

`inv(Expr)` or `inv(Matrix)`

Example:

`inv(9/5)` returns 5/9

## iPart

Returns a real number without its fractional part or a list of real numbers each without its fractional part.

`iPart(Real)` or `iPart(List)`

Example:

`iPart(4.3)` returns 4

## iquorem

Returns the Euclidean quotient and remainder of two integers.

`iquorem(Integer1, Integer2)`

Example:

`iquorem(63, 23)` returns [2, 17]

## jacobi\_symbol

Returns the kernel of a linear application of a matrix.

`jacobi_symbol(Integer1, Integer2)`

Example:

`jacobi_symbol(132, 5)` gives -1

## ker

Returns the Jacobi symbol of the given integers.

`ker(Matrix)`

Example:

`ker([[1 2], [3 6]])` returns `[2 1]`

## laplacian

Returns the Laplacian of an expression with respect to a vector of variables.

`laplacian(Expr, Vector)`

Example:

`laplacian(exp(z)*cos(x*y), [x, y, z])` returns  $-x^2 \cos(xy) \exp(z) - y^2 \cos(xy) \exp(z) + \cos(xy) \exp(z)$

## lcoeff

Returns the coefficient of the term of highest degree of a polynomial. The polynomial can be expressed in symbolic form or as a list.

`lcoeff(Poly)` or `lcoeff(List)` or `lcoeff(Vector)`

Example:

`lcoeff(-2*x^3+x^2+7*x)` returns `-2`

## legendre\_symbol

With a single integer  $n$ , returns the Legendre polynomial of degree  $n$ . With two integers, returns the Legendre symbol of the second integer, using the Legendre polynomial whose degree is the first integer.

`legendre_symbol(Integer1, [Integer2])`

Example:

`legendre(4)` gives  $35x^4/8 - 15x^2/4 + 3/8$  while `legendre(4,2)` returns  $443/8$  after simplification

## length

Returns the length of a list, string or set of objects.

`length(List)` or `length(String)` or `length(Object1, Object2, ...)`

Example:

`length([1, 2, 3])` gives `3`

## lgcd

Returns the greatest common divisor of a set of integers or polynomials, contained in a list, a vector, or just entered directly as arguments.

`lgcd(List)` or `lgcd(Vector)` or `lgcd(Integer1, Integer2, ...)` or `lgcd(Poly1, Poly2, ...)`

Example:

`lgcd([45, 75, 20, 15])` gives `5`

## lin

Returns an expression with the exponentials linearized.

`lin(Expr)`

Example:

`lin((exp(x)^3+exp(x))^2)` gives `exp(6*x)+2*exp(4*x)+exp(2*x)`

## linear\_interpolate

Takes a regular sample from a polygonal line defined by a matrix of two rows.

`linear_interpolate(Matrix, Xmin, Xmax, Xstep)`

Example:

`linear_interpolate([[1,2,6,9],[3,4,6,7]],1,9, 1)` returns  
[[1.0,2.0,3.0,4.0,5.0,6.0,7.0,8.0,9.0], [3.0,4.0,4.5,5.0,5.5,6.0,6.333333333333,6.6666 6666667,7.0]]

## linear\_regression

Given a set of points, returns a vector containing the coefficients a and b of  $y=a*x+b$ , the linear which best fits the set of points. The points may be the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.

`linear_regression(Matrix)` or `linear_regression(List1, List2)`

Example:

`linear_regression` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1.0 & 2.0 \\ 0.0 & 1.0 \\ 4.0 & 7.0 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns [1.53..., 0.769...]

## list2mat

Returns a matrix of n columns made by splitting a list into rows, each containing n terms. If the number of elements in the list is not divisible by n, then the matrix is completed with zeros.

`list2mat(List, Integer)`

Example:

`list2mat({1,8,4,9},1)` returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 8 \\ 4 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$

## lname

Returns a list of the variables in an expression.

`lname(Expr)`

Example:

`lname(exp(x)*2*sin(y))` gives [x,y]

## lnexpand

Returns the expanded form of a logarithmic expression.

`lnexpand(Expr)`

Example:

`lnexpand(ln(3*x))` gives  $\ln(3)+\ln(x)$

## logarithmic\_regression

Given a set of points, returns a vector containing the coefficients  $a$  and  $b$  of  $y=a*\ln(x)+b$ , the natural logarithmic function which best fits the set of points. The points may be the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.

`logarithmic_regression(Matrix)` or `logarithmic_regression(List1, List2)`

Example:

`logarithmic_regression`  $\begin{bmatrix} 1.0 & 1.0 \\ 2.0 & 4.0 \\ 3.0 & 9.0 \\ 4.0 & 9.0 \end{bmatrix}$  returns  $[6.3299..., 0.7207...]$

## logb

Returns the logarithm of base  $b$  of  $a$ .

`logb(a,b)`

Example:

`logb(5,2)` gives  $\ln(5)/\ln(2)$  which is approximately 2.32192809489

## logistic\_regression

Returns  $y$ ,  $y'$ ,  $C$ ,  $y'\max$ ,  $x\max$ , and  $R$ , where  $y$  is a logistic function (the solution of  $y'/y=a*y+b$ ), such that  $y(x_0)=y_0$  and where  $[y'(x_0), y'(x_0+1)...]$  is the best approximation of the line formed by the elements in the list  $L$ .

`logistic_regression(Lst(L), Real(x0), Real(y0))`

Example:

`logistic_regression([0.0,1.0,2.0,3.0,4.0],0.0,1.0)` gives  $[-17.77/(1+\exp(-0.496893925384*x+2.82232341488+3.14159265359*i)), -2.48542227469/(1+\cosh(-0.496893925384*x+2.82232341488+3.14159265359*i))]$

## lu

For a numerical matrix  $A$ , returns permutation  $P$ ,  $L$  and  $U$  such that  $PA=LU$ .

`lu(Matrix)`

Example:

`lu([1 2], [3 4])` returns  $[[1 2] [[1 0], [3 1]] [[1 2], [0 -2]]]$

## lvar

Given an expression, returns a list of the functions of the expression which utilize variables, including occurrences of the variables themselves.

`lvar(Expr)`

Example:

`lvar(e^(x)*2*sin(y) + ln(x))` returns  $[e^x(x) \sin(y) \ln(x)]$



## map

There are two uses for this function, in which the second argument is always a mapping of a variable onto an expression. If the expression is a function of the variable, the function is applied to each element in the vector or matrix (the first argument) and the resulting vector or matrix is returned; if the expression is a Boolean test, each element in the vector or matrix is tested and the results are returned as a vector or matrix. Each test returns either 0 (fail) or 1 (pass).

```
map(Matrix, Var → Function) or map(Matrix, Var → Test)
```

Example:

```
map([1 2 3], x→x3) returns [1 8 27]
```

```
map([1 2 3], x→ x>1) returns [0 1 1]
```

## mat2list

Returns a vector containing the elements of a matrix.

```
mat2list(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
mat2list([[1 8], [4 9]]) gives [1 8 4 9]
```

## matpow

Given a matrix and an integer n, returns the nth power of the matrix by jordanization.

```
matpow(Matrix, Integer)
```

Example:

```
matpow([ [1, 2], [3, 4] ], n) gives [(sqrt(33)-3)*((sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*-6/(-12*sqrt(33))+(-sqrt(33))-3)*((-sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*6/(-12*sqrt(33)),(sqrt(33)-3)*((sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*(-(sqrt(33))-3)/(-12*sqrt(33))+(-(sqrt(33))-3)*((-sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*(-(sqrt(33))+3)/(-12*sqrt(33))],[6*((sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*-6/(-12*sqrt(33))+6*((sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*6/(-12*sqrt(33)),6*((sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*(-(sqrt(33))-3)/(-12*sqrt(33))+6*((sqrt(33)+5)/2)^n*(-(sqrt(33))+3)/(-12*sqrt(33))]]
```

## matrix

Given two integers p and q, makes a matrix with p rows and q columns, filled with zeroes. Given a value as a third argument, returns a matrix filled with that value. Given a mapping using j and k, uses the mapping to fill the matrix (j is the current row and k the current column). This function can be used with the apply command as well.

```
matrix(p, q, [Value or Mapping(j,k)])
```

Example:

```
matrix(1, 3, 5) returns [5 5 5]
```

## MAXREAL

Returns the maximum real number that the HP Prime calculator is capable of representing in Home and CAS views: In the CAS, MAXREAL=1.79769313486\*10<sup>308</sup> In Home view, MAXREAL=9.99999999999E499

## mean

Returns the arithmetic mean of a list (with an optional list as a list of weights). With a matrix as argument, returns the mean of the columns.

```
mean(List1, [List2]) or mean(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
mean([1,2,3], [1,2,3]) gives 7/3
```

## median

Returns the median of a list (with an optional list as a list of weights). With a matrix as argument, returns the median of the columns.

```
median(List1, [List2]) or median(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
median([1,2,3,5,10,4]) gives 3.0
```

## member

Given a list or vector and an element, returns the index of the first occurrence of the element in the list or vector; if the element does not appear in the list or vector, returns 0. Similar to contains, except that the element comes first in the argument order.

```
member((Element, List) or contains(Element, Vector)
```

Example:

```
member(2, {0,1,2,3}) returns 3
```

## MINREAL

Returns the minimum real number (closest to zero) that the HP Prime calculator is capable of representing in Home and CAS views:

In the CAS, MINREAL=2.22507385851\*10<sup>-308</sup>

In Home view, MINREAL=1 E-499

## modgcd

Uses the modular algorithm to return the greatest common divisor of two polynomials.

```
modgcd(Poly1, Poly2)
```

Example:

```
modgcd(x^4-1, (x-1)^2) gives x-1
```

## mRow

Given an expression, a matrix, and an integer n, multiplies row n of the matrix by the expression.

```
mRow(Expr, Matrix, Integer)
```

Example:

$$\text{mRow}\left(12, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, 1\right) \text{ returns } \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 24 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

## mult\_c\_conjugate

If the given complex expression has a complex denominator, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the complex conjugate of the denominator. If the given complex expression does not have a complex denominator, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the complex conjugate of the numerator.

`mult_c_conjugate(Expr)`

Example:

$$\text{mult\_c\_conjugate}\left(\frac{1}{3+2\cdot i}\right) \text{ returns } \frac{1\cdot(3+2\cdot -i)}{(3+2\cdot i)\cdot(3+2\cdot -i)}$$

## mult\_conjugate

Takes an expression in which the numerator or the denominator contains a square root. If the denominator contains a square root, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the conjugate of the denominator. If the denominator does not contain a square root, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the conjugate of the numerator.

`mult_conjugate(Expr)`

Example:

$$\text{mult\_conjugate}(\sqrt{3}-\sqrt{2}) \text{ returns } \frac{(\sqrt{3}-\sqrt{2})\cdot(\sqrt{3}+\sqrt{2})}{\sqrt{3}+\sqrt{2}}$$

## nDeriv

Given an expression, a variable of differentiation, and a real number h, returns an approximate value of the derivative of the expression, using  $f'(x) = (f(x+h) - f(x-h)) / (2 \cdot h)$ .

Without a third argument, the value of h is set to 0.001; with a real as third argument, it is the value of h. With a variable as the third argument, returns the expression above with that variable in place of h.

`nDeriv(Expr, Var, Real)` or `nDeriv(Expr, Var1, Var2)`

Example:

$$\text{nDeriv}(f(x), x, h) \text{ returns } (f(x+h)-(f(x-h)))*0.5/h$$

## NEG

Unary minus. Enters the negative sign.

## normal

Returns the expanded irreducible form of an expression.

`normal(Expr)`

Example:

`normal(2*x^2)` gives  $4x$

## normalize

Given a vector, returns it divided by its  $l_2$  norm (where the  $l_2$  norm is the square root of the sum of the squares of the vector's coordinates).

Given a complex number, returns it divided by its modulus.

`normalize(Vector)` or `normalize(Complex)`

Example:

`normalize(3+4*i)` gives  $(3+4i)/5$

## NOT

Returns the logical inverse of a Boolean expression.

`not(Expr)`

## odd

Returns 1 if a given integer is odd, and returns 0 otherwise.

`odd(Integer)`

Example:

`odd(6)` gives 0

## OR

Logical Or. Returns 1 if either or both sides evaluates to true and 0 otherwise.

`Expr1 or Expr2`

Example:

`3 + 1 == 4 OR 8 < 5` returns 1

## order\_size

Returns the remainder (0 term) of a series expansion:  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (x^a \cdot \text{order\_size}(x)) = 0$  if  $a > 0$ .

`order_size(Expr)`

## pa2b2

Takes a prime integer  $n$  congruent to 1 modulo 4 and returns  $[a, b]$  such that  $a^2 + b^2 = n$ .

`pa2b2(Integer)`

Example:

`pa2b2(17)` gives  $[4, 1]$

## pade

Returns the Pade approximation of an expression, i.e. a rational fraction  $P/Q$  such that  $P/Q = \text{Expr} \bmod x^{(n+1)}$  or  $\bmod N$  with  $\text{degree}(P) < p$ .

`pade(Expr, Var, Integern, Integerp)`

Example:

`pade(exp(x), x, 5, 3)` returns  $\frac{-3 \cdot x^2 - 24 \cdot x - 60}{x^3 - 9 \cdot x^2 + 36 \cdot x - 60}$

## peval

Given a polynomial defined by a vector of coefficients, and a real value n, evaluates the polynomial at that value.

`peval(Vector, Value)`

Example:

`peval([1, 0, -2], 1)` returns -1

## PI

Inserts  $\pi$ .

## PIECEWISE

Used to define a piecewise-defined function. Takes as arguments pairs consisting of a condition and an expression. Each of these pairs defines a sub-function of the piecewise function and the domain over which it is active.

$$\text{PIECEWISE} \begin{cases} \text{Case1 if Test1} \\ \text{Case2 if Test2} \\ \dots \end{cases}$$

Example:

$$\text{PIECEWISE} \begin{cases} -x \text{ if } x < 0 \\ x^2 \text{ if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

Note that the syntax varies if the Entry setting is not set to Textbook:

`PIECEWISE(Case1, Test1, ...[ Casen, Testn])`

## plotinequation

Shows the graph of the solution of inequations with 2 variables.

`plotinequation(Expr, [x=xrange,y=yrange],[xstep],[ystep])`

## polar\_point

Given the radius and angle of a point in polar form, returns the point with rectangular coordinates in complex form.

`polar_point(Radius, Angle)`

Example:

`polar_point(2,  $\pi/3$ )` returns point  $\left(2 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i \cdot \sqrt{3}}{2}\right)\right)$

## pole

Given a circle and a line, returns the point for which the line is polar with respect to the circle.

```
pole(Circle, Line)
```

Example:

```
pole(circle(0, 1), line(1+i, 2)) returns point(1/2,1/2)
```

## POLYCOEF

Returns the coefficients of a polynomial with roots given in the vector or list argument.

```
POLYCOEF(Vector) or POLYCOEF(List)
```

Example:

```
POLYCOEF({-1, 1}) returns {1, 0, -1}
```

## POLYEVAL

Given a vector or list of coefficients and a value, evaluates the polynomial given by those coefficients at the given value.

```
POLYEVAL(Vector, Value) or POLYEVAL(List, Value)
```

Example:

```
POLYEVAL({1, 0, -1}, 3) returns 8
```

## polygon

Draws the polygon whose vertices are elements in a list.

```
polygon(Point1, Point2, ..., Pointn)
```

Example:

```
polygon(GA, GB, GD) draws  $\triangle ABD$ 
```

## polygonplot

Used in the Geometry app Symbolic view. Given an  $n \times m$  matrix, draws and connects the points  $(x_k, y_k)$ , where  $x_k$  is the element in row  $k$  and column 1, and  $y_k$  is the element in row  $k$  and column  $j$  (with  $j$  fixed for  $k=1$  to  $n$  rows). Thus, each column pairing generates its own figure, resulting in  $m-1$  figures.

```
polygonplot(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
polygonplot( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ ) draws two figures, each with three points connected by segments.
```

## polygonscatterplot

Used in the Geometry app Symbolic view. Given an  $n \times m$  matrix, draws and connects the points  $(x_k, y_k)$ , where  $x_k$  is the element in row  $k$  and column 1, and  $y_k$  is the element in row  $k$  and column  $j$  (with  $j$  fixed for  $k=1$  to  $n$  rows). Thus, each column pairing generates its own figure, resulting in  $m-1$  figures.

```
polygonscatterplot(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
polygonscatterplot( $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ ) draws two figures, each with three points connected by segments.
```

## polynomial\_regression

Given a set of points defined by two lists, and a positive integer  $n$ , returns a vector containing the coefficients  $(a_n, a_{n-1} \dots a_0)$  of  $y = a_n \cdot x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \dots a_1 \cdot x + a_0$ , the  $n$ th order polynomial which best approximates the given points.

```
polynomial_regression(List1, List2, Integer)
```

Example:

```
polynomial_regression({1, 2, 3, 4}, {1, 4, 9, 16}, 3) returns [0 1 0 0]
```

## POLYROOT

Returns the zeros of the polynomial given as a vector of coefficients.

```
POLYROOT(Vector)
```

Example:

```
POLYROOT([1 0 -1]) returns [-1, 1]
```

## potential

Returns a function whose gradient is the vector field defined by a vector and a vector of variables.

```
potential(Vector1, Vector2)
```

Example:

```
potential([2*x*y+3, x^2-4*z, -4*y], [x, y, z]) returns x2*y+3*x-4*y*z
```

## power\_regression

Given a set of points defined by two lists, returns a vector containing the coefficients  $m$  and  $b$  of  $y=b \cdot x^m$ , the monomial which best approximates the given points.

```
power_regression(List1, List2)
```

Example:

```
power_regression({1, 2, 3, 4}, {1, 4, 9, 16}) returns [2 1]
```

## powerpc

Given a circle and a point, returns the real number  $d^2-r^2$ , where  $d$  is the distance between the point and the center of the circle, and  $r$  is the radius of the circle.

```
powerpc(Circle, Point)
```

Example:

```
powerpc(circle(0, 1+i), 3+i) gives 8
```

## prepend

Adds an element to the beginning of a list or vector.

```
prepend(List, Element) or prepend(Vector, Element)
```

Example:

```
prepend([1, 2], 3) gives [3, 1, 2]
```

## primpart

Returns a polynomial divided by the greatest common divisor of its coefficients.

```
primpart(Poly, [Var])
```

Example:

```
primpart(2x^2+10x+6) gives x^2+5*x+3
```

## product

With an expression as the first argument, returns the product of solutions when the variable in the expression goes from a minimum value to a maximum value by a given step. If no step is provided, it is taken as 1.

With a list as the first argument, returns the product of the values in the list.

With a matrix as the first argument, returns the element-by-element product of the matrix.

```
product(Expr, Var, Min, Max, Step) or product(List) or product(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
product(n, n, 1, 10, 2) gives 945
```

## propfrac

Returns a fraction or rational fraction  $A/B$  simplified to  $Q+r/B$ , where  $R < B$  or the degree of  $R$  is less than the degree of  $B$ .

```
propfrac(Fraction) or propfrac(RatFrac)
```

Example:

```
propfrac(28/12) gives 2+1/3
```

## ptayl

Given a polynomial  $P$  and a value  $a$ , returns the Taylor polynomial  $Q$  such that  $P(x) = Q(x - a)$ .

```
ptayl(Poly, Value, [Var])
```

Example:

```
ptayl(x^2+2*x+1, 1) gives x^2+4*x+4
```

## purge

Unassigns a variable name

```
purge(Var)
```



## Q2a

Given a quadratic form and a vector of variables, returns the matrix of the quadratic form with respect to the given variables.

```
q2a(Expr, Vector)
```

Example:

```
q2a(x^2+2*x*y+2*y^2, [x, y]) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## quantile

Given a list or vector, and a quantile value between 0 and 1, returns the corresponding quantile of the elements of the list or vector.

```
quantile(List, Value) or quantile(Vector, Value)
```

Example:

```
quantile([0, 1, 3, 4, 2, 5, 6], 0.25) returns 1
```

## quartile1

Given a list or vector, returns the first quartile of the elements of the list or vector. Given a matrix, returns the first quartile of the columns of the matrix.

```
quartile1(List) or quartile1(Vector) or quartile1(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
quartile1([1, 2, 3, 5, 10, 4]) gives 2
```

## quartile3

Given a list or vector, returns the third quartile of the elements of the list or vector. Given a matrix, returns the third quartile of the columns of the matrix.

```
quartile3(List) or quartile3(Vector) or quartile3(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
quartile3([1, 2, 3, 5, 10, 4]) returns 5
```

## quartiles

Returns a matrix containing the minimum, first quartile, median, third quartile, and maximum of the elements of a list or vector. With a matrix as argument, returns the 5-number summary of the columns of the matrix.

```
quartiles(List) or quartiles(Vector) or quartiles(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
quartiles([1, 2, 3, 5, 10, 4]) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 5 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## quorem

Returns the Euclidean quotient and remainder of the quotient of two polynomials, each expressed either in symbolic form directly or as a vector of coefficients. If the polynomials are expressed as vectors of their coefficients, this command returns a similar vector of the quotient and a vector of the remainder.

```
quorem(Poly1, Poly2) or quorem(Vector1, Vector2)
```

Example:

```
quorem(x^3+2*x^2+3*x+4, -x+2) returns [-x^2-4*x- 11, 26]
```

```
quorem([1, 2, 3, 4], [-1, 2]) returns [[-1, -4, -11] [26]]
```

## QUOTE

Returns an expression unevaluated.

```
quote(Expr)
```

## randexp

Given a positive real number, returns a random real number according to the exponential distribution with real  $a > 0$ .

```
randexp(Real)
```

## randperm

Given a positive integer, returns a random permutation of  $[0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1]$ .

```
randperm(Intg(n))
```

Example:

```
randperm(4) returns a random permutation of the elements of the vector [0 1 2 3]
```

## randvector

Given an integer  $n$ , returns a vector of size  $n$  that contains random integers in the range  $-99$  through  $99$  with uniform distribution. With an optional second integer  $m$ , returns a vector filled with integers in the range  $(0, m]$ . With an optional interval as second argument, fills the vector with real numbers in that interval.

```
randvector(n, [m or p..q])
```

## ranm

Given one integer  $n$ , returns a vector of size  $n$  containing random integers in the range  $[-99, 99]$ , with uniform distribution. Given two integers  $n$  and  $m$ , returns an  $n \times m$  matrix. With an interval as the final argument, returns a vector or matrix whose elements are random real numbers confined to that interval.

## ratnormal

Rewrites an expression as an irreducible rational fraction.

```
ratnormal(Expr)
```

Example:

`ratnormal( $\frac{x^2-1}{x^3-1}$ )` returns  $\frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}$

## rectangular\_coordinate

Given a vector containing the polar coordinates of a point, returns a vector containing the rectangular coordinates of the point.

`rectangular_coordinates(Vector)`

Example:

`rectangular_coordinates([1,  $\pi/4$ ])` returns  $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

## reduced\_conic

Takes a conic expression and returns a vector with the following items:

- The origin of the conic
- The matrix of a basis in which the conic is reduced
- 0 or 1 (0 if the conic is degenerate)
- The reduced equation of the conic
- A vector of the conic's parametric equations

`reduced_conic(Expr, [Vector])`

Example:

`reduced_conic( $x^2+2\cdot x-2\cdot y+1$ )` returns

$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} 1y^2+2\cdot x \left[ -1+(-i)\cdot\left(-\frac{1}{2}\cdot x\cdot x+i\cdot x\right) x-4\cdot 0.1x^2+2\cdot x-2\cdot y+1-1+(-i)\cdot\left(-\frac{1}{2}\cdot x\cdot x+(i)\cdot x\right) \right]$

## ref

Performs Gaussian reduction of a matrix.

`ref(Matrix)`

Example:

`ref $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$`  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

## remove

Given a vector or list, removes the occurrences of Value or removes the values that make Test true and returns the resulting vector or list.

`remove(Value, List)` or `remove(Test, List)`

Example:

`remove(5, {1, 2, 5, 6, 7, 5})` returns {1,2,6,7}

`remove( $x \rightarrow x \geq 5$ , [1 2 5 6 7 5])` returns [1 2]

## reorder

Given an expression and a vector of variables, reorders the variables in the expression according to the order given in the vector.

```
reorder(Expr, Vector)
```

Example:

```
reorder(x2+2*x+y2, [y, x]) gives y2+x2+2*x
```

## residue

Returns the residue of an expression at a value.

```
residue(Expr, Var, Value)
```

Example:

```
residue(1/z, z, 0) returns 1
```

## restart

Purges all the variables.

```
restart(NULL)
```

## resultant

Returns the resultant (i.e. the determinant of the Sylvester matrix) of two polynomials.

```
resultant(Poly1, Poly2, Var)
```

Example:

```
resultant(x3+x+1, x2-x-2, x) returns -11
```

## revlist

Reverses the order of the elements in a list or vector.

```
revlist(List) or revlist(Vector)
```

Example:

```
revlist([1, 2, 3]) returns [3, 2, 1]
```

## romberg

Uses Romberg's method to return the approximate value of a definite integral.

```
romberg(Expr, Var, Val1, Val2)
```

Example:

```
romberg(exp(x2), x, 0, 1) gives 1.46265174591
```

## row

Given a matrix and an integer n, returns the row n of the matrix. Given a matrix and an interval, returns a vector containing the rows of the matrix indicated by the interval.

`row(Matrix, Integer)` or `row(Matrix, Interval)`

Example:

`row` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, 2\right)$  returns `[4 5 6]`

## rowAdd

Given a matrix and two integers, returns the matrix obtained from the given matrix after the row indicated by the second integer is replaced by the sum of the rows indicated by the two integers.

`rowAdd(Matrix, Integer1, Integer2)`

Example:

`rowAdd` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, 1, 2\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 6 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

## rowDim

Returns the number of rows of a matrix.

`rowDim(Matrix)`

Example:

`rowDim` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  gives 2

## rowSwap

Given a matrix and two integers, returns the matrix obtained from the given matrix after swapping the two rows indicated by the two integers.

`rowSwap(Matrix, Integer1, Integer2)`

Example:

`rowSwap` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, 1, 2\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

## rsolve

Given an expression defining a recurrence relation, a variable, and an initial condition, returns the closed form solution (if possible) of the recurrent sequence. Given three lists, each containing multiple items of the above nature, solves the system of recurrent sequences.

`rsolve(Expr, Var, Condition)` or `rsolve(List1, List2, List3)`

Example:

`rsolve(u(n+1)=2*u(n)+n, u(n), u(0)=1)` returns `[-n+2*2n-1]`

## select

Given a test expression in a single variable and a list or vector, tests each element in the list or vector and returns a list or vector containing the elements that satisfy the test.

```
select(Test, List) or select(Test, Vector)
```

Example:

```
select(x→x>=5, [1,2,6,7]) returns [6,7]
```

## seq

Given an expression, a variable defined over an interval, and a step value, returns a vector containing the sequence obtained when the expression is evaluated within the given interval using the given step. If no step is provided, the step used is 1.

```
seq(Expr, Var=Interval, [Step])
```

Example:

```
seq(2k, k=0..8) gives [1,2,4,8,16,32,64,128,256]
```

## seqsolve

Similar to rsolve. Given an expression defining a recurrence relation in terms of  $n$  and/or the previous term ( $x$ ), followed by a vector of variables and an initial condition for  $x$  (the 0th term), returns the closed form solution (if possible) for the recurrent sequence. Given three lists, each containing multiple items of the above nature, solves the system of recurrent sequences.

```
seqsolve(Expr, Vector, Condition) or seqsolve(List1, List2, List3)
```

Example:

```
seqsolve(2x+n, [x,n], 1) gives -n-1+2*2n
```

## shift\_phase

Returns the result of applying a phase shift of  $\pi/2$  to a trigonometric expression.

```
shift_phase(Expr)
```

Example:

```
shift_phase(sin(x)) gives -cos((pi+2*x)/2)
```

## signature

Returns the signature of a permutation.

```
signature(Vector)
```

Example:

```
signature([2 1 4 5 3]) returns -1
```

## simult

Returns the solution to a system of linear equations or several systems of linear equations presented in matrix form. In the case of one system of linear equations, takes a matrix of coefficients and a column matrix of constants, and returns the column matrix of the solution.

```
simult(Matrix1, Matrix2)
```

Example:

```
simult( $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ ) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## sincos

Returns an expression with the complex exponentials rewritten in terms of sin and cos.

```
sincos(Expr)
```

Example:

```
sincos(exp(i*x)) gives cos(x)+(i)*sin(x)
```

## spline

Given two lists or vectors (one for the x-values and one for the y-values), as well as a variable and an integer degree, returns the natural spline through the points given by the two lists. The polynomials in the spline are in terms of the given variable and are of the given degree.

```
spline(ListX, ListY, Var, Integer) or spline(VectorX, VectorY, Var, Integer)
```

Example:

```
spline({0,1,2},{1,3,0},x,3) returns
```

$$\left[ \frac{-5}{4} \cdot x^3 + \frac{13}{4} \cdot x + 1 \quad \frac{5}{4} \cdot (x-1)^3 + \frac{-15}{4} \cdot (x-1)^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot (x-1) + 3 \right]$$

## sqrfree

Returns the factorization of the argument, gathering the terms with the same exponent.

```
sqrfree(Expr)
```

Example:

```
sqrfree((x-2)^7*(x+2)^7*(x^4-2*x^2+1)) returns (x^2-1)^2*(x^2-4)^7
```

## sqrt

Returns the square root of an expression.

```
sqrt(Expr)
```

Example:

```
sqrt(50) gives 5*sqrt(2)
```

## rand

Returns an integer and initializes the sequence of random numbers.

```
rand or rand(Integer)
```

## stddev

Returns the standard deviation of the elements of a list or a list of the standard deviations of the columns of a matrix. The optional second list is a list of weights.

```
stddev(List1, [List2]) or stddev(Vector1, [Vector2]) or stddev(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
stddev({1,2,3}) returns  $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}$ 
```

## stddevp

Returns the population standard deviation of the elements of a list or a list of the population standard deviations of the columns of a matrix. The optional second list is a list of weights.

```
stddevp(List1, [List2]) or stddevp(Vector1, [Vector2]) or stddevp(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
stddevp({1,2,3}) gives 1
```

## sto

Stores a real or string in a variable.

```
sto((Real or Str),Var)
```

## sturmseq

Returns the Sturm sequence for a polynomial or a rational fraction.

```
sturmseq(Poly, [Var])
```

Example:

```
sturmseq(x^3-1,x) gives [1 [[1 0 0 -1] [3 0 0] 9] 1]
```

## subMat

Extracts from a matrix a sub matrix whose diagonal is defined by four integers. The first two integers define the row and column of the first element and the last two integers define the row and column of the last element of the sub matrix.

```
subMat(Matrix, Int1, Int2, Int3, Int4)
```

Example:

```
subMat( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ , 2, 1, 3, 2) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## suppress

Given a list and an element, deletes the first occurrence of the element in the list (if there is one) and returns the result.

```
suppress(List, Element)
```

Example:



`suppress([0 1 2 3 2], 2)` returns `[0 1 3 2]`

## surd

Given an expression and an integer  $n$ , returns the expression raised to the power  $1/n$ .

`surd(Expr, Integer)`

Example:

`surd(8, 3)` gives 2

## sylvester

Returns the Sylvester matrix of two polynomials.

`sylvester(Poly1, Poly2, Var)`

Example:

`sylvester(x2-1, x3-1, x)` gives 
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

## table

Defines an array where the indexes are strings or real numbers.

`table(SeqEqual(index_name=element_value))`

## tail

Given a list, string, or sequence of objects, returns a vector with the first element deleted.

`tail(List)` or `tail(Vector)` or `tail(String)` or `tail(Obj1, Obj2, ...)`

Example:

`tail([3 2 4 1 0])` gives `[2 4 1 0]`

## tan2cossin2

Returns an expression with  $\tan(x)$  rewritten as  $(1-\cos(2x))/\sin(2x)$ .

`tan2cossin2(Expr)`

Example:

`tan2cossin2(tan(x))` gives  $(1-\cos(2x))/\sin(2x)$

## tan2sincos2

Returns an expression with  $\tan(x)$  rewritten as  $\sin(2x)/(1+\cos(2x))$ .

`tan2sincos2(Expr)`

Example:

`tan2sincos2(tan(x))` gives  $\sin(2x)/(1+\cos(2x))$

## transpose

Returns a matrix transposed (without conjugation).

```
transpose(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
transpose( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ ) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## trunc

Given a value or list of values, as well as an integer n, returns the value or list truncated to n decimal places. If n is not provided, it is taken as 0. Accepts complex numbers.

```
trunc(Real, Integer) or trunc(List, Integer)
```

Example:

```
trunc(4.3) gives 4
```

## tsimplify

Returns an expression with transcendentals rewritten as complex exponentials.

```
tsimplify(Expr)
```

Example:

```
tsimplify(exp(2*x)+exp(x)) gives exp(x)^2+exp(x)
```

## type

Returns the type of an expression (e.g. list, string).

```
type(Expr)
```

Example:

```
type("abc") gives DOM_STRING
```

## unapply

Returns the function defined by an expression and a variable.

```
unapply(Expr, Var)
```

Example:

```
unapply(2*x^2, x) gives (x)→2*x^2
```

## union

The union command is an infix operator between two objects that are vectors, matrices, or lists. Given two matrices with the same number of columns, returns the union of the matrices as a matrix with the same number of column. Given two lists, returns the union of the lists as a vector.

## UTPC

Upper-tail probability for the Chi-Square distributions. Given degrees of freedom and a value, returns the probability that a  $X^2$  random variable with the given degrees of freedom is greater than value.

```
UTPC(degrees, value)
```

Example:

```
UTPC(3, 10) returns 0.018566135463
```

## UTPF

Upper-tail probability for Snedecor's F-distributions. Given numerator degrees of freedom, denominator degrees of freedom, and a value, returns the probability that a Snedecor F random variable is greater than value.

```
UTPF(numerator, denominator, value)
```

Example:

```
UTPF(3, 4, 5) returns 0.077018715403
```

## UTPN

Upper-tail probability for the Normal distributions. Given a mean and variance that defines a normal distribution, as well as a value, returns the probability that a normal random variable has a value greater than value.

```
UTPN(mean, variance, value)
```

Example:

```
UTPN(0, 1, 2) returns 0.022750131948 after approximation
```

## UTPT

Upper-tail probability for the Student's t-distributions. Given degrees of freedom and a value, returns the probability that a Student's t random variable with the given degrees of freedom is greater than value.

```
UTPT(degrees, value)
```

Example:

```
UTPT(3, 10) returns 0.001064199529
```

## valuation

Returns the valuation (degree of the term of lowest degree) of a polynomial. With only a polynomial as argument, the valuation returned is for x. With a variable as second argument, the valuation is performed for it.

```
valuation(Poly, [Var])
```

Example:

```
valuation(x^4+x^3) gives 3
```

## variance

Returns the variance of a list or the list of variances of the columns of a matrix. The optional second list is a list of weights.

```
variance(List1, [List2]) or variance(Matrix)
```

Example:

```
variance({3, 4, 2}) returns 2/3
```

## vpotential

Given a vector V and a vector of variables, returns the vector U such that  $\text{curl}(U)=V$ .

```
vpotential(Vector1, Vector2)
```

Example:

```
vpotential([2*x*y+3, x^2-4*z, -2*y*z], [x, y, z]) returns  
 $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 \cdot x \cdot y \cdot z & 4 \cdot x \cdot z - \frac{1}{3} \cdot x^3 + 3 \cdot y \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## when

Used to introduce a conditional statement.

## XOR

Exclusive or. Returns 1 if the first expression is true and the second expression is false or if the first expression is false and the second expression is true. Returns 0 otherwise.

```
Expr1 XOR Expr2
```

Example:

```
0 XOR 1 returns 1
```

## zip

Applies a bivariate function to the elements of two lists or vectors and returns the results in a vector. Without the default value the length of the vector is the minimum of the lengths of the two lists; with the default value, the shorter list is padded with the default value.

```
zip('function' List1, List2, Default) or zip('function', Vector1, Vector2,  
Default)
```

Example:

```
zip('+', [a, b, c, d], [1, 2, 3, 4]) returns [a+1 b+2 c+3 d+4]
```

## ztrans

z transform of a sequence.

```
ztrans(Expr, [Var], [ZtransVar])
```

Example:

```
ztrans(a^n, n, z) returns -z/(a-z)
```

I

Found in the Catalog menu and the Template menu, the where command has several uses associated with variable declarations. For one, it is used to substitute values for one or more variables in an expression. It can also be used to define the domain of a variable.

`Expr|Var=Val` or `Expr|{Var1=Val1, Var2=Val2...Varn=Valn}` or `Expr|Var>n` or `Expr|Var<n` and so on.

Examples:

`(X+Y) | {X=2, Y=6}` returns 8

`int((1-x)^p|p>0, x, 0, 1)` returns  $((-x+1)^{(p+1)})/(-p-1)$

2

Returns the square of an expression.

$(\text{Expr})^2$

$\pi$

Inserts pi.

$\partial$

Inserts a template for a partial derivative expression.

$\Sigma$

Inserts a template for a summation expression.

-

Inserts a minus sign.

$\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$

Inserts a square root sign.

$\int$

Inserts a template for an antiderivative expression.

$\neq$

Inequality test. Returns 1 if the left and right sides are not equal and 0 if they are equal.

$\leq$

Less than or equal inequality test. Returns 1 if the left side of the inequality is less than the right side or if the two sides are equal, and 0 otherwise.

≥

Greater than or equal inequality test. Returns 1 if the left side of the inequality is greater than the right side or if the two sides are equal, and 0 otherwise.

►

Evaluates the expression then stores the result in variable *var*. Note that  $\pi$  cannot be used with the graphics G0–G9. See the command BLIT.

expression ► var

*i*

Inserts the imaginary number *i*.

–1

Returns the inverse of an expression.

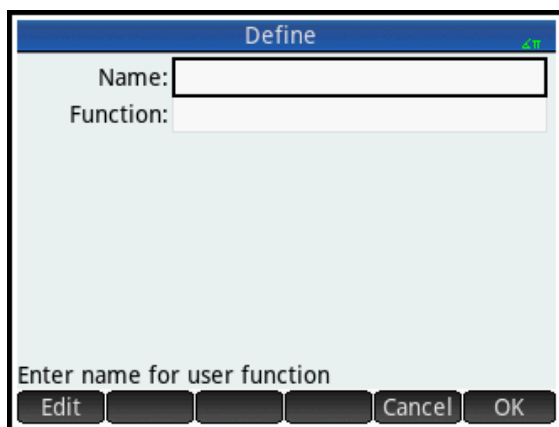
(Expr)<sup>–1</sup>

## Creating your own functions

You can create your own function by writing a program (see chapter 5) or by using the simpler `DEFINE` functionality. Functions you create yourself appear on the User menu (one of the Toolbox menus).

Suppose you wanted to create the function `SINCOS(A,B)=SIN(A)+COS(B)+C`.

1. Press **Shift** **xtθπ** (Define).



2. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the function—for example, `SINCOS`—and tap **OK**.


3. In the **Function** field, enter the function.
- 

New fields appear below your function, one for each variable used in defining it. You need to decide which ones are to be input arguments for your functions and which ones are global variables whose values are not input within the function. In this example, we'll make A and B input variables, so our new function takes two arguments. The value of C will be provided by global variable C (which by default is zero).

4. Make sure that A and B are selected and C is not.
5. Tap .

You can run your function by entering it on the entry line in Home view, or by selecting it from the USER menu. You enter the value for each variable you chose to be a parameter. In this example, we chose A and B to be parameters. Thus you might enter SINCOS(0.5, 0.75). With C=0 and in radians mode, this would return 1.211...

## 23 Variables

Variables are objects that have names and contain data. They are used to store data, either for later use or to control settings in the Prime system. There are four types of variables, all of which can be found in the **Vars** menu by pressing :

- Home variables
- CAS variables
- App variables
- User variables

The Home and app variables all have names reserved for them. They are also typed; that is, they can contain only certain types of objects. For example, the Home variable *A* can only contain a real number. You use Home variables to store data that is important to you, such as matrices, lists, real numbers, etc. You use app variables to store data in apps or to change app settings. You can accomplish these same tasks via the user interface of an app, but app variables give you a quick way of doing these tasks, either from Home or within a program. For example, you can store the expression “*SIN(X)*” in the Function app variable *F1* in Home View, or you could open the Function app, navigate to *F1(X)*, and enter *SIN(X)* in that field.

CAS and user variables can be created by the user and they have no particular type. Their names may be of any length as well. Thus, *diff(t2, t)* returns  $2*t$  and *diff((bt)2, bt)* returns  $2*bt$  for the CAS variables *t* and *bt*. Further evaluation of  $2*bt$  will only return  $2*bt$ , unless an object has been stored in *bt*. For example, if you enter *bt* := {1, 2, 3} and then enter *diff((bt)2, bt)*, the CAS will still return  $2*bt$ . But if you evaluate that result (using the **EVAL** command), the CAS will now return {2, 4, 6}.


User variables are explicitly created by the user. You create user variables either in a program or by assignment in Home view. User variables created in a program are either declared as local or exported as global. User variables created by assignment or exported from a program will show up in the Vars User menu. Local variables exist only within their own program.

The following sections describe the various processes associated with variables, such as creating them, storing objects in them, and retrieving their contents. The rest of the chapter contains tables that list all the Home and app variable names.

### Working with variables




#### Working with Home variables

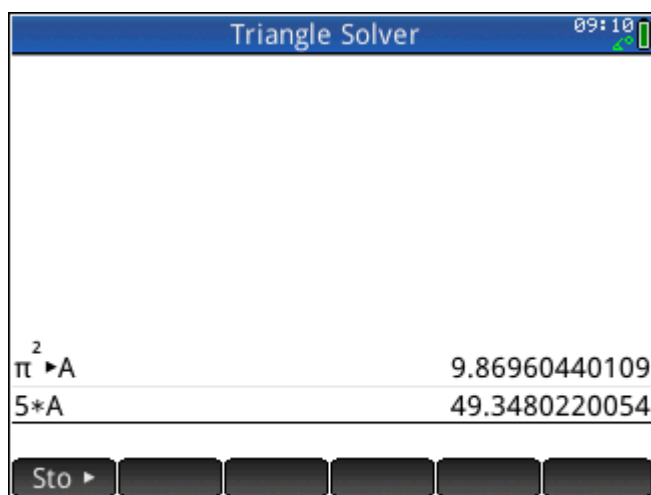
**Example 1:** Assign  $\pi^2$  to the Home variable *A* and then calculate  $5*A$

1. Press  to display Home view.
2. Assign  $\pi^2$  to *A*:






3. Multiply A by 5:   



This example illustrates the process for storing and using any Home variable, not just the Real Home variables A–Z. It is important to match the object you want to store to the correct type of Home variable. See [Home variables on page 422](#) for details.



## Working with user variables

**Example 2:** Create a variable called ME and assign  $\pi^2$  to it.

1. Press  to display Home view.

2. Assign  $\pi^2$  to ME:

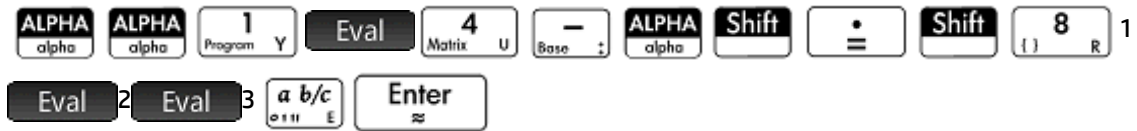


3. A message appears asking if you want to create a variable called ME. Tap  or press  to confirm your intention.

You can now use that variable in subsequent calculations: ME\*3 will yield 29.6..., for example.

**Example 3:** You can also store objects in variables using the assignment operator: Name :=Object. In this example, we'll store {1, 2, 3} in the user variable YOU.

1. Assign the list to the variable using the assignment operator:=.



2. A message appears asking if you want to create a variable called `YOU`. Tap **OK** or press **Enter** to confirm your intention.

The variable `YOU` is created and contains the list `{1, 2, 3}`. You can now use that variable in subsequent calculations: For example, `YOU+60` will return `{61, 62, 63}`.

## Working with app variables

Just as you can assign values to Home and user variables, you can assign values to app variables. You can modify Home settings on the Home Settings screen ( **Shift** **Settings** ). But you can also modify a Home setting from Home view by assigning a value to the variable that represents that setting. For example, entering `Base:=0` **Enter** in Home view forces the Home settings field **Integer** (for the integer base) to binary. A value of 1 would force it to octal, 2 to decimal, and 3 to hex. Another example: you can change the angle measure setting from radians to degrees by entering `HAngle:=0` **Enter** in Home view.

Entering `HAngle:=0` **Enter** forces the setting to return to radians.

You can see what value has been assigned to a variable—whether Home, app, or user—by entering its name in Home view and pressing **Enter**. You can enter the name letter by letter, or choose the variable from the Variables menu by pressing **Vars**.

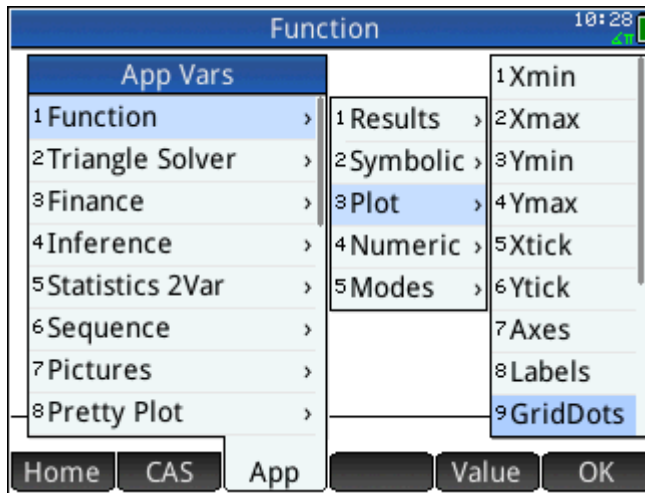
## More about the Vars menu




Besides the four variable menus, the **Vars** menu contains a toggle. If you want the value of a variable instead of its name when you choose it from the **Vars** menu, tap **Value**. A white dot will appear next to the menu button label to indicate that it is active and that variable values rather than names will be returned upon selection.

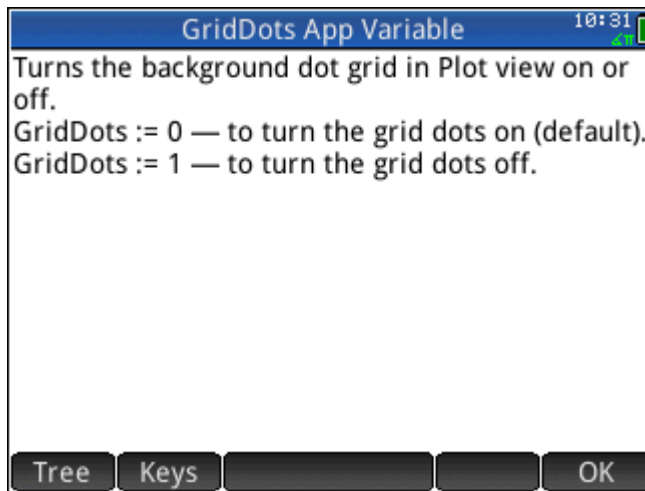
For the Home and app variables, use the **Vars** menu to get help on the purpose of any of these variables. Select the variable of interest and press **Help User**. Suppose, for example, that you wanted to get help on the Function app variable `GridDots`:

1. Press **Vars** to open the **Vars** menu.

2. Tap **App** to open the app variables menu. (If you were interested in a Home variable instead, you would tap **Home** instead.)



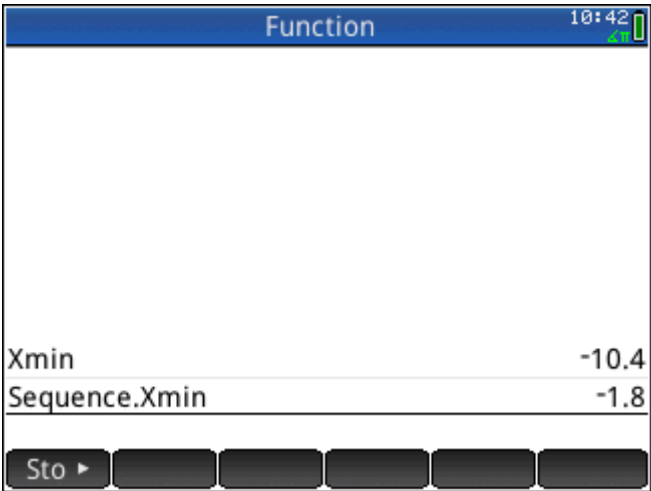
3. Use the cursor keys to navigate to the variable of interest.
4. Press  to see the help about that variable.
5. Tap  to exit or  to return to the current **Vars** submenu.





## Qualifying variables






Some app variable names are shared by multiple apps. For example, the Function app has a variable named `Xmin`, but so too does the Polar app, the Parametric app, the Sequence app, and the Solve app. Although named identically, these variables usually hold different values. If you attempt to retrieve the contents of a variable that is used in more than one app by entering just its name in Home view, you will get the contents of that version of the variable in the current app. For example, if the Function app is active and you enter `Xmin` in Home view, you will get the value of `Xmin` from the Function app. If you want the value of `Xmin` from, say, the Sequence app, you must qualify the variable name. Enter `Sequence.Xmin` to retrieve the value of `Xmin` from the Sequence app.

In the following figure, the value of  $X_{min}$  from the Function app was retrieved first (–10.4...). The qualified variable name entered second retrieved the value of  $X_{min}$  from the Sequence app (–1.8).






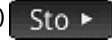


Note the syntax required: `app_name.variable_name`.

The app can be any of the 18 HP apps, or one you have created based on a built-in app. The name of the app variable must match a name listed in the app variables tables below. Spaces are not allowed in an app name and must be represented by the underscore character:   .

 **TIP:** Non-standard characters in variables name—such as  $\Sigma$  and  $\sigma$ —can be entered by selecting them from the special symbols palette (   ) or from the characters menu (   ).

## Home variables

The Home variables are accessed by pressing a and tapping  .

| Category | Names   |
|----------|---|
| Real     | A to Z and $\theta$<br>For example, 7.45  A  |
| Complex  | Z0 to Z9<br>For example, $2+3i$  Z1 or (2,3)  Z1 (depending on your Complex number settings) |
| List     | L0 to L9<br>For example, {1,2,3}  L1.  |
| Matrix   | M0 to M9<br>Store matrices and vectors in these variables.<br>For example, $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$  M1.   |

| Category | Names    |
|----------|----------|
| Graphics | G0 to G9 |
| Settings | HAngle   |
|          | HFormat  |
|          | HDigits  |
|          | HComplex |
|          | Date     |
|          | Time     |
|          | Language |
|          | Entry    |
|          | Integer  |
|          | Base     |
|          | Bits     |
|          | Signed   |

## App variables

The app variables are accessed by pressing **a** and tapping **.** They are grouped below by app. Note that if you have customized a built-in app, your app will appear on the App variables menu under the name you gave it. You access the variables in a customized app in the same way that you access the variables in built-in apps.

## Function app variables

| Category                  | Names      |
|---------------------------|------------|
| Results (explained below) | SignedArea |
|                           | Extremum   |
|                           | Isect      |
| Symbolic                  | F1         |
|                           | F2         |
|                           | F3         |
|                           | F4         |
|                           | F5         |
| Plot                      | Root       |
|                           | Slope      |
|                           | F6         |
|                           | F7         |
|                           | F8         |
|                           | F9         |
|                           | F0         |
|                           | Xmin       |
|                           | Xtick      |
|                           | Xzoom      |
|                           | Ymax       |
|                           | Ymin       |
|                           | Ytick      |
|                           | Yzoom      |

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
|          | Xmax     |         |
| Numeric  | NumStart | NumType |
|          | NumStep  | NumZoom |
|          | NumIndep |         |
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

## Results variables

### Extremum

Contains the value from the last use of the Extremum function from the **Fcn** menu in the Plot view of the Function app. The app function EXTREMUM does not store results to this variable.

### Isect

Contains the value from the last use of the Isect function from the **Fcn** menu in the Plot view of the Function app. The app function ISECT does not store results to this variable.

### Root

Contains the value from the last use of the Root function from the **Fcn** menu in the Plot view of the Function app. The app function ROOT does not store results to this variable.

### SignedArea

Contains the value from the last use of the Signed Area function from the **Fcn** menu in the Plot view of the Function app. The app function AREA does not store results to this variable.

### Slope

Contains the value from the last use of the Slope function from the **Fcn** menu in the Plot view of the Function app. The app function SLOPE does not store results to this variable.

## Geometry app variables

| Category | Names     |            |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| Plot     | Axes      | GridDots   |
|          | GridLines | Labels     |
|          | PixSize   | ScrollText |
|          | Xmax      | Xmin       |
|          | Ymax      | Ymin       |
|          | XTick     | Ytick      |
|          |           |            |
| Modes    | AAngle    | ADigits    |

| Category | Names            |
|----------|------------------|
|          | AComplex AFormat |

## Spreadsheet app variables

| Category | Names              |
|----------|--------------------|
| Numeric  | ColWidth RowHeight |
|          | Row Col            |
|          | Cell               |
| Modes    | AAngle ADigits     |
|          | AComplex AFormat   |

## Solve app variables

| Category                  | Names            |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| Results (explained below) | SignedArea Root  |
|                           | Extremum Slope   |
|                           | Isect            |
| Symbolic                  | E1 E6            |
|                           | E2 E7            |
|                           | E3 E8            |
|                           | E4 E9            |
|                           | E5 E0            |
| Plot                      | Axes Xmin        |
|                           | Cursor Xtick     |
|                           | GridDots Xzoom   |
|                           | GridLines Ymax   |
|                           | Labels Ymin      |
|                           | Method Ytick     |
|                           | Recenter Yzoom   |
|                           | Xmax             |
| Modes                     | AAngle ADigits   |
|                           | AComplex AFormat |

## Advanced Graphing app variables

| Category | Names     |          |
|----------|-----------|----------|
| Symbolic | V1        | V6       |
|          | V2        | V7       |
|          | V3        | V8       |
|          | V4        | V9       |
|          | V5        | V0       |
| Plot     | Axes      | Xmin     |
|          | Cursor    | Xtick    |
|          | GridDots  | Xzoom    |
|          | GridLines | Ymax     |
|          | Labels    | Ymin     |
|          | Recenter  | Ytick    |
|          | Xmax      | Yzoom    |
| Numeric  | NumXStart | NumIndep |
|          | NumYStart | NumType  |
|          | NumXStep  | NumXZoom |
|          | NumYStep  | NumYZoom |
| Modes    | AAngle    | ADigits  |
|          | AComplex  | AFormat  |

## Statistics 1Var app variables

| Category                  | Names  |              |
|---------------------------|--------|--------------|
| Results (explained below) | NbItem | $\Sigma X$   |
|                           | MinVal | $\Sigma X^2$ |
|                           | Q1     | MeanX        |
|                           | MedVal | sX           |
|                           | Q3     | $\sigma X$   |
|                           | MaxVal | serrX        |
| Symbolic                  | H1     | H1Type       |
|                           | H2     | H2Type       |
|                           | H3     | H3Type       |
|                           | H4     | H4Type       |
|                           | H5     | H5Type       |
| Plot                      | Axes   | Xmax         |
|                           | Cursor | Xmin         |



| Category | Names     |         |
|----------|-----------|---------|
|          | GridDots  | Xtick   |
|          | GridLines | Xzoom   |
|          | Hmin      | Ymax    |
|          | Hmax      | Ymin    |
|          | Hwidth    | Ytick   |
|          | Labels    | Yzoom   |
|          | Recenter  |         |
| Numeric  | D1        | D6      |
|          | D2        | D7      |
|          | D3        | D8      |
|          | D4        | D9      |
|          | D5        | D0      |
| Modes    | AAngle    | ADigits |
|          | AComplex  | AFormat |

## Results

### Nbltem

Contains the number of data points in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### MinVal

Contains the minimum value of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### Q1

Contains the value of the first quartile in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### MedVal

Contains the median in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### Q3

Contains the value of the third quartile in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### MaxVal

Contains the maximum value in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### $\Sigma X$

Contains the sum of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

### $\Sigma X^2$

Contains the sum of the squares of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

## MeanX

Contains the mean of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

## sX

Contains the sample standard deviation of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

## $\sigma X$

Contains the population standard deviation of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

## serrX

Contains the standard error of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis ( $H1-H5$ ).

## Statistics 2Var app variables

| Category                  | Names        |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Results (explained below) | NblItem      | sX           |
|                           | Corr         | $\sigma X$   |
|                           | CoefDet      | serrX        |
|                           | sCov         | MeanY        |
|                           | $\sigma Cov$ | $\Sigma Y$   |
|                           | $\Sigma XY$  | $\Sigma Y^2$ |
|                           | MeanX        | sY           |
|                           | $\Sigma X$   | $\sigma Y$   |
|                           | $\Sigma X^2$ | serrY        |
| Symbolic                  | S1           | S1Type       |
|                           | S2           | S2Type       |
|                           | S3           | S3Type       |
|                           | S4           | S4Type       |
|                           | S5           | S5Type       |
| Plot                      | Axes         | Xmin         |
|                           | Cursor       | Xtick        |
|                           | GridDots     | Xzoom        |
|                           | GridLines    | Ymax         |
|                           | Labels       | Ymin         |
|                           | Recenter     | Ytick        |
|                           | Xmax         | Yzoom        |
| Numeric                   | C1           | C6           |
|                           | C2           | C7           |
|                           | C3           | C8           |
|                           | C4           | C9           |

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
|          | C5       | C0      |
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

## Results

### NbItem

Contains the number of data points in the current 2-variable analysis (S1–S5).

### Corr

Contains the correlation coefficient from the latest calculation of summary statistics. This value is based on the linear fit only, regardless of the fit type chosen.

### CoefDet

Contains the coefficient of determination from the latest calculation of summary statistics. This value is based on the fit type chosen.

### sCov

Contains the sample covariance of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\sigma$ Cov

Contains the population covariance of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\Sigma XY$

Contains the sum of the X·Y products for the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### MeanX

Contains the mean of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\Sigma X$

Contains the sum of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\Sigma X^2$

Contains the sum of the squares of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### sX

Contains the sample standard deviation of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\sigma X$

Contains the population standard deviation of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### serrX

Contains the standard error of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### MeanY

Contains the mean of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\Sigma Y$

Contains the sum of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\Sigma Y^2$

Contains the sum of the squares of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### sY

Contains the sample standard deviation of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### $\sigma Y$

Contains the population standard deviation of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

### serrY

Contains the standard error of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

## Inference app variables

| Category                  | Names       |            |
|---------------------------|-------------|------------|
| Results (explained below) | ContribList | ContribMat |
|                           | Slope       | Inter      |
|                           | Corr        | CoefDet    |
|                           | serrLine    | serrSlope  |
|                           | serrInter   | Yval       |
|                           | serrY       | CritScore  |
|                           | Result      | CritVal1   |
|                           | TestScore   | CritVal2   |
|                           | TestValue   | DF         |
|                           | Prob        |            |
| Symbolic                  | AltHyp      | InfType    |
|                           | Method      |            |
| Numeric                   | Alpha       | Pooled     |
|                           | Conf        | s1         |

| Category | Names    |            |
|----------|----------|------------|
|          | ExpList  | s2         |
|          | Mean1    | $\sigma_1$ |
|          | Mean2    | $\sigma_2$ |
|          | n1       | x1         |
|          | n2       | x2         |
|          | $\mu_0$  | Xlist      |
|          | $\pi_0$  | Ylist      |
|          | ObsList  | Xval       |
|          | ObsMat   |            |
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits    |
|          | AComplex | AFormat    |

## Results

### CoefDet

Contains the value of the coefficient of determination.

### ContribList

Contains a list of the chi-square contributions by category for the chi-square goodness of fit test.

### ContribMat

Contains a matrix of the chi-square contributions by category for the chi-square two-way test.

### Corr

Contains the value of the correlation coefficient.

### CritScore

Contains the value of the Z- or t-distribution associated with the input  $\alpha$ -value

### CritVal1

Contains the lower critical value of the experimental variable associated with the negative `TestScore` value which was calculated from the input  $\alpha$ -level.

### CritVal2

Contains the upper critical value of the experimental variable associated with the positive `TestScore` value which was calculated from the input  $\alpha$ -level.

### DF

Contains the degrees of freedom for the t-tests.

**ExpList**

Contains a list of the expected counts by category for the chi-square goodness of fit test.

**ExpMat**

Contains the matrix of expected counts by category for the chi-square two-way test.

**Inter**

Contains the value of the intercept of the regression line for either the linear t-test or the confidence interval for the intercept

**Prob**

Contains the probability associated with the `TestScore` value.

**Result**

For hypothesis tests, contains 0 or 1 to indicate rejection or failure to reject the null hypothesis.

**serrInter**

Contains the standard error of the intercept for either the linear t-test or the confidence interval for the intercept.

**serrLine**

Contains the standard error of the line for the linear t-test.

**serrSlope**

Contains the standard error of the slope for either the linear t-test or the confidence interval for slope.

**serrY**

Contains the standard error of  $\hat{y}$  for either the confidence interval for a mean response or the prediction interval for a future response.

**Slope**

Contains the value of the slope of the regression line for either the linear t-test or the confidence interval for slope.

**TestScore**

Contains the Z- or t-distribution value calculated from the hypothesis test or confidence interval inputs.

**TestValue**

Contains the value of the experimental variable associated with the `TestScore`.

**Yval**

Contains the value of  $\hat{y}$  for either the confidence interval for a mean response or the prediction interval for a future response.

## Parametric app variables

| Category | Names     |         |
|----------|-----------|---------|
| Symbolic | X1        | X6      |
|          | Y1        | Y6      |
|          | X2        | X7      |
|          | Y2        | Y7      |
|          | X3        | X8      |
|          | Y3        | Y8      |
|          | X4        | X9      |
|          | Y4        | Y9      |
|          | X5        | X0      |
|          | Y5        | Y0      |
| Plot     | Axes      | Tstep   |
|          | Cursor    | Xmax    |
|          | GridDots  | Xmin    |
|          | GridLines | Xtick   |
|          | Labels    | Xzoom   |
|          | Method    | Ymax    |
|          | Recenter  | Ymin    |
|          | Tmin      | Ytick   |
|          | Tmax      | Yzoom   |
| Numeric  | NumStart  | NumType |
|          | NumStep   | NumZoom |
| Modes    | AAngle    | ADigits |
|          | AComplex  | AFormat |

## Polar app variables

| Category | Names                  |          |
|----------|------------------------|----------|
| Symbolic | R1                     | R6       |
|          | R2                     | R7       |
|          | R3                     | R8       |
|          | R4                     | R9       |
|          | R5                     | R0       |
| Plot     | $\theta_{\min}$        | Recenter |
|          | $\theta_{\max}$        | Xmax     |
|          | $\theta_{\text{step}}$ | Xmin     |

| Category | Names     |         |
|----------|-----------|---------|
|          | Axes      | Xtick   |
|          | Cursor    | Xzoom   |
|          | GridDots  | Ymax    |
|          | GridLines | Ymin    |
|          | Labels    | Ytick   |
|          | Method    | Yzoom   |
| Numeric  | NumStart  | NumType |
|          | NumStep   | NumZoom |
| Modes    | AAngle    | ADigits |
|          | AComplex  | AFormat |

## Finance app variables

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| Numeric  | CPYR     | NbPmt   |
|          | BEG      | PMT     |
|          | FV       | PPYR    |
|          | IPYR     | PV      |
|          | GSize    |         |
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

## Linear Solver app variables

| Category | Names    |                        |
|----------|----------|------------------------|
| Numeric  | LSystem  | LSolution <sup>a</sup> |
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits                |
|          | AComplex | AFormat                |

<sup>a</sup> Contains a vector with the last solution found by the Linear Solver app.

## Triangle Solver app variables

| Category | Names |        |
|----------|-------|--------|
| Numeric  | SideA | AngleA |
|          | SideB | AngleB |
|          | SideC | AngleC |



| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| Modes    | Rect     |         |
|          | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

## Linear Explorer app variables

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

## Quadratic Explorer app variables

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

## Trig Explorer app variables

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

<sup>a2</sup> Contains a vector with the last solution found by the Linear Solver app.

## Sequence app variables

| Category | Names     |       |
|----------|-----------|-------|
| Symbolic | U1        | U6    |
|          | U2        | U7    |
|          | U3        | U8    |
|          | U4        | U9    |
|          | U5        | U0    |
| Plot     | Axes      | Xmax  |
|          | Cursor    | Xmin  |
|          | GridDots  | Xtick |
|          | GridLines | Xzoom |
|          | Labels    | Ymax  |

| Category | Names    |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
|          | Nmin     | Ymin    |
|          | Nmax     | Ytick   |
|          | Recenter | Yzoom   |
| Numeric  | NumIndep | NumType |
|          | NumStart | NumZoom |
|          | NumStep  |         |
| Modes    | AAngle   | ADigits |
|          | AComplex | AFormat |

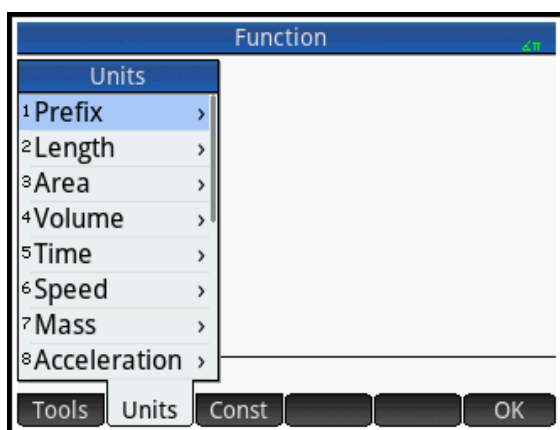
## 24 Units and constants

### Units

A unit of measurement—such as inch, ohm, or Becquerel—enables you to give a precise magnitude to a physical quantity.

You can attach a unit of measurement to any number or numerical result. A numerical value with units attached is referred to as a measurement. You can operate on measurements just as you do on numbers without attached units. The units are kept with the numbers in subsequent operations.

The units are on the **Units** menu. Press **Shift**  (Units) and, if necessary, tap **Units**.



The menu is organized by category. Each category is listed at the left, with the units in the selected category listed at the right.

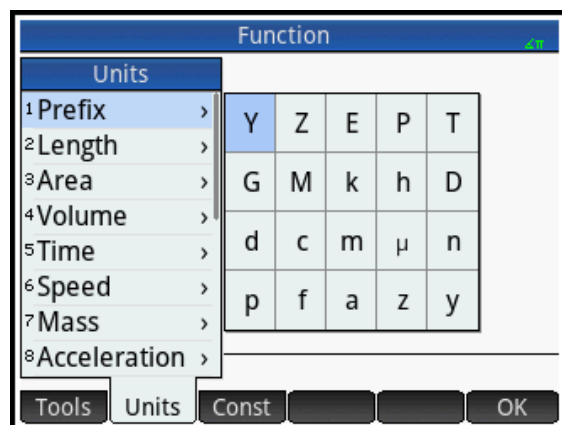
### Unit categories

- length
- area
- volume
- time
- speed
- mass
- acceleration
- force
- energy
- power
- pressure
- temperature

- electricity
- light
- angle
- viscosity
- radiation

## Prefixes

The **Units** menu includes an entry that is not a unit category, namely, Prefix. Selecting this option displays a palette of prefixes.



|          |          |          |          |         |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| Y: yotta | Z: zetta | E: exa   | P: peta  | T: tera |
| G: giga  | M: mega  | k: kilo  | h: hecto | D: deca |
| d: deci  | c: centi | m: milli | μ: micro | n: nano |
| p: pico  | f: femto | a: atto  | z: zepto | y: octo |



Unit prefixes provide a handy way of entering large or small numbers. For example, the speed of light is approximately 300,000 m/s. If you wanted to use that in a calculation, you could enter it as 300\_km/s, with the prefix k selected from the prefix palette.

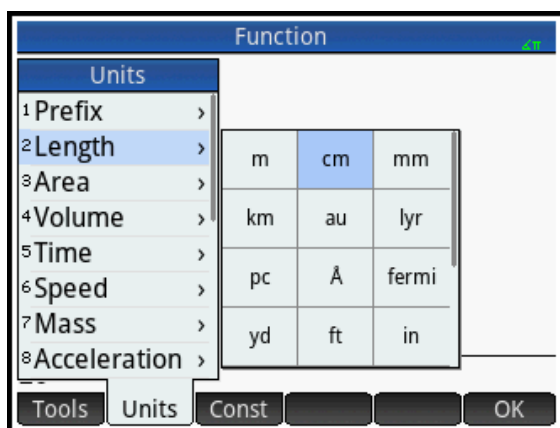
Select the prefix you want before selecting the unit.




## Unit calculations

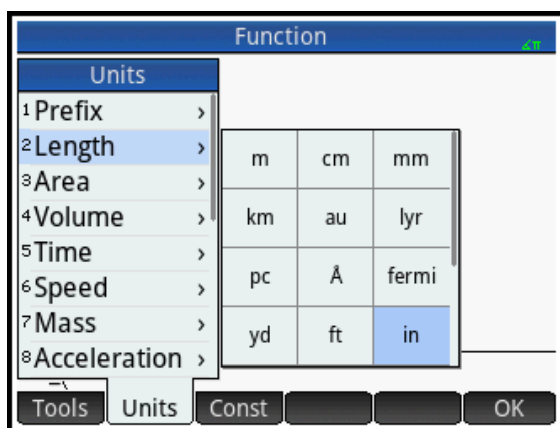
A number plus a unit is a measurement. You can perform calculations with multiple measurements providing that the units of each measurement are from the same category. For example, you can add two measurements of length (even lengths of different units, as illustrated in the following example). But you cannot add, say, a length measurement to a volume measurement.

Suppose you want to add 20 centimeters and 5 inches and have the result displayed in centimeters.

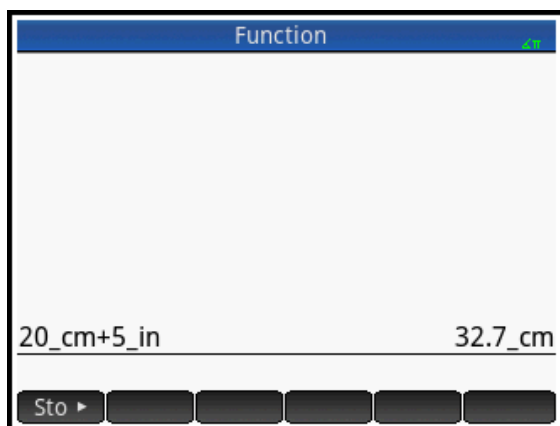
1. If you want the result in cm, enter the centimeter measurement first. 20   (Units). Select **Length**. Select **cm**.



2. Now add 5 inches.  5   . Select **Length**. Select **in** 

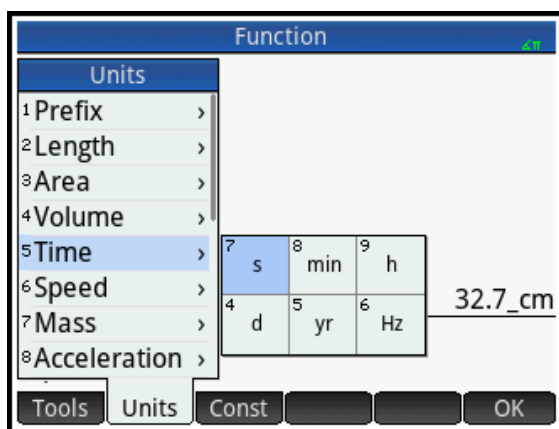


The result is shown as 32.7 cm. If you had wanted the result in inches, then you would have entered the 5 inches first.

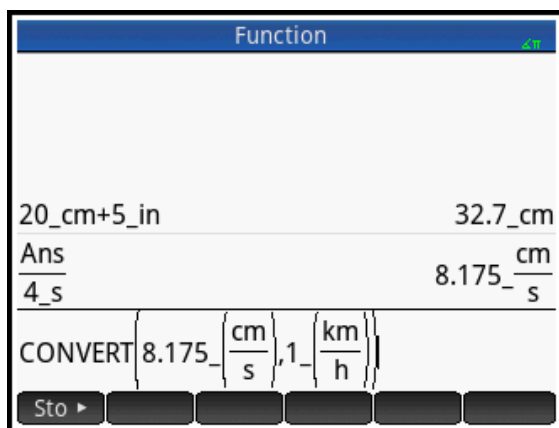





3. To continue the example, let's divide the result by 4 seconds.  $\div$  4 **Shift** **Units** **C**. Select **Time**.


Select **s** **Enter**.

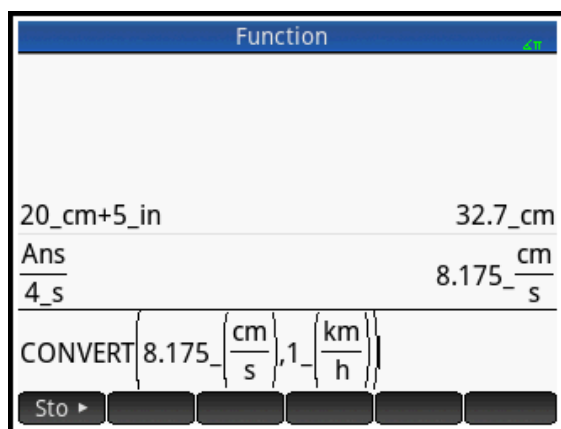


The result is shown as  $8.175 \text{ cm} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ .

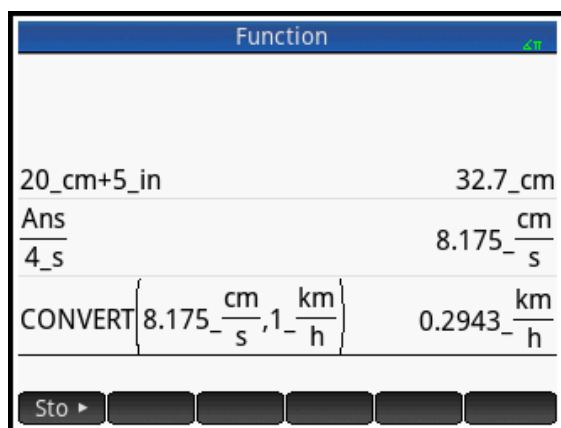


4. Now convert the result to kilometers per hour.    . Select **Speed**. Select **km/h**

 .





The result is shown as 0.2943 kilometers per hour.



This shortcut does not work in CAS view.

## Unit tools


There are a number of tools for managing and operating on units. These are available by pressing 



 and tapping .

## Convert

Converts one unit to another unit of the same category.

`CONVERT(5_m, 1_ft)` returns 16.4041994751\_ft

You can also use the last answer as the first argument in a new conversion calculation. Pressing 

 places the last answer on the entry line. You can also select a value from history and tap .

to copy it to the entry line. **Sto ▶** with a measurement calls the convert command as well and converts to whatever unit follows the Store symbol.

## MKSA

Meters, kilograms, seconds, amperes. Converts a complex unit into the base components of the MKSA system.

`MKSA(8.175_cm/s)` returns `.08175_m*s-1`

## UFACTOR

Unit factor conversion. Converts a measurement using a compound unit into a measurement expressed in constituent units. For example, a Coulomb—a measure of electric charge—is a compound unit derived from the SI base units of Ampere and second:  $1\text{ C} = 1\text{ A} * 1\text{ s}$ . Thus:

`UFACTOR(100_C,1_A)` returns `100_A*s`

## USIMPLIFY

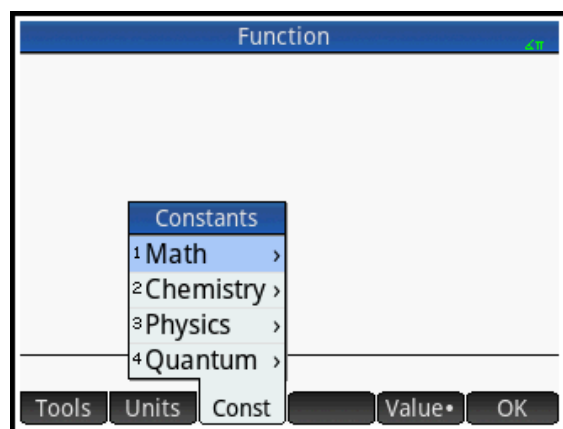
Unit simplification. For example, a Joule is defined as one  $\text{kg} * \text{m}^2 / \text{s}^2$ . Thus:

`USIMPLIFY(5_kg*m^2/s^2)` returns `5_J`


## Physical constants

The values of 34 math and physical constants can be selected (by name or value) and used in calculations. These constants are grouped into four categories: math, chemistry, physics and quantum mechanics. A list of all these constants is given in [List of constants on page 444](#).

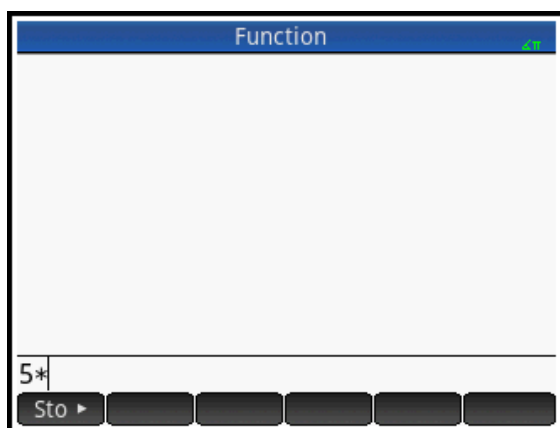
To display the constants, press **Shift**  and then tap **Const**.



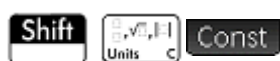
Suppose you want to know the potential energy of a mass of 5 units according to the equation  $E = mc^2$ .

1. Enter the mass and the multiplication operator: 5 

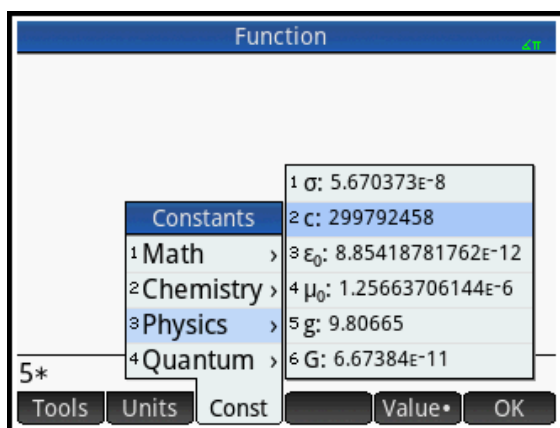




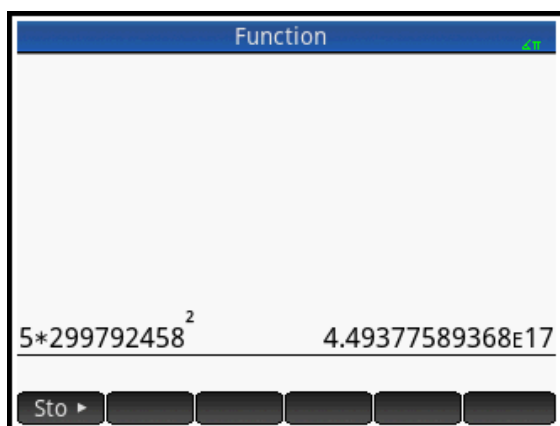
2. Open the constants menu.



3. Select **Physics**.
4. Select **c: 299792458**.

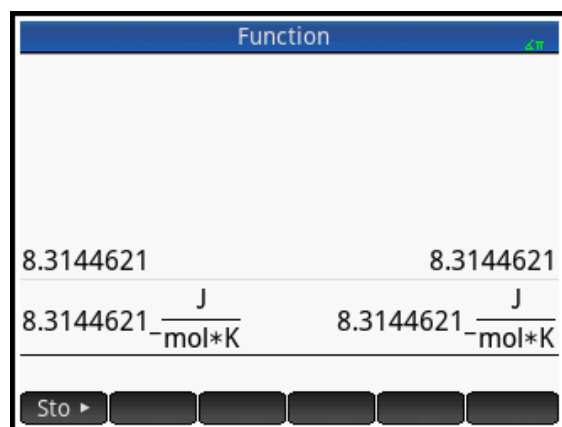


5. Square the speed of light and evaluate the expression.



You can enter just the value of a constant or the constant and its units (if it has units). If **Value•** is showing on the screen, the value is inserted at the cursor point. If **Value** is showing on the screen, the value and its units are inserted at the cursor point.

In the previous figure, the first entry shows the Universal Gas Constant after it was chosen with **Value•** showing. The second entry shows the same constant, but chosen when **Value** was showing.



Tapping **Value** displays **Value•**, and vice versa.

## List of constants


| Category  | Name and symbol            |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| Math      | e                          |
|           | MAXREAL                    |
|           | MINREAL                    |
|           | $\pi$                      |
|           | I                          |
| Chemistry | Avogadro, NA               |
|           | Boltzmann, k               |
|           | molar volume, Vm           |
|           | universal gas, R           |
|           | standard temperature, StdT |
|           | standard pressure, StdP    |
| Physics   | Stefan-Boltzmann, $\sigma$ |
|           | speed of light, c          |
|           | permittivity, $\epsilon_0$ |
|           | permeability, $\mu_0$      |
|           | acceleration of gravity, g |
|           | gravitation, G             |
| Quantum   | Planck, h                  |
|           | Dirac, $\hbar$             |



| Category | Name and symbol                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
|          | electronic charge, $q$          |
|          | electron mass, $m_e$            |
|          | $q/m_e$ ratio, $q/m_e$          |
|          | proton mass, $m_p$              |
|          | $m_p/m_e$ ratio, $m_p/m_e$      |
|          | fine structure, $\alpha$        |
|          | magnetic flux, $\phi$           |
|          | Faraday, $F$                    |
|          | Rydberg, $R_\infty$             |
|          | Bohr radius, $a_0$              |
|          | Bohr magneton, $\mu$            |
|          | nuclear magneton, $\mu_N$       |
|          | photon wavelength, $\lambda_0$  |
|          | photon frequency, $f_0$         |
|          | Compton wavelength, $\lambda_c$ |

## 25 Lists

A list consists of comma-separated real or complex numbers, expressions, or matrices, all enclosed in braces. A list may, for example, contain a sequence of real numbers such as  $\{1, 2, 3\}$ . Lists represent a convenient way to group related objects.

You can do list operations in Home and in programs.


There are ten list variables available, named  $L0$  to  $L9$ , or you can create your own list variable names. You can use them in calculations or expressions in Home or in a program. Retrieve a list name from the Vars menu () or just type its name from the keyboard.

You can create, edit, delete, send, and receive named lists in the List Catalog:   (List). You can also create and store lists—named or unnamed—in Home view.






List variables are identical in behavior to the columns  $C1$ – $C0$  in the Statistics 2Var app and the columns  $D1$ – $D0$  in the Statistics 1Var app. You can store a statistics column as a list (or vice versa) and use any of the list functions on the statistics columns, or the statistics functions on the list variables.

### Create a list in the List Catalog

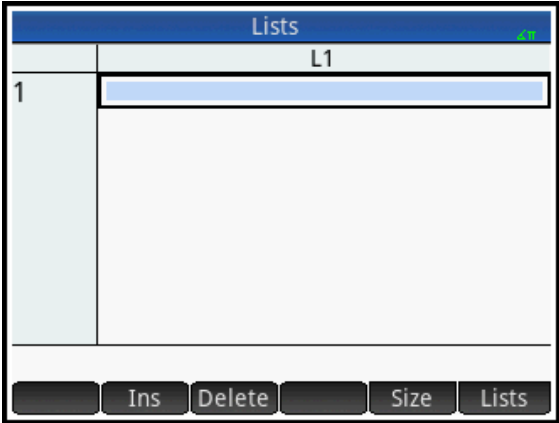
1. Open the List Catalog.

  (List)


The number of elements in a list is shown beside the list name.

| Lists   |   |        |
|---|---|--------|
| L1  | 3 | 0.11KB |
| L2  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L3  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L4  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L5  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L6  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L7  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L8  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L9  | 0 | 0KB    |
| L0  | 0 | 0KB    |
|      |   |        |

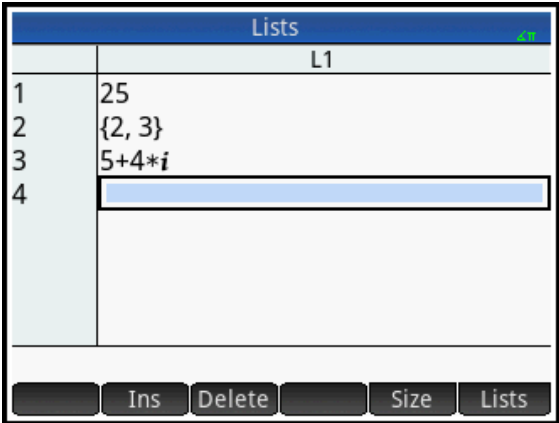
2. Tap on the name you want to assign to the new list (L1, L2, etc.). The list editor appears.






If you are creating a new list rather than changing, make sure you choose a list without any elements in it.





3. Enter the values you want in the list, pressing  after each one.






Values can be real or complex numbers (or an expression). If you enter an expression, it is evaluated and the result is inserted in the list.



4. When done, press   (List) to return to the List catalog, or press  to go to Home view.


The buttons and keys in the List Catalog are:

| Button or Key  | Purpose   |
|--|---|
|   | Opens the highlighted list for editing. You can also just tap on a list name. |
|  or  | Deletes the contents of the selected list.                                    |
|   | Transmits the highlighted list to another HP Prime.                           |

| Button or Key  | Purpose  |
|--|--|
|   (Clear)  | Clears all lists.  |
|   or  | Moves to the top or bottom of the catalog, respectively. |





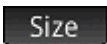






## The List Editor

The List Editor is a special environment for entering data into lists. There are two ways to open the List Editor once the List Catalog is open:

- Highlight the list and tap  or
- Tap the name of the list.

### List Editor: Buttons and keys

When you open a list, the following buttons and keys are available to you:

| Button or Key  | Purpose  |
|--|--|
|   | Copies the highlighted list item into the entry line.  |
|    | Inserts a new value—with default zero—before the highlighted item.   |
|  or    | Deletes the highlighted item.  |
|   | Displays a menu for you to choose the small font, medium font, or large font   |
|   | Displays a menu for you to choose how many lists to display at one time: one, two, three, or four. For example, if you have only $\mathbb{L}4$ displayed and you choose 3 from the <b>Lists</b> menu, lists $\mathbb{L}5$ and $\mathbb{L}6$ will be displayed in addition to $\mathbb{L}4$ . |
|   (Clear)  | Clears all items from the list.  |
|   or  | Moves the cursor to the start or the end of the list.  |

### To edit a list



1. Open the List Catalog.

  (List)

| Lists                    |   |        |
|--------------------------|---|--------|
| L1                       | 3 | 0.11KB |
| L2                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L3                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L4                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L5                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L6                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L7                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L8                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L9                       | 0 | 0KB    |
| L10                      | 0 | 0KB    |
| <div> Edit Delete </div> |   |        |

2. Tap the name of the list (L1, L1, and so on). The List Editor appears.

| Lists                                      |    |  |
|--|----|--|
| L1   |    |  |
| 1  | 88 |  |
| 2  | 90 |  |
| 3  | 89 |  |
| 4  | 65 |  |
| 5  |    |  |
| <div> 88 Edit Ins Delete Size Lists </div> |    |  |

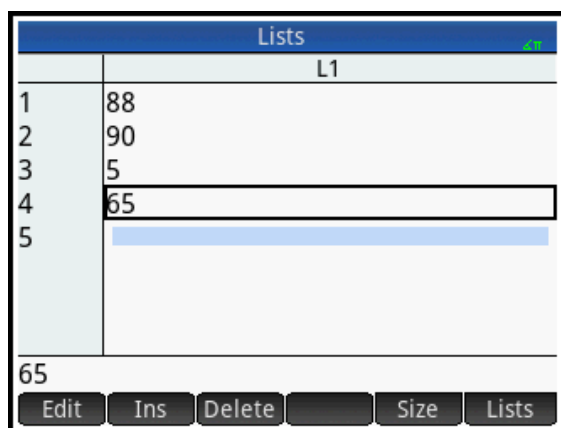
3. Tap on the element you want to edit. (Alternatively, press  or  until the element you want to edit is highlighted.) In this example, edit the third element so that it has a value of 5.

5

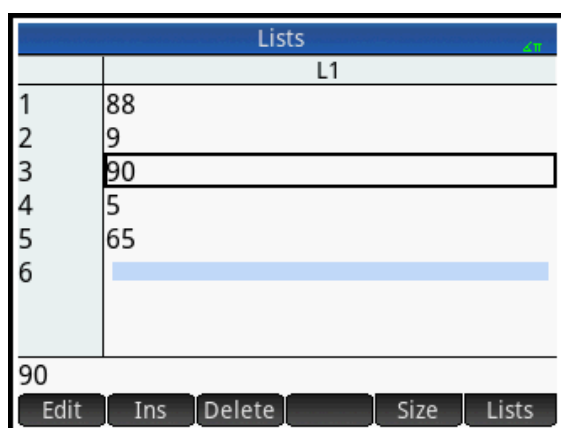
| Lists                                      |    |  |
|--|----|--|
| L1   |    |  |
| 1  | 88 |  |
| 2  | 90 |  |
| 3  | 89 |  |
| 4  | 65 |  |
| 5  |    |  |
| <div> 89 Edit Ins Delete Size Lists </div> |    |  |

### To insert an element in a list

Suppose you want to insert a new value, 9, in L1(2) in the list L1 shown to the right.






Select L1(2), that is, the second element in the list.



## Deleting lists

### To delete a list

In the List Catalog, use the cursor keys to highlight the list and press . You are prompted to confirm your decision. Tap  or press .

If the list is one of the reserved lists L0-L9, then only the contents of the list are deleted. The list is simply stripped of its contents. If the list is one you have named (other than L0-L9), then it is deleted entirely.

### To delete all lists

In the List Catalog, press   (Clear).



The contents of the lists L0-L9 are deleted and any other named lists are deleted entirely.

## Lists in Home view

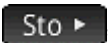

You can enter and operate on lists directly in Home view. The lists can be named or unnamed.



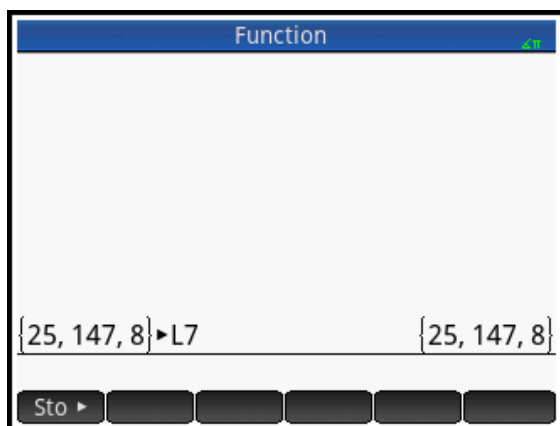
## To create a list






1. Press **Shift** **8** **( )**.  
A pair of braces appears on the entry line. All lists must be enclosed in braces.
2. Enter the first element in the list followed by a comma: [element] 
3. Continue adding elements, separating each with a comma.
4. When you have finished entering the elements, press **Enter** . The list is added to History (with any expressions among the elements evaluated).

## To store a list


You can store a list in a variable. You can do this before the list is added to History, or you can copy it from History. When you've entered a list in the entry line or copied it from History to the entry line, tap **Sto** , enter a name for the list and press **Enter** . The reserved list variable names available to you are  $L_0$  through  $L_9$ ; however, you can create a list variable name of your own as well.

For example, to store the list {25,147,8} in  $L_7$ :



1. Create the list on the entry line.
2. Press  to move the cursor outside the list.
3. Tap **Sto** .
4. Enter the name:  
  7
5. Complete the operation: **Enter** .

## To display a list

To display a list in Home view, type its name and press .

If the list is empty, a pair of empty braces is returned.

## To display one element

To display one element of a list in Home view, enter *listname (element#)*. For example, if L6 is {3,4,5,6}, then

L6 (2)  returns 4.

## To store one element

To store a value in one element of a list in Home view, enter *value*  *listname (element#)*. For

example, to store 148 as the second element in L2, type 148  L2 (2) .

## List references

Suppose L1:={5, "abcde", {1,2,3,4,5}, 11}. L1 (1) returns 5 and L1 (2) returns "abcde". L1 (2, 4) returns 100 (the ASCII code for d) and L1 (2, 4, 1) returns "d". L1 ({2, 4}) returns {"abcde", {1,2,3,4,5},11}, extracting a sublist of all the elements from 2 through 4.

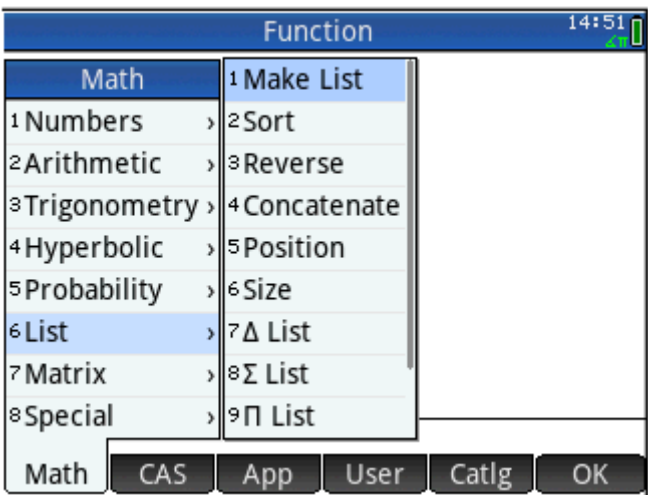
## To send a list




You can send lists to another calculator or a PC just as you can apps, programs, matrices, and notes.

## List functions

List functions are found on the Math menu. You can use them in Home and in programs.

You can type in the name of the function, or you can copy the name of the function from the List category of the Math menu.



Press  6 to select the **List** category in the left column of the **Math** menu. (**List** is the sixth category on the **Math** menu, which is why pressing 6 will take you straight to the **List** category.) Tap a function to select it, or use the direction keys to highlight it and either tap  or press .

List functions are enclosed in parentheses. They have arguments that are separated by commas, as in `CONCAT (L1, L2)`. An argument can be either a list variable name or the actual list; for example, `REVERSE (L1)` or `REVERSE ({1, 2, 3})`.

Common operators like  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ , and  $\div$  can take lists as arguments. If there are two arguments and both are lists, then the lists must have the same length, since the calculation pairs the elements. If there are two arguments and one is a real number, then the calculation operates on each element of the list.

Example:

`5*{1, 2, 3}` returns `{5, 10, 15}`.

Besides the common operators that can take numbers, matrices, or lists as arguments, there are commands that can only operate on lists.

## Menu format

By default, a List function is presented on the Math menu using its descriptive name, not its common command name. Thus the shorthand name `CONCAT` is presented as **Concatenate** and `POS` is presented as **Position**.

If you prefer the **Math** menu to show command names instead, deselect the **Menu Display** option on page 2 of the Home Settings screen.

## Difference

Returns the list of non-common elements of two lists.

`DIFFERENCE ({1, 2, 3, 4}, {1, 3, 5, 7})` returns `{2,4,5,7}`

## Intersect

Returns the list of the elements common to two lists.

`INTERSECT ({1, 2, 3, 4}, {1, 3, 5, 7})` returns `{1,3}`

## Make List

Calculates a sequence of elements for a new list using the syntax:

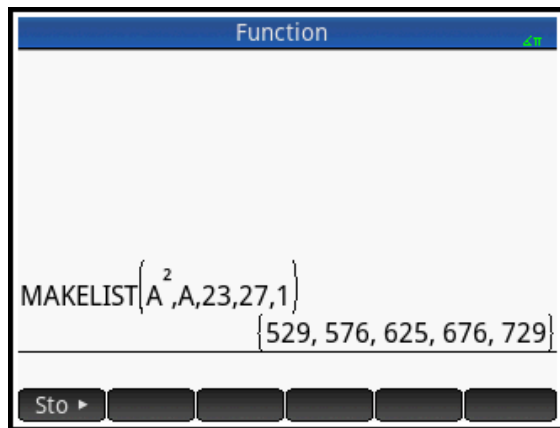
`MAKELIST (expression, variable, begin, end, increment)`

Evaluates *expression* with respect to *variable*, as *variable* takes on values from *begin* to *end* values, taken at increment steps.

Example:

In Home, generate a series of squares from 23 to 27:





## Sort

Sorts the elements in a list in ascending order.

```
SORT(list)
```

**Example:**

```
SORT({2, 5, 3}) returns {2, 3, 5}
```

## Reverse

Creates a list by reversing the order of the elements in a list.

`REVERSE(list)`

Example:

`REVERSE({1, 2, 3})` returns `{3, 2, 1}`

## Concatenate

Concatenates two lists into a new list.

`CONCAT(list1, list2)`

Example:

`CONCAT({1, 2, 3}, {4})` returns `{1, 2, 3, 4}`.

## Position

Returns the position of an element within a list. The element can be a value, a variable, or an expression. If there is more than one instance of the element, the position of the first occurrence is returned. A value of 0 is returned if there is no occurrence of the specified element.

`POS(list, element)`

Example:

`POS({3, 7, 12, 19}, 12)` returns 3

## Size

Returns the number of elements in a list or a list containing the dimensions of a vector or matrix.

`SIZE(list)` or `SIZE(Vector)` or `SIZE(Matrix)`

Examples:

`SIZE({1, 2, 3})` returns 3

`SIZE([[1 2 3], [4 5 6]])` returns {2, 3}

## $\Delta$ LIST

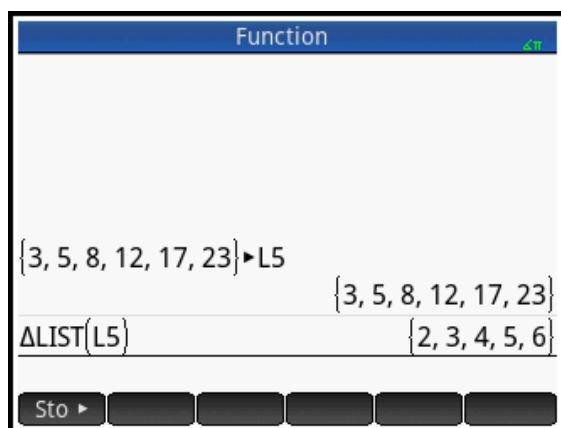
Creates a new list composed of the first differences of a list; that is, the differences between consecutive elements in the list. The new list has one less element than the original list. The differences for  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$  are  $\{x_2 - x_1, x_3 - x_2, \dots, x_n - x_{n-1}\}$ .

`$\Delta$ LIST(list1)`

Example:

In Home view, store {3,5,8,12,17,23} in L5 and find the first differences for the list.





## ΣLIST

Calculates the sum of all elements in a list.

`ΣLIST(list)`

Example:

`ΣLIST({2,3,4})` returns 9.

## ΠLIST

Calculates the product of all elements in list.

`ΠLIST(list)`

Example:

`ΠLIST({2,3,4})` returns 24.

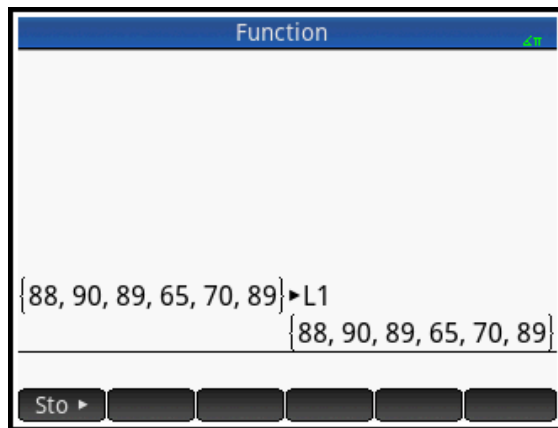
## Finding statistical values for lists

To find statistical values—such as the mean, median, maximum, and minimum of a list—you create a list, store it in a data set and then use the Statistics 1Var app.

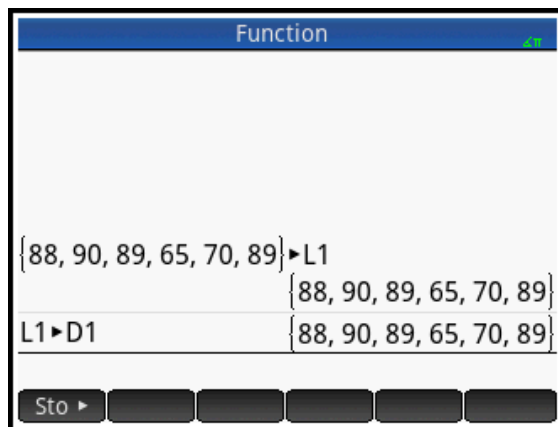
In this example, use the Statistics 1Var app to find the mean, median, maximum, and minimum values of the elements in the list L1, being 88, 90, 89, 65, 70, and 89.

1. In Home view, create L1.





2. In Home view, store L1 in D1.




You will now be able to see the list data in the Numeric view of the Statistics 1Var app.


3. Start the Statistics 1Var app.

**Apps Info** Select **Statistics 1Var** **Notice** that your list elements are in data set D1.

| Statistics 1Var Numeric View               |    |    |    |    |
|--|----|----|----|----|
|  | D1 | D2 | D3 | D4 |
| 1  | 88 |    |    |    |
| 2  | 90 |    |    |    |
| 3  | 89 |    |    |    |
| 4  | 65 |    |    |    |
| 5  | 70 |    |    |    |
| 6  | 89 |    |    |    |
| 7  |    |    |    |    |
| 8  |    |    |    |    |
| 88   |    |    |    |    |
| <div> Edit Ins Sort Size Make Stats </div> |    |    |    |    |

4. In the Symbolic view, specify the data set whose statistics you want to find.

Symb   
↳ Setup

Statistics 1Var Symbolic View 

H1: D1 D2

Plot1: Pareto

H2:

Plot2: Histogram

✓ H3: D1

Plot3: Histogram


H4:

Enter independent column


Edit ✓ D Show Eval

By default, H1 will use the data in D1, so nothing further needs to be done in Symbolic view. However, if the data of interest were in D2, or any column other than D1, you would have to specify the desired data column here.

5. Calculate the statistics.

Num   
↳ Setup

Stats

| Stats  |        |      |           |
|--|--------|------|-----------|
| X  | H3     |      |           |
| n  | 6      |      |           |
| Min  | 65     |      |           |
| Q1   | 70     |      |           |
| Med  | 88.5   |      |           |
| Q3   | 89     |      |           |
| Max  | 90     |      |           |
| $\Sigma X$   | 491    |      |           |
| $\Sigma X^2$   | 40,811 |      |           |
| 6  |        |      |           |
|  |        | Size | Column OK |

6. Tap  when you are done.



## 26 Matrices

You can create, edit, and operate on matrices and vectors in the Home view, CAS, or in programs. You can enter matrices directly in Home or CAS, or use the Matrix Editor.

### Vectors

Vectors are one-dimensional arrays. They are composed of just one row. A vector is represented by single brackets; for example,  $[1\ 2\ 3]$ . A vector can be a real number vector, or a complex number vector such as  $[1+2*i\ 7+3*i]$ .

### Matrices

Matrices are two-dimensional arrays. They are composed of at least two rows and at least one column. Matrices may contain any combination of or real and complex numbers, such as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{bmatrix} 1+2i \\ 3-4i \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

### Matrix variables

There are ten reserved matrix variables available, named  $M0$  to  $M9$ ; however, you can save a matrix in a variable name you define. You can then use them in calculations in Home or CAS views or in a program. You can retrieve matrix names from the Vars menu, or just type their names from the keyboard.

## Creating and storing matrices

The Matrix Catalog contains the reserved matrix variables  $M0$ – $M9$ , as well as any matrix variables you have created in Home or CAS views (or from a program if they are global).

| Matrices         |     |        |
|------------------|-----|--------|
| M1               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M2               | 2*3 | 0.06KB |
| M3               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M4               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M5               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M6               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M7               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M8               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M9               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M0               | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| Edit Delete Vect |     |        |

Once you select a matrix name, you can create, edit, and delete matrices in the Matrix Editor. You can also send a matrix to another HP Prime.

To open the Matrix Catalog, press **Shift** **4** (Matrix) **U** (Matrix).

In the Matrix Catalog, the size of a matrix is shown beside the matrix name. (An empty matrix is shown as 1\*1.) The number of elements in it is shown beside a vector.





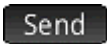


You can also create and store matrices—named or unnamed—in Home view. For example, the command:

POLYROOT([1, 0, -1, 0]) ► M1

stores the roots of the complex vector of length 3 into the variable M1. M1 will thus contain the three roots of : 0, 1 and -1.


## Matrix Catalog: buttons and keys

The buttons and keys available in the Matrix Catalog are:

| Button or Key   | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|    | Opens the highlighted matrix for editing.   |
|  or       | Deletes the contents of the selected matrix.  |
|    | Changes the selected matrix into a one-dimensional vector.                                      |
|    | Transmits the highlighted matrix to another HP Prime.   |
|   (Clear) | Clears the contents of the reserved matrix variables M0–M9 and deletes any user-named matrices. |


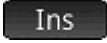
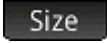





## Working with matrices








### To open the Matrix Editor

To create or edit a matrix, go to the Matrix Catalog, and tap on a matrix. (You could also use the cursor keys to highlight the matrix and then press ). The Matrix Editor opens.

### Matrix Editor: Buttons and keys

The buttons and keys available in the Matrix Editor are:

| Button or Key   | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|  | Copies the highlighted element to the entry line.   |
|  | Inserts a row of zeros above, or a column of zeros to the left, of the highlighted cell. You are prompted to choose row or column.  |
|  | Displays a menu for you to choose the small font, medium font, or large font.   |
|  | A three-way toggle that controls how the cursor will move after an element has been entered.  moves the cursor to the right,  moves it downward, and  does not move it at all. |
|  | Displays a menu for you to choose 1, 2, 3, or 4 columns to be displayed at a time.  |

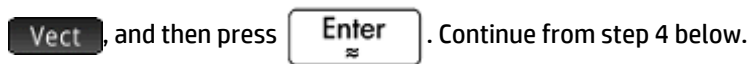
| Button or Key   | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|   (Clear)   | Deletes the highlighted row, or column, or the entire matrix. (You are prompted to make a choice.) |
|      | Moves the cursor to the first row, last row, first column, or last column respectively.            |




## To create a matrix in the Matrix Editor

1. Open the Matrix Catalog:





2. If you want to create a vector, press  or  until the matrix you want to use is highlighted, tap





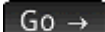





3. If you want to create a matrix, either tap on the name of the matrix (M0–M9), or press  or  until the matrix you want to use is highlighted and then press .




Note that an empty matrix will be shown with a size of  $1 \times 1$  beside its name.

4. For each element in the matrix, type a number or an expression, and then tap  or press .

You can enter complex numbers in complex form, that is,  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  is the real part and  $b$  is the imaginary part. You can also enter them in the form  $a+bi$ .

5. By default, on entering an element the cursor moves to the next column in the same row. You can use the cursor keys to move to a different row or column. You can also change the direction the cursor automatically moves by tapping . The  button toggles between the following options:

- : the cursor moves to the cell to the right of the current cell when you press .
- : the cursor moves to the cell below the current cell when you press .
- : the cursor stays in the current cell when you press .

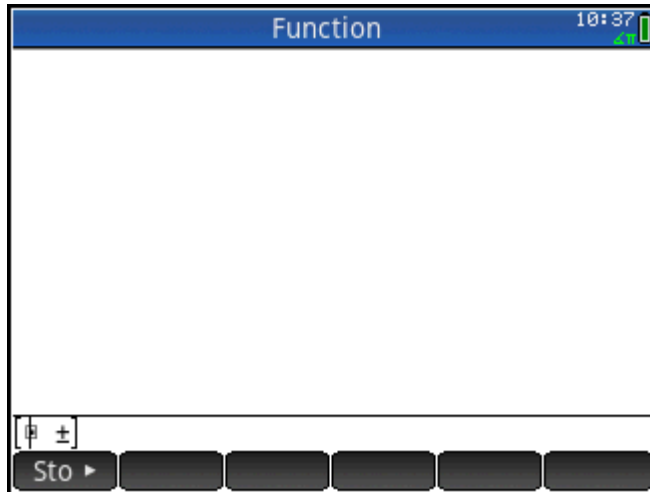
6. When done, press   (Matrix) to return to the Matrix Catalog, or press  to return to Home view. The matrix entries are automatically saved.

## Matrices in Home view

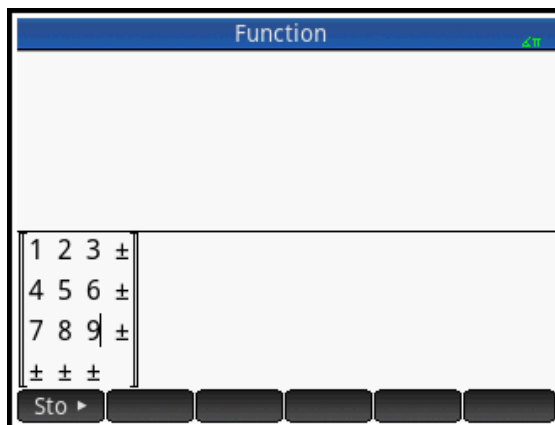
You can enter and operate on matrices directly in Home view. The matrices can be named or unnamed.


Enter a vector or matrix in Home or CAS views directly in the entry line.

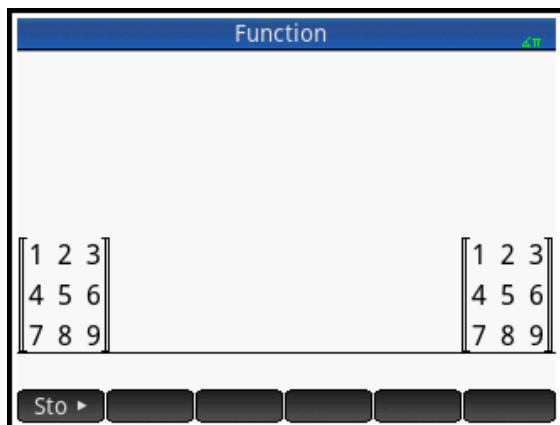
1. Press **Shift** **5** (**v**) (**[]**) to start a vector. Alternately, you can press **2nd** **□** **Units** **□** to open the Template menu and select either the vector template or one of the matrix templates. In the following figure, a vector has been started, with a dark square placeholder for the first value.





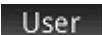
2. Enter a value in the square. Then press **▶** to enter a second value in the same row, or press **+** **Ans** **:** to add a row. The matrix will grow with you as you enter values, adding rows and columns as needed.
3. You can increase your matrix at any time, adding columns and rows as you please. You can also delete an entire row or column. Just place the cursor on the **±** symbol at the end of a row or column. Then press **+** **Ans** **:** to insert a new row or column, or **-** **Base** **:** to delete the row or column. You can also press **◀** **x** **Del** to delete a row or column. In the figure above, pressing **◀** **x** **Del** would delete the second row of the matrix.



4. When you are finished, press  and the matrix will be displayed in the History. You can then use or name your matrix.



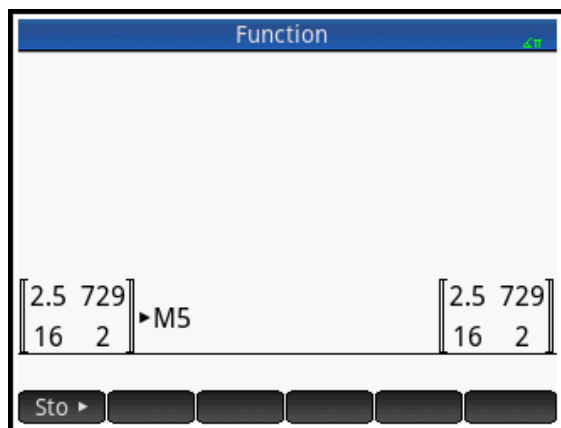
## To store a matrix



You can store a vector or matrix in a variable. You can do this before it is added to History, or you can copy it from History. When you've entered a vector or matrix in the entry line or copied it from History to the entry line, tap , enter a name for it and press . The variable names reserved for vectors and matrices are M0 through M9. You can always use a variable name you devise to store a vector or matrix. The new variable will appear in the **Vars** menu under .

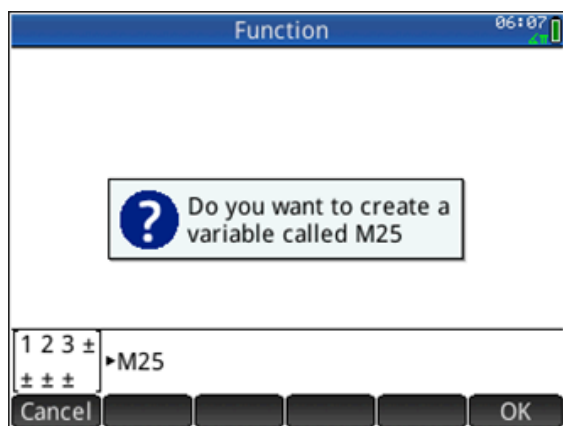
The following screen shows the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2.5 & 729 \\ 16 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

being stored in M5. Note that you can enter an expression (like 5/2) for an element of the matrix, and it will be evaluated upon entry.



The following figure shows the vector [1 2 3] being stored in the user variable M25. You will be prompted to confirm that you want to create your own variable. Tap  to proceed or  to cancel.



Once you tap **OK**, your new matrix will be stored under the name M25. This variable will show up in the User section of the **Vars** menu. You will also see your new matrix in the Matrix Catalog.

| Matrices |     |        |
|----------|-----|--------|
| M1       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M4       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M5       | 2*2 | 0.05KB |
| M6       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M7       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M8       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M9       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M0       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| Ans      | 3   | 0.04KB |
| M25      | 3   | 0.04KB |

## To display a matrix

In Home view, enter the name of the vector or matrix and press **Enter**. If the vector or matrix is empty, zero is returned inside double square brackets.

## To display one element

In Home view, enter `matrixname(row,column)`. For example, if M2 is  $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ , then `M2(1,2)`

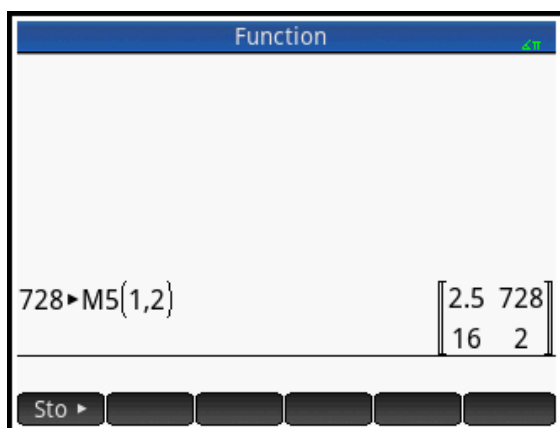
**Enter** returns 4.

## To store one element

In Home view, enter value, tap **Sto**, and then enter `matrixname(row,column)`.

For example, to change the element in the first row and second column of M5 to 728 and then display the resulting matrix:

728 **Sto** **ALPHA** **M5** **( )** **1** **,** **2** **Enter**



An attempt to store an element to a row or column beyond the size of the matrix results in resizing the matrix to allow the storage. Any intermediate cells will be filled with zeroes.

## Matrix references

$M1(1, 2)$  returns the value in the first row and second column of matrix  $M1$ .  $M1(\{1\})$  returns the first row of  $M1$  as a vector.  $M1(-1)$  returns the first column of  $M1$  as a vector.

$M1(\{1, 2\})$  returns the first two rows of  $M1$ .  $M1(\{1, 1\}, \{2, 2\})$  extracts a sub-matrix from the element in the first row and column to the element in the second row and column. If  $M1$  is a vector, then  $M1(\{1, 3\})$  extracts a sub-vector of the first three elements.

## To send a matrix

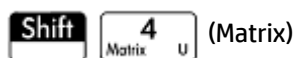
You can send matrices between calculators just as you can send apps, programs, lists, and notes.

## Matrix arithmetic

You can use the arithmetic functions (+, −, ×, ÷, and powers) with matrix arguments. Division left-multiplies by the inverse of the divisor. You can enter the matrices themselves or enter the names of stored matrix variables. The matrices can be real or complex.

For the next examples, store  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$  in  $M1$  and  $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$  in  $M2$ .

1. Select the first matrix:



2. Enter the matrix elements:

Go →

1

Enter

2

Enter

3

Enter

4

Enter

| Matrices |   |   |  |  |
|----------|---|---|--|--|
| M1       | 1 | 2 |  |  |
| 1        | 1 | 2 |  |  |
| 2        | 3 | 4 |  |  |
|          |   |   |  |  |
|          |   |   |  |  |

Ins


Size

Go →

Column

- 3.** Select the second matrix:

**Shift** **4** (Matrix)  
Matrix U

Tap **M2** or highlight it and press .

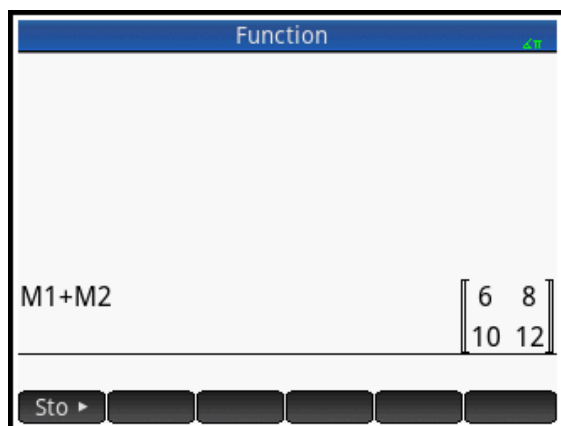
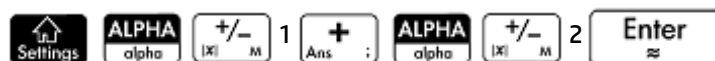
| Matrices |   |   |  |  |
|----------|---|---|--|--|
| M2       | 1 | 2 |  |  |
| 1        | 5 | 6 |  |  |
| 2        | 7 | 8 |  |  |
|          |   |   |  |  |
|          |   |   |  |  |

4. Enter the matrix elements:

5 Enter 6 Enter 7 Enter 8 Enter



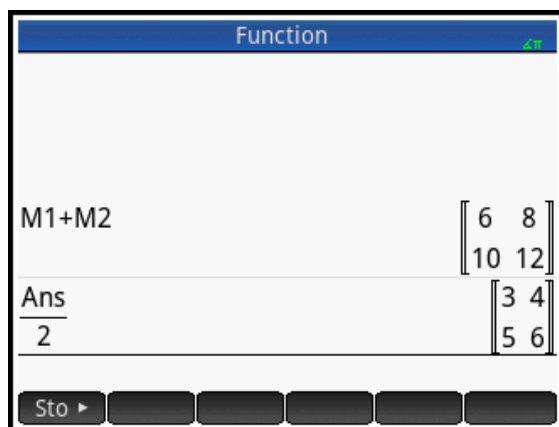
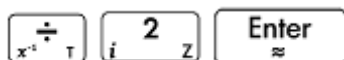
5. In Home view, add the two matrices you have just created.



## To multiply and divide by a scalar

For division by a scalar, enter the matrix first, then the operator, then the scalar. For multiplication, the order of the operands does not matter.

The matrix and the scalar can be real or complex. For example, to divide the result of the previous example by 2, press the following keys:

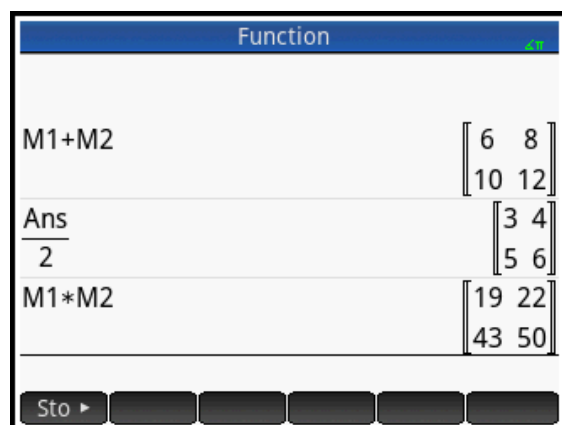


## To multiply two matrices

To multiply the two matrices that you created for the previous example, press the following keys:

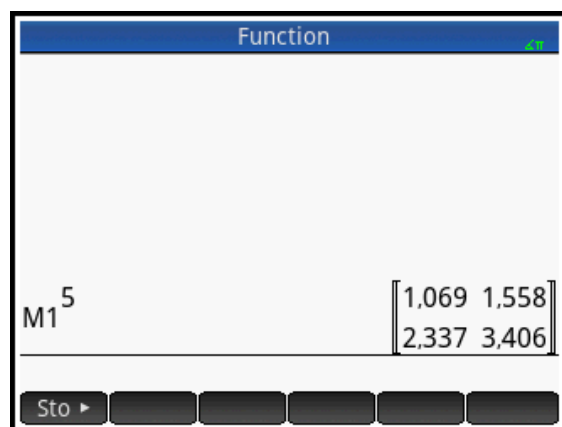
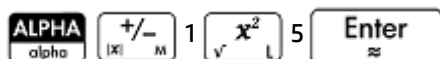


To multiply a matrix by a vector, enter the matrix first, then the vector. The number of elements in the vector must equal the number of columns in the matrix.



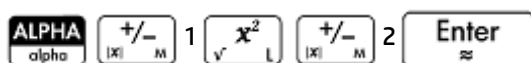
## To raise a matrix to a power

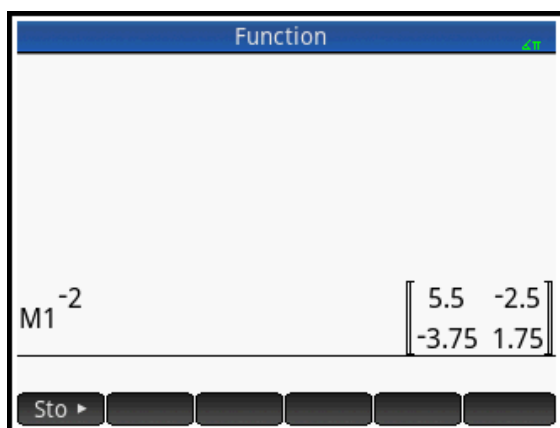
You can raise a matrix to any power as long as the power is an integer. The following example shows the result of raising matrix M1, created earlier, to the power of 5.



You can also raise a matrix to a power without first storing it as a variable.

Matrices can also be raised to negative powers. In this case, the result is equivalent to  $1/[\text{matrix}]^{\text{ABS}(\text{power})}$ . In the following example, M1 is raised to the power of -2.



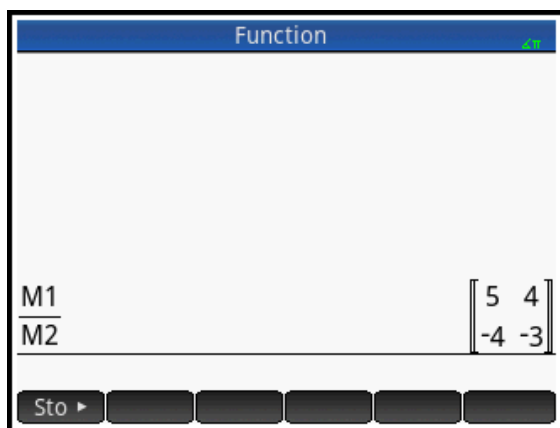
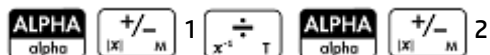


## To divide by a square matrix

For division of a matrix or a vector by a square matrix, the number of rows of the dividend (or the number of elements, if it is a vector) must equal the number of rows in the divisor.

This operation is not a mathematical division: it is a left multiplication by the inverse of the divisor.  $M1/M2$  is equivalent to  $M2^{-1} * M1$ .

To divide the two matrices you created for the previous example, press the following keys:



## To invert a matrix

You can invert a square matrix in Home view by typing the matrix (or its variable name) and pressing **Shift** **÷**.

**÷** **Enter**. You can also use the **INVERSE** command in the Matrix category of the Math menu.

## To negate each element

You can change the sign of each element in a matrix by pressing **+/-** **M**, entering the matrix name, and pressing **Enter**.

## Solving systems of linear equations

You can use matrices to solve systems of linear equations, such as the following:

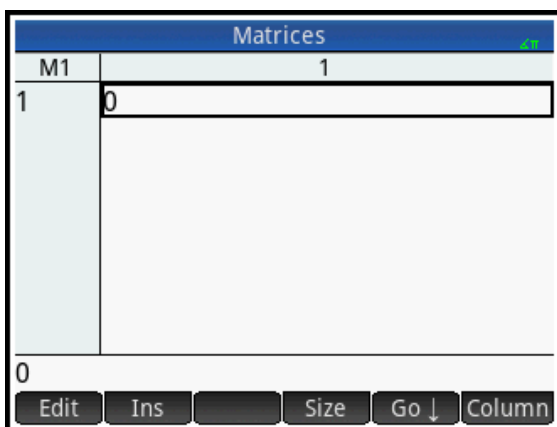
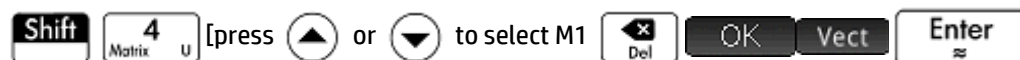
$$2x+3y+4z=5$$

$$x+y-z=7$$

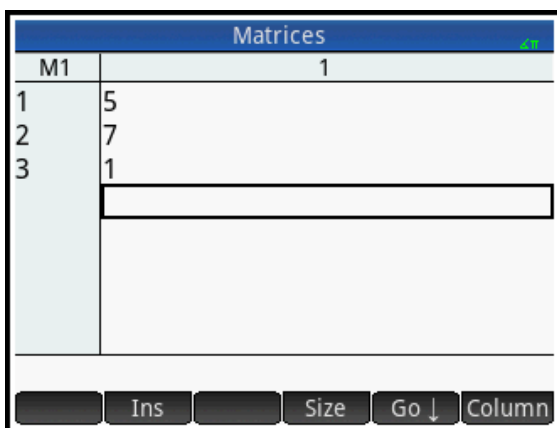
$$4x-y+2z=1$$

In this example we will use matrices M1 and M2, but you could use any available matrix variable name.

1. Open the Matrix Catalog, clear M1, choose to create a vector, and open the Matrix Editor:



2. Create the vector of the three constants in the linear system.








- ### 3. Return to the Matrix Catalog.



The size of M1 should be showing as 3.

| Matrices |     |        |
|----------|-----|--------|
| M1       | 3   | 0.04KB |
| M2       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M3       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M4       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M5       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M6       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M7       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M8       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M9       | 1*1 | 0.02KB |
| M10      | 1*1 | 0.02KB |

- 4. Select and clear M2, and reopen the Matrix Editor:**

[Press  or  to select M2]   

| Matrices |   |  |  |  |
|----------|---|--|--|--|
| M2       | 1 |  |  |  |
| 1        | 0 |  |  |  |
|          |   |  |  |  |

0

Edit Ins Size Go → Column





## Menu format

By default, a Matrix function is presented on the Math menu using its descriptive name, not its common command name. Thus the shorthand name `TRN` is presented as **Transpose** and `DET` is presented as **Determinant**.

If you prefer the **Math** menu to show command names instead, deselect the **Menu Display** option on page 2 of the Home Settings screen.

## Commands


Matrix commands differ from matrix functions in that they do not return a result. For this reason, these functions can be used in an expression and matrix commands cannot. The matrix commands are designed to support programs that use matrices.

The matrix commands are listed in the Matrix category of the Commands menu in the Program Editor. They are also listed in the Catalog menu, one of the Toolbox menus. Press  and tap  to display the commands catalog. The matrix functions are described in the following sections of this chapter; the matrix commands are described in the chapter Programming (see page 544).

## Argument conventions

- For *row#* or *column#*, supply the number of the row (counting from the top, starting with 1) or the number of the column (counting from the left, starting with 1).
- The argument *matrix* can refer to either a vector or a matrix.

## Matrix functions

The matrix functions are available in the Matrix category on the Math menu:  Select **Matrix**. Select a function.

### Matrix

#### Transpose

Transposes matrix. For a complex matrix, TRN finds the conjugate transpose.

`TRN(matrix)`

Example:

$$\text{TRN}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

#### Determinant

Determinant of a square matrix.

`DET(matrix)`

Example:

$$\text{DET}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \text{ returns } -2$$

## RREF

Reduced Row-Echelon Form. Changes a rectangular matrix to its reduced row-echelon form.

`RREF(matrix)`

Example:

$$\text{RREF}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0.2 \\ 0 & 1 & -0.4 \end{bmatrix}$$

## Create

### Make

Creates a matrix of dimension rows  $\times$  columns, using expression to calculate each element. If expression contains the variables I and J, then the calculation for each element substitutes the current row number for I and the current column number for J. You can also create a vector by the number of elements (e) instead of the number of rows and columns.

`MAKEMAT(expression, rows, columns)`

`MAKEMAT(expression, elements)`

Examples:

`MAKEMAT(0, 3, 3)` returns a  $3 \times 3$  zero matrix,  $[[0,0,0],[0,0,0],[0,0,0]]$ .

`MAKEMAT( $\sqrt{2}$ , 2, 3)` returns the  $2 \times 3$  matrix  $[[\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2}],[\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2}]]$ .

`MAKEMAT(I+J-1, 2, 3)` returns the  $2 \times 3$  matrix  $[[1,2,3],[2,3,4]]$

Note in the example above that each element is the sum of the row number and column number minus 1.

`MAKEMAT( $\sqrt{2}$ , 2)` returns the 2-element vector  $[\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2}]$ .

## Identity

Identity matrix. Creates a square matrix of dimension size  $\times$  size whose diagonal elements are 1 and offdiagonal elements are zero.

`IDENMAT(size)`

## Random

Given two integers, n and m, and a matrix name, creates an n  $\times$  m matrix that contains random integers in the range -99 through 99 with a uniform distribution and stores it in the matrix name. Given only one integer, returns a vector of that length, filled with random integers. Given an optional additional pair of integers, returns a matrix of the random numbers restricted to the interval defined by those integers.

`randMat([MatrixName], n, [m], [lower, upper])`

Example:

`RANDMAT(M1, 2, 2)` returns a  $2 \times 2$  matrix with random integer elements, and stores it in M1.

## Jordan

Returns a square nxn matrix with expr on the diagonal, 1 above and 0 everywhere else.

`JordanBlock(Expr, n)`



Example:

`JordanBlock(7, 3)`  $\begin{bmatrix} 7 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$  returns

## Hilbert

Given a positive integer,  $n$ , returns the  $n$ th order Hilbert matrix. Each element of the matrix is given by the formula  $1/(j+k-1)$  where  $j$  is the row number and  $k$  is the column number.

`hilbert(n)`

Example:

In CAS view, `hilbert(4)` returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{5} \\ \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{5} & \frac{1}{6} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{5} & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{7} \end{bmatrix}$

## Isometric

Matrix of an isometry given by its proper elements.

`mkisom(vector, sign(1 or -1))`

Example:

In CAS view, `mkisom([1, 2], 1)` returns  $\begin{bmatrix} \cos(1) & -\sin(1) \\ \sin(1) & \cos(1) \end{bmatrix}$

## Vandermonde

Returns the Vandermonde matrix. Given a vector  $[n_1, n_2 \dots n_j]$ , returns a matrix whose first row is  $[(n_1)^0, (n_1)^1, (n_1)^2, \dots, (n_1)^{j-1}]$ . The second row is  $[(n_2)^0, (n_2)^1, (n_2)^2, \dots, (n_2)^{j-1}]$ , etc.

`vandermonde(vector)`

Example:

`vandermonde([1 3 5])` returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 9 \\ 1 & 5 & 25 \end{bmatrix}$

## Basic

### Norm

Returns the Frobenius norm of a matrix.

`|matrix|`

Example:

$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$  returns 5.47722557505

## Row Norm

**Row Norm.** Finds the maximum value (over all rows) for the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a row.

`ROWNORM(matrix)`

**Example:**

`ROWNORM` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns 7

## Column Norm

**Column Norm.** Finds the maximum value (over all columns) of the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a column.

`COLNORM(matrix)`

**Example:**

`COLNORM` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns 6

## Spectral Norm

**Spectral Norm of a square matrix.**

`SPECNORM(matrix)`

**Example:**

`SPECNORM` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns 5.46498570422

## Spectral Radius

**Spectral Radius of a square matrix.**

`SPECRAD(matrix)`

**Example:**

`SPECRAD(matrix)` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns 5.37228132327

## Condition

**Condition Number.** Finds the 1-norm (column norm) of a square matrix.

`COND(matrix)`

**Example:**

`COND` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns 21

## Rank

Rank of a rectangular matrix.

```
RANK(matrix)
```

Example:

```
RANK( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ ) returns 2
```

## Pivot

Given a matrix, a row number n, and a column number, m, uses Gaussian elimination to return a matrix with zeroes in column m, except that the element in column m and row n is kept as a pivot.

```
pivot(matrix, n, m)
```

Example:

```
pivot( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ , 1, 1) returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & -2 \\ 0 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$ 
```

## Trace

Finds the trace of a square matrix. The trace is equal to the sum of the diagonal elements. (It is also equal to the sum of the eigenvalues.)

```
TRACE(matrix)
```

Example:

```
TRACE( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ ) returns 5
```

## Advanced

### Eigenvalues

Displays the eigenvalues in vector form for matrix.

```
EIGENVAL(matrix)
```

Example:

```
EIGENVAL( $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ ) returns [5.37228... -0.37228...]
```

### Eigenvectors

Eigenvectors and eigenvalues for a square matrix. Displays a list of two arrays. The first contains the eigenvectors and the second contains the eigenvalues.

```
EIGENVV(matrix)
```

Example:

`EIGENVV` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns the following matrices:

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0.4159... & -0.8369... \\ 0.9093... & 0.5742... \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5.3722... & 0 \\ 0 & -0.3722... \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

## Jordan

Returns the list made by the matrix of passage and the Jordan form of a matrix.

`jordan(matrix)`

Example:

$$\text{jordan returns } \left[ \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} & -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 0 & -\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix} \right]$$

## Diagonal

Given a list, returns a matrix with the list elements along its diagonal and zeroes elsewhere. Given a matrix, returns a vector of the elements along its diagonal.

`diag(list)` or `diag(matrix)`

Example:

$$\text{diag}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } [1 \ 4]$$

## Cholesky

For a numerical symmetric matrix A, returns the matrix L such that  $A=L*\text{tran}(L)$ .

$$\text{cholesky}(\text{matrix})\left(\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

Example:

$$\text{In CAS view, cholesky returns } \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{3} & 0 \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} & \frac{\sqrt{33}}{3} \end{bmatrix} \text{ after simplification}$$

## Hermite

Hermite normal form of a matrix with coefficients in Z: returns U,B such that U is invertible in Z, B is upper triangular and  $B=U*A$ .

`ihermite(Mtrx(A))`

Example:

$$\text{ihermite}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & -3 \\ 0 & 3 & 6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

## Hessenberg

Matrix reduction to Hessenberg form. Returns [P,B] such that  $B = \text{inv}(P) * A * P$ .

`hessenberg(Mtrx(A))`

Example:

In CAS view, `hessenberg` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{4}{7} & 1 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{29}{7} & 2 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 7 & \frac{39}{7} & 8 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{278}{49} & \frac{3}{7} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}$

## Smith

Smith normal form of a matrix with coefficients in Z: returns U,B,V such that U and V invertible in Z, B is diagonal,  $B[i,i]$  divides  $B[i+1,i+1]$ , and  $B = U * A * V$ .

`ismith(Mtrx(A))`

Example:

`ismith` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}$

## Factorize

### LQ

LQ Factorization. Factorizes a  $m \times n$  matrix into three matrices L, Q, and P, where  $\{[L[m \times n \text{ lowertrapezoidal}]], [Q[n \times n \text{ orthogonal}]], [P[m \times m \text{ permutation}]]\}$ , and  $P * A = L * Q$ .

`LQ(matrix)`

Examples:

`LQ` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns  $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2.2360... & 0 \\ 4.9193... & 0.8944... \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0.4472... & 0.8944... \\ 0.8944... & -0.4472... \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

### LSQ

Least Squares. Displays the minimum norm least squares matrix (or vector) corresponding to the system  $\text{matrix1} * X = \text{matrix2}$ .

`LSQ(matrix1, matrix2)`

Example:

`LSQ` $\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 11 \end{bmatrix}\right)$  returns  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

### LU

LU Decomposition. Factorizes a square matrix into three matrices L, U, and P, where  $\{[L[\text{lowertriangular}]], [U[\text{uppertriangular}]], [P[\text{permutation}]]\}$  and  $P * A = L * U$ .

`LU(matrix)`

Example:

$$\text{LU}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0.3333\ldots & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 0.6666\ldots \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

## QR

**QR Factorization.** Factorizes an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  numerically as  $Q \cdot R$ , where  $Q$  is an orthogonal matrix and  $R$  is an upper triangular matrix, and returns  $R$ .  $R$  is stored in `var2` and  $Q = A \cdot \text{inv}(R)$  is stored in `var1`.

```
QR(matrix A, var1, var2)
```

Example:

$$\text{QR}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0.3612\ldots & 0.9486\ldots \\ 0.9486\ldots & -0.3162\ldots \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3.1622\ldots & 4.4271\ldots \\ 0 & 0.6324\ldots \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

## SCHUR

**Schur Decomposition.** Factorizes a square matrix into two matrices. If *matrix* is real, then the result is ,  $\{[\text{orthogonal}], [\text{upper-quasi triangular}]]\}$ . If *matrix* is complex, then the result is  $\{[\text{unitary}], [\text{upper-triangular}]]\}$ .

```
SCHUR(matrix)
```

Example:

$$\text{SCHUR}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0.4159\ldots & 0.9093\ldots \\ 0.9093\ldots & 0.4159\ldots \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5.3722\ldots & 1 \\ 5.55 \times 10^{-17} & -0.3722 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

## SVD

**Singular Value Decomposition.** Factorizes an  $m \times n$  matrix into two matrices and a vector:  $\{[m \times m \text{ square orthogonal}], [n \times n \text{ square orthogonal}], [\text{real}]]\}$ .

```
SVD(matrix)
```

Example:

$$\text{SVD}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0.4045\ldots & -0.9145\ldots \\ 0.9145\ldots & 0.4045\ldots \end{bmatrix}, [5.4649\ldots \ 0.3659\ldots], \begin{bmatrix} 0.5760\ldots & 0.8174\ldots \\ 0.8174\ldots & -0.5760 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

## SVL

**Singular Values.** Returns a vector containing the singular values of matrix.

```
SVL(matrix)
```

Example:

$$\text{SVL}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \text{ returns } [5.4649\ldots \ 0.3659\ldots]$$

## Vector

### Cross Product

Cross Product of *vector1* with *vector2*.

```
CROSS(vector1, vector2)
```

Example:

```
CROSS ([1 2],[3 4]) returns [0 0 -2]
```

### Dot Product

Dot Product of two arrays, *matrix1* and *matrix2*.

```
DOT(matrix1, matrix2)
```

Example:

```
DOT ([1 2],[3 4]) returns 11
```

### L<sup>2</sup>Norm

Returns the  $l^2$  norm ( $\sqrt{x_1^2+x_2^2+\dots+x_n^2}$ ) of a vector.

```
l2norm(Vect)
```

Example:

```
l2norm([3 4 -2]) returns  $\sqrt{29}$ 
```

### L<sup>1</sup>Norm

Returns the  $l^1$  norm (sum of the absolute values of the coordinates) of a vector.

```
l1norm(Vect)
```

Example:

```
l1norm([3 4 -2]) returns 9
```

### Max Norm

Returns the  $l^\infty$  norm (the maximum of the absolute values of the coordinates) of a vector.

```
maxnorm(Vect or Mtrx)
```

Example:


```
maxnorm([1 2 3 -4]) returns 4
```

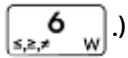
## Examples

### Identity Matrix

You can create an identity matrix with the `IDENMAT` function. For example, `IDENMAT(2)` creates the 2×2 identity matrix `[[1,0],[0,1]]`.

You can also create an identity matrix using the `MAKEMAT` (make matrix) function. For example, entering `MAKEMAT(I ≠ J, 4, 4)` creates a 4 × 4 matrix showing the numeral 1 for all elements except zeros on the

diagonal. The logical operator ( $\neq$ ) returns 0 when I (the row number) and J (the column number) are equal, and returns 1 when they are not equal. (You can insert  $\neq$  by choosing it from the relations palette: )



## Transposing a Matrix

The `TRN` function swaps the row–column and column–row elements of a matrix. For instance, element 1,2 (row 1, column 2) is swapped with element 2,1; element 2,3 is swapped with element 3,2; and so on.

For example, `TRN ([ [1, 2], [3, 4] ])` creates the matrix `[ [1, 3], [2, 4] ]`.



## Reduced-Row Echelon Form

### The set of equations

$$x - 2y + 3z = 14$$

$$2x + y - z = -3$$

$$4x - 2y + 2z = 14$$

can be written as the augmented matrix

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 3 & 14 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & -3 \\ 4 & -2 & 2 & 14 \end{array} \right]$$

Which can then be stored as a 3 x 4 real matrix in any matrix variable. M1 is used in this example.

| Matrices |   |    |    |    |
|----------|---|----|----|----|
| M1       | 1 | 2  | 3  | 4  |
| 1        | 1 | -2 | 3  | 14 |
| 2        | 2 | 1  | -1 | -3 |
| 3        | 4 | -2 | 2  | 14 |
|          |   |    |    |    |
|          |   |    |    |    |

You can then use the `RREF` function to change this to reduced-row echelon form, storing it in any matrix variable. `M2` is used in this example.

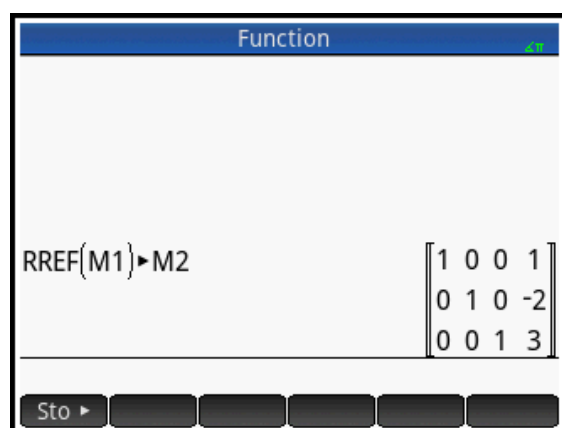
Function

RREF(M1) ► M2

Sto ►

The reduced row echelon matrix gives the solution to the linear equation in the fourth column.

An advantage of using the `RREF` function is that it will also work with inconsistent matrices resulting from systems of equations which have no solution or infinite solutions.



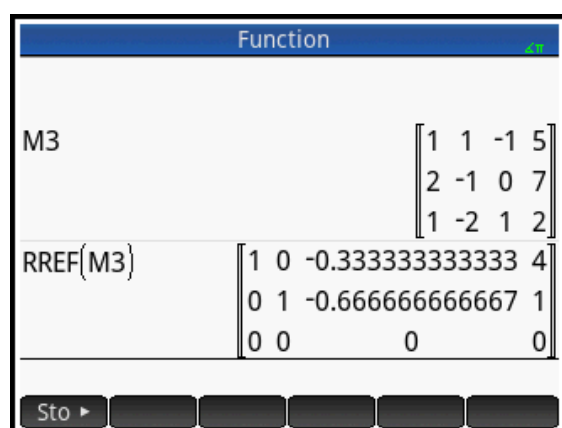
For example, the following set of equations has an infinite number of solutions:

$$x + y - z = 5$$

$$2x - y = 7$$

$$x - 2y + z = 2$$

The final row of zeros in the reduced-row echelon form of the augmented matrix indicates an inconsistent system with infinite solutions.



## 27 Notes and Info



The HP Prime has two text editors for entering notes:




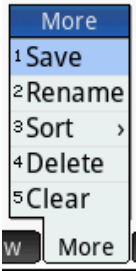



- The Note Editor: opens from within the Note Catalog (which is a collection of notes independent of apps).
- The Info Editor: opens from the Info view of an app. A note created in the Info view is associated with the app and stays with it if you send the app to another calculator.

### The Note Catalog

Subject to available memory, you can store as many notes as you want in the Note Catalog. These notes are independent of any app. The Note Catalog lists the notes by name. This list excludes notes that were created in any app's Info view, but these can be copied and then pasted into the Note Catalog via the clipboard. From the Note Catalog, you create or edit individual notes in the Note Editor.

#### Note Catalog: button and keys

Press   (Notes) to enter the Note Catalog. While you are in the Note Catalog, you can use the following buttons and keys. Note that some buttons will not be available if there are no notes in the Note Catalog.

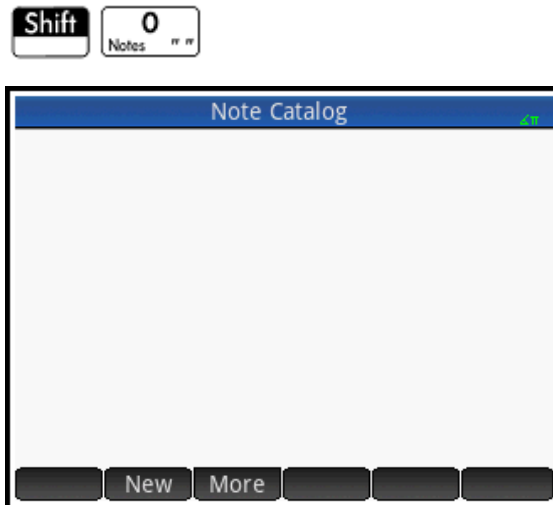
| Button or Key   | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|  | Opens the selected note for editing.  |
|  | Begins a new note, and prompts you for a name.  |
|  | Tap to provide additional features. See below.  |
|  | <b>Save:</b> creates a copy of the selected note and prompts you to save it under a new name.<br><b>Rename:</b> renames the selected note.<br><b>Sort:</b> sorts the list of notes (sort options are alphabetical and chronological).<br><b>Delete:</b> deletes all notes.<br><b>Clear:</b> creates a copy of the selected note and prompts you to save it under a new name.<br><b>Send:</b> sends the selected note to another HP Prime. |
|  | Deletes the selected note.  |
|  | Deletes all notes in the catalog.   |
|  |   |

## The Note Editor

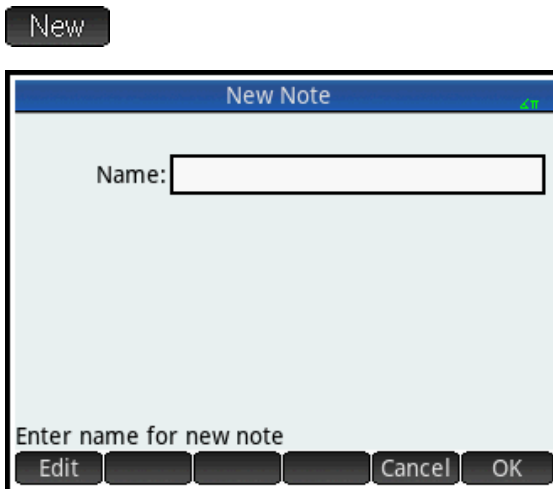
The Note Editor is where you create and edit notes. You can launch the Note Editor from the Notes Catalog, and also from within an app. Notes created within an app stay with that app even if you send the app to another calculator. Such notes do not appear in the Notes Catalog. They can only be read when the associated app is open. Notes created via the Notes Catalog are not specific to any app and can be viewed at any time by opening the Notes Catalog. Such notes can also be sent to another calculator.



### To create a note from the Notes catalog

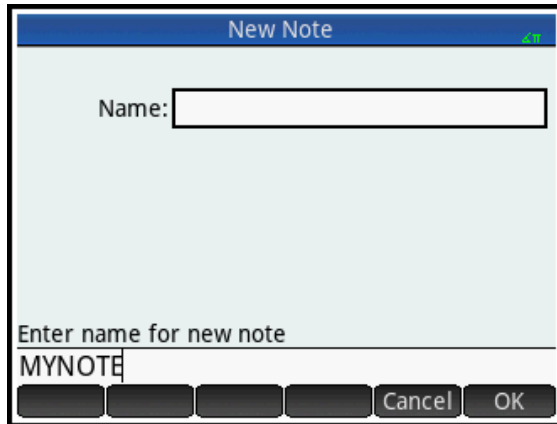
1. Open the Note Catalog.





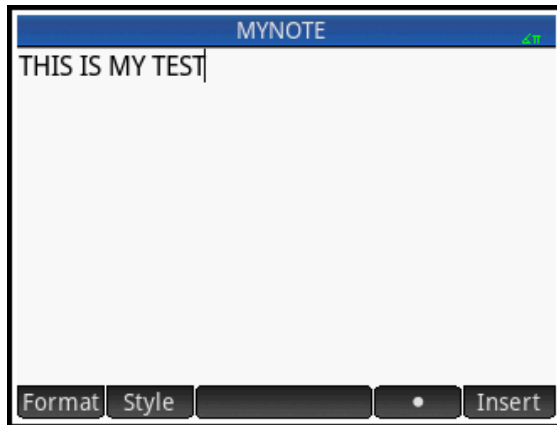
2. Create a new note.



3. Enter a name for your note. In this example, we'll call the note MYNOTE.   MYNOTE



4. Write your note, using the editing keys and formatting options described in the following sections. When you are finished, exit the Note Editor by pressing  or pressing  and opening an app. Your work is automatically saved. To access your new note, return to the Notes Catalog.











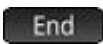




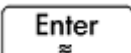







## To create a note for an app

You can also create a note that is specific to an app and which stays with the app should you send the app to another calculator. Notes created this way take advantage of all the formatting features of the Note Editor (see below).

## Note Editor: buttons and keys


The following buttons and keys are available while you are adding or editing a note.




| Button or Key   | Purpose  |
|---|--|
|  | Opens the text formatting menu. See <a href="#">Formatting options on page 489</a> .   |
|  | Provides bold, italic, underline, full caps, superscript and subscript options. See <a href="#">Formatting options on page 489</a> . |

| Button or Key   | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|    | A toggle button that offers three types of bullet. See <a href="#">Formatting options on page 489</a> .   |
|    | Starts a 2D editor for entering mathematical expressions in textbook format; see <a href="#">Inserting mathematical expressions on page 490</a>   |
|    | Enters a space during text entry.   |
|    | Moves from page to page in a multi-page note.   |
|    | Shows options for copying text in a note. See below.  |
|    | Copy option. Mark where to begin a text selection.  |
|    | Copy option. Mark where to end a text selection.  |
|    | Copy option. Select the entire note.  |
|    | Copy option. Cut the selected text.   |
|    | Copy option. Copy the selected text.  |
|   | Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.  |
|  | Starts a new line.  |
|  | Erases the entire note.   |
|  | Menu for entering variable names, and the contents of variables.  |
|  | Menu for entering math commands.  |
|  | Displays a palette of special characters. To type one, highlight it and tap  or press  . To copy a character <i>without</i> closing the Chars menu, select it and tap  . |

## Entering uppercase and lowercase characters

The following table below describes how to quickly enter uppercase and lowercase characters.

| Keys  | Purpose                            |
|---|------------------------------------|
|  | Make the next character upper-case |

| Keys  | Purpose   |
|---|---|
|     | With uppercase locked, make next character lowercase  |
|    | A toggle button that offers three types of bullet. See <a href="#">Formatting options on page 489</a> |
|     | With uppercase locked, make all characters lowercase until the mode is reset                          |
|    | Reset uppercase lock mode   |
|     | Make the next character lower-case  |
|     | Lock mode: make all characters lowercase until the mode is reset                                      |
|    |   |
|    | With lowercase locked, make next character uppercase  |
|   | With lowercase locked, make all characters uppercase until the mode is reset                          |
|    | Reset lowercase lock mode   |

The left side of the notification area of the title bar will indicate what case will be applied to the character you next enter.

## Text formatting


You can enter text in different formats in the Note Editor. Choose a formatting option before you start entering text. The formatting options are described in [Formatting options on page 489](#).

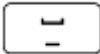
## Formatting options

Formatting options are available from three touch buttons in the Note Editor and in the Info view of an app:



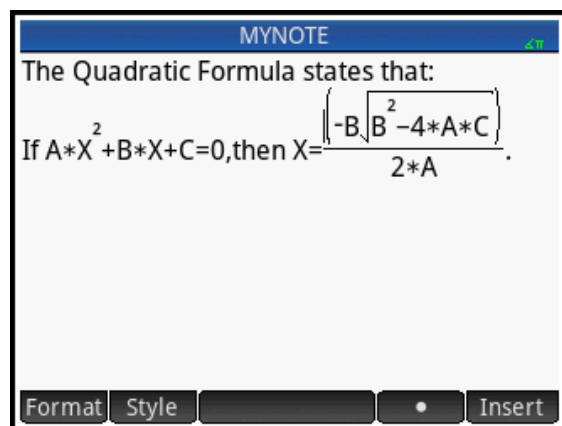
The formatting options are listed in the table below.

| Category  | Options   |
|---|-----------|
|  | 10–22 pt. |
| Font Size   |           |


| Category  | Options                |
|---|------------------------|
| <b>Format</b>   | Select from 20 colors. |
| Foreground Color  |                        |
| <b>Format</b>   | Select from 20 colors. |
| Background Color  |                        |
| <b>Format</b>   | Left                   |
|   | Center                 |
| Align (text alignment)  | Right                  |
| <b>Style</b>  | Bold                   |
|   | Italic                 |
| Font Style  | Underline              |
|   | Strikethrough          |
|   | Superscript            |
|   | Subscript              |
|  | •                      |
|   | ◦                      |
| Bullets   | ▷                      |
|   | X (Cancels bullet)     |

## Inserting mathematical expressions

You can insert a mathematical expression in textbook format into your note, as shown in the figure to the right. The Note Editor uses the same 2D editor that the Home and CAS views employ, activated via the **Insert** menu button.





1. Enter the text you want. When you come to the point where you want to start a mathematical expression, tap **Insert**.
2. Enter the mathematical expression just as you would in Home or CAS views. You can use the math template as well as any function in the Toolbox menus.
3. When you have finished entering your mathematical expression, press  2 or 3 times (depending on the complexity of your expression) to exit the editor. You can now continue to enter text.

## To import a note

You can import a note from the Note Catalog into an app's Info view and vice versa.

Suppose you want to copy a note named **Assignments** from the Note Catalog into the Function Info view:

1. Open the Note Catalog.



2. Select the note **Assignments** and tap **Edit**.

3. Open the copy options for copying to the clipboard.



The menu buttons change to give you options for copying:

**Begin**: Marks where the copying or cutting is to begin.

**End**: Marks where the copying or cutting is to end.

**All**: Select the entire program.

**Cut**: Cut the selection.

**Copy**: Copy the selection.

4. Select what you want to copy or cut (using the options listed immediately above).

5. Tap **Copy** or **Cut**.

6. Open the Info view of the Function app.



7. Move the cursor to the location where you want the copied text to be pasted and open the clipboard.



8. Select the text from the clipboard and press **OK**.

You can send a note to another HP Prime.

---

## 28 Programming in HP PPL

This chapter describes the HP Prime Programming Language (HP PPL). In this chapter you'll learn about:

- programming commands
- writing functions in programs
- using variables in programs
- executing programs
- debugging programs
- creating programs for building custom apps
- sending a program to another HP Prime

### HP Prime Programs

An HP Prime program contains a sequence of commands that execute automatically to perform a task.

#### Command Structure

Commands are separated by a semicolon (;). Commands that take multiple arguments have those arguments enclosed in parentheses and separated by a comma(.). For example,

```
PIXON (xposition, yposition);
```

Sometimes, arguments to a command are optional. If an argument is omitted, a default value is used in its place. In the case of the PIXON command, a third argument could be used that specifies the color of the pixel:

```
PIXON (xposition, yposition [,color]);
```

In this manual, optional arguments to commands appear inside square brackets, as shown above. In the PIXON example, a graphics variable (G) could be specified as the first argument. The default is G0, which always contains the currently displayed screen. Thus, the full syntax for the PIXON command is:

```
PIXON([G,]xposition, yposition [,color]);
```

Some built-in commands employ an alternative syntax whereby function arguments do not appear in parentheses. Examples include RETURN and RANDOM.

#### Program Structure

Programs can contain any number of subroutines (each of which is a function or procedure). Subroutines start with a heading consisting of the name, followed by parentheses that contain a list of parameters or arguments, separated by commas. The body of a subroutine is a sequence of statements enclosed within a BEGIN-END; pair. For example, the body of a simple program, called MYPROGRAM, could look like this:

```
EXPORT MYPROGAM()  
  
BEGIN  
  
PIXON(1,1);  
  
END;
```

## Comments

When a line of a program begins with two forward slashes, //, the rest of the line will be ignored. This enables you to insert comments in the program:

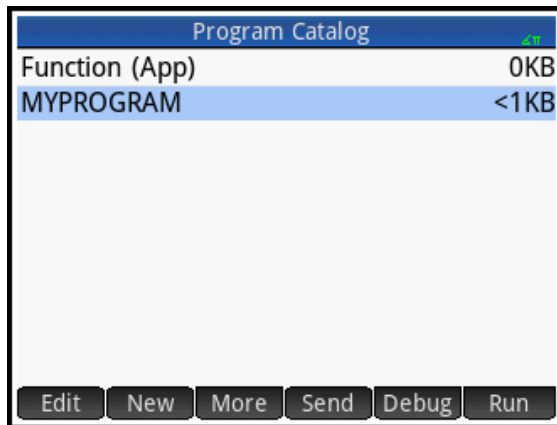
```
EXPORT MYPROGAM()  
  
BEGIN  
  
PIXON(1,1);  
  
//This line is just a comment.  
  
END;
```

## The Program Catalog

The Program Catalog is where you run and debug programs, and send programs to another HP Prime. You can also rename and remove programs, and it is where you start the Program Editor. The Program Editor is where you create and edit programs. Programs can also be run from Home view or from other programs.






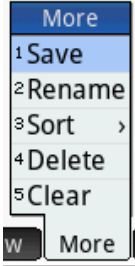
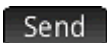





### Open the Program Catalog

Press **Shift** **1** (Program) to open the Program Catalog.



The Program Catalog displays a list of program names. The first item in the Program Catalog is a built-in entry that has the same name as the active app. This entry is the app program for the active app, if such a program exists.

## Program Catalog: buttons and keys

| Button or Key  | Purpose   |
|--|---|
|   | Opens the highlighted program for editing.  |
|   | Prompts for a new program name, then opens the Program Editor.  |
|   | <p>Opens further menu options for the selected program:</p> <p><b>Save</b></p> <p><b>Rename</b></p> <p><b>Sort</b></p> <p><b>Delete</b></p> <p><b>Clear</b></p> <p>These options are described immediately below.</p> <p>To redisplay the initial menu, press  or .</p> |
|    | <p><b>Save:</b> creates a copy of the selected program with a new name you are prompted to give.</p> <p><b>Rename:</b> renames the selected program.</p> <p><b>Sort:</b> sorts the list of programs. (Sort options are alphabetical and chronological).</p> <p><b>Delete:</b> deletes the selected program.</p> <p><b>Clear:</b> deletes all programs.</p>  |
|   | Transmits the highlighted program to another HP Prime.  |
|   | Debugs the selected program.  |
|   | Runs the highlighted program.   |
|  or  | Moves to the beginning or end of the Program Catalog.   |
|   | Deletes the selected program.   |
|   | Deletes all notes in the catalog.   |

## Creating a new program

In the following few sections, we will create a simple program that counts to three as an introduction to using the Program editor and its menus.

1. Open the Program Catalog and start a new program. **Shift** **1** (Program) **New**

New Program 14:37

Name:

CAS: ☐

Enter new name

Edit     Cancel OK

2. Enter a name for the program. **ALPHA** **ALPHA** (to lock alpha mode) MYPROGRAM **OK**


New Program 14:38

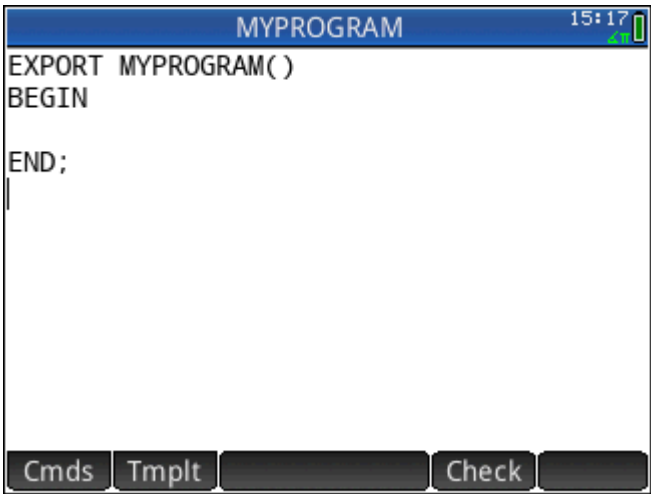
Name:


CAS: ☐

Enter new name




MYPROGRAM     Cancel OK

3. Press  again. A template for your program is then automatically created. The template consists of a heading for a function with the same name as the program, `EXPORT MYPROGRAM()`, and a `BEGIN-END` pair that will enclose the statements for the function.








 **TIP:** A program name can contain only alphanumeric characters (letters and numbers) and the underscore character. The first character must be a letter. For example, `GOOD_NAME` and `Spin2` are valid program names, while `HOT STUFF` (contains a space) and `2Cool!` (starts with number and includes !) are not valid.

### The Program Editor





Until you become familiar with the HP Prime commands, the easiest way to enter commands is to select them from the Catalog menu ( ) , or from the Commands menu in the Program Editor (). To enter variables, symbols, mathematical functions, units, or characters, use the keyboard keys.

### Program Editor: buttons and keys

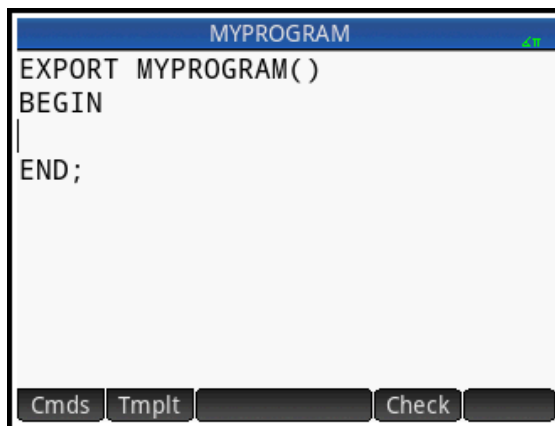
The buttons and keys in the Program Editor are:

| Button or Key  | Meaning   |
|--|---|
|   | Checks the current program for errors.  |
| <br>or<br><br>and<br> | If your program goes beyond one screen, you can quickly jump from screen to screen by tapping either side of this button. Tap the left side of the button to display the previous page; tap the right side to display the next page. (The left tap will be inactive if you have the first page of the program displayed.) |
|   | Opens a menu from which you can choose from common programming commands. The commands are grouped under the options:<br><br>Strings   |

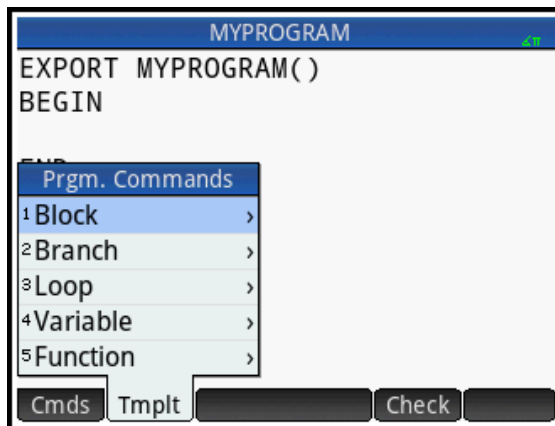
| Button or Key   | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|   | Drawing   |
|   | Matrix  |
|   | App Functions   |
|   | Integer   |
|   | I/O   |
|   | More  |
|   | Press  to return to the main menu.  |
|   | The commands in this menu are described in <a href="#">Commands under the Cmds menu on page 528</a> .   |
|    | <p>Opens a menu from which you can select common programming commands. The commands are grouped under the options:</p> <p>Block</p> <p>Branch</p> <p>Loop</p> <p>Variable</p> <p>Function</p> <p>Press  to return to the main menu.</p> <p>The commands in this menu are described in <a href="#">Commands under the Tmpl menu on page 522</a>.</p>  |
|    | Displays menus for selecting variable names and values.   |
|   (Char)  | <p>Displays a palette of characters. If you display this palette while a program is open, you can choose a character and it will be added to your program at the cursor point. To add one character, highlight it and tap  or press . To add a character <i>without</i> closing the characters palette, select it and tap .</p> |
|   and   | Moves the cursor to the end (or beginning) of the current line. You can also swipe the screen.  |
|   and   | Moves the cursor to the start (or end) of the program. You can also swipe the screen.   |
|   and   | Moves the cursor one screen right (or left). You can also swipe the screen.   |
|    | Starts a new line.  |
|    | Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.  |

| Button or Key   | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|   | Deletes the character to the right of the cursor. |
|    | Deletes the entire program.                       |
|    |   |

1. To continue the MYPROGRAM example (see [Programming in HP PPL on page 492](#)), use the cursor keys to position the cursor where you want to insert a command or just tap on the desired location. In this example, you need to position the cursor between `BEGIN` and `END`.

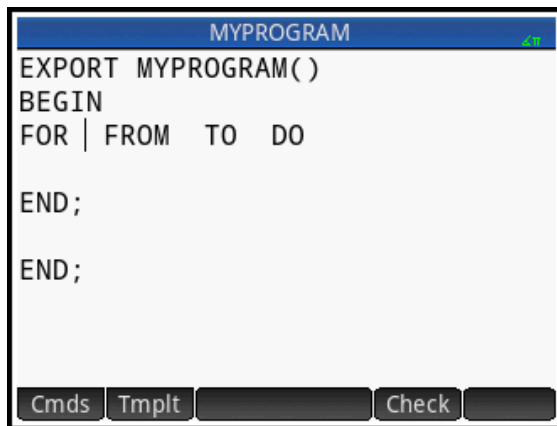
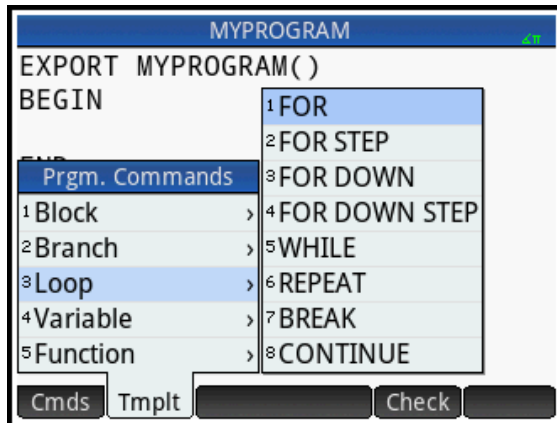


2. Tap **Tmplt** to open the menu of common programming commands for blocking, branching, looping, variables, and functions. In this example we'll select a LOOP command from the menu.

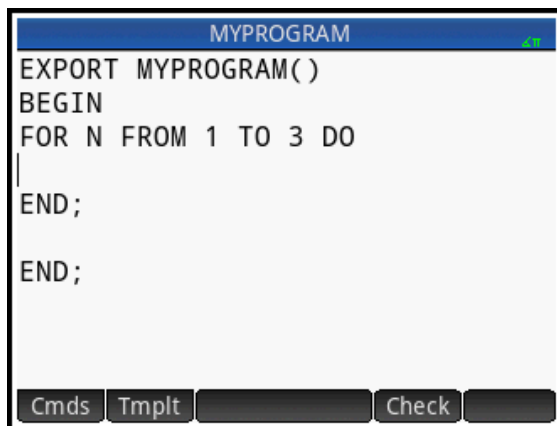




3. Select **Loop** and then select **FOR** from the sub-menu. Notice that a FOR\_FROM\_TO\_DO\_ template is inserted. All you need do is fill in the missing information.



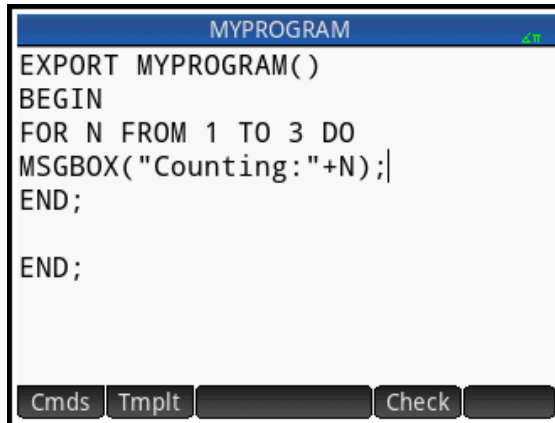
4. Using the cursor keys and keyboard, fill in the missing parts of the command. In this case, make the statement match the following: FOR N FROM 1 TO 3 DO







5. Move the cursor to a blank line below the FOR statement.
6. Tap **Cmds** to open the menu of common programming commands.
7. Select **I/O** and then select **MSGBOX** from the sub-menu.

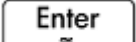
8. Fill in the arguments of the MSGBOX command, and type a semicolon at the end of the command


(   ).



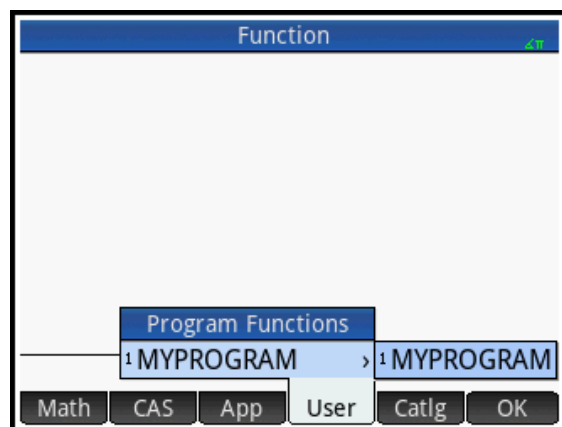
9. Tap  to check the syntax of your program.
10. When you are finished, press   to return to the Program Catalog or  to go to Home view. You are ready now to execute the program.



## Run a Program


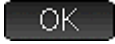
From Home view, enter the name of the program. If the program takes parameters, enter a pair of parentheses after the program name with the parameters inside them each separated by a comma. To run the program, press .

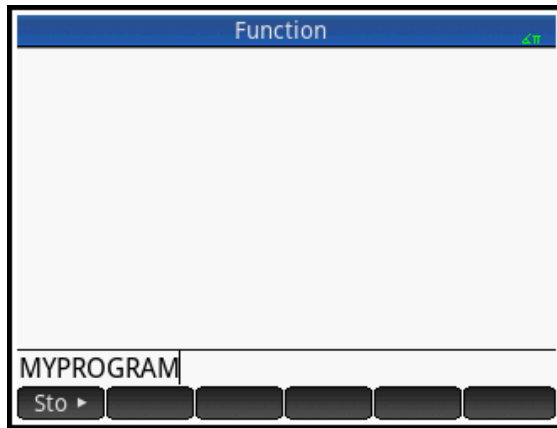
From the Program Catalog, highlight the program you want to run and tap . When a program is executed from the catalog, the system looks for a function named `START()` (no parameters).

You can also run a program from the USER menu (one of the Toolbox menus):




1. Press  and tap .
2. Tap **MYPROGRAM** > to expand the menu and select **MYPROGRAM**. `MYPROGRAM` appears on the entry line.

3. Tap  and the program executes, displaying a message box.
4. Tap  three times to step through the FOR loop. Notice that the number shown increments by 1 each time.



After the program terminates, you can resume any other activity with the HP Prime.

If a program has arguments, when you press  a screen appears prompting you to enter the program parameters.

## Multi-function programs

If there is more than one EXPORT function in a program, when **Run** is tapped a list appears for you to choose which function to run. To see this feature, create a program with the text:

```
EXPORT NAME1 ( )  
  
BEGIN  
  
END;  
  
EXPORT NAME2 ( )  
  
BEGIN  
  
END;
```

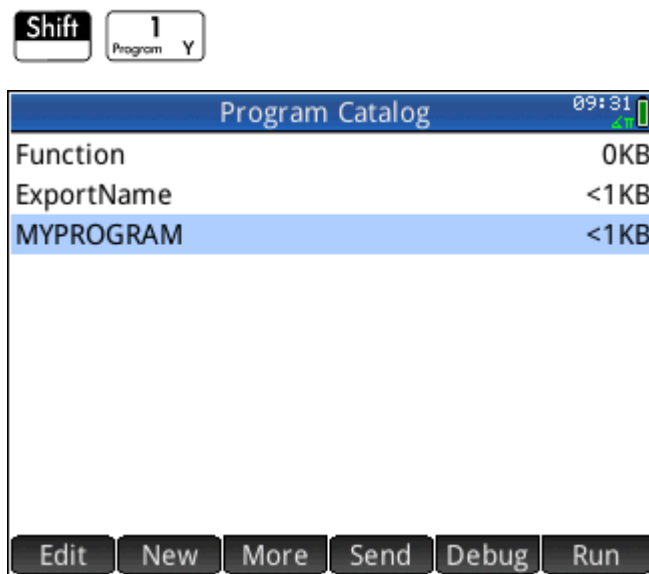
Now note that when you select your program from the Program Catalog and tap **Run** or **Debug**, a list with **NAME1** and **NAME2** appears.

## Debug a Program

You cannot run a program that contains syntax errors. If the program does not do what you expect it to do, or if there is a run-time error detected by the system, you can execute the program step by step, and look at the values of local variables.

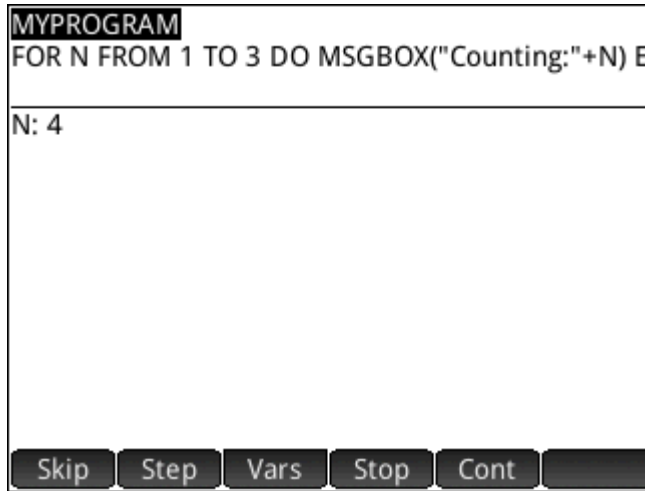
Let's debug the program created above: MYPROGRAM.

1. In the Program Catalog, select MYPROGRAM.



2. Tap **Debug**.

If there is more than one EXPORT function in a file, a list appears for you to choose which function to debug.



While debugging a program, the title of the program or intra-program function appears at the top of the display. Below that is the current line of the program being debugged. The current value of each variable is visible in the main body of the screen. The following menu buttons are available in the debugger:

**Skip**: Skips to the next line or block of the program

**Step**: Executes the current line

**Vars**: Opens a menu of variables. You can select one and add it to the list of variables so you can see how it changes as you step through the program.

**Stop**: Closes the debugger

**Cont**: Continues program execution without debugging

3. Execute the FOR loop command **Step**.

The **FOR** loop starts and the top of the display shows the next line of the program (the **MSGBOX** command).

4. Execute the **MSGBOX** command **Step**.

The message box appears. Note that when each message box is displayed, you still have to dismiss it by tapping **OK** or pressing **Enter**.

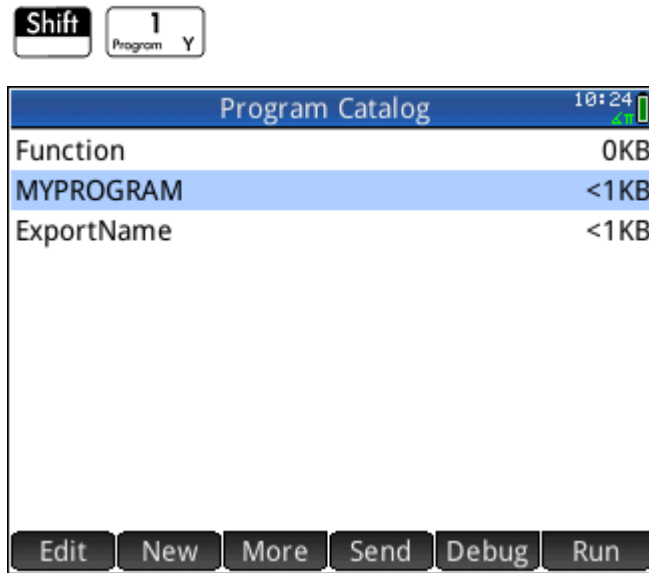
Tap **Step** and press **Enter** repeatedly to execute the program step-by-step.


Tap **Stop** to close the debugger at the current line of the program, or tap **Cont** to run the rest of the program without using the debugger.

## Edit a Program

You edit a program using the Program Editor, which is accessible from the Program Catalog.

1. Open the Program Catalog.



2. Tap the program you want to edit (or use the arrow keys to highlight it and press ).

The HP Prime opens the Program Editor. The name of your program appears in the title bar of the display. The buttons and keys you can use to edit your program are listed in [Program Editor: buttons and keys on page 496](#).

## Copy a program or part of a program

You can use the global **Copy** and **Paste** commands to copy part or all of a program. The following steps illustrate the process:

1. Open the Program Catalog.





2. Tap the program that has the code you want to copy.


3. Press   (Copy).


The menu buttons change to give you options for copying:



 **Begin** : Marks where the copying or cutting is to begin.




 **End** : Marks where the copying or cutting is to end.

 **All** : Select the entire program.

 **Cut** : Cut the selection.

 **Copy** : Copy the selection.

4. Select what you want to copy or cut (using the options listed immediately above).
5. Tap  or .


6. Return to the Program Catalog and open the target program.
7. Move the cursor to where you want to insert the copied or cut code.
8. Press   (Paste). The clipboard opens. What you most recently copied or cut will be first in the list and highlighted already, so just tap . The code will be pasted into the program, beginning at the cursor location.

## Delete a program

To delete a program:

1. Open the Program Catalog.



2. Highlight a program to delete and press .

3. At the prompt, tap  to delete the program or  to cancel.

## Delete all programs

To delete all programs at once:

1. Open the Program Catalog.



2. Press   (Clear).

3. At the prompt, tap  to delete all programs or  to cancel.

## Delete the contents of a program

You can clear the contents of a program without deleting the program. The program then just has a name and nothing else.

1. Open the Program Catalog.





2. Tap the program to open it.

3. Press   (Clear).

## To share a program

You can send programs between calculators just as you can send apps, notes, matrices, and lists.

## The HP Prime programming language

The HP Prime programming language allows you to extend the capabilities of the HP Prime by adding programs, functions and variables to the system. The programs you write can be either standalone or attached to an app. The functions and variables you create can be either local or global. If they are declared to be global, then they appear in the User menu when you press  or . In the following sections, we discuss variables and functions, then create a set of short programs to illustrate the various techniques for creating programs, functions, and variables.

## Variables and visibility

Variables in an HP Prime program can be used to store numbers, lists, matrices, graphics objects, and strings. The name of a variable must be a sequence of alphanumeric characters (letters and numbers), starting with a letter. Names are case-sensitive, so the variables named `MaxTemp` and `maxTemp` are different.


The HP Prime has built-in variables of various types, visible globally (that is, visible wherever you are in the calculator). For example, the built-in variables `A` to `Z` can be used to store real numbers, `Z0` to `Z9` can be used to store complex numbers, `M0` to `M9` can be used to store matrices and vectors, and so on. These names are reserved. You cannot use them for other data. For example, you cannot name a program `M1`, or store a real number in a variable named `Z8`. In addition to these reserved variables, each HP app has its own reserved variables. Some examples are `Root`, `Xmin`, and `Numstart`. Most of these app variables are local to their app, though a few are global by design. For example, `C1` is used by the Statistics 2Var app to store statistical data. This variable is global so that you can access that data from anywhere in the system. Again, these names cannot be used to name a program or store data of a type other than their design allows. (A full list of system and app variables is given in the “Variables” chapter.)

In a program you can declare variables for use only within a particular function. This is done using a `LOCAL` declaration. The use of local variables enables you to declare and use variables that will not affect the rest of the calculator. Local variables are not bound to a particular type; that is, you can store floating-point numbers, integers, lists, matrices, and symbolic expressions in a variable with any local name. Although the system will allow you to store different types in the same local variable, this is poor programming practice and should be avoided.

Variables declared in a program should have descriptive names. For example, a variable used to store the radius of a circle is better named `RADIUS` than `VGFTTRFG`. You are more likely to remember what the variable is used for if its name matches its purpose.



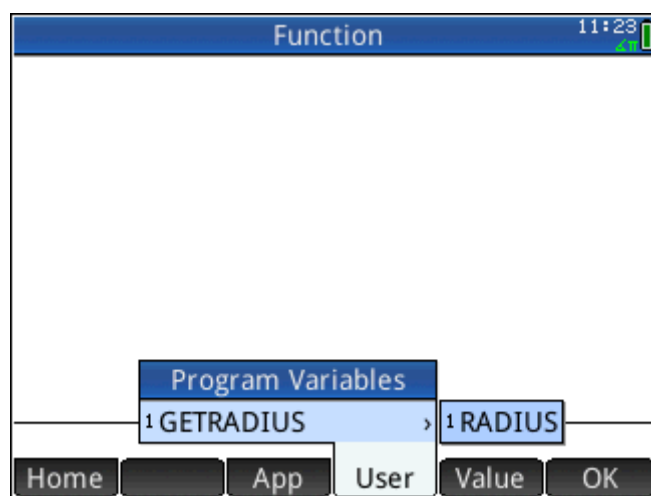
If a variable is needed after the program executes, it can be exported from the program using the `EXPORT` command. To do this, the first command in the program (that is, on a line above the program name) would be `EXPORT RADIUS`. Then, if a value is assigned to `RADIUS`, the name appears on the variables menu

() and is visible globally. This feature allows for extensive and powerful interactivity among different environments in the HP Prime. Note that if another program exports a variable with the same name, the most recently exported version will be active.

The program below prompts the user for the value of `RADIUS`, and exports the variable for use outside the program.

```
EXPORT RADIUS;  
EXPORT GETRADIUS()  
  
BEGIN  
  
INPUT (RADIUS) ;  
  
END;
```

Note that `EXPORT` command for the variable `RADIUS` appears before the heading of the function where `RADIUS` is assigned. After you execute this program, a new variable named `RADIUS` appears on the `USER GETRADIUS` section of the Variables menu.



## Qualifying the name of a variable

The HP Prime has many system variables with names that are apparently the same. For example, the Function app has a variable named `Xmin`, but so too does the Polar app, the Parametric app, the Sequence app, and the Solve app. In a program, and in the Home view, you can refer to a particular version of these variables by qualifying its name. This is done by entering the name of the app (or program) that the variable belongs to, followed by a dot (`.`), and then the actual variable name. For example, the qualified variable `Function.Xmin` refers to the value of `Xmin` within the Function app. Similarly, the qualified variable `Parametric.Xmin` refers to the value of `Xmin` in the Parametric app. Despite having the same name—`Xmin`—the variables could have different values. You do likewise to use a local variable in a program: specify the name of the program, followed by the dot, and then the variable name.

## Functions, their arguments, and parameters

You can define your own functions in a program, and data can be passed to a function using parameters. Functions can return a value (using the `RETURN` statement) or not. When a program is executed from Home view, the program will return the value returned by the last statement that was executed.

Furthermore, functions can be defined in a program and exported for use by other programs, in much the same way that variables can be defined and used elsewhere.

In this section, we will create a small set of programs, each illustrating some aspect of programming in the HP Prime. Each program will be used as a building block for a custom app.

### Program ROLLDIE

We'll first create a program called ROLLDIE. It simulates the rolling of a single die, returning a random integer between 1 and whatever number is passed into the function.

In the Program Catalog create a new program named ROLLDIE. (For help, see [Creating a new program on page 494](#).) Then enter the code in the Program Editor.

```
EXPORT ROLLDIE(N)
BEGIN
RETURN 1+RANDINT(N-1);
END;
```

The first line is the heading of the function. Execution of the `RETURN` statement causes a random integer from 1 to N to be calculated and returned as the result of the function. Note that the `RETURN` command causes the execution of the function to terminate. Thus any statements between the `RETURN` statement and `END` are ignored.

In Home view (in fact, anywhere in the calculator where a number can be used), you can enter `ROLLDIE(6)` and a random integer between 1 and 6 inclusive will be returned.

### Program ROLLMANY

Because of the `EXPORT` command in ROLLDIE, another program could use the ROLLDIE function and generate *n* rolls of a die with any number of sides. In the following program, the ROLLDIE function is used to generate *n* rolls of two dice, each with the number of sides given by the local variable `sides`. The results are stored in list L2, so that L2(1) shows the number of times the dies came up with a combined total of 1, L2(2) shows the number of times the dies came up with a combined total of 2, etc. L2(1) should be 0 (since the sum of the numbers on 2 dice must be at least 2).

```
EXPORT ROLLMANY(n,sides)
BEGIN
  LOCAL k,roll;
  // initialize list of frequencies
  MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*sides,1) ► L2;
  FOR k FROM 1 TO n DO
    ROLLDIE(sides)+ROLLDIE(sides) ► roll;
    L2(roll)+1 ► L2(roll);
```

```
END;
```

```
END;
```

By omitting the `EXPORT` command when a function is declared, its visibility can be restricted to the program within which it is defined. For example, you could define the `ROLLDIE` function inside the `ROLLMANY` program like this:

```
ROLLDIE();

EXPORT ROLLMANY(n,sides)

BEGIN

  LOCAL k,roll;

  // initialize list of frequencies
  MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*sides,1) ► L2;

  FOR k FROM 1 TO n DO
    ROLLDIE(sides)+ROLLDIE(sides) ► roll;
    L2(roll)+1 ► L2(roll);
  END;
END;

ROLLDIE(n)

BEGIN

RETURN 1+RANDINT(n-1);

END;
```

In the second version of the `ROLLMANY` program, there is no `ROLLDIE` function exported from another program. Instead, `ROLLDIE` is visible only to `ROLLMANY`. The `ROLLDIE` function must be declared before it is called. The first line of the program above contains the declaration of the `ROLLDIE` function. The definition of the `ROLLDIE` function is located at the end of the program.

Finally, the list of results could be returned as the result of calling `ROLLMANY` instead of being stored directly in the global list variable, `L2`. This way, if the user wanted to store the results elsewhere, it could be done easily.

```
ROLLDIE();

EXPORT ROLLMANY(n,sides)

BEGIN

  LOCAL k,roll,results;

  // initialize list of frequencies
  MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*sides,1) ► results;

  FOR k FROM 1 TO n DO
    ROLLDIE(sides)+ROLLDIE(sides) ► roll;
    results(roll)+1 ► results(roll);
  END;
END;
```

```

END;

RETURN results;

END;

ROLLDIE (N)

BEGIN


RETURN 1+RANDINT (N-1) ;

END;

```

In Home view you would enter `ROLLMANY (100, 6)` ► `L5` and the results of the simulation of 100 rolls of two six-sided dice would be stored in list `L5`.

## The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses

You can assign alternative functionality to any key on the keyboard, including to the functionality provided by the shift and alpha keys. This enables you to customize the keyboard to your particular needs. For example, you could assign  to a function that is multi-nested on a menu and thus difficult to get to on a menu (such as `ALOG`).

A customized keyboard is called the user keyboard and you activate it when you go into user mode.






### User mode

There are two user modes:

- Temporary user mode: the next key press, and only the next, enters the object you have assigned to that key. After entering that object, the keyboard automatically returns to its default operation.

To activate temporary user mode, press   (User). Notice that **1U** appears in the title bar. The **1** will remind you that the user keyboard will be active for just one key press.

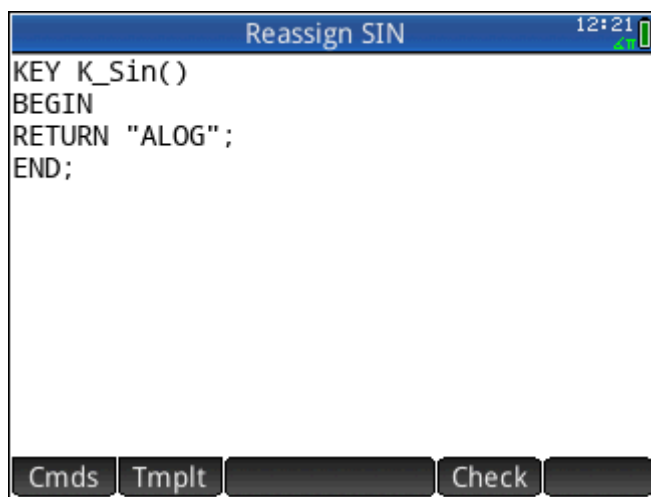
- Persistent user mode: each key press from now *until you turn off user mode* will enter whatever object you have assigned to a key.

To activate persistent user mode, press    . Notice that **CU** appears in the title bar. The user keyboard will now remain active until you press   again.

If you are in user mode and press a key that hasn't been reassigned, the key's standard operation is performed.



## Reassigning keys

Suppose you want to assign a commonly used function—such as `ALOG`—to its own key on the keyboard. Simply create a new program that mimics the syntax in the following figure.










The first line of the program specifies the key to be reassigned using its internal name. (The names of all the keys are given in [Key names on page 511](#). They are case-sensitive.)

On line 3, enter the text you want produced when the key being reassigned is pressed. This text must be enclosed in quote marks.


The next time you want to insert `ALOG` at the position of your cursor, you just press  .



You can enter any string you like in the `RETURN` line of your program. For example, if you enter “Newton”, that text will be returned when you press the reassigned key. You can even get the program to return user-defined functions as well as system functions, and user-defined variables as well as system variables.














You can also reassign a shifted key combination. So, for example,    could be reassigned to produce `SLOPE (F1 (X) , 3)` rather than the lowercase `t`. Then if    is entered in Home view and  pressed, the gradient at  $X = 3$  of whatever function is currently defined as `F1(X)` in the Function app would be returned.
























**TIP:** A quick way to write a program to reassign a key is to press  and select **Create user key** when you are in the Program Editor. You will then be asked to press the key (or key combination) you want to reassign. A program template appears, with the internal name of the key (or key combination) added automatically.

## Key names







The first line of a program that reassigns a key must specify the key to be reassigned using its internal name. The table below gives the internal name for each key. Note that key names are case-sensitive.

| Internal name of keys and key states  |         |   |   |   |
|---|---------|---|---|---|
| Key   | Name    |  + key |  + key |   + key |
|    | K_0     | KS_0  | KA_0  | KSA_0   |
|    | K_1     | KS_1  | KA_1  | KSA_1   |
|    | K_2     | KS_2  | KA_2  | KSA_2   |
|    | K_3     | KS_3  | KA_3  | KSA_3   |
|    | K_4     | KS_4  | KA_4  | KSA_4   |
|    | K_5     | KS_5  | KA_5  | KSA_5   |
|    | K_6     | KS_6  | KA_6  | KSA_6   |
|  | K_7     | KS_7  | KA_7  | KSA_7   |
|  | K_8     | KS_8  | KA_8  | KSA_8   |
|  | K_9     | KS_9  | KA_9  | KSA_9   |
|  | K_Abc   | KS_Abc  | KA_Abc  | KSA_Abc   |
|  | K_Alpha | KS_Alpha  | KA_Alpha  | KSA_Alpha   |
|  | K_Apps  | KS_Apps   | KA_Apps   | KSA_Apps  |
|  | K_Bksp  | KS_Bksp   | KA_Bksp   | KSA_Bksp  |
|  | K_Comma | KS_Comma  | KA_Comma  | KSA_Comma   |
|  | K_Cos   | KS_Cos  | KA_Cos  | KSA_Cos   |

| Internal name of keys and key states  |         |   |   |  |
|---|---------|---|---|--|
| Key   | Name    |  + key |  + key |   +<br>key |
|    | K_Div   | KS_Div  | KA_Div  | KSA_Div  |
|    | K_Dot   | KS_Dot  | KA_Dot  | KSA_Dot  |
|    | K_Down  | KS_Down   | KA_Down   | KSA_Down   |
|    | K_Ente  | KS_Enter  | KA_Enter  | KSA_Enter  |
|    | K_Home  | KS_Home   | KA_Home   | KSA_Home   |
|    | K_Left  | KS_Left   | KA_Left   | KSA_Left   |
|    | K_Right | KS_Right  | KA_Right  | KSA_Right  |
|   | K_Ln    | KS_Ln   | KA_Ln   | KSA_Ln   |
|  | K_Log   | KS_Log  | KA_Log  | KSA_Log  |
|  | K_Minus | KS_Minus  | KA_Minus  | KSA_Minus  |
|  | K_Neg   | KS_Neg  | KA_Neg  | KSA_Neg  |
|  | K_Num   | KS_Num  | KA_Num  | KSA_Num  |
|  | K_On    | —   | KA_On   | KSA_On   |
|  | K_Plot  | KS_Plot   | KA_Plot   | KSA_Plot   |
|  | K_Plus  | KS_Plus   | KA_Plus   | KSA_Plus   |
|  | K_Power | KS_Power  | KA_Power  | KSA_Power  |
|  | K_Sin   | KS_Sin  | KA_Sin  | KSA_Sin  |

| Internal name of keys and key states  |         |   |   |   |
|---|---------|---|---|---|
| Key   | Name    |  + key |  + key |   + key |
|    | K_Sq    | KS_Sq   | KA_Sq   | KSA_Sq  |
|    | K_Symb  | KS_Symb   | KA_Symb   | KSA_Symb  |
|    | K_Tan   | KS_Tan  | KA_Tan  | KSA_Tan   |
|    | K_Up    | KS_Up   | KA_Up   | KSA_Up  |
|    | K_Vars_ | KS_Vars_  | KA_Vars_  | KSA_Vars_   |
|    | K_View  | KS_View   | KA_View   | KSA_View  |
|    | K_Xttn  | KS_Xttn   | KA_Xttn   | KSA_Xttn  |
|   | K_Help  | —   | KA_Help   | KSA_Help  |
|  | K_Menu  | KS_Menu   | KA_Menu   | KSA_Menu  |
|  | K_Esc   | KS_Esc  | KA_Esc  | KSA_Esc   |
|  | K_Cas   | KS_Cas  | KA_Cas  | KSA_Cas   |
|  | K_Math  | KS_Math   | KA_Math   | KSA_Math  |
|  | K_Templ | KS_Templ  | KA_Templ  | KSA_Templ   |
|  | K_Paren | KS_Paren  | KA_Paren  | KSA_Paren   |
|  | K_Eex   | KS_Eex  | KA_Eex  | KSA_Eex   |
|  | K_Mul   | KS_Mul  | KA_Mul  | KSA_Mul   |














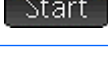
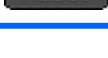
| Internal name of keys and key states  |         |   |   |   |
|---|---------|---|---|---|
| Key   | Name    |  + key |  + key |   + key |
|  | —       | —   | —   | —   |
|  | K_Space | KS_Space  | KA_Space  | KSA_Space   |

## App programs

An app is a unified collection of views, programs, notes, and associated data. Creating an app program allows you to redefine the app's views and how a user will interact with those views. This is done with (a) dedicated program functions with special names and (b) by redefining the views in the **View** menu.

### Using dedicated program functions


There are nine dedicated program function names, as shown in the table below. These functions are called when the corresponding keys shown in the table are pressed. These functions are designed to be written into a program that controls an app and used in the context of that app.

| Program   | Name                         | Equivalent Keystrokes   |
|-----------|------------------------------|---|
| Symb      | Symbolic view                |    |
| SymbSetup | Symbolic Setup               |   |
| Plot      | Plot view                    |    |
| PlotSetup | Plot Setup                   |   |
| Num       | Numeric view                 |    |
| NumSetup  | Numeric Setup                |   |
| Info      | Info view                    |   |
| START     | Starts an app                |    |
| RESET     | Resets or initializes an app |    |

## Redefining the View menu




The **View** menu allows any app to define views in addition to the standard seven views shown in the table above. By default, each HP app has its own set of additional views contained in this menu. The `VIEW` command allows you to redefine these views to run programs you have created for an app. The syntax for the `VIEW` command is:

```
VIEW "text", function()
```

By adding `VIEW "text", function()` before the declaration of a function, you will override the list of views for the app. For example, if your app program defines three views—"SetSides", "RollDice" and "PlotResults"—when you press  you will see SetSides, RollDice, and PlotResults instead of the app's default view list.

## Customizing an app

When an app is active, its associated program appears as the first item in the Program Catalog. It is within this program that you put functions to create a custom app. A useful procedure for customizing an app is illustrated below:

1. Decide on the HP app that you want to customize. The customized app inherits all the properties of the HP app.
2. Go to the Applications Library (  ), highlight the HP app, tap  and save the app with a unique name.
3. Customize the new app if you need to (for example, by configuring the axes or angle measure settings).
4. Open the Program Catalog, select your new app program, and tap .
5. Develop the functions to work with your customized app. When you develop the functions, use the app naming conventions described above.
6. Put the `VIEW` command in your program to modify the app's View menu.
7. Decide if your app will create new global variables. If so, you should `EXPORT` them from a separate user program that is called from the `Start()` function in the app program. This way they will not have their values lost.
8. Test the app and debug the associated programs.

It is possible to link more than one app via programs. For example, a program associated with the Function app could execute a command to start the Statistics 1Var app, and a program associated with the Statistics 1Var app could return to the Function app (or launch any other app).

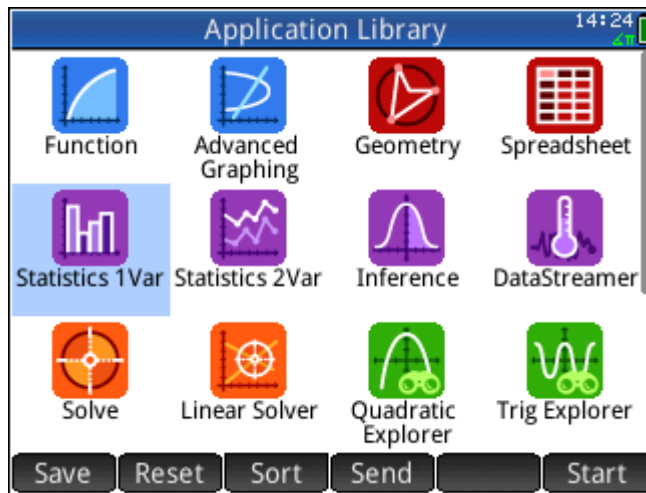
## Example

The following example illustrates the process of creating a custom app. The app is based on the built-in Statistics 1Var app. It simulates the rolling of a pair of dice, each with a number of sides specified by the user. The results are tabulated, and can be viewed either in a table or graphically.

1. In the Application Library, select the Statistics 1Var app but don't open it.



Select **Statistics 1Var**.

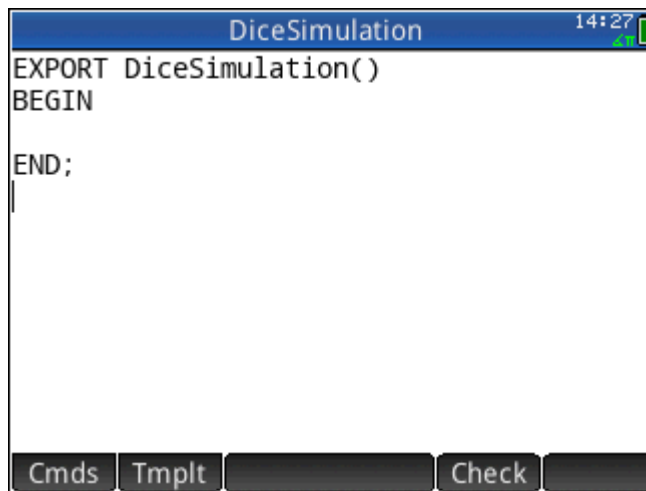


2. Tap **Save**.
3. Enter a name for the new app (such as `DiceSimulation`.)
4. Tap **OK** twice. The new app appears in the Application Library.
5. Open the Program Catalog.



6. Tap the program to open it.

Each customized app has one program associated with it. Initially, this program is empty. You customize the app by entering functions into that program.



At this point you decide how you want the user to interact with the app. In this example, we will want the user to be able to:

- start and initialize the app, and display a short note
- specify the number of sides (that is, faces) on each die
- specify the number of times to roll the dice





- graphically display the results of the simulation
- numerically display the results of the simulation.

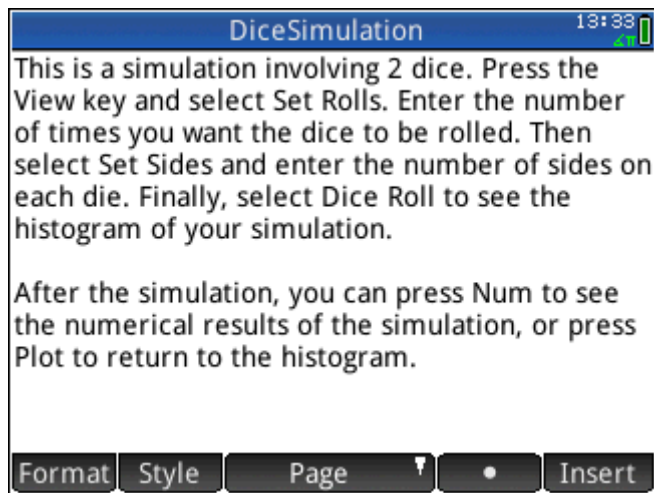
With that in mind, we will create the following views:

START, ROLL DICE, SET SIDES, and SET ROLLS.

The START option will initialize the app and display a note that gives the user instructions. The user will also interact with the app through the Numeric view and the Plot view.

These views will be activated by pressing  and , but the function `Plot()` in our app program will actually launch the latter view after doing some configuration.

Before entering the following program, press   to open the Info editor and enter the text shown in the figure. This note will be attached to the app and will be displayed when the user selects the Start option from the View menu (or presses  ).



The program discussed earlier in this chapter to get the number of sides for a dice is expanded here, so that the possible sums of two such die are stored in dataset D1. Enter the following sub-routines into the program for the DiceSimulation app.

### The DiceSimulation program

```
DICESIMVARS();
ROLLDIE();
EXPORT SIDES, ROLLS;
EXPORT DiceSimulation()
BEGIN
END;
VIEW "Start", START()
BEGIN
  D1:={};
  D2:={};
```

```

SetSample(H1,D1);
SetFreq(H1,D2);
H1Type:=1;
STARTVIEW(6,1);
END;

VIEW "Roll Dice",ROLLMANY()
BEGIN
    LOCAL k,roll;
    D1:= MAKELIST(X+1,X,1,2*SIDES-1,1);
    D2:= MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*SIDES-1,1);
    FOR k FROM 1 TO ROLLS DO
        roll:=ROLLDIE(SIDES)+ROLLDIE
            (SIDES);
        D2(roll-1):= D2(roll-1)+1;
    END;
    Xmin:= -0.1;
    Xmax:= MAX(D1)+1;
    Ymin:= -0.1;
    Ymax:= MAX(D2)+1;
    STARTVIEW(1,1);
END;

VIEW "Set Sides",SETSIDES()
BEGIN
    REPEAT
        INPUT(SIDES,"Die Sides","N=","Enter# of sides",2);
        SIDES:= FLOOR(SIDES);
        IF SIDES<2 THEN MSGBOX("# of sides must be >= 4");
    END;
    UNTIL SIDES >=4;
    STARTVIEW(7,1);
END;

VIEW "Set Rolls",SETROLLS()
BEGIN
    REPEAT

```

```

INPUT(ROLLS,"Num of rolls","N=","Enter# of rolls",25);
ROLLS:= FLOOR(ROLLS);
IF ROLL<1 THEN MSGBOX("You must enter a num >=1");
END;
UNTIL ROLL>=1;
STARTVIEW(7,1);
END;
PLOT()
BEGIN
  Xmin:=-0.1;
  Xmax:= MAX(D1)+1;
  Ymin:= -0.1;
  Ymax:= MAX(D2)+1;
  STARTVIEW(1,1);
END;
Symb()
BEGIN
  SetSample(H1,D1);
  SetFreq(H1,D2);
  H1Type:=1;
  STARTVIEW(0,1);
END;

```

The `ROLLMANY()` routine is an adaptation of the program presented earlier in this chapter. Since you cannot pass parameters to a program called through a selection from a custom View menu, the exported variables `SIDES` and `ROLLS` are used in place of the parameters that were used in the previous versions.

The program above calls two other user programs: `ROLLDIE()` and `DICESIMVARS()`. `ROLLDIE()` appears earlier in this chapter. Here is `DICESIMVARS`. Create a program with that name and enter the following code.

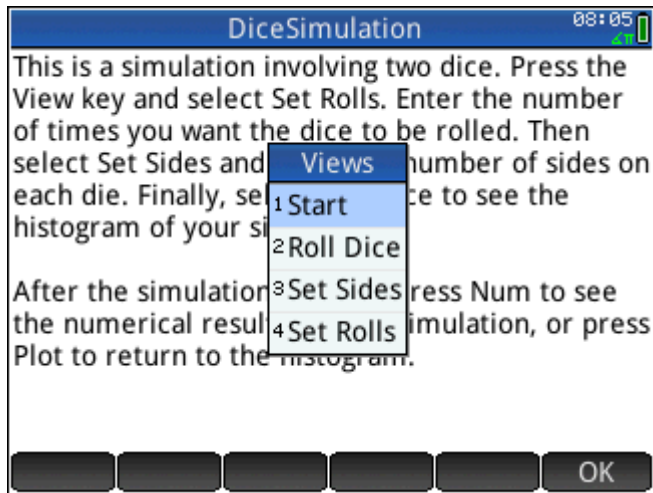
### **The program DICESIMVARS**

```

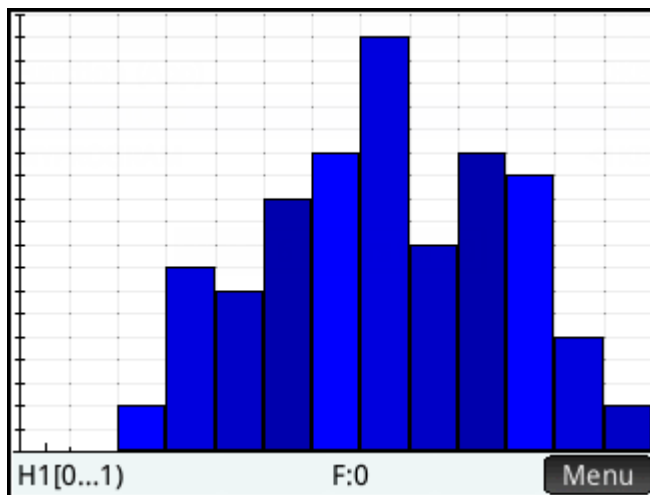
EXPORT ROLL,SIDES;
EXPORT DICESIMVARS()
BEGIN
  10 ► ROLL;
  6 ► SIDES;
END;

```

1. Press **Apps Info**, and open DiceSimulation. The note will appear explaining how the app works.
2. Press **View Copy** to see the custom app menu. Here you can reset the app (Start), set the number of sides of the dice, the number of rolls, and execute a simulation.



3. Select **Set Rolls** and enter 100.
4. Select **Set Sides** and enter 6.
5. Select **Roll Dice**. You will see a histogram similar to the one shown in the figure.



6. Press **Num Setup** to see the data and **Plot Setup** to return to the histogram.
7. To run another simulation, press **View Copy** and select **Roll Dice**.

## Program commands

This section describes each program command. The commands under the **Tmpl** menu are described first. The commands under the **Cmds** menu are described in [Commands under the Cmds menu on page 528](#).

## Commands under the Tmpl menu

### Block

The block commands determine the beginning and end of a sub-routine or function. There is also a Return command to recall results from sub-routines or functions.

#### BEGIN END

**Syntax:** BEGIN *command1*; *command2*;...; *commandN*; END;

Defines a command or set of commands to be executed together. In the simple program:

```
EXPORT SQM1 (X)
BEGIN
RETURN X^2-1;
END;
```

the block is the single RETURN command.

If you entered SQM1 (8) in Home view, the result returned would be 63.

#### RETURN

**Syntax:** RETURN *expression*;

Returns the current value of *expression*.

#### KILL

**Syntax:** KILL;

Stops the step-by-step execution of the current program (with debug).

### Branch

In what follows, the plural word *commands* refers to both a single command or a set of commands.

#### IF THEN

**Syntax:** IF *test* THEN *commands* END;

Evaluate *test*. If *test* is true (not 0), executes *commands*. Otherwise, nothing happens.

#### IF THE ELSE

**Syntax:** IF *test* THEN *commands 1* ELSE *commands 2* END;

Evaluate *test*. If *test* is true (non 0), executes *commands 1*, otherwise, executes *commands 2*.

#### CASE

**Syntax:**

```
CASE
  IF test1 THEN commands1 END;
```



```

    IF test2 THEN commands2 END;

...
[ DEFAULT commands]
END;

```

Evaluates *test1*. If true, executes *commands1* and ends the CASE. Otherwise, evaluates *test1*. If true, executes *commands2* and ends the CASE. Continues evaluating tests until a true is found. If no true test is found, execute default commands, if provided. The CASE command is limited to 127 branches.

Example:

```

CASE
IF THEN RETURN "negative"; END;
IF THEN RETURN "small"; END;
DEFAULT RETURN "large";
END;

```

## IFERR

```
IFERR commands1 THEN commands2 END;
```

Executes sequence of *commands1*. If an error occurs during execution of *commands1*, executes sequence of *commands2*.

## IFERR ELSE

```
IFERR commands1 THEN commands2 ELSE commands3 END;
```

Executes sequence of *commands1*. If an error occurs during execution of *commands1*, executes sequence of *commands2*. Otherwise, execute sequence of *commands3*.

## Loop

### FOR

Syntax: FOR *var* FROM *start* TO *finish* DO commands END;

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is less than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of *commands*, and then adds 1 (*increment*) to *var*.

Example 1: This program determines which integer from 2 to N has the greatest number of factors.

```

EXPORT MAXFACTORS (N)
BEGIN
LOCAL cur,max,k,result;
1 ► max;1 ► result;
FOR k FROM 2 TO N DO
    SIZE(CAS.idivis(k)) ► cur;
    IF cur(1) > max THEN

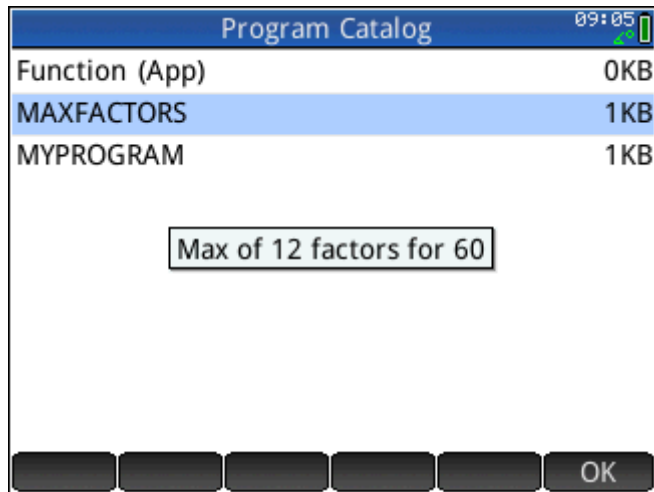
```

```

cur(1) ► max;
k ► result;
END;
END;
MSGBOX("Max of "+ max +" factors for "+result);
END;

```

In Home, enter MAXFACTORS (100).

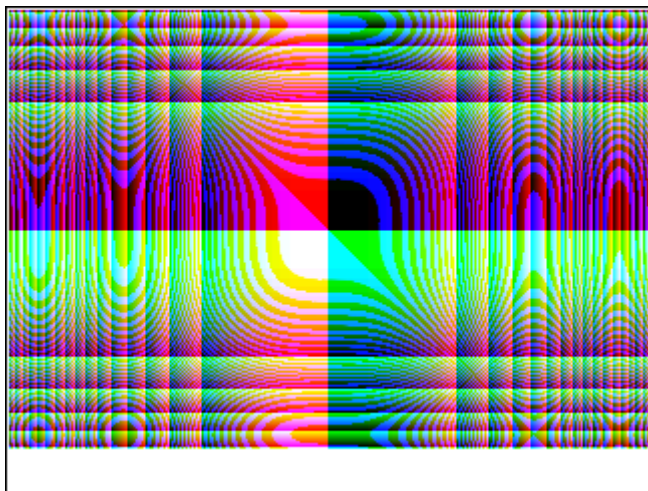


## FOR STEP

**Syntax:** FOR *var* FROM *start* TO *finish* [*STEP increment*] DO commands END;

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is less than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of commands, and then adds *increment* to *var*.

Example 2: This program draws an interesting pattern on the screen.



```

EXPORT
DRAWPATTERN ()

```

```

BEGIN
LOCAL
xincr,yincr,color;
STARTAPP("Function");
RECT();
xincr := (Xmax - Xmin)/318;
yincr := (Ymax - Ymin)/218;
FOR X FROM Xmin TO Xmax STEP xincr DO
FOR Y FROM Ymin TO Ymax STEP yincr DO
color := RGB(X^3 MOD 255,Y^3 MOD 255, TAN(0.1*(X^3+Y^3)) MOD 255);
PIXON(X,Y,color);
END;
END;
WAIT;
END;

```

## FOR DOWN

**Syntax:** FOR *var* FROM *start* DOWNTO *finish* DO *commands* END;

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is more than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of commands, and then subtracts 1 (decrement) from *var*.

## FOR STEP DOWN

**Syntax:** FOR *var* FROM *start* DOWNTO *finish* [STEP *increment*] DO *commands* END;

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is more than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of commands, and then subtracts *increment* from *var*.

## WHILE

**Syntax:** WHILE *test* DO *commands* END;

Evaluates *test*. If result is true (not 0), executes the *commands*, and repeats.

**Example:** A perfect number is one that is equal to the sum of all its proper divisors. For example, 6 is a perfect number because  $6 = 1+2+3$ . The example below returns true when its argument is a perfect number.

```

EXPORT ISPERFECT(n)
BEGIN
LOCAL d, sum;
2 ► d;
1 ► sum;
WHILE sum <= n AND d < n DO
IF irem(n,d)==0 THEN sum+d ► sum;

```

```

END;
d+1 ► d;
END;
RETURN sum==n;
END;

```

The following program displays all the perfect numbers up to 1000:

```

EXPORT PERFECTNUMS ()
BEGIN
LOCAL k;
FOR k FROM 2 TO 1000 DO
  IF ISPERFECT(k) THEN
    MSGBOX(k+" is perfect, press OK");
  END;
END;
END;

```

## REPEAT

**Syntax:** REPEAT commands UNTIL test;

Repeats the sequence of commands until test is true (not 0).

The example below prompts for a positive value for SIDES, modifying an earlier program in this chapter:

```

EXPORT SIDES;
EXPORT GETSIDES ()
BEGIN
  REPEAT
    INPUT(SIDES,"Die Sides","N = ","Enter num sides",2);
  UNTIL SIDES>0;
END;

```

## BREAK

**Syntax:** BREAK (n)

Exits from loops by breaking out of n loop levels. Execution picks up with the first statement after the loop. With no argument, exits from a single loop.

## CONTINUE

**Syntax:** CONTINUE

Transfers execution to the start of the next iteration of a loop

## Variable

These commands enable you to control the visibility of a user-defined variable.



### LOCAL

**Syntax:** `LOCAL var1, var2, ...varn;`

Makes the variables *var1*, *var2*, etc. local to the program in which they are found.

### EXPORT

**Syntax:** `EXPORT var1, var2, ..., varn;`

Exports the variables *var1*, *var2*, etc. so they are globally available and appear on the **User** menu when you press  and select .

## Function

These commands enable you to control the visibility of a user-defined function.

### EXPORT

**Syntax:** `EXPORT FunctionName(Parameters) or Export Var{:=Val) or Export Var1[:=Val1], Var2[:=Val2], ...)`

In a program, declares the functions or variables to export globally. The exported functions appear in the Toolbox User menu and the exported variables appear in the Vars CAS, App, and User menus.

For an exported function, there are two uses of EXPORT.

Forward function declaration:

`EXPORT function(params);`

Normal function declaration:

`EXPORT function[(params)]`

`BEGIN`

`//Function definition goes here`

`END;`

**Examples:**

`EXPORT X2M1(X);`

`EXPORT ratio:=0.15;`

`Export X2M1(X)`


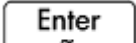
`BEGIN`

`RETURN X^2-1;`

`END;`

## VIEW

**Syntax:** `EXPORT FunctionName(Parameters) or Export Var{:=Val) or`

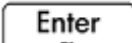
Replaces the **View** menu of the current app and adds an entry with “text”. If “text” is selected and the user presses  or , then `functionname()` is called.

## KEY

A prefix to a key name when creating a user keyboard. See [The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses on page 510](#).

## Commands under the Cmds menu

### Strings

A string is a sequence of characters enclosed in double quotes (“”). To put a double quote in a string, use two consecutive double quotes. The `\` character starts an escape sequence, and the character(s) immediately following are interpreted specially. `\n` inserts a new line and two backslashes insert a single backslash. To put a new line into the string, press  to wrap the text at that point.

## ASC

**Syntax:** `ASC(string)`

Returns a list containing the ASCII codes of string.

Example: `ASC("AB")` returns `[65,66]`

## CHAR

**Syntax:** `CHAR(vector) or CHAR(integer)`

Returns the string corresponding to the character codes in `vector`, or the single code of `integer`.

Examples: `CHAR(65)` returns `"A"`

`CHAR([82,77,72])` returns `"RMH"`

## DIM

**Syntax:** `DIM(string)`

Returns the number of characters in string.

Example: `DIM("12345")` returns 5, `DIM(" ")` and `DIM("\n")` return 1. (Notice the use of the two double quotes and the escape sequence.)

## STRING

**Syntax:** `STRING(Expression, [Mode], [Precision], [Separator] or {Separator, ["[DecimalPoint[Exponent[NegativeSign]]"]], [DotZero]}}, [SizeLimit] or {SizeLimit, [FontSize], [Bold], [Italic], [Monospaced]}]`

Evaluates `Expression` and returns the result as a string.

The extra parameters specify how numbers are displayed.

If Mode is specified, it must be:

0: Use current setting

1: Standard

2: Fixed

3: Scientific

4: Engineering

5: Floating

6: Rounded

Add 7 to this value to specify proper fraction mode and 14 for mixed fraction mode.

Precision is either -1 for current settings or 0 to 12.

Separator is a string containing a set of digits and separators. The last digit is assumed to be the one just before the decimal point. Separator can also be a number. -1 means use default, 0 to 10 specify the use of one of the 11 built-in separators available in home settings.

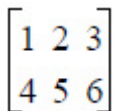
"[DecimalPoint[Exponent[NegativeSign]]]" is a string of 0 to 3 characters. The first one will be used for the decimal point, the second for the exponent and the last one for the negative sign.

If DotZero is non-zero, then numbers are displayed in the form .1 instead of 0.1

If SizeLimit is specified, the command will attempt to generate a representation of the number that fits in the given number of pixels. You can also specify the font size (10 to 22) and properties (bold, italic and mono-spaced being Boolean values with 0 being false). There is no guarantee that the result will fit, but the command will attempt to make it fit.

Examples:

| String                          | Result              |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| string(F1), when F1(X) = COS(X) | "COS(X)"            |
| STRING(2/3)                     | 0.666666666667      |
| string(L1) when L1 = {1,2,3}    | "{1,2,3}"           |
| string(M1) when M1 =            | "[[1,2,3],[4,5,6]]" |



## INSTRING

Syntax: INSTRING (str1,str2)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of str2 in str1. Returns 0 if str2 is not present in str1. Note that the first character in a string is position 1.

Examples:

INSTRING ("vanilla","van") returns 1

`INSTRING("banana","na")` returns 3

`INSTRING("ab","abc")` returns 0

## LEFT

Syntax: `LEFT (str,n)`

Return the first  $n$  characters of string *str*. If  $n \geq \text{DIM}(\text{str})$  or  $n < 0$ , returns *str*. If  $n == 0$  returns the string.

Example: `LEFT("MOMOGUMBO",3)` returns "MOM"

## RIGHT

Syntax: `RIGHT (str,n)`

Returns the last  $n$  characters of string *str*. If  $n \leq 0$ , returns empty string. If  $n > \text{DIM}(\text{str})$ , returns *str*

Example: `RIGHT("MOMOGUMBO",5)` returns "GUMBO"

## MID

Syntax: `MID(str,pos, [n])`

Extracts  $n$  characters from string *str* starting at index *pos*.  $n$  is optional, if not specified, extracts all the remainder of the string.

Example: `MID ("MOMOGUMBO", 3, 5)` returns "MOGUM", `MID ("PUDDGE", 4)` returns "GE"

## ROTATE

Syntax: `ROTATE (str,n)`

Permutation of characters in string *str*. If  $0 \leq n < \text{DIM}(\text{str})$ , shifts  $n$  places to left. If  $-\text{DIM}(\text{str}) < n \leq -1$ , shifts  $n$  spaces to right. If  $n > \text{DIM}(\text{str})$  or  $n < -\text{DIM}(\text{str})$ , returns *str*.

Examples:

`ROTATE ("12345", 2)` returns "34512"

`ROTATE ("12345", -1)` returns "51234"

`ROTATE ("12345", 6)` returns "12345"

## STRINGFROMID

Syntax: `STRINGFROMID(integer)`

Returns, in the current language, the built-in string associated in the internal string table with the specified *integer*.

Examples:

`STRINGFROMID(56)` returns "Complex"

`STRINGFROMID(202)` returns "Real"

## REPLACE

Syntax: `REPLACE(object1, start, object2)`

Replaces part of *object1* with *object2* beginning at *start*. The objects can be matrices, vectors, or strings.



Example:

`REPLACE("12345", "3", "99")` returns "12995"

## Drawing

There are 10 built-in graphics variables in the HP Prime, called G0–G9. G0 is always the current screen graphic.

G1 to G9 can be used to store temporary graphic objects (called GROBs for short) when programming applications that use graphics. They are temporary and thus cleared when the calculator turns off.

Twenty-six functions can be used to modify graphics variables. Thirteen of them work with Cartesian coordinates using the Cartesian plane defined in the current app by the variables Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, and Ymax.

The remaining thirteen work with pixel coordinates where the pixel 0,0 is the top left pixel of the GROB, and 320, 240 is the bottom right. Functions in this second set have a \_P suffix to the function name.

### C→PX

Converts from Cartesian coordinates to screen coordinates.

Syntax: `C→PX(x, y)` or `C→PX({x, y})`

### DRAWMENU

Syntax: `DRAWMENU({string1, string2, ..., string6})`

Draws a six-button menu at the bottom of the display, with labels string1, string2, ..., string6.

Example:

`DRAWMENU("ABC", "", "DEF")` creates a menu with the first and third buttons labelled ABC and DEF, respectively. The other four menu keys are blank.

### FREEZE

Syntax: `FREEZE`

Pauses program execution until a key is pressed. This prevents the screen from being redrawn after the end of the program execution, leaving the modified display on the screen for the user to see.

### PX→C

Converts from screen coordinates to Cartesian coordinates.

### RGB

Syntax: `RGB(R, G, B, [A])`

Returns an integer number that can be used as the color parameter for a drawing function, based on Red-, Green-, and Blue-component values (each 0 to 255).

If Alpha is greater than 128, returns the color flagged as transparent. There is no alpha channel blending on Prime.

Examples:

`RGB(255, 0, 128)` returns 16711808.

`RECT(RGB(0, 0, 255))` makes a blue screen

`LINE(0,0,8,8,RGB(0,255,0))` draws a green line

## Pixels and Cartesian

### ARC\_P, ARC

Syntax: `ARC(G, x, y, r [ , a1, a2, c])`

Syntax: `ARC_P(G, x, y, r [ , a1, a2, c])`

Draws an arc or circle on G, centered on point x,y, with radius r and color c starting at angle a1 and ending on angle a2.

G can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is G0

r is given in pixels.

c is optional and if not specified black is used. It should be specified in this way: #RRGGBB (in the same way as a color is specified in HTML).

a1 and a2 follow the current angle mode and are optional. The default is a full circle.

Example:

`ARC(0,0,60,0, $\pi$ ,RGB(255,0,0))` draws a red semicircle with center at (0,0)—using the current Plot Setup window—and with a radius of 60 pixels. The semicircle is drawn counterclockwise from 0 to  $\pi$ .

### BLIT\_P, BLIT

Syntax: `BLIT([trgtGRB, dx1, dy1, dx2, dy2],`

Syntax: `srcGRB [ ,sx1, sy1, sx2, sy2, c])`

Syntax: `BLIT_P ([trgtGRB, dx1, dy1, dx2, dy2],`

Syntax: `srcGRB [ ,sx1, sy1, sx2, sy2, c])`

Copies the region of srcGRB from (and including) point (sx1, sy1) to (but not including) point (sx2, sy2), into the region of trgtGRB between points (dx1, dy1) and (dx2, dy2). In practice, 1 is added to each of sx1 and sx2 to obtain the correct region. Does not copy pixels from srcGRB that are color c.

trgtGRB can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is G0.

srcGRB can be any of the graphics variables.

dx2, dy2 are optional and if not specified will be calculated so that the destination area is the same size as the source area.

sx2, sy2 are optional and if not specified will be the bottom right of the srcGRB.

sx1, sy1 are optional and if not specified will be the top left of srcGRB.

dx1, dy1 are optional and if not specified will be the top left of trgtGRB.

c can be any color specified as #RRGGBB. If it is not specified, all pixels from srcGRB will be copied.



**NOTE:** Using the same variable for trgtGRB and srcGRB can be unpredictable when the source and destination overlap.

### DIMGROB\_P, DIMGROB

Syntax: `DIMGROB_P(G, w, h, [color])` or `DIMGROB_P(G, list)`

Syntax: `DIMGROB(G, w, h, [color])` or `DIMGROB(G, list)`

Sets the dimensions of GROB G to  $w \times h$ . Initializes the graphic G with color or with the graphic data provided by the list variable. If the graphic is initialized using graphic data, then list is a list of integers. Each integer, as seen in base 16, describes one color every 16 bits.

Colors are in A1R5G5B5 format (that is, 1 bit for the alpha channel, and 5 bits for R, G, and B).

### **FILLPOLY\_P, FILLPOLY**

Syntax: `FILLPOLY_P([G], {(x1, y1), (x2, y2), ... (xn, yn)}, Color, [Alpha])`

Syntax: `FILLPOLY([G], {(x1, y1), (x2, y2), ... (xn, yn)}, Color, [Alpha])`

For the polygon defined by the list of points, fills the polygon with the color defined by the RGB number Color. If Alpha is provided as an integer between 0 and 255 inclusive, the polygon is drawn with the corresponding transparency level. You can use a vector of points instead of a list; in this case, the points can be expressed as complex numbers.

Example:

`FILLPOLY_P(({(20,20), (100, 20), (100, 100), (20, 100)}), #FF, 128)` draws a square, 80 pixels on a side, near the upper left of the display, using the color purple and transparency level 128.

### **GETPIX\_P, GETPIX**

Syntax: `GETPIX([G], x, y)`

Syntax: `GETPIX_P([G], x, y)`

Returns the color of the pixel G with coordinates x,y.

G can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is G0, the current graphic.

### **GROBH\_P, GROBH**

Syntax: `GROBH(G)`

Syntax: `GROBH_P(G)`

Returns the height of G.

G can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is G0.

### **GROBW\_P, GROBW**

Syntax: `GROBW(G)`

Syntax: `GROBW_P(G)`

Returns the width of G.

G can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is G0.

### **INVERT\_P, INVERT**

Syntax: `INVERT([G, x1, y1, x2, y2])`

Syntax: `INVERT_P([G, x1, y1, x2, y2])`

Executes a reverse video of the selected region. G can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is G0.

x2, y2 are optional and if not specified will be the bottom right of the graphic.

x1, y1 are optional and if not specified will be the top left of the graphic. If only one x,y pair is specified, it refers to the top left.

## LINE\_P, LINE

**Syntax:** `LINE_P([G], x1, y1, x2, y2, [color])`

**Syntax:** `LINE_P([G], points_definition, lines_definitions, rotation_matrix or {rotation_matrix or -1, ["N"], [{eye_x, eye_y, eye_z} or -1], [{3Dxmin, 3Dxmax, 3Dymin, 3Dymax, 3Dzmin, 3Dzmax}]}, [zstring])`

**Syntax:** `LINE_P([G], pre_rotated_points, line_definitions, [zstring])`

**Syntax:** `LINE([G], x1, y1, x2, y2, [color])`

**Syntax:** `LINE([G], points_definition, lines_definitions, rotation_matrix or {rotation_matrix or -1, ["N"], [{eye_x, eye_y, eye_z} or -1], [{3Dxmin, 3Dxmax, 3Dymin, 3Dymax, 3Dzmin, 3Dzmax}]}, [zstring])`

**Syntax:** `LINE([G], pre_rotated_points, line_definitions, [zstring])`

The basic form of `LINE_P` draws one line between specified pixel coordinates in the graphic using the specified color.

The advanced form of `LINE_P` allows the multiple lines to be rendered at the same time with a potential 3D transformation of the triangle's vertices.

This is mostly used if you have a set of vertices and lines and want to display them all at once (faster).

`points_definition` is either a list or a matrix of point definitions. Each point is defined by two to four numbers: x, y, z, and color. A valid point definition can have multiple forms. Here are some examples: [x, y, z, c], {x, y, z, c}, {x, y, #c}, {(x, y), c}, (x,y). You can use a vector of points instead of a list; in this case, the points can be expressed as complex numbers.

`line_definitions` is either a list or a matrix of line definitions. Each line is defined by two to four numbers: p1, p2, color and alpha. p1 and p2 are the index in the `points_definition` of the two points that define the line. Color is used to override the per point color definition. If you need to provide an Alpha, but not a color, use -1 for the color.

Note that {Color, [Alpha], line\_1, ..., line\_n} is also a valid form to avoid respecifying the same color for each line.

`rotation_matrix` is a matrix between the sizes 2\*2 to 3\*4 that specifies the rotation and translation of the point using usual 3D or 4D geometry.

{eye\_x, eye\_y, eye\_z} defines the eye position (projection).

{3Dxmin, 3Dxmax, 3Dymin, 3Dymax, 3Dzmin, 3Dzmax} is used to perform 3D clipping on the pretransformed objects.

Each point is rotated and translated through a multiplication by the `rotation_matrix`. It is then projected on the view plan using the eye position calculated by the following equation:  $x = \text{eye\_z} / z * x - \text{eye\_x}$  and  $y = \text{eye\_z} / z * y - \text{eye\_y}$ .

Each line is clipped in 3D, if 3D clipping data is provided.

If "N" is specified, the Z coordinates are normalized between 0 and 255 after rotation, providing easier zClipping.

If zstring is provided, per pixel z clipping happens using the z value string (see the following).

`LINE_P` returns a string that contains all the transformed points. If you plan to call `TRIANGLE` or `LINE` multiple times in a row using the same points and transformation, you can do so by replacing the `points_definition` with this string and omitting the transformation definition in subsequent calls to `TRIANGLE` and `LINE`.

About `zstring`:

`TRIANGLE_P ([G])` returns a string adapted for z clipping.

To use z clipping, call `TRIANGLE_P` to create a z clipping string (initialized at 255 for each pixels). You can then call `LINE_P` with appropriate z (0-255) values for each of the triangle vertices and `LINE_P` will not draw pixels farther than the already drawn pixels. `ZString` is automatically updated as appropriate.

## **PIXOFF\_P, PIXOFF**

Syntax: `PIXOFF ([G], x, y)`

Syntax: `PIXOFF_P ([G], x, y)`

Sets the color of the pixel `G` with coordinates `x,y` to white. `G` can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is `G0`, the current graphic.

## **PIXON\_P, PIXON**

Syntax: `PIXON ([G], x, y [ ,color])`

Syntax: `PIXON_P ([G], x, y [ ,color])`

Sets the color of the pixel `G` with coordinates `x,y` to `color`. `G` can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is `G0`, the current graphic. `Color` can be any color specified as `#RRGGBB`. The default is black.

## **RECT\_P, RECT**

Syntax: `RECT ([G, x1, y1, x2, y2, edgecolor, fillcolor])`

Syntax: `RECT_P ([G, x1, y1, x2, y2, edgecolor, fillcolor])`

Draws a rectangle on `G` between points `x1,y1` and `x2,y2` using `edgecolor` for the perimeter and `fillcolor` for the inside.

`G` can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is `G0`, the current graphic.

`x1, y1` are optional. The default values represent the top left of the graphic.

`x2, y2` are optional. The default values represent the bottom right of the graphic.

`edgecolor` and `fillcolor` can be any color specified as `#RRGGBB`. Both are optional, and `fillcolor` defaults to `edgecolor` if not specified.

To erase a `GROB`, execute `RECT (G)`. To clear the screen execute `RECT ()`.

When optional arguments are provided in a command with multiple optional parameters (like `RECT`), the arguments provided correspond to the leftmost parameters first. For example, in the program below, the arguments `40` and `90` in the `RECT_P` command correspond to `x1` and `y1`. The argument `#000000` corresponds to `edgecolor`, since there is only the one additional argument. If there had been two additional arguments, they would have referred to `x2` and `y2` rather than `edgecolor` and `fillcolor`. The program produces a rectangle with a black edge and black fill.

```
EXPORT BOX ()
```

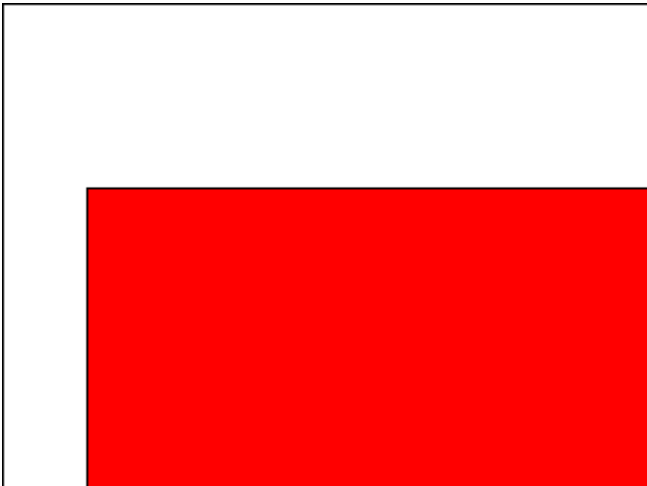
```
BEGIN
```

```
RECT();
RECT_P(40,90,#0 00000);
WAIT;
END;
```



The program below also uses the `RECT_P` command. In this case, the pair of arguments 320 and 240 correspond to `x2` and `y2`. The program produces a rectangle with a black edge and a red fill.

```
EXPORT BOX()
BEGIN
RECT();
RECT_P(40,90,320,240,#000000,# FF0000);
WAIT;
END;
```



### **SUBGROB\_P, SUBGROB**

**Syntax:** `SUBGROB(srcGRB [ ,x1, y1, x2, y2], trgtGRB)`

**Syntax:** `SUBGROB_P(srcGRB [ ,x1, y1, x2, y2], trgtGRB)`

Sets `trgtGRB` to be a copy of the area of `srcGRB` between points `x1,y1` and `x2,y2`.

`srcGRB` can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is `G0`.

`trgtGRB` can be any of the graphics variables except `G0`.

`x2, y2` are optional and if not specified will be the bottom right of `srcGRB`.

`x1, y1` are optional and if not specified will be the top left of `srcGRB`.

Example: `SUBGROB (G1, G4)` will copy `G1` in `G4`.

## TEXTOUT\_P, TEXTOUT

Syntax: `TEXTOUT(text [ ,G], x, y [ ,font, c1, width, c2])`

Syntax: `TEXTOUT_P(text [ ,G], x, y [ ,font, c1, width, c2])`

Draws text using color `c1` on graphic `G` at position `x, y` using font. Do not draw text more than `width` pixels wide and erase the background before drawing the text using color `c2`. `G` can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is `G0`.

Font can be:

0: current font selected on the Homes Settings screen, 1: small font 2: large font. Font is optional and if not specified is the current font selected on the Homes Settings screen.

`c1` can be any color specified as `#RRGGBB`. The default is black (`#000000`).

`width` is optional and if not specified, no clipping is performed.

`c2` can be any color specified as `#RRGGBB`. `c2` is optional. If not specified the background is not erased.

Example:

The following program displays the successive approximations for  $\pi$  using the series for the arctangent(1). Note that a color for the text, and for background, has been specified (with the width of the text being limited to 100 pixels).


```
EXPORT PISERIES()
BEGIN
LOCAL sign;
K:=2;
A:=4;
sign:=-1;
RECT();
TEXTOUT_P("N=", 0, 0);
TEXTOUT_P("PI APPROX=", 0, 30);
REPEAT
A+sign*4/(2*K-1)►A;
TEXTOUT_P(K, 35, 0, 2, #FFFFFF, 100, #333399);
TEXTOUT_P(A, 90, 30, 2, #000000, 100, #99CC33);
sign*-1►sign;
```

```

K+1►K;
UNTIL 0;
END;
END;

```



The program executes until the user presses  to terminate.

## TRIANGLE\_P, TRIANGLE

**Syntax:** TRIANGLE\_P([G], x1, y1, x2, y2, x3, y3, c1, [c2, c3], [Alpha], ["ZString", z1, z2, z3])

**Syntax:** TRIANGLE\_P([G], {x1, y1, [c1], [z1]}, {x2, y2, [c2], [z2]}, {x3, y3, [c3], [z3]}, ["ZString"])

**Syntax:** TRIANGLE\_P([G], points\_definition, triangle\_definitions, rotation\_matrix or {rotation\_matrix or -1, ["N"], [{eye\_x, eye\_y, eye\_z} or -1], [{3Dxmin, 3Dxmax, 3Dymin, 3Dymax, 3Dzmin, 3Dzmax}]}, [zstring])

**Syntax:** TRIANGLE\_P([G], pre\_rotated\_points, triangle\_definitions, [zstring])

**Syntax:** TRIANGLE\_P([G])

The basic form of **TRIANGLE** draws one triangle between the specified pixel coordinates in the graphic using the specified color and transparency ( $0 \leq \text{Alpha} \leq 255$ ). If three colors are specified, it blends the colors in between the vertices.

The advanced form of **TRIANGLE\_P** allows multiple triangles to be rendered at the same time with a potential 3D transformation of the triangles' vertices.

This is mostly used if you have a set of vertices and triangles and want to display them all at once (faster).

**points\_definition** is either a list or a matrix of point definition. Each point is defined by two to four numbers: x, y, z, and color. A valid point definition can have multiple forms. Here are a couple of example: [x, y, z, c], {x, y, z, c}, {x, y, #c}, {(x, y), c}, (x,y)... You can use a vector of points instead of a list; in this case, the points can be expressed as complex numbers.

**triangle\_definitions** is either a list or a matrix of triangle definitions. Each triangle is defined by three to five numbers: p1, p2, p3, color and alpha. p1, p2 and p3 are the index in the **points\_definition**



of the 3 points that define the triangle. Color is used to override the per point color definition. If you need to provide an Alpha, but not a color, use -1 for the color.

Note that {Color, [Alpha], triangle\_1, ..., triangle\_n} is also a valid form to avoid respecifying the same color for each triangle.

rotation\_matrix is a matrix between sizes 2\*2 to 3\*4 that specifies the rotation and translation of the point using usual 3D and 4D geometry.

{eye\_x, eye\_y, eye\_z} defines the eye position (projection).

{3Dxmin, 3Dxmax, 3Dymin, 3Dymax, 3Dzmin, 3Dzmax} is used to perform 3D clipping on the pretransformed objects.

Each point is rotated and translated through a multiplication by the rotation\_matrix. It is then projected on the view plan using the eye position calculated by the following equation:  $x = \text{eye\_z} / z * x - \text{eye\_x}$  and  $y = \text{eye\_z} / z * y - \text{eye\_y}$ .

Each triangle is clipped in 3D, if 3D clipping data is provided.

If "N" is specified, the Z coordinates are normalized between 0 and 255 after rotation, providing easier zClipping.

If zstring is provided, per pixel z clipping happens using the z value string (see the following).

TRIANGLE\_P returns a string which contains all the transformed points. If you plan to call TRIANGLE or LINE multiple times in a row using the same points and transformation, you can do so by replacing the points\_definition with this string and omitting the transformation definition in subsequent calls to TRIANGLE and LINE.

About zstring:

TRIANGLE\_P ([G]) returns a string adapted for z clipping.

To use z clipping, call TRIANGLE\_P ([G]) to create a z clipping string (initialized at 255 for each pixels). You can then call TRIANGLE\_P with appropriate z (0-255) values for each of the triangle vertices and TRIANGLE\_P ([G]) will not draw pixels farther than the already drawn pixels. ZString is automatically updated as appropriate.

## Matrix

Some matrix commands take as their argument the matrix variable name on which the command is applied. Valid names are the global variables M0-M9 or a local variable that contains a matrix. You can also enter a matrix directly as an argument to the command.

## ADDCOL

Syntax: ADDCOL(matrixname, vector, column\_number)

Inserts the values in vector into a new column inserted before column\_number in the specified matrix. The number of values in the vector must be the same as the number of rows in the matrix.

## ADDRROW

Syntax: ADDRROW(matrixname, vector, row\_number)

Inserts the values in vector into a new row inserted before row\_number in the specified matrix. The number of values in the vector must be the same as the number of columns in the matrix.

## DELCOL

Syntax: `DELCOL(name, column_number)`

Deletes *column column\_number* from matrix name.

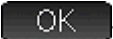
## DELROW

Syntax: `DELROW(name, row_number)`

Deletes *row row\_number* from matrix name.

## EDITMAT

Syntax: `EDITMAT(name)`

Starts the Matrix Editor and displays the specified matrix. If used in programming, returns to the program when user presses . Even though this command returns the matrix that was edited, `EDITMAT` cannot be used as an argument in other matrix commands.

## REDIM

Syntax: `REDIM(name, size)`

Redimensions the specified matrix (name) or vector to size. For a matrix, size is a list of two integers (n1,n2). For a vector, size is a list containing one integer (n). Existing values in the matrix are preserved. Fill values will be 0.

## REPLACE

Syntax: `REPLACE(name, start, object)`

Replaces portion of a matrix or vector stored in name with an object starting at position start. Start for a matrix is a list containing two numbers; for a vector, it is a single number. `REPLACE` also works with lists, graphics, and strings. For example, `REPLACE("123456", 2, "GRM") -> "1GRM56"`

## SCALE

Syntax: `SCALE(name, value, rownumber)`

Multiplies the specified *row\_number* of the specified matrix by *value*.

## SCALEADD

Syntax: `SCALEADD(name, value, row1, row2)`

Multiplies the specified *row1* of the matrix (name) by *value*, then adds this result to the second specified *row2* of the matrix (name) and replaces *row1* with the result.

## SUB

Syntax: `SUB(name, start, end)`

Extracts a sub-object—a portion of a list, matrix, or graphic—and stores it in name. Start and end are each specified using a list with two numbers for a matrix, a number for vector or lists, or an ordered pair, (X,Y), for graphics: `SUB(M1{1,2},{2,2})`

## SWAPCOL

Syntax: `SWAPCOL(name, column1, column2)`

Swaps column1 and column2 of the specified matrix (name).

## SWAPROW

**Syntax:** `SWAPROW (name, row1, row2)`

Swaps row1 and row2 in the specified matrix (name).

## App Functions

These commands allow you to launch any HP app, bring up any view of the current app, and change the options in the View menu.

## STARTAPP

**Syntax:** `STARTAPP ("name")`

Starts the app with name. This will cause the app program's `START` function to be run, if it is present. The app's default view will be started. Note that the `START` function is always executed when the user taps **Start** in the Application Library. This also works for user-defined apps.

**Example:** `STARTAPP ("Function")` launches the Function app.

## STARTVIEW

**Syntax:** `STARTVIEW ( [ , draw? ] )`

Starts the nth view of the current app. If *draw?* is true (that is, not 0), it will force an immediate redrawing of the screen for that view.

The view numbers (n) are as follows:

Symbolic:0

Plot:1

Numeric:2

Symbolic Setup:3

Plot Setup:4

Numeric Setup:5

App Info: 6

View Menu:7

First special view (Split Screen Plot Detail):8

Second special view (Split Screen Plot Table):9

Third special view (Autoscale):10

Fourth special view (Decimal):11

Fifth special view (Integer):12

Sixth special view (Trig):13

The special views in parentheses refer to the Function app, and may differ in other apps. The number of a special view corresponds to its position in the View menu for that app. The first special view is launched by `STARTVIEW(8)`, the second with `STARTVIEW(9)`, and so on.

You can also launch views that are not specific to an app by specifying a value for `n` that is less than 0:

```
Home Screen:-1
Home Settings:-2
Memory Manager:-3
Applications Library:-4
Matrix Catalog:-5
List Catalog:-6
Program Catalog:-7
Notes Catalog:-8
```

## VIEW

**Syntax:** `VIEW ("string"[,program_name])`

`BEGIN`

`Commands;`

`END;`

Adds a custom option to the **View** menu. When **string** is selected, runs `program_name`. See *The DiceSimulation program* in the [Example on page 516](#) section.

## Integer

### BITAND

**Syntax:** `BITAND(int1, int2, ... intn)`

Returns the bitwise logical AND of the specified integers.

**Example:** `BITAND(20,13)` returns 4.

### BITNOT

**Syntax:** `BITNOT(int)`

Returns the bitwise logical NOT of the specified integer.

**Example:** `BITNOT(47)` returns 549755813840.

### BITOR

**Syntax:** `BITOR(int1, int2, ... intn)`

Returns the bitwise logical OR of the specified integers.

**Example:** `BITOR(9,26)` returns 27.

## BITSL

**Syntax:** `BITSL(int1 [,int2])`

**Bitwise Shift Left.** Takes one or two integers as input and returns the result of shifting the bits in the first integer to the left by the number places indicated by the second integer. If there is no second integer, the bits are shifted to the left by one place.

**Examples:**

`BITSL(28,2)` returns 112

`BITSL(5)` returns 10.

## BITSR

**Syntax:** `BITSR(int1 [,int2])`

**Bitwise Shift Right.** Takes one or two integers as input and returns the result of shifting the bits in the first integer to the right by the number places indicated by the second integer. If there is no second integer, the bits are shifted to the right by one place.

**Examples:**

`BITSR(112,2)` returns 28

`BITSR(10)` returns 5.

## BITXOR

**Syntax:** `BITXOR(int1, int2, ... intn)`

Returns the bitwise logical exclusive OR of the specified integers.

**Example:** `BITXOR(9,26)` returns 19.

## B→R

**Syntax:** `B→R(#integerm)`

Converts an integer in base m to a decimal integer (base 10). The base marker m can be b (for binary), o (for octal), or h (for hexadecimal).

**Example:** `B→R(#1101b)` returns 13

## GETBASE

**Syntax:** `GETBASE(#integer[m])`

Returns the base for the specified integer (in whatever is the current default base): 0 = default, 1 = binary, 2 = octal, 3 = hexadecimal.

**Examples:** `GETBASE(#1101b)` returns #1h (if the default base is hexadecimal) while `GETBASE (#1101)` returns #0h.

## GETBITS

**Syntax:** `GETBITS(#integer)`

Returns the number of bits used by integer, expressed in the default base.

**Example:** `GETBITS(#22122)` returns #20h or 32

## R→B

**Syntax:** `R→B(integer)`

Converts a decimal integer (base 10) to an integer in the default base.

**Example:** `R→B(13)` returns `#1101b` (if the default base is binary) or `#Dh` (if the default base is hexadecimal).

## SETBITS

**Syntax:** `SETBITS(#integer[m] [,bits])`

Sets the number of bits to represent integer. Valid values are in the range –64 to 65. If `m` or `bits` is omitted, the default value is used.

**Example:** `SETBITS(#1111b, 15)` returns `#1111:b15`

## SETBASE

**Syntax:** `SETBASE(#integer[m][c])`

Displays integer expressed in base `m` in whatever base is indicated by `c`, where `c` can be 1 (for binary), 2 (for octal), or 3 (for hexadecimal). Parameter `m` can be `b` (for binary), `d` (for decimal), `o` (for octal), or `h` (for hexadecimal). If `m` is omitted, the input is assumed to be in the default base. Likewise, if `c` is omitted, the output is displayed in the default base.

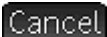
**Examples:** `SETBASE (#34o, 1)` returns `#11100b` while `SETBASE (#1101)` returns `#0h` (if the default base is hexadecimal).

## I/O

I/O commands are used for inputting data into a program, and for outputting data from a program. They allow users to interact with programs.

## CHOOSE

**Syntax:** `CHOOSE(var, "title", "item1", "item2", ..., "itemn")`

Displays a choose box with the title and containing the choose items. If the user selects an object, the variable whose name is provided will be updated to contain the number of the selected object (an integer, 1, 2, 3, ...) or 0 if the user taps .

Returns true (not zero) if the user selects an object, otherwise return false (0).

**Example:**

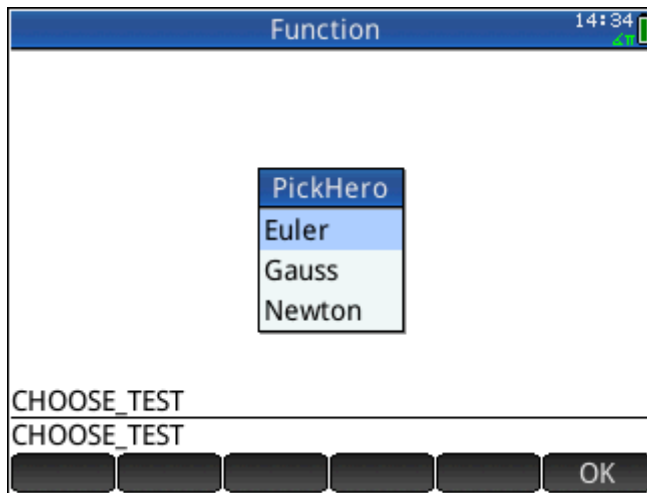
```
CHOOSE
```

```
(N, "PickHero", "Euler", "Gauss", "Newton");
```

```
IF N==1 THEN PRINT("You picked Euler"); ELSE IF N==2 THEN PRINT("You  
picked Gauss");ELSE PRINT("You picked Newton");
```

```
END;
```

```
END;
```



After execution of `CHOOSE`, the value of `N` will be updated to contain 0, 1, 2, or 3. The `IF THEN ELSE` command causes the name of the selected person to be printed to the terminal.

## EDITLIST

**Syntax:** `EDITLIST(listvar)`

Starts the List Editor loading `listvar` and displays the specified list. If used in programming, returns to the program when user taps **OK**.

**Example:** `EDITLIST(L1)` edits list `L1`.

## EDITMAT

**Syntax:** `EDITMAT(matrixvar)`

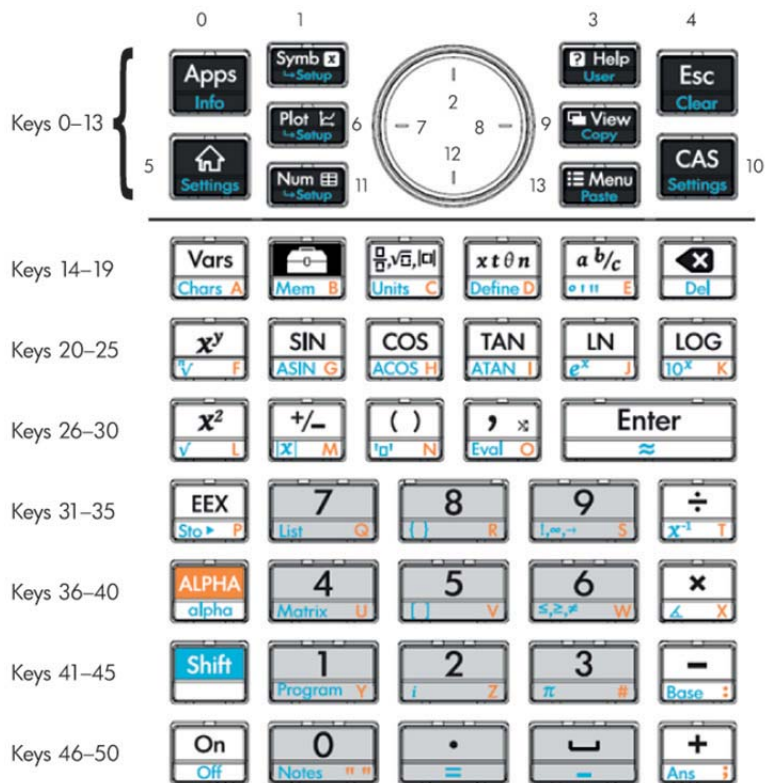
Starts the Matrix Editor and displays the specified matrix. If used in programming, returns to the program when user taps **OK**.

**Example:** `EDITMAT(M1)` edits matrix `M1`.

## GETKEY

**Syntax:** `GETKEY`

Returns the ID of the first key in the keyboard buffer, or `-1` if no key was pressed since the last call to `GETKEY`. Key IDs are integers from 0 to 50, numbered from top left (key 0) to bottom right (key 50) as shown in figure 27-1.



## INPUT

**Syntax:** INPUT(var, ["title"], ["label"], ["help"], [reset\_value]  
[initial\_value])

**Syntax:** INPUT({vars}, ["title"], [{"labels"}], [{"help"}], [{reset\_values}],  
[{initial\_values}])

The simpler form of this command opens a dialog box with the given title and one field named label, displaying help at the bottom. The dialog box includes the CANCEL and OK menu keys. The user can enter a value in the labeled field. If the user presses the OK menu key, the variable var is updated with the entered value and 1 is returned. If the user presses the CANCEL menu key, the variable is not updated and 0 is returned.

In the more complex form of the command, lists are used to create a multi-field dialog box. If var is a list, each element can be either a variable name or a list using the following syntax.

- {var\_name, real, [{pos}]} to create a check box control. If real is >1, this check box gets pooled with the next n-1 check boxes in a radio group (that is, only one of the n check boxes can be checked at any time)
- {var\_name, [allowed\_types\_matrix], [{pos}]} to create an edit field. [allowed\_types\_matrix] lists all the allowed types (-1 stands for all types allowed). If the only allowed type is a string, the edition hides the double quotes.
- {var\_name, {Choose items}, [{pos}]} to create a choose field.

If pos is specified, it is a list of the form {field start in screen %, field width in screen%, line(starts at 0)}. This allows you to control the precise position and size of your fields. Note that you have to specify pos for either none or all fields in the dialog box.



There is a maximum of seven lines of controls per page. Controls with more than seven lines are placed in subsequent pages. If more than one page is created, ["title"] can be a list of titles.

## ISKEYDOWN

**Syntax:** ISKEYDOWN (key\_id) ;

Returns true (non-zero) if the key whose key\_id is provided is currently pressed, and false (0) if it is not.

## MOUSE

**Syntax:** MOUSE [ (index) ]

Returns two lists describing the current location of each potential pointer (or empty lists if the pointers are not used). The output is {x, y, original z, original y, type} where type is 0 (for new), 1 (for completed), 2 (for drag), 3 (for stretch), 4 (for rotate), and 5 (for long click).



The optional parameter index is the nth element that would have been returned—x, y, original x, etc.—had the parameter been omitted (or -1 if no pointer activity had occurred).

## MSGBOX

**Syntax:** MSGBOX (expression or string [ ,ok\_cancel?]);

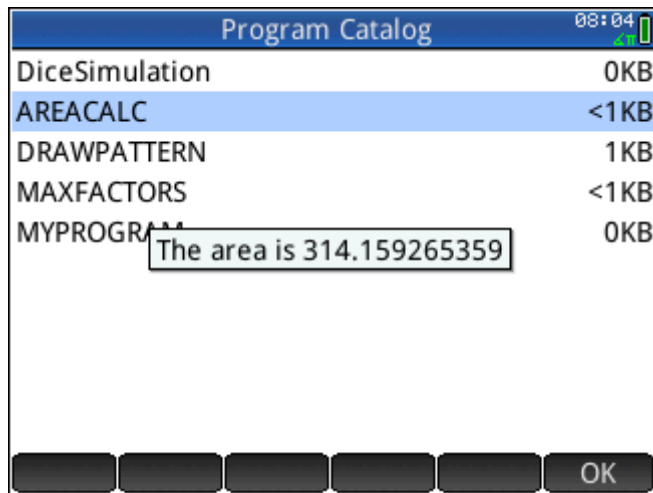
Displays a message box with the value of the given expression or string.

If ok\_cancel? is true, displays the  and  buttons, otherwise only displays the  button. Default value for ok\_cancel is false.

Returns true (non-zero) if the user taps , false (0) if the user presses .

```
EXPORT AREACALC ()
BEGIN
LOCAL radius;
INPUT(radius, "Radius of Circle","r = ","Enter radius",1);
MSGBOX("The area is " +π*radius^2);
END;
```





If the user enters 10 for the radius, the message box shows this:



## PRINT

**Syntax:** `PRINT(expression or string);`

Prints the result of expression or string to the terminal.

The terminal is a program text output viewing mechanism which is displayed only when `PRINT` commands are executed. When visible, you can press  or  to view the text,  to erase the text and any other key to hide the terminal. Pressing  stops the interaction with the terminal. `PRINT` with no argument clears the terminal.

There are also commands for outputting data in the Graphics section. In particular, the commands `TEXTOUT` and `TEXTOUT_P` can be used for text output.

This example prompts the user to enter a value for the radius of a circle, and prints the area of the circle on the terminal.

```
EXPORT AREACALC()
BEGIN
LOCAL radius;
INPUT(radius, "Radius of Circle", "r = ", "Enter radius", 1);
PRINT("The area is " + π * radius^2);
END;
```

Radius of Circle 14:47

r = 0

Enter radius

10

Cancel OK

The area is 314.159265359

Notice the use of the `LOCAL` variable for the radius, and the naming convention that uses lower case letters for the local variable. Adhering to such a convention will improve the readability of your programs.

## WAIT

Syntax: `WAIT (n) ;`

Pauses program execution for n seconds. With no argument or with `n = 0`, pauses program execution for one minute.

## More

### %CHANGE

Syntax: `%CHANGE (x, y)`

The percentage change in going from x to y.

Example: `%CHANGE (20, 50)` returns 150.

### %TOTAL

Syntax: `%TOTAL (x, y)`

The percentage of x that is y.

Example: `%TOTAL (20, 50)` returns 250.

## CAS

Syntax: `CAS.function()` or `CAS.variable`

Executes the function or returns the variable using the CAS.

## EVALLIST

Syntax: `EVALLIST({list})`

Evaluates the content of each element in a list and returns an evaluated list.

## EXECON

Syntax: `EXECON (&expr, List1, [List2,...])`

Creates a new list based on the elements in one or more lists by iteratively modifying each element according to an expression that contains the ampersand character (&).

Examples:

`EXECON("&+1", {1, 2, 3})` returns {2,3,4}

Where the & is followed directly by a number, the position in the list is indicated. For example:

`EXECON("&2-&1", {1, 4, 3, 5})` returns {3, -1, 2}

In the example above, &2 indicates the second element and &1 the first element in each pair of elements. The minus operator between them subtracts the first from the second in each pair until there are no more pairs. In this case (with just a single list), the numbers appended to & can only be from 1 to 9 inclusive.

EXECON can also operate on more than one list. For example:

`EXECON("&1+&2", {1, 2, 3}, {4, 5, 6})` returns {5,7,9}

In the example above, &1 indicates an element in the first list and &2 indicates the corresponding element in the second list. The plus operator between them adds the two elements until there are no more pairs. With two lists, the numbers appended to & can have two digits; in this case, the first digit refers to the list number (in order from left to right) and the second digit can still only be from 1 to 9 inclusive.

EXECON can also begin operating on a specified element in a specified list. For example:

`EXECON("&23+&1", {1, 5, 16}, {4, 5, 6, 7})` returns {7,12}

In the example above, &23 indicates that operations are to begin on the second list and with the third element. To that element is added the first element in the first list. The process continues until there are no more pairs.

## →HMS

Syntax: `→HMS (value)`

Converts a decimal value to hexagesimal format; that is, in units subdivided into groups of 60. This includes degrees, minutes, and seconds as well as hours, minutes, and seconds.

Example: `→HMS (54.8763)` returns 54°52'34.68"

## HMS→

Syntax: `HMS→(value)`

Converts a value expressed in hexagesimal format to decimal format.

Example: HMS→(54°52'34.68") returns 54.8763

## ITERATE

Syntax: ITERATE(expr, var, ivalue, #times)

For #times, recursively evaluates expr in terms of var beginning with var = ivalue.

Example: ITERATE(X^2, X, 2, 3) returns 256

## TICKS

Syntax: TICKS

Returns the internal clock value in milliseconds.

## TIME

Syntax: TIME(program\_name)

Returns the time in milliseconds required to execute the program program\_name. The results are stored in the variable TIME. The variable TICKS is similar. It contains the number of milliseconds since boot up.

## TYPE

Syntax: TYPE(object)

Returns the type of the object:

0: Real

1: Integer

2: String

3: Complex

4: Matrix

5: Error


6: List

8: Function

9: Unit

14.?: cas object. The fractional part is the cas type.

## Variables and programs

The HP Prime has four types of variables: Home variables, App variables, CAS variables, and User variables. You can retrieve these variables from the Variable menu ().

The names of Home variables are reserved; that is, they cannot be deleted from the system and cannot be used to store objects of any other type than that for which they were designed. For example, A–Z and  $\theta$  are reserved to store real numbers, Z0–Z9 are reserved to store complex numbers, and L0–L9 are reserved to store lists, etc. As a result, you cannot store a matrix in L8 or a list in Z.

Home variables keep the same value in Home and in apps; that is, they are global variables common to the system. They can be used in programs with that understanding.

App variable names are also reserved, though a number of apps may share the same app variable name. In any of these cases, the name of the app variable must be qualified if that variable is not from the current app. For example, if the current app is the Function app, `Xmin` will return the minimum x-value in the Plot view of the Function app. If you want the minimum value in the Plot view of the Polar app, then you must enter `Polar.Xmin`. App variables represent the definitions and settings you make when working with apps interactively. As you work through an app, the app functions may store results in app variables as well. In a program, app variables are used to edit an app's data to customize it and to retrieve results from the app's operation.

CAS variables are similar to the Home real variables A–Z, except that they are lowercase and designed to be used in CAS view and not Home view. Another difference is that Home and App variables always contain values, while CAS variables can be simply symbolic and not contain any particular value. The CAS variables are not typed like the Home and App variables. For example, the CAS variable `t` may contain a real number, a list, or a vector, etc. If a CAS variable has a value stored in it, calling it from Home view will return its contents.

User variables are variables created by the user, either directly or exported from a user program. They provide one of several mechanisms to allow programs to communicate with the rest of the calculator and with other programs. User variables created in a program may be either local to that program or global. Once a variable has been exported from a program, it will appear among the user variables in the **Variables** menu, next to the program that exported it. User variables may be multicharacter, but must follow certain rules; see [Variables and visibility on page 506](#) for details.

User variables, like CAS variables, are not typed and thus may contain objects of different types.

The following sections deal with using app variables in programs, providing descriptions of each app variable by name and its possible contents. For a list of all the Home and app variables, see the “Variables” chapter. For user variables in programs, see [The HP Prime programming language on page 506](#).

## App variables

Not all app variables are used in every app. `S1Fit`, for example, is only used in the Statistics 2Var app. However, many of the variables are common to the Function, Advanced Graphing, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1Var, and Statistics 2Var apps. If a variable is not available in all of these apps, or is available only in some of these apps (or some other app), then a list of the apps where the variable can be used appears under the variable name.

The following sections list the app variables by the view in which they are used. To see the variables listed by the categories in which they appear on the Variables menu see the “App variables” section of the “Variables” chapter.

### Plot view variables

#### Axes

Turns axes on or off.

In Plot Setup view, check (or uncheck) **AXES**.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► **Axes**—to turn axes on.
- 1 ► **Axes**—to turn axes off.

#### Cursor

Sets the type of cursor. (Inverted or blinking is useful if the background is solid).

In Plot Setup view, choose **Cursor**.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► `Cursor`—for solid crosshairs (default).
- 1 ► `Cursor`—to invert the crosshairs.
- 2 ► `Cursor`—for blinking crosshairs.

### GridDots

Turns the background dot grid in Plot view on or off. In Plot Setup view, check (or uncheck) `GRID DOTS`. In a program, type:

- 0 ► `GridDots`—to turn the grid dots on (default).
- 1 ► `GridDots`—to turn the grid dots off.

### GridLines

Turns the background line grid in Plot View on or off.

In Plot Setup view, check (or uncheck) `GRID LINES`.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► `GridLines`—to turn the grid lines on (default).
- 1 ► `GridLines`—to turn the grid lines off.

### Hmin/Hmax

#### *Statistics 1Var*

Defines the minimum and maximum values for histogram bars.

In Plot Setup view for one-variable statistics, set values for `HRNG`.

In a program, type:

- $n_1$  ► `Hmin`
- $n_2$  ► `Hmax`

where  $n_1 < n_2$

### Hwidth

#### *Statistics 1Var*

Sets the width of histogram bars.

In Plot Setup view for one-variable statistics, set a value for `Hwidth`.

In a program, type:

- $n$  ► `Hwidth` where  $n > 0$

### Labels

Draws labels in Plot View showing X and Y ranges.

In Plot Setup View, check (or uncheck) `Labels`.

In a program, type:

- 1 ► `Labels`—to turn labels on (default).
- 2 ► `Labels`—to turn labels off.

## Method

*Function, Solve, Parametric, Polar, Statistics 2Var*

Defines the graphing method: adaptive, fixed-step segments, or fixed-step dots.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► `Method`—select adaptive.
- 1 ► `Method`—select fixed-step segments.
- 2 ► `Method`—select fixed-step dots.

## Nmin/Nmax

*Sequence*

Defines the minimum and maximum values for the independent variable.

Appears as the **N RNG** fields in the Plot Setup view. In Plot Setup view, enter values for `N RNG`.

In a program, type:

$n_1$  ► `Nmin`

$n_2$  ► `Nmax`

where  $n_1 < n_2$

## PixSize

*Geometry*

Sets the dimensions of each square pixel in the Geometry app. In Plot view, enter a positive value in `Pixel Size`.

Or enter `PixSize:=n`, where  $n > 0$ .

## Recenter

Recenters at the cursor when zooming.

From Plot-Zoom-Set Factors, check (or uncheck) **Recenter**.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► `Recenter`—to turn recenter on (default).
- 1 ► `Recenter`—to turn recenter off.

## S1mark-S5mark

*Statistics 2Var*

Sets the mark to use for scatter plots.

In Plot Setup view for two-variable statistics, select one of `S1 Mark-S Mark`.



## ScrollText

### *Geometry*

Determines whether the current command in Plot view scrolls automatically or manually. In Plot view, select or clear Scroll Text.

You can also enter `ScrollText:=0` to scroll manually or `ScrollText:=1` to scroll automatically.

## SeqPlot

### *Sequence*

Enables you to choose between a Stairstep or a Cobweb plot.

In Plot Setup view, select `SeqPlot`, then choose `Stairstep` or `Cobweb`.

In a program, type:

0 ► `SeqPlot`—for Stairstep.

1 ► `SeqPlot`—for Cobweb.

## $\theta_{\min}/\theta_{\max}$

### *Polar*

Sets the minimum and maximum independent values.

In Plot Setup view enter values for  $\theta$  Rng.

In a program, type:

$n_1$  ►  $\theta_{\min}$

$n_2$  ►  $\theta_{\max}$

where  $n_1 < n_2$

## $\theta_{\text{step}}$

### *Polar*

Sets the step size for the independent variable.

In Plot Setup view, enter a value for  $\theta$  Step.

In a program, type:

$n$  ►  $\theta_{\text{step}}$

where  $n > 0$

## Tmin/Tmax

### *Parametric*

Sets the minimum and maximum independent variable values.

In Plot Setup view, enter values for  $T$  Rng.

In a program, type:

$n_1$  ►  $T_{\min}$

$n_2 \triangleright T_{\max}$

where  $n_1 < n_2$

### Tstep

*Parametric*

Sets the step size for the independent variable.

In Plot Setup view, enter a value for  $T_{\text{Step}}$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright T_{\text{step}}$

where  $n > 0$

### Xtick

Sets the distance between tick marks for the horizontal axis.

In Plot Setup view, enter a value for  $X_{\text{Tick}}$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright X_{\text{tick}}$

where  $n > 0$

### Ytick

Sets the distance between tick marks on the vertical axis.

In Plot Setup view, enter a value for  $Y_{\text{Tick}}$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright Y_{\text{tick}}$

where  $n > 0$

### Xmin/Xmax

Sets the minimum and maximum horizontal values of the plot screen.

In Plot Setup view, enter values for  $X_{\text{Rng}}$ .

In a program, type:

$n_1 \triangleright X_{\min}$

$n_2 \triangleright X_{\max}$

where  $n_1 < n_2$

### Ymin/Ymax

Sets the minimum and maximum vertical values of the plot screen.

In Plot Setup view, enter the values for  $Y_{\text{Rng}}$ .

In a program, type:

$n_1 \triangleright Y_{\min}$

$n_2 \triangleright Y_{\max}$

where  $n_1 < n_2$

## Xzoom

Sets the horizontal zoom factor.

In Plot View, press  then . Scroll to **Set Factors**, select it and tap . Enter the value for X Zoom and tap .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright X_{\text{zoom}}$

where  $n > 0$

The default value is 4.

## Yzoom

In Plot View, press  then . Scroll to **Set Factors**, select it and tap . Enter the value for Y Zoom and tap .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright Y_{\text{zoom}}$

where  $n > 0$

The default value is 4.

## Symbolic view variables

### AltHyp

#### *Inference*

Determines the alternative hypothesis used for hypothesis testing.

In Symbolic View, select an option for Alt Hypoth.

In a program, type:

0  $\triangleright \text{AltHyp} \text{---} \mu < \mu_0$

1  $\triangleright \text{AltHyp} \text{---} \mu > \mu_0$

2  $\triangleright \text{AltHyp} \text{---} \mu \neq \mu_0$

### E0...E9

#### *Solve*

Contains an equation or expression. In Symbolic view, select one of E0 through E9 and enter an expression or equation. The independent variable is selected by highlighting it in Numeric view.

In a program, type (for example):

$X + Y * X - 2 = Y \triangleright E1$

## F0...F9

### *Function*

Contains an expression in X. In Symbolic View, select one of F0 through F9 and enter an expression.

In a program, type (for example):

`SIN(X) ► F1`

## H1...H5

### *Statistics 1Var*

Contains a list of the dataset(s) that define a 1-variable statistical analysis. The first column in the list is the independent column and the second (if any) specifies the column used for the frequencies. For example, `H1` by default returns `{D1, ""}`, where `D1` is the default independent column and `""` indicates that there is no column used for frequencies. In Symbolic view, select one of `H1` through `H5` and enter an independent column and an optional frequency column.

## H1Type...H5Type

### *Statistics 1Var*

Sets the type of plot used to graphically represent the statistical analyses `H1` through `H5`. In Symbolic View, specify the type of plot in the field for `Plot1`, `Plot2`, etc.

Or in a program, store one of the following constant integers or names into the variables `H1Type`, `H2Type`, etc.

1 Histogram (default)

2 Box and Whisker

3 Normal Probability

4 Line

5 Bar

6 Pareto

Example:

`2 ► H3Type`

## Method

### *Inference*

Determines whether the Inference app is set to calculate hypothesis test results or confidence intervals. In Symbolic view, make a selection for `Method`.

In a program, type:

0 ► `Method—for Hypothesis Test`

2 ► `Method—for Confidence Interval`

3 ► `Method—for Chi-Square`

4 ► `Method—for Regression`

## R0...R9

### *Polar*

Contains an expression in  $\theta$ . In Symbolic view, select one of R0 through R9 and enter an expression.

In a program, type:

`SIN( $\theta$ ) ► R1`

## S1...S5

### *Statistics 2Var*

Contains a list that defines a 2-variable statistical analysis. Returns a list containing the independent column name, the dependent column name and the fit equation (if any).

## S1Type...S5Type

### *Statistics 2Var*

Sets the type of fit to be used by the `FIT` operation in drawing the regression line. From Symbolic view, specify the fit in the field for `Type1`, `Type2`, etc.

In a program, store one of the following constant integers into a variable `S1Type`, `S2Type`, etc.

1 Linear

2 Logarithmic

3 Exponential

4 Power

5 Exponent

6 Inverse

7 Logistic

8 Quadratic

9 Cubic

10 Quartic

11 User Defined

Example:

`3 ► S2Type`

## InfType

### *Inference*

Determines the type of hypothesis test or confidence interval. Depends upon the value of the variable `Method`. From Symbolic View, make a selection for `Type`.

Or, in a program, store the constant number from the list below into the variable `Type`. With `Method=0`, the constant values and their meanings are as follows:

0 Z-Test:  $1\ \mu$

1 Z-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

2 Z-Test:  $1 \pi$

3 Z-Test:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$

4 T-Test:  $1 \mu$

5 T-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

With `Method=1`, the constants and their meanings are as follows:

0 Z-Int:  $1 \mu$

1 Z-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

2 Z-Int:  $1 \pi$

3 Z-Int:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$

4 T-Int:  $1 \mu$

5 T-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

With `Method=2`, the constants and their meanings are as follows:

0 Chi-square goodness of fit test

1 Chi-square two-way test

With `Method=3`, the constants and their meanings are as follows:

0 Linear t-test

1 Interval: Slope

2 Interval: Intercept

3 Interval: Mean Response

4 Prediction Interval

## **X0, Y0...X9, Y9**

### *Parametric*

Contains two expressions in `T`:  $X(T)$  and  $Y(T)$ . In Symbolic view, select any of `X0-Y0` through `X9-Y9` and enter expressions in `T`.

In a program, store expressions in `T` in `Xn` and `Yn`, where `n` is an integer from 0 to 9.

Example:

`SIN(4*T) ► Y1; 2*SIN(6*T) ► X1`

## **U0...U9**

### *Sequence*

Contains an expression in `N`. In Symbolic view, select any of `U0` through `U9` and enter an expression in `N`, `Un(N-1)`, or `Un(N-2)`.

In a program, use the `RECURSE` command to store the expression in `Un`, where `n` is an integer from 0 to 9.

Example:

`RECURSE (U, U(N-1)*N, 1, 2) ► U1`

## Numeric view variables

### C0...C9

#### *Statistics 2Var*

Contain lists of numerical data. In Numeric view, enter numerical data in C0 through C9.

In a program, type:

```
LIST ► Cn
```

where n = 0, 1, 2, 3 ... 9 and LIST is either a list or the name of a list.

### D0...D9

#### *Statistics 1Var*

Contain lists of numerical data. In Numeric view, enter numerical data in D0 through D9.

In a program, type:

```
LIST ► Dn
```

where n = 0, 1, 2, 3 ... 9 and LIST is either a list or the name of a list.

### NumIndep

#### *Function Parametric Polar Sequence Advanced Graphing*

Specifies the list of independent values (or two-value sets of independent values) to be used by Build Your Own Table. Enter your values one-by-one in the Numeric view.

In a program, type:

```
LIST ► NumIndep
```

List can be either a list itself or the name of a list. In the case of the Advanced Graphing app, the list will be a list of pairs (a list of 2-element vectors) rather than a list of numbers.

### NumStart

#### *Function Parametric Polar Sequence*

Sets the starting value for a table in Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, enter a value for NUMSTART.

In a program, type:

```
n ► NumStart
```

### NumXStart

#### *Advanced Graphing*

Sets the starting number for the X-values in a table in Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, enter a value for NUMXSTART.

In a program, type:

```
n ► NumXStart
```

## NumYStart

### *Advanced Graphing*

Sets the starting value for the Y-values in a table in Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, enter a value for `NUMYSTART`.

In a program, type:

```
n ► NumYStart
```

## NumStep

### *Function Parametric Polar Sequence*

Sets the step size (increment value) for the independent variable in Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, enter a value for `NUMSTEP`.

In a program, type:

```
n ► NumStep
```

where  $n > 0$

## NumXStep

### *Advanced Graphing*

Sets the step size (increment value) for the independent X variable in Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, enter a value for `NUMXSTEP`.

In a program, type:

```
n ► NumXStep
```

where  $n > 0$

## NumYStep

### *Advanced Graphing*

Sets the step size (increment value) for the independent Y variable in Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, enter a value for `NUMYSTEP`.

In a program, type:

```
n ► NumYStep
```

where  $n > 0$

## NumType

### *Function Parametric Polar Sequence Advanced Graphing*

Sets the table format.

In Numeric Setup view, make a selection for `NumType`.

In a program, type:

```
0 ► NumType—for Automatic (default).
```



1 ► NumType—for BuildYourOwn.

### NumZoom

*Function Parametric Polar Sequence*

Sets the zoom factor in the Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, type in a value for NUMZOOM.

In a program, type:

n ► NumZoom

where  $n > 0$

### NumXZoom

*Advanced Graphing*

From Numeric Setup view, type in a value for NUMXZOOM.

In a program, type:

n ► NumXZoom

where  $n > 0$

### NumYZoom

*Advanced Graphing*

Sets the zoom factor for the values in the Y column in the Numeric view.

From Numeric Setup view, type in a value for NUMYZOOM.

In a program, type:

n ► NumYZoom

where  $n > 0$

### Inference app variables

The following variables are used by the Inference app. They correspond to fields in the Inference app Numeric view. The set of variables shown in this view depends on the hypothesis test or the confidence interval selected in the Symbolic view.

### Alpha

Sets the alpha level for the hypothesis test. From the Numeric view, set the value of Alpha.

In a program, type:

n ► Alpha

where  $0 < n < 1$

### Conf

Sets the confidence level for the confidence interval. From Numeric view, set the value of C.

In a program, type:

n ► Conf

where  $0 < n < 1$

### ExpList

Contains the expected counts by category for the chi-square goodness of fit test. In the Symbolic view field Expected, select Count. Then, in Numeric view, enter the data in ExpList.

### Mean<sub>1</sub>

Sets the value of the mean of a sample for a 1-mean hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a 2-mean test or interval, sets the value of the mean of the first sample. From Numeric view, set the value of  $\bar{x}$  or  $\bar{x}_1$ .

In a program, type:

n ► Mean<sub>1</sub>

### Mean<sub>2</sub>

For a 2-mean test or interval, sets the value of the mean of the second sample. From Numeric view, set the value of  $\bar{x}_2$ .

In a program, type:

n ► Mean<sub>2</sub>

### $\mu_0$

Sets the assumed value of the population mean for a hypothesis test. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\mu_0$ .

In a program, type:

n ►  $\mu^0$

where  $0 < \mu_0 < 1$

### $n_1$

Sets the size of the sample for a hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the size of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $n_1$ .

In a program, type:

n ►  $n^1$

### $n_2$

For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the size of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $n_2$ .

In a program, type:

n ►  $n_2$

## ObsList

Contains the observed count data for the chi-square goodness of fit test. In Numeric view, enter your data in ObsList.

## ObsMat

Contains the observed counts by category for the chi-square two-way test. In Numeric view, enter your data in ObsMat.

## $\pi_0$

Sets the assumed proportion of successes for the One-proportion Z-test. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\pi_0$ .

In a program, type:

n ►  $\pi_0$

where  $0 < \pi_0 < 1$

## Pooled

Determine whether or not the samples are pooled for tests or intervals using the Student's T-distribution involving two means. From the Numeric view, set the value of Pooled.

In a program, type:

0 ► Pooled—for not pooled (default).

1 ► Pooled—for pooled.

## ProbList

Contains the expected probabilities by category for the chi-square goodness of fit test. In the Symbolic view, in the Expected box, select Probability. Then, in Numeric view, enter the data in ProbList.

## $s_1$

Sets the sample standard deviation for a hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the sample standard deviation of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $s_1$ .

In a program, type:

n ►  $s_1$

## $s_2$

For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the sample standard deviation of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $s_2$ .

In a program, type:

n ►  $s_2$

## $\sigma_1$

Sets the population standard deviation for a hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the population standard deviation of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\sigma_1$ .

In a program, type:

`n ►  $\sigma_1$`

## $\sigma_2$

For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the population standard deviation of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\sigma_2$ .

In a program, type:

`n ►  $\sigma_2$`

## $x_1$

Sets the number of successes for a one-proportion hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two proportions, sets the number of successes of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $x_1$ .

In a program, type:

`n ►  $x_1$`

## $x_2$

For a test or interval involving the difference of two proportions, sets the number of successes of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $x_2$ .

In a program, type:

`n ►  $x_2$`

## **Xlist**

Contains the list of explanatory data (X) for the regression tests and intervals. In Numeric view, enter your data in `Xlist`.

## **Xval**

For the confidence interval for the mean response and prediction interval for a future response, contains the value of the explanatory variable (X) under scrutiny. Enter a value when prompted by the wizard.

## **Ylist**

Contains the list of response data (Y) for the regression tests and intervals. In Numeric view, enter your data in `Ylist`.

## **Finance app variables**

The following variables are used by the Finance app. They correspond to the fields in the Finance app Numeric view.

## CPYR

Compounding periods per year. Sets the number of compounding periods per year for a cash flow calculation. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for  $C/YR$ .

In a program, type:

n ► CPYR

where  $n > 0$

## BEG

Determines whether interest is compounded at the beginning or end of the compounding period. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, select or clear **End**.

In a program, type:

1 ► **BEG**—for compounding at the end of the period (default).

0 ► **BEG**—for compounding at the beginning of the period.

## FV

Future value. Sets the future value of an investment. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **FV**.

In a program, type:

n ► FV

Positive values represent return on an investment or loan.

## IPYR

Interest per year. Sets the annual interest rate for a cash flow. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for  $I\%YR$ .

In a program, type:

n ► IPYR

where  $n > 0$

## NbPmt

Number of payments. Sets the number of payments for a cash flow. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **N**.

In a program, type:

n ► NbPmt

where  $n > 0$

## PMT

Payment value. Sets the value of each payment in a cash flow. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **PMT**.

In a program, type:

n ► PMT

Note that payment values are negative if you are making the payment and positive if you are receiving the payment.

### PPYR

Payments per year. Sets the number of payments made per year for a cash flow calculation. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for  $P/YR$ .

In a program, type:

```
n ► PPYR
```

where  $n > 0$

### PV

Present value. Sets the present value of an investment. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for  $PV$ .

In a program, type:

```
n ► PV
```

Note: negative values represent an investment or loan.

### GSize

Group size. Sets the size of each group for the amortization table. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for `Group Size`.

In a program, type:

```
n ► GSize
```

### **Linear Solver app variables**

The following variables are used by the Linear Solver app. They correspond to the fields in the app's Numeric view.

#### **LSystem**

Contains a 2x3 or 3x4 matrix which represents a 2x2 or 3x3 linear system. From the Numeric view of the Linear Solver app, enter the coefficients and constants of the linear system.

In a program, type:

```
matrix ► LSystem
```

where matrix is either a matrix or the name of one of the matrix variables M0-M9.

### **Triangle Solver app variables**

The following variables are used by the Triangle Solver app. They correspond to the fields in the app's Numeric view.

#### **SideA**

The length of Side a. Sets the length of the side opposite the angle A. From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for a.

In a program, type:

```
n ► SideA
```

where  $n > 0$

#### **SideB**

The length of Side b. Sets the length of the side opposite the angle B. From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for b.

In a program, type:

```
n ► SideB
```

where  $n > 0$

#### **SideC**

The length of Side c. Sets the length of the side opposite the angle C. From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for c.

In a program, type:

```
n ► SideC
```

where  $n > 0$

#### **AngleA**

The measure of angle A. Sets the measure of angle A. The value of this variable will be interpreted according to the angle mode setting (Degrees or Radians). From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for angle A.

In a program, type:

```
n ► AngleA
```

where  $n > 0$

### AngleB

The measure of angle B. Sets the measure of angle B. The value of this variable will be interpreted according to the angle mode setting (Degrees or Radians). From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for angle B.

In a program, type:

`n ► AngleB`

where  $n > 0$

### AngleC



The measure of angle C. Sets the measure of angle C. The value of this variable will be interpreted according to the angle mode setting (Degrees or Radians). From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for angle C.

In a program, type:

`n ► AngleC`

where  $n > 0$

### RECT

Corresponds to the status of  in the Numeric view of the Triangle Solver app. Determines whether a general triangle solver or a right triangle solver is used. From the Triangle Solver view, tap .

In a program, type:

`0 ► RECT`—for the general Triangle Solver

`1 ► RECT`—for the right Triangle Solver

### Home Setting variables

The following variables (except Ans) are found in Home Settings. The first four can all be over-written in an app's Symbolic Setup view.

### Ans

Contains the last result calculated in the Home or CAS views. `Ans (n)` returns the nth result in the history of Home view. In CAS view, if Ans is a matrix, `Ans (m, n)` returns the element in row m and column n.

### HAngle

Sets the angle format for the Home view. In Home Settings, choose `Degrees` or `Radians` for angle measure.

In a program, type:

`0 ► HAngle`—for Degrees.

`1 ► HAngle`—for Radians.



## HDigits

Sets the number of digits for a number format other than Standard in the Home view. In Home Settings, enter a value in the second field of **Number Format**.

In a program, type:

`n ► HDigits`, where  $0 < n < 11$ .

## HFormat

Sets the number display format used in the Home view. In Home Settings, choose `Standard`, `Fixed`, `Scientific`, or `Engineering` in the **Number Format** field.

In a program, store one of the following the constant numbers (or its name) into the variable `HFormat`:

0 `Standard`

1 `Fixed`

2 `Scientific`

3 `Engineering`

## HComplex

Sets the complex number mode for the Home view. In Home Settings, select or clear the **Complex** field. Or, in a program, type:

0 ► `HComplex`—for OFF.

1 ► `HComplex`—for ON.

## Date

Contains the system date. The format is `YYYY.MMDD`. This format is used irrespective of the format set on the Home Settings screen. On page 2 of Home Settings, enter values for `Date`.

In a program, type:

`YYYY.MMDD ► Date`, where `YYYY` are the four digits of the year, `MM` are the two digits of the month, and `DD` are the two digits of the day.

## Time

Contains the system time. The format is `HH°MM'SS''`, with the hours in 24-hour format. This format is used irrespective of the format set on the Home Settings screen. On page 2 of Home Settings, enter values for `Time`.

In a program, type:

`HH°MM'SS'' ► Time`, where `HH` are the two digits of the hour ( $0 \leq HH < 24$ ), `MM` are the two digits of the minutes, and `SS` are the two digits of the seconds.

## Language

Contains an integer indicating the system language. From Home Settings, choose a language for the **Language** field.

In a program, store one of the following constant numbers into the variable `Language`:

1 ► `Language (English)`

- 2 ► Language (Chinese)
- 3 ► Language (French)
- 4 ► Language (German)
- 5 ► Language (Spanish)
- 6 ► Language (Dutch)
- 7 ► Language (Portuguese)

## Entry

Contains an integer that indicates the entry mode. In Home Settings, select an option for **Entry**.

In a program, enter:

- 0 ► Entry—for Textbook
- 1 ► Entry—for Algebraic
- 2 ► Entry—for RPN

INTEGER

## Base

Returns or sets the integer base. In Home Settings, select an option for the first field next to **Integers**. In a program, enter:

- 0 ► Base—for Binary
- 1 ► Base—for Octal
- 2 ► Base—for Decimal
- 3 ► Base—for Hexadecimal

## Bits

Returns or sets the number of bits for representing integers. In Home Settings, enter a value for the second field next to **Integers**. In a program, enter:

- $n$  ► Bits, where  $n$  is the number of bits.

## Signed

Returns the status of, or sets a flag, indicating that the integer wordsize is signed or not. In Home Settings, check or uncheck the  $\pm$  field to the right of **Integers**. In a program, enter:

- 0 ► Signed—for unsigned
- 1 ► Signed—for signed

## Symbolic Setup variables

The following variables are found in the Symbolic setup of an app. They can be used to overwrite the value of the corresponding variable in Home Settings.

## AAngle

Sets the angle mode.

From Symbolic setup, choose `System`, `Degrees`, or `Radians` for angle measure. `System` (default) will force the angle measure to agree with that in Home Settings.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► `AAngle`—for System (default)
- 1 ► `AAngle`—for Radians
- 2 ► `AAngle`—for Degrees

## AComplex

Sets the complex number mode.

From Symbolic setup, choose `System`, `ON`, or `OFF`. `System` (default) will force the complex number mode to agree with the corresponding setting in Home Settings.

In a program, type:

- 0 ► `AComplex`—for System (default)
- 1 ► `AComplex`—for ON
- 2 ► `AComplex`—for OFF

## ADigits

Contains the number of decimal places to use for the Fixed, Scientific, or Engineering number formats in the app's Symbolic Setup.

From Symbolic setup, enter a value in the second field of `Number Format`.

In a program, type:

- `n` ► `ADigits`

where  $0 < n < 11$

## AFormat

Defines the number display format used for number display in the Home view and to label axes in the Plot view.

From Symbolic setup, choose `Standard`, `Fixed`, `Scientific`, or `Engineering` in the **Number Format** field.

In a program, store the constant number into the variable `AFormat`.

- 0 System
- 1 Standard
- 2 Fixed
- 3 Scientific
- 4 Engineering

Example:

- 3 ► `AFormat`

### ***Results variables***

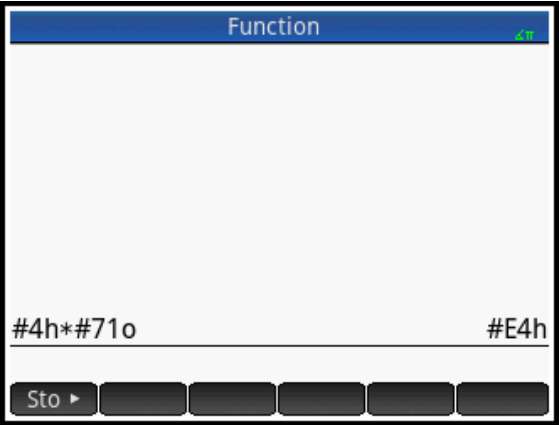
The Function, Statistics 1Var, Statistics 2Var, and Inference apps offer functions that generate results that can be reused outside those apps (such as in a program). For example, the Function app can find a root of a function, and that root is written to a variable called Root. That variable can then be used elsewhere.



The results variables are listed with the apps that generate them.

# 29 Basic integer arithmetic

The common number base used in contemporary mathematics is base 10. By default, all calculations performed by the HP Prime are carried out in base 10, and all results are displayed in base 10.

However, the HP Prime enables you to carry out integer arithmetic in four bases: decimal (base 10), binary, (base 2), octal (base 8), and hexadecimal (base 16). For example, you could multiply 4 in base 16 by 71 in base 8 and the answer is E4 in base 16. This is equivalent in base 10 to multiplying 4 by 57 to get 228.



You indicate that you are about to engage in integer arithmetic by preceding the number with the pound symbol (#, got by pressing   ). You indicate what base to use for the number by appending the appropriate base marker:

| Base marker | Base   |
|-------------|--|
| [blank]     | Adopt the default base (see <a href="#">The default base on page 576</a> ) |
| d           | decimal  |
| b           | binary   |
| o           | octal  |
| h           | hexadecimal  |

Thus **#11b** represents 310. The base marker *b* indicates that the number is to interpreted as a binary number: 11<sub>2</sub>. Likewise **#E4h** Base marker Base [blank] Adopt the default base (see [The default base on page 576](#)) d decimal b binary o octal h hexadecimal 582 Basic integer arithmetic represents 228<sub>10</sub>. In this case, the base marker *h* indicates that the number is to interpreted as a hexadecimal number: E4<sub>16</sub>.

Note that with integer arithmetic, the result of any calculation that would return a remainder in floating-point arithmetic is truncated: only the integer portion is presented. Thus **#100b/#10b** gives the correct answer: **#10b** (since 4<sub>10</sub>/2<sub>10</sub> is 2<sub>10</sub>). However, **#100b/#11b** gives just the integer component of the correct result: **#1b**.

Note too that the accuracy of integer arithmetic can be limited by the integer wordsize. The wordsize is the maximum number of bits that can represent an integer. You can set this to any value between 1 and 64. The smaller the wordsize, the smaller the integer that can be accurately represented. The default wordsize is 32,

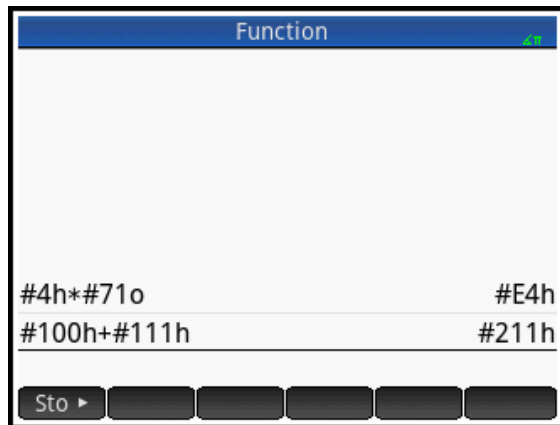
which is adequate for representing integers up to approximately  $2 \times 10^9$ . However, integers larger than that would be truncated, that is, the most significant bits (that is, the leading bits) would be dropped. thus the result of any calculation involving such a number would not be accurate.

## The default base

Setting a default base only affects the entry and display of numbers being used in integer arithmetic. If you set the default base to binary, 27 and 44 will still be represented that way in Home view, and the result of adding those numbers will still be represented as 71. However, if you entered #27b, you would get a syntax error, as 2 and 7 are not integers found in binary arithmetic. You would have to enter 27 as #11011b (since  $27_{10} = 11011_2$ ).

Setting a default base means that you do not always have to specify a base marker for numbers when doing integer arithmetic. The exception is if you want to include a number from the non-default base: it will have to include the base marker. Thus if your default base is 2 and you want to enter 27 for an integer arithmetic operation, you could enter just #11011 without the *b* suffix. But if you wanted to enter  $E4_{16}$ , you need to enter it with the suffix: #E4h. (The HP Prime adds any omitted base markers when the calculation is displayed in history.)

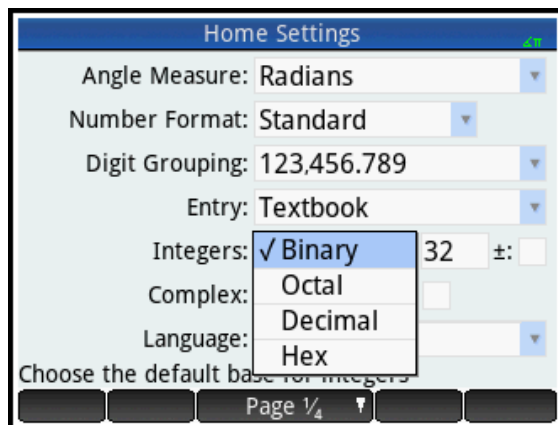
Note that if you change the default base, any calculation in history that involves integer arithmetic *for which you did not explicitly add a base marker* will be redisplayed in the new base. In the following figure, the first calculation explicitly included base markers (*b* for each operand). The second calculation was a copy of the first but without the base markers. The default base was then changed to hex. The first calculation remained as it was, while the second—without base markers being explicitly added to the operands—was redisplayed in base 16.



## Changing the default base

The calculator's default base for integer arithmetic is 16 (hexadecimal). To change the default base:

1. Display the **Home Settings** screen:  



2. Choose the base you want from the **Integers** menu: **Binary**, **Octal**, **Decimal**, or **Hex**.
3. The field to the right of Integers is the wordsize field. This is the maximum number of bits that can represent an integer. The default value is 32, but you can change it to any value between 1 and 64.
4. If you want to allow for signed integers, select the  $\pm$  option to the right of the wordsize field. Choosing this option reduces the maximum size of an integer to one bit less than the wordsize.

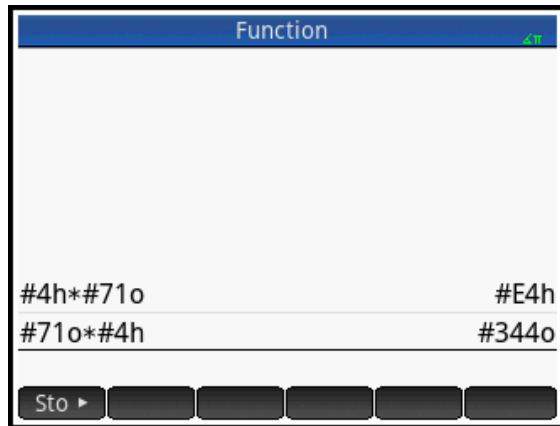
## Examples of integer arithmetic

The operands in integer arithmetic can be of the same base or of mixed bases.

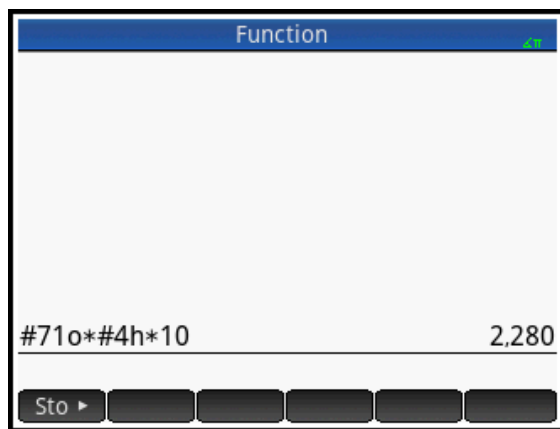
| Integer calculation               | Decimal equivalent |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| $\#10000b + \#10100b = \#100100b$ | $16 + 20 = 36$     |
| $\#710 - \#10100b = \#450$        | $57 - 20 = 37$     |
| $\#4Dh * \#11101b = \#8B9h$       | $77 * 29 = 2233$   |
| $\#32Ah / \#50 = \#A2h$           | $810 / 5 = 162$    |

## Mixed-base arithmetic

With one exception, where you have operands of different bases, the result of the calculation is presented in the base of the first operand. The following figure shows two equivalent calculations: the first multiplies  $4_{10}$  by  $57_{10}$  and the second multiplies  $57_{10}$  by  $4_{10}$ . Obviously the results too are mathematically equivalent. However, each is presented in the base of the operand entered first: 16 in the first case and 8 in the second.




The exception is if an operand is not marked as an integer by preceding it with #. In these cases, the result is presented in base 10.



## Integer manipulation





The result of integer arithmetic can be further analyzed, and manipulated, by viewing it in the **Edit Integer** dialog.

1. In Home view, use the cursor keys to select the result of interest.
2. Press **Shift**  (Base).




The **Edit Integer** dialog appears. The **Was** field at the top shows the result you selected in Home view.

The hex and decimal equivalents are shown under the **Out** field, followed by a bit-by-bit representation of the integer.


Symbols beneath the bit representation show the keys you can press to edit the integer. (Note that this doesn't change the result of the calculation in Home view.) The keys are:


-  or  (Shift): these keys shift the bits one space to the left (or right). With each press, the new integer represented appears in the **Out** field (and in the hex and decimal fields below it).
-  or  (Bits): these keys increase (or decrease) the wordsize. The new wordsize is appended to the value shown in the **Out** field.





-  (Neg): returns the two's complement (that is, each bit in the specified wordsize is inverted and one is added. The new integer represented appears in the **Out** field (and in the hex and decimal fields below it).
-  or  (Cycle base): displays the integer in the **Out** field in another base.


Menu buttons provide some additional options:


 : returns all changes to their original state

 : cycles through the bases; same as pressing +

 : toggles the wordsize between signed and unsigned

 : returns the one's complement (that is, each bit in the specified wordsize is inverted: a 0 is replaced by 1 and a 1 by 0. The new integer represented appears in the Out field (and in the hex and decimal fields below it).


 : activates edit mode. A cursor appears and you can move about the dialog using the cursor keys. The hex and decimal fields can be modified, as can the bit representation. A change in one such field automatically modifies the other fields.

 : closes the dialog and saves your changes. If you don't want to save your changes, press

 instead.

3. Make whatever changes you want.

4. To save your changes, tap ; otherwise press .

 **NOTE:** If you save changes, the next time you select that same result in Home view and open the **Edit Integer** dialog, the value shown in the **Was** field will be the value you saved, not the value of the result.

## Base functions

Numerous functions related to integer arithmetic can be invoked from Home view and within programs:

|        |         |         |
|--------|---------|---------|
| BITAND | BITNOT  | BITOR   |
| BITSL  | BITSR   | BITXOR  |
| B→R    | GETBASE | GETBITS |
| R→B    | SETBASE | SETBITS |

These are described in [Integer on page 542](#).

---

## 30 Appendix A – Glossary

### **app**

A small application, designed for the study of one or more related topics or to solve problems of a particular type. The built-in apps are Function, Advanced Graphing, Geometry, Spreadsheet, Statistics 1Var, Statistics 2Var, Inference, DataStreamr, Solve, Linear Solver, Triangle Solver, Finance, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Linear Explorer, Quadratic Explorer, and Trig Explorer. An app can be filled with the data and solutions for a specific problem. It is reusable (like a program, but easier to use) and it records all your settings and definitions.

### **button**

An option or menu shown at the bottom of the screen and activated by touch. Compare with *key*.

### **CAS**

Computer Algebra System. Use the CAS to perform exact or symbolic calculations. Compare to calculations done in Home view, which often yield numerical approximations. You can share results and variables between the CAS and Home view (and vice versa).

### **catalog**

A collection of items, such as matrices, lists, programs and the like. New items you create are saved to a catalog, and you choose a specific item from a catalog to work on it. A special catalog that lists the apps is called the Application Library.

### **command**

An operation for use in programs. Commands can store results in variables, but do not display results.

### **expression**

A number, variable, or algebraic expression (numbers plus functions) that produces a value.

### **function**

An operation, possibly with arguments, that returns a result. It does not store results in variables. The arguments must be enclosed in parentheses and separated with commas.

### **Home view**

The basic starting point of the calculator. Most calculations can be done in Home view. However, such calculations only return numeric approximations. For exact results, you can use the CAS. You can share results and variables between the CAS and Home view (and vice versa).

### **input form**

A screen where you can set values or choose options. Another name for a dialog box.

### **key**

A key on the keypad (as opposed to a button, which appears on the screen and needs to be tapped to be activated).

### **Library**

A collection of items, more specifically, the apps. See also *catalog*.

**list**

A set of objects separated by commas and enclosed in curly braces. Lists are commonly used to contain statistical data and to evaluate a function with multiple values. Lists can be created and manipulated by the List Editor and stored in the List Catalog.

**matrix**

A two-dimensional array of real or complex numbers enclosed by square brackets. Matrices can be created and manipulated by the Matrix Editor and stored in the Matrix Catalog. Vectors are also handled by the Matrix Catalog and Editor.

**menu**

A choice of options given in the display. It can appear as a list or as a set of touch buttons across the bottom of the display.

**note**

Text that you write in the Note Editor. It can be a general, standalone note or a note specific to an app.

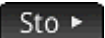

**open sentence**

An open sentence consists of two expressions (algebraic or arithmetic), separated by a relational operator such as =, <, etc. Examples of open sentences include  $y^2 < x^1$  and  $x^2 - y^2 = 3 + x$ .

**program**

A reusable set of instructions that you record using the Program Editor.

**variable**

A name given to an object—such as a number, list, matrix, graphic and so on—to assist in later retrieving it. The  command assigns a variable, and the object can be retrieved by selecting the associated variable from the variables menu ().

**vector**

A one-dimensional array of real or complex numbers enclosed in single square brackets. Vectors can be created and manipulated by the Matrix Editor and stored in the Matrix Catalog.

**views**

The primary environments of HP apps. Examples of app views include Plot, Plot Setup, Numeric, Numeric Setup, Symbolic, and Symbolic Setup.

# 31 Appendix B – Troubleshooting

## Calculator not responding

If the calculator does not respond, you should first try to reset it. This is much like restarting a PC. It cancels certain operations, restores certain conditions, and clears temporary memory locations. However, it does not clear stored data (variables, apps, programs, etc.).

### To reset

Turn the calculator over and insert a paper clip into the Reset hole just above the battery compartment cover. The calculator will reboot and return to Home view.

### If the calculator does not turn on

If the HP Prime does not turn on, follow the steps below until the calculator turns on. You may find that the calculator turns on before you have completed the procedure. If the calculator still does not turn on, contact Customer Support for further information.

1. Charge the calculator for at least one hour.
2. After an hour of charging, turn the calculator on.
3. If it does not turn on, reset the calculator as per the preceding section.

## Operating limits

**Operating temperature:** 0° to 45°C (32° to 113°F).

**Storage temperature:** –20° to 65°C (–4° to 149°F).

**Operating and storage humidity:** 90% relative humidity at 40°C (104°F) maximum. Avoid getting the calculator wet.

The battery operates at 3.7V with a capacity of 1500mAh (5.55Wh).

## Status messages

The table below lists the most common general error messages and their meanings. Some apps and the CAS have more specific error messages that are self-explanatory.

| Message                      | Meaning   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Bad argument type            | Incorrect input for this operation.   |
| Insufficient memory          | You must recover some memory to continue operation. Delete one or more customized apps, matrices, lists, notes, or programs.                                |
| Insufficient statistics data | Not enough data points for the calculation. For two-variable statistics there must be two columns of data, and each column must have at least four numbers. |
| Invalid dimension            | Array argument had wrong dimensions.  |

| Message                        | Meaning   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Statistics data size not equal | Need two columns with equal numbers of data values.   |
| Syntax error                   | The function or command you entered does not include the proper arguments or order of arguments. The delimiters (parentheses, commas, periods, and semi-colons) must also be correct. Look up the function name in the index to find its proper syntax. |
| No functions checked           | You must enter and check an equation in the Symbolic view before entering the Plot view.  |
| Receive error                  | Problem with data reception from another calculator. Re-send the data.  |
| Undefined name                 | The global variable named does not exist.   |
| Out of memory                  | You must recover a lot of memory to continue operation. Delete one or more customized apps, matrices, lists, notes, or programs.  |
| Two decimal separators input   | One of the numbers you have entered has two or more decimal points.   |
| X/0                            | Division by zero error.   |
| 0/0                            | Undefined result in division.   |
| LN(0)                          | LN(0) is undefined.   |
| Inconsistent units             | The calculation involves incompatible units (that is, adding length and mass).  |

# Index

## A

- Advanced Graphing app 113
  - displaying Numeric view 121
  - exploring Numeric view 122
  - exploring the graph 118
  - Numeric Setup view 122
  - Numeric view 121
  - open sentence 116
  - opening 115
  - Plot Gallery 125
  - Plot Gallery, exploring 125
  - plot setup 117
  - selected definitions 117
  - trace 120
  - trace, edge 123
  - trace, Numeric view 122
  - trace, points of interest 124
- algebraic precedence 25
- app
  - adding a note 88
  - creating 88
  - creating, example 89
  - Finance 286
  - function 93
  - functions 90
  - Inference 230
  - Linear Solver 266
  - Parametric 269
  - Polar 274
  - qualifying variables 92
  - Sequence 279
  - Solve 259
  - Statistics 1Var 202
  - Statistics 2Var app 215
  - Triangle Solver 295
  - variables 90, 91
- application library 53
- apps 52
  - deleting 54
  - opening 53
  - options 54
  - resetting 53
  - sorting 54

## B

- brightness 4

## C

- calculations 22
- cancel 3
- CAS 39
  - calculations 40
  - Home variable 45
  - Home view 44
  - menu items 44
  - settings 42
  - view 39
- CAS Settings 42
  - Page 2 44
- CAS settings
  - page 1 43
- CAS View 3
- Catlg menu 165, 180
  - affix 180
  - barycenter 181
  - convexhull 181
  - distance2 181
  - division\_point 181
  - equilateral\_triangle 181
  - exbisector 182
  - extract\_measure 182
  - harmonic\_conjugate 182
  - harmonic\_division 182
  - is\_harmonic 183
  - is\_harmonic\_circle\_bundle 183
  - is\_harmonic\_line\_bundle 183
  - is\_orthogonal 183
  - is\_rectangle 183
  - is\_rhombus 184
  - is\_square 184
  - isobarycenter 183
  - LineHorz 184
  - LineVert 184
  - open\_polygon 184
  - orthocenter 184
  - perpendicular bisector 185
  - point2d 185
  - polar 185
  - pole 185

- powerpc 185

- radical\_axis 186

- vector 186

- vertices 186

- vertices\_abca 186

- clipboard 26

- commands

- delete all items 38

- delete an item 37

- DROPN 36

- DUPN 36

- Echo 36

- PICK 36

- ROLL 36

- show an item 37

- stack 36

- swap 36

- LIST 37

- complex numbers 29

- context-sensitive menu 8

- conventions 1

- coumputer algebra system 39

## D

- data

- sharing 29

- definition

- adding 62

- building blocks 63

- color 65

- deleting 65

- evaluating 64

- modifying 63

- selecting 65

- display 4

## E

- Exam Mode

- activating 49

- new configuration 48

- exam mode 46

- cancelling 50

- configurations 50, 51

- default configuration 46

- explicit multiplication 25

expressions 23  
reusing 26

## F

Finance app 286  
amortization 292  
amortization example 292  
amortization graph 293  
calculating amortizations 292  
cash flow diagrams 288  
time value of money 290  
TVM calculations 291  
Function app 93, 95  
adding a tangent 106  
analyzing functions 100  
area between functions 104  
changing scale 97  
defining expressions 94  
derivatives 107  
exploring Numeric view 99  
going to a value 100  
integrals 107, 109  
intersection of two functions 102  
navigating tables 99  
Numeric Setup view 98  
Numeric view 97  
opening 93  
operations 112  
other options 100  
Plot view menu 100  
quadratic equation 101  
quadratic equation extremum 106  
quadratic equation slope 103  
setting up a plot 95  
trace function 96  
variables 110, 111  
zoom options 100

## G

geometry 126  
Geometry app 126  
adding a constrained point 127  
adding a tangent 128  
adding calculations 131  
calculations in Plot view 133  
creating a derivative point 129  
opening 126  
plotting the graph 126

preparation 126  
tracing the derivative 133  
geometry commands 165  
geometry functions 165

## H

help 31  
hexagesimal numbers 14  
Home View 3

## I

implied multiplication 25  
Inference app 230  
calculating statistics 237  
chi-square tests 251  
confidence interval for a mean response 256  
confidence interval for intercept 255  
confidence interval for slope 254  
confidence intervals 246  
displaying test results 234  
entering data 233, 236  
goodness of fit test 251  
graphic results 240  
hypothesis tests 240  
importing data 238  
importing statistics 235  
inference for regression 253  
inference method 232  
linear t-test 253  
method 238  
numeric results 239  
one-proportion Z-interval 248  
one-proportion z-test 242  
one-sample T-interval 249  
one-sample t-test 244  
one-sample Z-interval 246  
one-sample Z-test 240  
opening 231, 237  
plotting test results 235  
prediction interval 257  
sample data 230  
Statistics 1Var app 235  
Symbolic view 231  
two-proportion Z-interval 248  
two-proportion z-test 243  
two-sample T-interval 250  
two-sample t-test 245

two-sample Z-interval 247  
two-sample z-test 241  
two-way table test 252  
type 238  
unwanted data 236

input forms 17  
resetting 18

## K

keyboard 7  
keys  
edit 9  
EEX 15  
entry 9  
math 11  
math shortcuts 13  
math template 12  
shift 10

## L

large results 25  
Linear Solver app 266  
menu items 268  
opening 266  
two-by-two system 268

## M

menus 16  
closing 17  
selecting from 16  
shortcuts 17  
toolbox 17

## N

navigation 6  
negative numbers 25  
Numeric Setup view 58  
common operations 87  
example 62  
restoring default settings 87  
Numeric view 57, 142  
abscissa 176  
angle 178  
arc length 179  
area 178  
cartesian 176  
Cmds menu 165, 176  
collinear 179  
combining, Plot view 88  
common operations 82  
conjugate 180

- coordinates 177
- custom tables 85
- custom tables, deleting data 86
- deleting a calculation 146
- displaying calculations in Plot view 145
- distance 177
- editing a calculation 145
- equation of 177
- equilateral 180
- evaluating 85
- example 61
- isosceles 180
- listing all objects 145
- measure 177
- menu buttons 86
- on circle 179
- on object 179
- ordinate 177
- parallel 179
- parallelogram 180
- parametric 177
- perimeter 178
- perpendicular 180
- polar coordinates 177
- radius 178
- slope 178
- tests 179
- zoom 83
- zoom keys 84
- zoom menu 84
- zoom options 84

## O

- on/off 3

## P

- Parametric app 269
  - angle measure 270
  - defining functions 270
  - exploring graph 272
  - Numeric view 273
  - opening 269
  - plot setup 271, 276
- parentheses 24
- Plot Setup view 57
  - common operations 79
  - configuring Plot view 79
  - example 61
  - graphing methods 81

- Page 1 80
- Page 2 81
- restoring default settings 82
- Plot view 56, 134
  - abscissa 162
  - angle 163
  - arc length 163
  - area 163
  - buttons 138
  - cartesian 162
  - clearing objects 136, 137
  - Cmds menu 146
  - collinear 163
  - coloring objects 136
  - combining, Numeric view 88
  - common operations 68
  - conjugate 165
  - coordinates 162
  - dilation 159
  - distance 163
  - equation of 162
  - equilateral 164
  - example 60
  - filling objects 136
  - function plot 155
  - gestures 137
  - hiding names 135
  - implicit 156
  - inversion 161
  - isosceles 164
  - keys 138
  - list 156
  - measure 163
  - menu buttons 79
  - moving objects 135
  - ODE 156
  - on circle 164
  - on object 164
  - Options menu 139
  - ordinate 162
  - parallel 164
  - parallelogram 164
  - parametric 162
  - parametric plot 155
  - perimeter 163
  - perpendicular 164
  - Plot Setup view 139
  - plotting 154
  - polar coordinates 163
  - polar plot 155

- projection 160
- radius 163
- reciprocity 161
- reflection 158
- rotation 159
- selecting objects 135
- sequence plot 156
- similarity 160
- slider 157
- slope 163
- slopefield 156
- tests 163
- Trace 77
- Transform menu 157
- translation 157
- zoom 68
- zoom factors 68
- zoom gestures 69
- zoom keys 69
- zoom options 69
- zooming 137
- Plot view Cmds menu 146
  - altitude 149
  - angle bisector 149
  - center 147
  - circle 151
  - circumcircle 152
  - conic 153
  - curve 151
  - ellipse 153
  - excircle 152
  - hyperbola 153
  - incircle 152
  - intersection 147
  - intersections 147
  - isosceles triangle 149
  - line 148
  - locus 154
  - median 149
  - midpoint 147
  - parabola 153
  - parallel 148
  - perpendicular 148
  - point 146
  - point on 147
  - polygon 149, 151
  - quadrilateral 150
  - random points 147
  - ray 148
  - rectangle 150



- regular polygon 151
- rhombus 150
- right triangle 150
- segment 148
- square 151
- tangent 148
- triangle 149
- Polar app 274
  - angle measure 275
  - defining function 274
  - exploring graph 277
  - Numeric view 277
  - opening 274
- preface 1
- Q**
- quick settings 5
- R**
- results, reusing 33
- reverse polish notation 32
- RPN 32
  - history 33
- S**
- sample calculations 34
- Sequence app 279
  - defining expression 280, 284
  - explicitly defined sequences 284
  - exploring graph 282
  - Numeric view 282
  - opening 279
  - plot setup 280, 284
  - plotting sequence 281, 285
  - table of values 285
  - table of values, exploring 283
  - table of values, setup 283
- settings 18
  - Home 19, 20, 21
  - Home, specifying 21
- Solve app 259
  - clearing 260
  - defining equation 260
  - defining equations 263
  - entering seed value 264
  - known variables 261
  - limitations 265
  - one equation 259, 263
  - opening 260, 263
  - plotting 262
  - solution information 265
  - solving 261, 264
- Spreadsheet app 187
  - basic operations 192
  - buttons and keys 198
  - CAS calculations 197
  - cell naming 192
  - cell references 192
  - copy and paste 196
  - direct entry 193
  - external functions 195
  - external references 196
  - format parameters 200
  - functions 201
  - gestures 192
  - importing data 194
  - navigation 192
  - referencing variables 197, 199
  - selection 192
  - using names in calculations 192
- stack, manipulating 35
- Statistics 1Var app 202
  - bar graph 213
  - box-and-whisker plot 212
  - computed statistics 210
  - deleting data 209
  - editing data 208
  - entering data 208
  - exploring the graph 214
  - generating data 209
  - histogram 211
  - inserting data 209
  - line plot 213
  - normal probability plot 212
  - Numeric view 208
  - pareto chart 213
  - Plot Setup view 214
  - plot types 211
  - Plot view 214
  - plotting 210
  - plotting data 211
  - sorting data 209
  - Symbolic view 204
- Statistics 2Var app 215
  - choosing a fit 223
  - computed statistics 224
  - data sets 217
  - defining fit 224
  - deleting data 222
  - displaying equation 220
  - editing data 221, 222
  - entering data 216, 221
  - exploring statistics 217
  - fit type 217
  - fit types 223
  - inserting data 222
  - Numeric view 222
  - opening 215
  - plot setup 219
  - Plot Setup view 227
  - Plot view 227
  - plotting data 225
  - plotting the graph 219
  - predicting values 220, 227
  - predicting values, Home view 228
  - predicting values, Plot view 228
  - regression model 223
  - scatter plot 226
  - sorting data 222
  - tracing a curve 226
  - tracing order 226
  - troubleshooting 229
- Symbolic Setup view 56
  - common operations 67
  - example 60
  - overriding settings 67
- Symbolic view 55, 140
  - altitude 168
  - bisector 169
  - center 166
  - circle 171
  - circumcircle 171
  - Cmds menu 165
  - common operations 62
  - conic 173
  - creating objects 141
  - curve 171
  - deleting an object 142
  - dilation 175
  - ellipse 172
  - example 59
  - excircle 171
  - function 173
  - hiding an object 141
  - hyperbola 172
  - implicit 174
  - incircle 172
  - intersection 166
  - intersections 166

- inversion 176
- isosceles triangle 169
- line 167
- list 174
- locus 173
- median 168
- menu buttons 66
- midpoint 166
- ODE 174
- parabola 172
- parallel 167
- parallelogram 170
- parametric 173
- perpendicular 168
- plot 173
- point 165
- point on 166
- polar 173
- polygon 169, 170
- projection 176
- quadrilateral 169
- ray 167
- reciprocation 176
- rectangle 170
- reflection 175
- regular polygon 171
- reordering entries 141
- rhombus 170
- right triangle 169
- rotation 175
- segment 167
- sequence 174
- similarity 176
- slider 175
- slopefield 174
- square 171
- Symbolic Setup view 142
- tangent 168
- transform 175
- translation 175
- triangle 169

## T

- touch gestures 7
- trace
  - evaluating a definition 78
  - selecting a plot 77
  - turning on/off 78
- Triangle Solver app 295
  - angle measure 296

- indeterminate case 298
- known values 296
- no solution 298
- not enough data 299
- opening 295
- special cases 298
- triangle types 297
- unknown values 297

## V

- variable 28
- view
  - example 59

## Z

- Zoom menu
  - autoscale 75
  - box zoom 70
  - Decimal 76
  - example 72
  - Integer 76
  - split-screen viewing 71
  - square 75
  - Trig 77
- Views menu 71
- X In 73
- X Out 74
- Y In 74
- Y Out 74
- Zoom In 72
- Zoom Out 73